Authors: Anthony J. Bryant and Mark Arsenault
Fuzion Roleplaying Rules: David Ackerman-Gray, Bruce Harlick, Ray Greer, George MacDonald, Steve Peterson, Mike Pondsmith, Benjamin Wright
Sengoku-specific Rules: Mark Arsenault
Project Developer & Revisions: Mark Arsenault
Editorial Contributions: David Carroll, Dorian Davis, Paul Mason, Andrew Martin, Sakai Naoko
Cover Illustration: Jason A. Engle
Interior Illustrations: Paul Abrams, Mark Arsenault, Heather Bruton, Nancy Champion, Storn Cook, Audrey Corman, Steve Goss, John Grigni, Kraig Horigan, Bryce Nakagawa, J. Scott Reeves, Greg Smith, Tonya Walden
Layout Design & Graphics: Mark Arsenault
Cartography: Mark Arsenault & Anthony J. Bryant
Additional Thanks: To Paul Hume, and to everyone on the Sengoku mailing list for their suggestions and encouragement, especially Dorian Davis, Anthony Jackson, Dave Mattingly, Mike Montesa, Simon Seah, and Paul Wilcox.
Revised Edition Thanks: To Peter Corless for helping us realize the “new” dream, Sakai Naoko and David Carroll for editorial contributions, Kurosawa Akira and Mifune Toshiro for fueling the fire, Margaret for continued support, and to all the fans for keeping Sengoku alive!
Sengoku Mailing List: To join the Sengoku e-mail list just point your web browser to the following web address: http://groups.yahoo.com/Sengoku/join. Or you can send an e-mail to Sengoku-subscribe@yahoogroups.com.
This book is dedicated to two great icons of the *chanbara* cinema tradition, without whose influence the dream of *Sengoku* the roleplaying game would never have come to pass.

It’s said that as long as one is not forgotten they will never die. In this case, these two masters will certainly be immortal.

**Mifune Toshirō**

1920—1997

**Kurosawa Akira**

1910—1998
Welcome to Sengoku: Chanbara Roleplaying in Feudal Japan, Revised Edition!

Sengoku was originally released in 1999 to critical acclaim, excellent reviews and, soon after its release, an award for best Historic Game of 1999 (awarded by AniMail Newsletter, from Central Park Media).

The popularity of the “samurai” genre is undisputable. Back in the early days of the role-playing and adventure gaming hobby, games such as Land of the Rising Sun and Bushidō brought the earliest glimpses of feudal Japan to the gaming table. There was a lull in samurai gaming, though over the years other games appealing to samurai fans were released, from card games to board games.

I discovered Bushidō thanks to a friend of mine and fellow gamer, and I was hooked. That same year I saw the Shōgun mini-series for the first time. I began a search to see as many samurai films as I could. Seven Samurai, Sanjuro, Yojimbo, Shōgun Assassin, Kate no Gundan...these films and television programs filled my mind and heart. Big screen or small, there was no samurai film and no period drama I could turn away from. I was a sponge. There was no turning back.

As I ventured into publishing—mostly doing licensed Hero System supplements—I decided to return to my one true love of gaming: Bushidō. I contacted the authors, Paul Hume and Robert Charrette about revising and relaunching the game in a new edition. A short time later we had a signed agreement and Bushidō Third Edition was in development!

A short time later a card game was released that, once again, popularized the feudal Japanese setting in adventure games. Legend of the Five Rings was a hit, and thousands of new fans of the genre were born. An L5R role-playing game was planned soon to follow the card game.

AEG approached me to work on the L5R project and to write the L5R RPG core book, knowing that I had already landed the Bushidō license and that I had a penchant for historical, feudal Japan and all things samurai. As fate would have it, AEG decided to go with a more “high fantasy”-style setting for their games and, ultimately, with an in-house developer—John Wick.

The collectible card game was released, once again, popularized the feudal Japanese setting in adventure games. Legend of the Five Rings CCG was a hit, and thousands of new fans of the genre were born. The L5R role-playing game was released not long after, and both continue to be enjoyed by fans around the world. (The L5R games are beautiful—and fun! If you’re into a more high fantasy, amalgamized Asian setting, check them out!)

To complicate things further, Fantasy Games Unlimited (publishers of the 1981 edition of Bushidō, contacted me regarding our plan to publish Bushidō Third Edition. FGU maintained a claim of the Bushidō trademark. Though we had a license to publish the rules, they disputed our intended use of the Bushidō name. After discussions with FGU, we ultimately decided to develop our own, new game.

The result of several years of work and the wonderful talents of many people listed in the credits page is what you hold in your hands. Sengoku is a work of love: a love of the history, a love of the culture, a love of the chanbara and jidai-geki, and a love of gaming.

It is my sincere hope that you, too, love Sengoku and, if you do not already love the genre as we do, that you will soon.

Arigato gozaimas’u.

Mark T. Arsenault
President
Gold Rush Games
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BEFORE WE BEGIN</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A BRIEF HISTORY OF JAPAN</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAPAN</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANNERS AND CUSTOMS</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAILY LIFE IN JAPAN</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELIGION</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOCIETAL STRUCTURES</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATING CHARACTERS</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCCUPATIONS</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKILLS</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRINGING THE CHARACTER TO LIFE</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARMS, ARMOR AND EQUIPMENT</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME RULES</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGIC</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE CAMPAIGN</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARCHITECTURE</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BESTIARY</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAMES, OFFICES AND TITLES</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCES AND INSPIRATION</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLOSSARY</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONVERSION NOTES</td>
<td>332</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BEFORE WE BEGIN
Sengoku is also a word meaning “Warring States,” and refers to a period of Japanese history marked by nearly incessant civil warfare, jockeying for position by rival warlords and samurai clans, and a near total breakdown of the social order. When you see the word in italicized, small capital letters, like this—Sengoku—we are referring to the game. When you see it written in normal type capitalized or not, we are referring to that period in history, or something related to it. We may speak of sengoku politics, sengoku history, the Sengoku Period—or we may speak of the Sengoku game.

Japan’s Sengoku Period encompassed roughly the latter half of the sixteenth century. Some historians consider it to have begun as early as 1467, with the beginning of the Ōnin War (1467–1477), although most ascribe it to some nebulous date in the 1550s. Its close is generally marked to be the Battle of Sekigahara (Oct. 21, 1600), in which the Western Army of Tokugawa Ieyasu overcame the Toyotomi Loyalists of the Eastern Army, led by Ishida Mitsunari. It was this battle that secured Tokugawa rule over Japan, although it wasn’t finally ensured until the twin Ōsaka Campaigns of 1615, in which the Toyotomi cause was finally crushed. For this reason, some put the end of the Sengoku Period at 1615.

For the purposes of this game, the Sengoku Period is given to be 1542 to 1600, inclusive. In 1542, Japan encountered Europeans for the first time, when a ship wrecked off the coast of a tiny island called Tanegashima and Fernan Mendez Pinto stepped ashore, bearing the first firearm the Japanese had ever seen. This was to prove to be a pivotal event for the future of Japanese politics, to say nothing of the concept of warfare and bushidô. 1600, of course, marks the establishment of the Tokugawa as supreme in Japan, virtually putting an end to war and strife.

This “end of warfare” was only virtual, however; uprisings and occasional rebellions would still occur, but they were no longer the rule. Now, they were the exception.

Unfortunately for many would-be gamers, most of the television series and films with which we are familiar are actually set in the Tokugawa Period. The Seven Samurai, for example, takes place a few years after the Ōsaka Campaign. Things such as yakuza (“the Japanese Mafia”) gangs didn’t come into being until the Tokugawa were in charge, so certain elements of society one might expect to find in the game won’t appear here. They will, however, appear in a future supplement to this core rule book—one which will focus specifically on the developments of the Tokugawa Period.

WHAT IS SENGOKU?

SENGOKU is a roleplaying game for one Game Master (GM) and anywhere from one to 180,000 players (assuming you want to play the Battle of Sekigahara on a 1:1 scale).

In a roleplaying game (called RPG for short), players create and develop Player Characters (PCs). These player characters interact with Non-player Characters (NPCs) that are run by the Game Master (GM).

How do the PCs and NPCs work? The player guides his PC, deciding the PCs actions, what he says, where he goes, etc. The GM, who has created the world in which they are playing, has his store of NPCs whom he controls. With the aid of dice, used to determine certain random elements like the success or failure of specific actions or the “damage” taken in combat, players and GMs alike are in control of their game. It is purely interactive.

The GM will plot out an adventure, and it is up to the players to follow along or even turn the game to another wholly unexpected direction.

There are rule books and supplementary aids, and there may be maps and charts and even small figurines to indicate the positions of the various PCs and NPCs to aid in determining actions, but roleplaying games are unlike other games in that there is no board and no little pewter race cars or top hats.

The game exists in the minds of the GM and the players. While the GM sets the parameters and the levels of historical reality, he must keep in mind the interests of his players.

The world is whatever the GM and his group of players decide it is.

The object of roleplaying games, unlike other games which have a definite end or victory point, is to keep your PCs alive and continue to play them another day. Even if that most feared fate befalls a PC—death—the player can create a new PC and rejoin play at a suitable point in the current, on-going adventure, which in gaming terms is usually called a campaign.

That is what roleplaying games are: continuous adventures with the same PCs acting and interacting in their fictional world.

An RPG isn’t about dressing up in funny black pajamas and grabbing a sword and going out into the night as Lord Ninja Master of the Universe, or getting someone else to put on armor and whaling on each other with mock swords. While that is a form of role-play—indeed, so-called “live action roleplaying” (or LARP) is popular in some circles—it can’t replicate or even simulate the full measure of a fantasy roleplaying game.

For this reason, we don’t suggest you try any of this at home. Some of us have already, and it hurts. Besides, we can’t figure out how to get those mythical beasts to show up to play with us… It’s all in the mind.

WHAT IS ROLEPLAYING?

Roleplaying etiquette is more than just who brings the chips, pays for the pizza and drinks, and whose living room gets taken over on any given gaming session. Here are a few rules to keep in mind for happy gaming.

A samurai in service must always be careful not to indulge in underhanded censure of any faults of his comrades that he happens to hear of or see. For a man can’t calculate how far he may not have unwittingly mistaken or misunderstood these things.

— Daidôji Yûzan
No Hogging the Game

There are several people playing. No one should be the center of attention for the entire game. If there are five of you, each person gets one-fifth of the limelight.

Have Respect

This goes both ways. Without the players, the GM is nothing, and without the GM, there is no game. Don’t try to browbeat each other; don’t try to be a “rules lawyer.” It’s called a roleplaying game. Have fun.

The GM Rules

This is not a democracy. The GM is the boss. You should feel free to ask questions, but when a ruling is made, accept it. The GM shouldn’t have to resort to “lightning bolts from nowhere” to maintain order.

Be Prepared

Bring everything you will need: figures (if you use them), dice, pens and paper (and graph or hex paper if you map), etc. If you’re the GM, you’ll need more supplies than the rest. For example, if you play with figures, the GM may feel he needs to supply all the figures other than those of the players’ PCs. While that’s no hard and fast rule, it’s always nice to bring whatever figures you have to supplement the supply if necessary.

Keep the Game the Game

Remember that the game sessions are not real life. If someone makes a mistake in the game and gets your PCs killed, don’t ostracize that person. It’s not worth it. Conversely, don’t let your game suffer because of outside animosities. If you’re upset because the guy across the table is dating your ex-girlfriend, don’t use that as an excuse to hire an assassin to kill his PC. Try to keep your worlds separate.

Role Play

The rônin Kawamura Matahei is not Oscar Rivera. Neither is Diana Barnett the cunning kunoichi O-Gin. Play your characters as they should be played. Your samurai don’t know about many things you do (for example, the first time they encounter some supernatural being, remember that your PCs haven’t read the bestiary; all they know is something big, dark, and scary is out there). A GM might even want to give bonus points for exceptional roleplaying.

CHANBARA ROLEPLAYING

The Sengoku Japan of your game bears no more nor less reality than you wish it to. Whatever milieu you choose to play in—whether you prefer the gritty realism of a true historical campaign, the more elaborate whirling blades and fantastic elements of a “magic is real” adventure of a chanbara epic, or the anything-goes anime genre—the Sengoku game has what you want. Your game is what you make it, and what you let it become.

You may be familiar with the different levels of these gaming environments, but take a quick look at the options and gaming style represented by each. That way, you can more easily choose the style of play suited to your interests. You may even find that you will want to play different levels of reality, occasionally using the more fantastic and occasionally dropping into the “real world” of feudal Japan (which could be adventurous enough!).

It might be better if you don’t mix the elements too broadly, although there is no reason you can’t set limitations on how much magic or how “unreal” you are willing to let the game become. As with all roleplaying games, the world in which you play is what you choose it to be. Before beginning a campaign, the GM should sit down with his players and discuss the issue, to avoid unpleasant surprises later.

Because Sengoku is a game which primarily simulates the chanbara action cinema, it is thus set in the “Chanbara” (or “Heroic” in the Fuzion gaming system terminology) gaming level. GMs can easily run campaigns with a more historical level of “realism” simply by changing the “reality level” of the game.

Historical

Campaigns that are strictly Historical (“Competent” in Fuzion terminology) may take two tracks: they can be ultra-realistic, utilizing actual historical backdrops and personalities (e.g., the assassination of Oda Nobunaga, intrigues in Hideyoshi’s court, the Battle of Okehazama, etc.); or they can be realistic but apply to a parallel Japan, one in which a player character can raise his own clan and perhaps some day even become shôgun.

Whichever option you prefer, you will have to have an understanding of the culture of the period. This sourcebook will tell you how to play the game, and will give you a fundamental grounding in the society and world of late sixteenth-century Japan; but you will probably want to refer to some of the books in the bibliography to more fully round out aspects of play.

Films that give a good idea of this realistic form of play are Kagemusha, Throne of Blood, Seven Samurai, Rikû, The Hidden Fortress, Heaven and Earth, Ran, Yojimbo, Sanjûrô, and Shôgun. Films emphasizing a little more incredible action than most reality-based games are good for ideas of where you can take your campaign. This is perhaps the broadest field of samurai film (called jidai-geki, or “period plays,” in Japanese). While not entirely realistic, they are not beyond the ken of imagination, and there is no magical or fantastic element per se which enters into them.

Chanbara

Sengoku adventures that include more of a fantasy aspect and more spectacular characters are called “Chanbara” campaigns. In these games, PCs may have skills and attributes that would place them beyond the realm of most normal people. Magic and other elements of the fantastic will also be a regular part of the game. PCs will interact with not only other humans, but they might en-
counter tengu, kappa, or even fierce oni. Priests and monks can use magic; it may even be possible for many PCs to have a certain latent magical capability. To put it in western terms, it’s the difference between Blood and Roses or The Longships (epic historical adventures, but not fantasy) and Ladyhawk or Conan.

This is the level of play that will allow you to bring in whirling blades of death, armies of ninja materializing on castle walls, ancient family curses that really bring in whirling blades of death, armies of ninja materializing in many of his films.

As an example of an external element appropriate to a Chanbara Level game, there have been films suggesting giant kites—hang-giders, in essence—used to approach an impregnable castle. Even within the realm of the fantastical, however, the laws of nature should be followed. If bypassed, it should be with appropriate explanations.

Films that give a good idea of the fantastic are Daimajin, Satomi Hakkenden (Legend of the Eight Samurai), etc. The Lone Wolf and Cub and the Zatoichi series are two such entries in this genre, for although there is no overtly supernatural element in them, there can be little doubt that either one is exactly “normal” in terms of what can be done and what takes place.

Some common chanbara genre conventions include:

**One Against Dozens**: One hero (or several) stands against many times their own number. The majority of their opponents are killed with relative ease and *en masse*. Mifune Toshirô demonstrates this quite well in many of his films.

**Magic is Rare**: While there is a place for “magic,” it is typically shrouded in religious mysticism. Magic is typically felt but not actually seen. Those with mystic powers are few and held as “masters” of their esoteric disciplines. Ironically, religious “magic” permeates the culture to its roots and is relied upon for many things, from the seemingly mundane (healing the sick, curing the insane, blessing a voyage or new house) to the fantastic (divination, communing with the dead, etc.).

**Heroic Deeds**: Chanbara heroes, while regularly facing impossible odds and moral dilemma, are nonetheless heroes, above the masses in skill and resolve. Some heroes are thus created by their struggles. Others, who begin as heroes, are destroyed by them.

**Duty vs. Obligation**: The core of almost every chanbara story or adventure is centered on the idea that the hero faces an impossible choice: fulfill his duty or fulfill an obligation. To do one neglects the other. On all but the rarest occasion, the hero’s death is the only thing that allows him to successfully do both. What are seen as tragedies to the Western observer are held as idealistic examples of true virtue by the Japanese. These concepts are covered in more detail later.

**The Group Above the Individual**: Japanese society stresses the value of the group. One’s self-worth is derived not from his individual accomplishments but rather by those of the group. The lone figure is seen as suspect and tragic, and their struggles are amplified (which partly explains why most chanbara stories feature lone heroes).

This core rule book assumes Chanbara level gaming as the norm, and future *SENGOKU* products and supplements will also be written primarily for the Chanbara Level; however, other levels will be represented in future gaming accessories as well.

**Anime**

In an Anime style (“Superheroic”) campaign, anything goes. That’s about all you can say. The kind of abilities and actions that take place in anime games are most often indicated by animated Japanese films and television series, hence the application of the title “anime” (which literally means “animation”) for this genre.

It is in this game form in which magic and the supernatural are more common than not. The various kami and Buddhas may play an active part in the life of humans. The Anime level will be only lightly covered in this core *SENGOKU* rule book. Future supplements (based on popular feudal-era anime, such as the Hakkenden series, Undead Yomi, Ninja Scroll, Kabuto, and Dagger of Kamui, etc.) will provide the kind of material for running a true Anime level game.

**Chanbara Inspiration**

For a thorough list of chanbara films and videos, see the filmography at the back of this book. Many of the films listed are now available for rent and purchase, thanks to several companies which have begun new efforts to bring these films to the American video market.

---

*The Way of the Samurai is in desperateness. Ten men or more cannot kill such a man. Common sense will not accomplish great things. Simply become insane and desperate. In Bushidô, if one uses discrimination, he will fall behind. One needs neither loyalty nor devotion, but simply to become desperate in Bushidô. Loyalty and devotion are of themselves within desperation.*

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**LINGUISTIC CONVENTIONS**

Japanese history can be divided into “eras” and “periods.” While the terms may in many contexts be interchangeable, for the sake of **SENGOKU** we will use the latter term to indicate sometimes overlapping historical time frames as defined by historians (e.g., the Sengoku Period, the Tokugawa Period, the Fujiwara Period, etc.) and the former to indicate nengō, or “era names” as given by emperors and other worthies (e.g., Bunka Era, Genki Era, etc.). It is only since the Imperial Restoration in 1868 that the era and period names have been the same (i.e., Meiji Era, Taishō Era, Shōwa Era, and Heisei Era). What this means is that during the time of the Sengoku Period, Japan saw many eras come and go.

For personal names, the order is surname first, given name last. Tokugawa Ieyasu was Ieyasu of the Tokugawa family. This rendering of names is used throughout this rule book. Almost invariably when someone is referred to by only one name, it is a given name. In modern history books, even in Japan, Tokugawa Ieyasu is referred to initially with his full name, and thereafter as “Ieyasu,” unlike Western history books who never talk about “George” crossing the Delaware River.

Geographical and proper place names in Japanese usually (but not universally) include in their name the element they are. Thus we will not speak of the Arakawa River; rather, we will say Arakawa (“Rough River”). Likewise, we will say Enryaku-ji, rather than Enryakuji Temple (nor will we say Enryaku Temple). To those who speak Spanish and have long chafed at references such as “Rio Grande River” and “Sierra Madre Mountains,” this idea should be clear. An appendix at the back of this book gives common geographical terms in Japanese for GMs wanting to more accurately flavor their campaign, or to understand words that may appear on a map or in a conversation between PCs and NPCs.

---

**Pronunciation**

Japanese is a syllabic, generally uninflected, language. When letters are doubled (the vowels 与 and お being so identified by macrons), they are given a double duration (e.g. the て sound in “hit tune” or the お in “Go over!”). In general, letters are pronounced the same as in English, with a few necessary cautions:

### Consonants:

- **G**—always hard, as in **gold**, never soft as in **gem**.
- **J**—always soft, as in **jet**.
- **R**—lightly trilled, similar to in the British **very** (“veddy”).
- **S**—always soft, never hard as in **his**.
- **CH**—always hard, as in **church**.
- **TCH**—a lengthened **ch**, similar to the sound in **fat chance**.

### Vowels:

- **A**—as in **father**.
- **E**—somewhere between **bed** and **hay**. When a final vowel, it is always pronounced (e.g. Kansuke is pronounced as “Kawn-skay.”)
- **I**—as in **machine**.
- **O**—as in **boat**.
- **U**—as in **chute**.
- **EI**—as in **bait**.
- **AI**—as in **rite**.

Within words, the vowels 与 and い are weak, and often not pronounced; at the end of words, a 与 sometimes disappears. English has a tendency to put the stress on penultimate syllables; for ex-

---

*People who talk on and on about matters of little importance most likely have some complaint in the back of their mind. But so as to be ambiguous and to hide this they repeat what they are saying over and over again. To hear something like this causes doubt to arise in one’s heart.*

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
ample, to pronounce the name *Yamashita* as “Yama-SHEE-ta.” In fact, Japanese pronunciation is more accurately “Yamash’ta.”

One thing that must be remembered is the linguistic strictures of the language. There are a few consonant-vowel combinations that are impossible in Japanese. Occasionally, in old books, one will see an apparent exception; what this actually is is imperfect orthography, often written by people not as familiar with the language as they should be, or people following an older romanization style. James Clavell’s novel *Shôgun* provides us with three very interesting and persistent “spelling errors”: One is in the name of the character Kasigi Yabu. Si is an impossible letter combination in Japanese (the odd unusual romanization system notwithstanding, the pronunciation is still *shi*); the name would be pronounced Kashigi. The second is writing Edo as Yedo. This application of a leading “Y” is why we today say “yen” instead of the correct “en” for Japanese currency. The third is writing Toranaga as being from the Kwantô. He is from the Kantô. Osaka is in the Kansai, not Kwansai.

For the record, here are the impossible sounds and letter combinations in Japanese:
The letter *V* doesn’t exist in Japanese.
No letter can follow *F* but *U*.

*Hu* is an impossible combination in Japanese, as are *je, si, ti, tu, ye, yi,* and *zi.*
The only consonant that can end a word or syllable is an *n.* Forget final *m.* That’s a bad habit born of simplicity. Foreigners are nanban, not nambam or namban.

One final thing. The Japanese language has no plural form, so people familiar with the language generally do not put an “s” at the end of Japanese plural nouns when they appear in English. We will follow this standard, and trust context to indicate whether it is one samurai or 100 samurai.

---

**MEASUREMENTS**

Distance in *Sengoku* is measured not in feet or yards or meters, but in “shaku,” “ken,” and “jô.” One shaku is almost exactly a foot; one ken is roughly equal to six feet, or nearly two meters; a jô is 10 shaku, or 10 feet. A “tsubo” is a unit of measurement equal to one ken by one ken, or six feet by six feet; this is the size of two tatami mats, and is the standard term used to define floor space.

For the purposes of maintaining the “flavor” of the genre, distances will be discussed using the appropriate Japanese names. Below are a few measurements and their approximate Western equivalents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>U.S.</th>
<th>Metric</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Sun</td>
<td>1.2 in</td>
<td>3 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Sho</td>
<td>4 in</td>
<td>10 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Shaku</td>
<td>1 ft</td>
<td>30 cm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Ken</td>
<td>2 yds</td>
<td>3 m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Jô</td>
<td>10 ft</td>
<td>3.9 m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Ri</td>
<td>2.4 mi</td>
<td>3,900 km</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Senri</td>
<td>2,400 mi</td>
<td>3,900 km</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tsubo</td>
<td>1 ken x 1 ken (6’ x 6’)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cho</td>
<td>60 ken x 60 ken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capacity</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>U.S.</th>
<th>Metric</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Shaku</td>
<td>18ml</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Gô</td>
<td>1/2 pt</td>
<td>.18 l</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Shô</td>
<td>1.5 qts</td>
<td>1.8 l</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Tô</td>
<td>4 gal</td>
<td>18 l</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Koku</td>
<td>40 gal</td>
<td>180 l</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Sengoku Japanese calendar has a 12-month year, but each month has three weeks, each of ten days. Keep these values in mind as you read this rule book.

---

*It is important to teach a girl chastity from the time she is a child. She should not be in the company of a man at a distance of less than one ken, nor should she meet them eye to eye, nor receive things from them directly from hand to hand.*

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
A BRIEF HISTORY OF JAPAN
This chapter is not intended to be a serious historical study of Japan. Rather, it provides an overview of the basic knowledge that a normal well-educated PC is likely to know. For more specific historical information, consult the reading list in the appendix.

Remember that you are the master of your game: if certain historical elements don’t fit with your game, feel free to change them to suit your needs. For example, if you want to play Sengoku in a type of “what-if” scenario in which the Minamoto shogunate never fell, you can; but you’ll need to do some research into what government under the Minamoto was like.

Future supplements to Sengoku may focus more closely on certain historical periods, allowing you to place a game during the heady days of the latter Heian Period, when rival Taira and Minamoto clans shared the imperial bloodline and battled for supremacy; the chaos of the mid-fifteenth century, when the social structure started to crumble and upstart warlords from petty provinces became great lords overnight; or even the mist-shrouded days of prehistory, before Buddhism and Sinophilia took hold, when Japan was still a land to be conquered, and the gods had a more direct hand in daily life.

MYTHICAL ORIGINS OF JAPAN

Japan’s mythological origins are recorded in the Kojiki (“A Record of Ancient Things”), a book written in 711 by the historian Ō-no-Yasumaro. The Kojiki is also a history book about Japan’s earliest days, although its history is no more reliable than its myth.

The first emperor, according to the Kojiki, was Jinmu Tenno, son of Amaterasu Ōmikami, goddess of the sun. Jinmu ruled, if you want to play Sengoku in a type of “what-if” scenario in which the Minamoto shogunate never fell, you can; but you’ll need to do some research into what government under the Minamoto was like.

Future supplements to Sengoku may focus more closely on certain historical periods, allowing you to place a game during the heady days of the latter Heian Period, when rival Taira and Minamoto clans shared the imperial bloodline and battled for supremacy; the chaos of the mid-fifteenth century, when the social structure started to crumble and upstart warlords from petty provinces became great lords overnight; or even the mist-shrouded days of prehistory, before Buddhism and Sinophilia took hold, when Japan was still a land to be conquered, and the gods had a more direct hand in daily life.

CAPSULE HISTORY, ERA TO ERA

Most of the periods of Japanese history are taken from the location of the center of the government of the time. It is interesting to note that although after 794 the imperial capital was in Kyōto (then called Heian-kyō), once the military aristocracy rose to power, the de facto seat of Japan’s government was wherever the ruling house established it: the town of Kamakura was the seat of Minamoto (and later Hōjō) power; Muromachi was a Kyōto district chosen by the Ashikaga for their headquarters; Azuchi was Nobunaga’s castle; and Momoyama was the site of one of Hideyoshi’s castles. Note also that the so-called Sengoku Period is comprised of the entire Azuchi and Momoyama Periods, and part of the Muromachi Period. (This is why this time is often referred to in history books as “Muromachi-Momoyama,” or “Azuchi-Momoyama.”)

PREHISTORY (TO 592)

In c. AD 200, Empress Jingō leads an invasion of Korea and subjugates it to Japanese rule. Her son, the emperor Ōjin, will be deified as Hachiman, the god of war.

Among the gifts from Korea are writing and the Buddhist religion. In 538, Buddhism reaches Japan. Emperor Yōmei proposes that it become the state religion in 587. Soga no Umako supports this proposal, which is opposed by Katsumi no Nakatomi and Katsumi no Moriya, who favor Shintō; in the ensuing conflict, the Soga emerge victorious.

ASUKA PERIOD (592–710)

The imperial court moves to Asuka, in Yamato, near Nara. The Asuka Period sees the imperial house solidify control over the land. During this period, Buddhism strengthens as the official state religion, the imperial court of Japan adopts the Chinese model, and refugee artisans from Korea come to Japan. The first Japanese coins are minted in 708. The old order falls apart, and a new order based on Sino–Buddhist concepts rises to power under the eyes of the Fujiwara Clan.

Regent Prince Shōtoku institutes social reforms based on Sino–Buddhist concepts in 604. The ancient Soga clan, continuing to gain power and influence, annihilates the family of Prince Shōtoku in 643. Prince Naka no Oe and Nakatomi no Komatari join forces and assassinate Soga no Iruka and bring down the Soga, banishing many of the clan. Naka no Oe becomes Crown Prince; Komatari, Minister of the Center. They issue the Taika Reforms, a series of social reforms based on Chinese models, which establishes era names (the first being Taika, or “Great Change”), in 645. Naka no Oe becomes emperor as Tenji Tennō in 668; Komatari takes the name Fujiwara no Komatari. His family will “run” Japan for the next several centuries.

In 672, a dispute over imperial succession leads to the short but bloody Jinshin Revolt; Prince Ōama defeats prince Ōtomo, and becomes the next emperor. In 701, the Taihō Code, covering civil and penal matters, is established.

NARA PERIOD (710–794)

Empress Genmei moves the capital to Nara. The cultivation of rice is first encouraged.

Chinese becomes the language of learning, culture, science, and literature. Chinese knowledge grows as scholars from Japan go to T’ang China to study, and Buddhist priests come from China to establish temples. The Great Buddha at Tōdai-ji is completed in 752. The priest Ganjin arrives from China in 754. The Shōsō-in, a national treasury-house, is built at Tōdai-ji.

Jealous over the influence of a Buddhist monk over a retired empress, Fujiwara no Nakamaro seizes power in 757, and in an attempt to gain further power and arrest the priest in 764, he leads an uprising but is defeated and executed.

One should not think he can hire others and have them do everything, but rather he should be of the mind to rely on himself and to know the condition of things. Only then should he delegate to others.

— Hojo Nagauji
HEIAN PERIOD (794–1192)

The capital is moved to Heian-kyō (the “Capital of Peace and Calm”). The power of the emperors wanes as the court officials and bureaucrats gain more influence. For the first time, families not descended from imperial lines hold the highest offices in the land, including the regency. Literature flourishes as The Tale of Genji and other books are written.

Retired emperors begin to establish puppet master governments from their villas in Buddhist temples. Often, several generations of retired emperors struggle to pull the same strings in various directions, leading to political maneuverings by the courtiers. This is begun by retired emperor Shirakawa in 1086, who also first gives bushi direct access to court officials by establishing a guard of samurai to defend his palace.

Kōbé-daishi (Kūkai) returns from China and establishes Shingon Buddhism in 805. In 806, Saichō introduces Tendai Buddhism. The Nenbutsu sect of Buddhism is promulgated by Kūya in 938. Jōdō (“Pure Land”) Buddhism begins to flourish after Hōnen begins to preach in 1175. Rinzai-zen Buddhism begins in 1191, taught by Yōsai. Not all relations with the monks of various sects are peaceful: conflict breaks between Enjō-ji and Enryaku-ji monks in 1035. In 1037, Kōfuku-ji monks destroy part of Tōdai-ji to put down rebellious monks. Yoshinaka enters Kyōto in 1183, but his country bumpkin ways and excessive behavior get him recalled by Yorimoto. In 1185, Minamoto no Yoshitsune annihilates the Taira army in a sea battle at Dan-no-Ura. Yoshitsune is falsely denounced by jealous rivals, and he is ordered hunted down and killed by his brother Yorimoto.

Yorimoto becomes shōgun in 1192.

KAMAKURA PERIOD (1192–1333)

Yorimoto established his bakufu (“tent government” or the shōgunate) in Kamakura to keep it away from court influences. His house only lasts briefly, as through intrigues from his wife’s family, the Hōjō, the third Minamoto shōgun, Sanetomo, is assassinated in 1219. Emperor Go-Toba tried to regain control, but a huge army under Hōjō Yutokyo easily defeated Go-Toba’s forces. In 1226, the first puppet shōgun is set up by the Hōjō regents: 9-year-old Fujiwara no Yoshitsune becomes first kanpaku (imperial regent).

The rise of the military class is marked by disturbances in the provinces, where the real rulers of the land—the samurai—test their might against the aristocratic governors ensconced far away in the capital. In 935, Taira no Masakado raises an army in the provinces and declares himself “the new emperor” in the Tengyō Revolt. The conflict lasts until 940, when Masakado is killed.

Fujiwara no Michizane maneuvers behind the scenes to seize power in 995, and becomes regent in 1015. The Fujiwara, once a military house, soften and become effete; the Taira and Minamoto alternately attempt to wrest control of the government from them and support them in putting down other insurrections, while occasionally battling each other for position. Abe no Yoritokii of Mutsu rebels in 1051, starting the Zen-kunen (“Earlier Nine-Year”) War, and is put down by Minamoto no Yoriyoshi and others. Kiyohara no lehira (also of Mutsu) revolts in 1083, beginning the Gō-sannen (“Later Five-Year”) War; he is put down by Minamoto no Yoshitoki. When Minamoto no Yoshichika (a son of Yoshitoki) plunders Kyūshū in 1101, he is put down several years later by Taira no Masanori.

The Hōgen and Heiji Insurrections (1156 and 1159, respectively) lay waste to large parts of Heian-kyō. In the former, one branch of the Fujiwara and a retired emperor try to oppose the reigning emperor (Go-Shirakawa) and another branch of the Fujiwara, aided by the Taira. Go-Shirakawa emerges victorious, and Taira no Kiyomori’s fortune is made. In the Heiji Insurrection, a Minamoto–Fujiwara alliance is formed to oppose Taira no Kiyomori and his Fujiwara supporters. The insurrection fails, and Yorimoto is exiled to Izu.

Kiyomori becomes regent and his daughter becomes Emperor Takakura’s empress. After a failed conspiracy to overthrow the Taira, Kiyomori has the retired emperor Go-Shirakawa confined.

In 1180, the Genpei (“Minamoto–Taira”) War begins as Prince Mochihito and Minamoto no Yorimasa rebel against the Taira and are defeated. Minamoto no Yorimoto and Yoshinaka raise the flag of revolt. Taira no Shigehira burns Tōdai-ji and Köfuku-ji to put down rebellious monks. Yoshinaka enters Kyōto in 1183, but his country bumpkin ways and excessive behavior get him recalled by Yorimoto. In 1185, Minamoto no Yoshitsune annihilates the Taira army in a sea battle at Dan-no-Ura. Yoshitsune is falsely denounced by jealous rivals, and he is ordered hunted down and killed by his brother Yorimoto.

Yorimoto becomes shōgun in 1192.

— Asakura Soteki
MUROMACHI PERIOD (1333–1573)

This age begins marked by the split of the imperial house into two lines, each vying for the throne. While the split began in the last half of the Kamakura Period, the involvement of bushi in the equation makes it a much more bloody situation. Ashikaga Takauji restores imperial rule (the Kenmu Restoration) in 1334, but he supports Emperor Kōmyō of the northern line. Go-Daigo, who had struggled with the Kamakura shōgunate, claims orthodoxy as rightful emperor of the southern line, thereby beginning what is now called the Nanboku-chō (“Northern and Southern Court”) Period in 1336. Takauji’s first action is to defeat erstwhile allies Kusunoki Masashige and Nitta Yoshisada. He is named shōgun in 1338, and establishes his government in the Muromachi district (then called Fushimi) of Kyōto. Unlike previous periods, all the shōgun of the Muromachi Period will be heads of the Ashikaga clan.

Opulence and splendor are the bywords of this era, as they build temple after temple, literally cover the walls of one retirement villa with gold leaf, create huge estates with aesthetically perfect gardens, and outdo each other in dress and refinement. During this period (c. 1441) Zeami perfects the Nô play. The tea ceremony and flower arranging begin to flourish.

The rivalry between the Northern and Southern courts erupts into warfare in Kyōto in 1355. The conflict finally ends when Emperor Go-Kameyama of the Northern court yields the throne to Emperor Go-Komatsu of the Southern court in 1392. When an emperor of the Northern line is installed in 1412, contrary to the agreement whereby the throne would alternate between emperors of the Northern and Southern lines, hostile feelings break out and a rebellion is quickly put down in Ise; but the warfare is over as people are just worn out, and peace slowly settles in.

Because of the rivalry between courts, families jockey for position by allying first one way and then the next, with loyalties going to the highest bidder. This can be seen as the beginning of the end for the old loyalty-do-or-die mentality more typical of the Heian and Kamakura Periods. Several rebellions and insurrections occur over the decades, but are put down.

Japan also has trouble with wakō (Japanese pirates). The sea-based raiders, mostly Japanese but partially Korean (and occasionally led by Chinese), harry fishing and trading industries. The situation is so bad that an envoy from Ming China asks Japan to make valiant efforts to catch and punish the traitor, knowing something about the pirates. They are largely put down by the middle of the fifteenth century.

The greatest crisis of the Ashikaga Period is the Ōnin War of 1467–1477. The war’s causes are extremely complex: suffice to say that it combines all the worst elements of a succession dispute for the shōgunate, a rivalry over a politically powerful office, a dispute over which son would rule a powerful clan, disagreements between in-laws, and old intra- clan and inter- clan grudges that needed settling. When the dust clears, Kyōto is a burned out shambles, thousands have died, the Hosokawa and Yamana clans will never be the same, and the power and prestige of the Muromachi shōgun is broken.

The long-standing policy that daimyō infighting would be quelled by the bakufu as injurious to society is lost for good, and clans constantly vie with one another for power and influence. Loyalty and other familiar trademarks of bushidō are more her-

torical concepts than a real ideals. The main fighting is over in 1477, but in point of fact it will not end until 1600. This marks the rise of the gekokuju daimyō, those who rose to prominence from nowhere. Hōjō Sōun becomes one of the most famous of their number.

In 1488, the Ikkō sect rises up in Kaga, taking control of the whole province. In 1506, they rise again in Kaga. They are not quelled until 1531, when Asakura Norikage of Echizen suppresses them.

SPECIFIC HISTORY OF THE SENGOKU GAME PERIOD

MUROMACHI (1542–1573)

1542: Towards the end of August, a Portuguese ship lands at Tanegashima and introduces the matchlock arquebus to Japan.
1549: St. Francis Xavier arrives in Kagoshima on a mission trip.
1555: Rival daimyō Uesugi Kenshin and Takeda Shingen fight to a draw at Kawanakajima.
1560: In a reputation-making battle at Okehazama, Oda Nobunaga’s 2,000-man force overpowers a 25,000-man army and kills Imagawa Yoshimoto.
1565: Shōgun Ashikaga Yoshiteru is assassinated by Miyoshi Yoshitsugu and Matsunaga Hisahide.
1568: Nobunaga, in support of Ashikaga Yoshiaki, enters Kyōto and has him installed as shōgun.
1569: Nobunaga approves Luis Frois’s request and allows Christian preaching in Kyōto.
1570: Nobunaga defeats the Asai and Asakura at the battle of Anegawa.
1570: First Portuguese trading ship arrives in Nagasaki.
1571: Tobacco is introduced.
1573: Nobunaga purges Yoshiaki, and the Muromachi shōgunate falls.

AZUCHI PERIOD (1573–1582)

1575: Nobunaga and Ieyasu defeat Takeda Katsuyori at Nagashino; this is the first battle in which large numbers of firearms were used.
1576: Nobunaga builds Azuchi Castle.
1576: Nobunaga almost goes to war with monks from Hongan-ji, but reconciles with chief bōzu Kenneyo Kōsa. Kosa abdicates authority to his son and retires.
1582: Ōtomo, Arima, and Ōmura daimyō send mission to Rome. (It returns eight years later.)
1582: Akechi Mitsuhide, one of Nobunaga’s generals, turns his coat and attacks Nobunaga at night while the latter is staying at the Honnō-ji in Kyōto. Nobunaga is killed. Nobunaga’s best generals (Ieyasu and Hideyoshi) both make valiant efforts to catch and punish the traitor, know-
ing that the one who does will have the moral imperative to become his heir. Ieyasu, far to the north, executes a forced march south, but is too late.

**MOMOYAMA (1582–1600)**

1582: Hashiba (later Toyotomi) Hideyoshi catches up with Mitsuhide at the Battle of Yamazaki and kills him.

1583: Hideyoshi defeats Shibata Katsuie at Shizugatake.

1583: Construction is begun on Osaka Castle.

1584: Ieyasu and Hideyoshi fight to a draw at Nagakute.

1585: Ieyasu submits to Hideyoshi, recognizing his position.

1585: Hideyoshi defeats the Chôsokabe, finalizes conquest of Shikoku.

1585: Hideyoshi becomes *kanpaku*, or imperial regent.

1586: Hideyoshi becomes Grand Minister, takes surname Toyotomi.

1587: Hideyoshi conquers Kyūshû.

1587: Hideyoshi conducts the “sword hunt” to collect swords ostensibly for the iron to construct a large statue of the Buddha. His real reason is to take thousands of swords out of circulation, limiting tools of possible rebellion.

1587: Jesuit missionaries ordered expelled from Japan, but the order is never carried out.

1588: Tenshô ôban—the world’s largest coin—is minted for the first time.

1589: Printing press imported.

1589: Hideyoshi subjugates Odawara and Tôhoku, nearly having all of Japan under his control.

1591: Hideyoshi orders Sen-no-Rikyû, the great Tea Master, to commit suicide. Rikyû does so.


1592: Hideyoshi sends an army to Korea. His goal is to conquer China.

1594: Hideyoshi builds Fushimi Castle.

1595: The 21-year career of Ishikawa Goemon, the Japanese Robin Hood, comes to an end with his arrest and execution by being boiled alive.

1597: Hideyoshi sends a second army to Korea.

1597: Under Hideyoshi’s orders, 26 missionaries and Christians are killed at Nagasaki.

1598: Hideyoshi dies.

**1600:** *Der Liefde*, a Dutch ship, wanders into Bungo province. On board is the English pilot William Adams, who will become one of Ieyasu’s advisers.

1600: Battle of Sekigahara (October 21) takes place between the Eastern Army of Tokugawa Ieyasu and the Western Army of Toyotomi loyalists led by Ishida Mitsunari. After the largest battle ever fought in Japan, Ieyasu emerges victorious. Ishida is executed a few days later. The Sengoku Period comes to a close.

---

If you wish, you may place your campaign in a more structured world of a Japan under the Tokugawa bakufu. Although there are changes in the society that are not specifically covered in this core rule book (notably the rise of the yakuza and the exclusion of foreigners), you should be able to play in this milieu with no difficulties. Just to make things easy, we provide a short look at some of the changes during the early part of the long Tokugawa rule.

A future *Sengoku* gaming supplement is planned to provide specifics for gaming in the less warlike—but no less adventure-some—Edo Period, also known as the Tokugawa Jidai.

**EDO/TOKUGAWA (1600–1868)**

Ieyasu becomes shôgun in 1603 and establishes his capital far to the northeast of Kyôto in the town of Edo. Kabuki dances (by women) are recorded for the first time in that same year (female kabuki is formally banned in 1629 as dangerous to morals). In 1605, Ieyasu resigns in favor of his son, Hidetada, remaining the power behind the throne behind the throne. The Dutch arrive in Japan, and establish a trading house in Hirado in 1609. In 1610, a Japanese boat built from William Adams’s design travels to Mexico to trade. The Christian church is banned formally in 1612, and churches are burned in Kyôto and elsewhere. In 1622, 55 Christians are executed in Nagasaki.

In 1614, Ieyasu begins the completion of the destruction of the Toyotomi family. Fabricating an “insult” against himself from Hideyori, Ieyasu launches the Winter Campaign which destroys much of Osaka Castle’s defenses. Many disaffected samurai rally to the Toyotomi banner. The summer of the next year he launches the final campaign which burns the castle to the ground. Hideyori commits suicide. Ieyasu orders that there be only one castle per province, resulting in the destruction and dismantling of many older, less strategically sound fortifications. Ieyasu dies in 1616.

The term “daimyô,” which used to refer to any feudal lord or provincial military governor, is now restricted to those with domains producing an income of 10,000 koku or greater, and were obligated to serve the shôgun. There were some 265 daimyô families during the Edo Period.

Japanese ports are declared off-limits for Spanish ships in 1624, and Japanese ships without government license to trade internationally are banned in 1633; this is the first step in closing off the country to foreigners, although a small Dutch colony will remain—first in Hirado and later in its island ghetto of Dejima in Nagasaki—throughout the Edo Period. Two years later, Japanese are banned from leaving for or returning from foreign countries. Portuguese ships are banned in 1639, completing the isolation process.

The *sankin kôtai* (a system of alternate residences, which requires a daimyô to alternate spending one year in Edo and one year in his home province) is established in 1635. This serves the multiple purposes of forcing daimyô to have two expensive residences which they must upkeep all year round, leaving hostages...
in Edo within the shōgun’s reach, and requiring the expenditure of vast sums regularly to make the trek in and out of the capital with all their family and staff and goods. This is one way the shōgunate keeps daimyō from being able to cause trouble. It also helps spread wealth throughout the nation as the large entourages moves back and forth across the countryside.

A rebellion in Shimabara against the privations of a cruel daimyō breaks out in 1637. Disaffected samurai and large numbers of rōnin rally to the cause of the oppressed clans. Many of the 37,000 slain in the castle’s defense are Christian samurai, leading to the popular conclusion that the Shimabara Revolt is Christian-instigated. This failed insurrection, and the 1649 policies of the government restricting daimyō houses, increases the number of rōnin roaming the land.

In 1643, Miyamoto Musashi, Japan’s most famous swordsman, writes his treatise, The Book of Five Rings.

In 1701, Asano Naganori, the daimyō of Akō, is forced to commit seppuku after drawing his sword in the shōgun’s palace to attack an official who’d embarrassed him. Forty-seven of his retainers plot their revenge for a whole year. They strike in the dead of winter and behead Kira Yoshinaka, the official who’d brought about the fall of their house. Although they are ordered to commit seppuku for this act, many commoners and not a few bakufu officials view it as the sine qua non of bushidō and loyalty; the 47 rōnin of Akō are enshrined in Japanese legend, and their leader, Ōishi Kuranosuke, becomes a popular hero.

Japan’s government would continue to grow more bureaucratic and byzantine.

"WHAT-IF?" SCENARIOS

In addition to the powerful “what–if” provided by the existence of magic and supernatural beings, there are aspects of Japan’s history that you may want to ignore or alter slightly to make a much more personalized version of Japan for your game. We’ll give you a few possibilities, but leave it up to you. Let your imagination go. The possibilities are endless.

WHAT IF...

The rivalry between the Northern and Southern imperial courts had never gone away, and there are still two rival claimants to the throne, each with full bureaucracies, courts, and palaces, each with political supporters, but neither with enough power to tip the final balance?

Throw into this pot the political chaos of the latter half of the sixteenth century, where there may or may not be a central military authority, and you can have no end of campaign possibilities. Different factions could court (excuse the pun…) PCs and their clans or groups, hostile factions could try to constantly thwart their efforts, etc.

WHAT IF...

The Mongol invasions of 1274 and 1281 had resulted in a Japan that was half Chinese-occupied and half Japanese?

Would your PCs be interested in being part of a Fifth Column, joining the Resistance—if there is a Resistance—in Kyūshū and Shikoku? Have the Mongols gotten a foothold in Honshū? Your PCs could play the part of patriots, trying to liberate their land from a foreign oppressor, or they could work for the Mongolians for filthy lucre. They might even lead the army that liberates their ancestral home. Would there be constant warfare, an uneasy peace, or an acceptance of the status quo? How about the Japanese living under the Mongols: after several centuries, are they likely to support or betray PCs loyal to the emperor of Japan?

WHAT IF...

The Soga clan had lost their great fight in the fourth century to make Buddhism the state religion, and succeeding generations reviled the faith for the bloodshed caused over it, and persecuted those who espoused or proselytized it?

Would it only now be making inroads into Japan? Would it be banned entirely? Is it possible that it could be in the same position as the Christian religion—tolerated, allowed, but held with suspicion—only a couple of centuries farther along in terms of numbers and social effects? Think of a Japan devoid of Buddhist influences, in which Shintō is The One Faith, in which Shintō beliefs and taboos govern daily life. Would Japan have accepted anything Chinese or otherwise continental?

WHAT IF...

Nobunaga had defeated Akechi Mitsuhide at Honnō-ji, and not been slain?

Nobunaga was still young, and had more of Japan left to conquer. If Mitsuhide had escaped, would he try to rally the anti-Oda forces to his flag? Would the PCs support Nobunaga, or Mitsuhide? Or would they try to remain neutral to be in the position to pick up the pieces, and perhaps take control of the country themselves?

Would they even be able to remain neutral in a Japan charged with the electricity of a major revolt?
JAPAN
Japan is a mountainous, island nation. There are four main islands and hundreds and hundreds of smaller ones. The northernmost island, Ezo, is inhabited mostly by Ezo (or Ainu), a Caucasian, barbarian race. Only recently have colonization efforts begun under the Matsumae clan.

In order to make maximum use of the arable land (estimated at no more that 10 percent of the total land mass), the Japanese have developed state-of-the-art farming techniques, including cutting terraces into the sides of hills and even mountains, enabling them to plant and harvest rice, wheat, and other crops. The towns and cities, unfortunately, occupy prime farming land, as they are in no less need of vast amounts of flat land.

The following sections describes the main islands of Japan, and its provinces as defined in the 16th century, with notes of important landmarks, geography, production and culture.

*To think of receiving the blessings of the master without fulfilling the duties of court service is no different from trying to cross a rough sea without a boat.*

— Hojo Shigetoki
GEOGRAPHY

There are three islands of import in the archipelago: Honshū, Kyūshū, and Shikoku. While all of Japan is mountainous, some areas are worse than others. There are so many islands that some aren’t even populated, and many are ignored.

HONSHŪ

Honshū—also called Hondo—is the center of the government, the largest and most populated island. If it really matters, it happens here, or at least that’s what most people think. Shikoku and Kyūshū are the boondocks, and people on those islands are considered more provincial and less sophisticated.

Mountains


Lakes

Biwa, Ōtsu, Suwa, Kasumigaura, Inawashiro, Shinjō.

Rivers


Plains

Kantō, Nobi.

KYŪSHŪ

Kyūshū is the site of Ningi-no-Mikoto’s arrival on earth when he was sent by his ancestor, Amaterasu, to subdue the land. As the southernmost island, it was the launching point for Empress Jingū’s assault on Korea, as well as being the launching point for Hideyoshi’s attacks on Korea. When the Mongols attacked in the 12th century, they landed in Kyūshū, near Hakata. The bay between Satsuma and Osumi provinces is protected by the island of Sakurajima, which sits in the middle of the water way like a large traffic control booth. Samurai from Kyūshū have a reputation for being no-nonsense types who don’t give in readily to outside (read: Honshū) domination.

Mountains

Asosan, Tenzan, Kunimi, Monjuya, Kamo, Terudake.

Rivers

Sendai, Yabegawa, Ōnogawa, Chikugogawa, Kumagawa, Shirakawa.

Plains

Tsukushi.

SHIKOKU

Shikoku is so called because it is comprised of four (shi) provinces (koku). Shikoku is not very populous, but what there is is very densely populated. One mountain on Shikoku, Tengumoriyama, is rumored to be the home of the tengu, a mystic race of flying beings. Shikoku—especially the province of Iyo, where it reaches toward Honshū and the chain of islands between the Shikoku and Honshū—has been known as a hotbed of pirate activity since the 9th century.

Mountains

Noneyama, Tengumoriyama, Kunimi, Setsukozan, Yahuzusan, Gozaishomoriyama, Takanawayama, Sanbōmoriyama, Soyasa, Jōzusan.

Rivers

Watarigawa, Niyodogawa, Yoshinogawa, Hijigawa.

SADO

Sado is a large island off Echigo, near Niigata. It is traditionally used as a place of exile for persons of importance who have offended the Imperial court, or even interfering ex-emperors. Nichiren was exiled here for a while. A gold mine near the town of Aikawa (worked almost exclusively by exiles) and a few fishing communities are on the island, and little else. Its main communities are the towns of Minato, Aikawa, and Ogi.

Mountains

Kinhokuzan, Dantokuza, Itoyoyama, Kyōzukayama.

AWAJI

Awaji is a roughly triangular island that nearly links Shikoku to the province of Harima in Honshū. There is a single mountain peak on the island. There are three small towns; Fukura, Sumoto, and Iwaya. Awaji was the first solid land created by Izanami and Izanagi, according to Japanese historical myth.
REGIONS & PROVINCES

The nation is divided into several “circuits,” once used by the imperial court to define regions for tax and administrative purposes. Two of these regions are the islands of Kyūshû (Saikaidô) and Shikoku. The others are divisions of the main island of Honshû. The circuits are further divided into provinces. Major daimyô may rule one or more provinces, while several lesser daimyô may rule fiefs within one province.

HOKURIKUDÔ
Comprised of seven provinces, including one island (Sado).

Echigo
The city of Niigata is known as one of the major production centers of textiles and paper (washi).
**Major Towns and Cities:** Murakami, Niigata, Teradomari, Yoita, Shiiya, Kashiwazaki, Naoetsu, Takata, Itoigawa, Nagaoka, Sanjô, Yukawa.

Echizen
One of the best known production centers (known as the “Six Old Kilns”) of fine ceramic-ware (yaki).
**Major Towns and Cities:** Fukui, Maruoka, Sakai, Sabae, Takebu, Tsuruga, Ōno.

Etchû
**Major Towns and Cities:** Takaoka, Fushiki, Himi, Shinminato, Uozu, Namegawa, Toyama.

Kaga
The city of Kanazawa is known as one of the major centers of the dyeing industry.
**Major Towns and Cities:** Kanazawa, Daishōji, Komatsu.

Noto
**Major Towns and Cities:** Wajima, Anamizu, Iida, Nanao, Hagui.

Sado
**Major Towns and Cities:** Aikawa, Minato.

Wakasa
**Major Towns and Cities:** Obama, Takahama.

KINAI
The Kinai (also called Kinki) is frequently referred to as “the home provinces” due to the imperial capital having always been seated therein. It is comprised of five provinces:

Izumi
**Major Towns and Cities:** Tarui, Kishiwada, Hamadera, Sakai.

Kawachi
**Major Towns and Cities:** Akasaka, Wakae, Hirakata, Kashiwabara, Nagano.

Settsu
**Major Towns and Cities:** Hyōgo, Kōbe, Ōsaka, Itami, Nishinomiya, Amagasaki, Hirano, Sakurai, Aимoto.

Being a retainer is nothing more than being a supporter of one’s lord, entrusting matters of good and evil to him and renouncing self-interest. If there are but two or three men of this type, the fief will be secure.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Yamashiro
One of the main centers of production of textiles. Yamashiro is the home province of the Imperial Capital. Miyako is also known as one of the major centers of the dyeing industry and the center of the fashion world.
Major Towns and Cities: Miyako, Uji, Fushimi, Saga.

Yamato
Major Towns and Cities: Nara, Tsukigase, Kōriyama, Yamagami, Takada, Toba, Tatsuta, Ōji.

NANKAIDÔ
The Nankaidō is the island of Shikoku, the island of Awaji, and one province on the mainland (Kii). All together, it contains six provinces.
The northern portion of Shikoku is one of several production centers of paper (washi).

Awaji
Major Towns and Cities: Sumoto, Yura, Fukura, Iwaya.

Iyo
The city of Matsuyama is known as one of the major production centers of textiles.
Major Towns and Cities: Yowatahama, Uwajima, Gunchû, Matsuyama, Takahama, Saijō, Imaharu.

Kii
Major Towns and Cities: Yuasa, Shingû, Kushimoto, Shiomi, Tanabe, Köya, Hashimoto, Wakayama, Owashi.

Sanuki
Major Towns and Cities: Kotohira, Kanonji, Tadōtsu, Marugame, Dakade, Takamatsu.

Tosa
Major Towns and Cities: Yadoge, Urado, Köchi.

SAIKAIĐÔ
Saikaidō is the region of the island of Kyūshū, and two nearby islands (Iki and Tsushima). It is comprised of eleven provinces.

Bungo
Major Towns and Cities: Ōita, Usuki, Saeki.

Buzen
Major Towns and Cities: Kokura, Moji, Yukuhashi, Nakatsu, Usa.

Chikugo
Major Towns and Cities: Kurume, Wakasa.

Chikuzen
The city of Fukuoka, known as one of the main centers of production of textiles and paper.
Major Towns and Cities: Wakamatsu, Ori, Fukuoka, Hakata.

Higo
Major Towns and Cities: Kumamoto, Funazu, Yatsushiro, Udo, Misumi.

Hizen
Hizen is home to Nagasaki, one of the world’s great natural ports, the control of which was given entirely to the Portuguese Jesuits by local daimyō Ōmura Sumitada (Hideyoshi re-appropriated it in 1587).
Major Towns and Cities: Safa, Tosu, Takeo, Sasebo, Imari, Karatsu, Shimabara, Kuchinotsu, Nagasaki.

Hyūga
Major Towns and Cities: Iwakaki, Miyazaki, Miyakonojō, Hososhima.

Iki
Major Towns and Cities: Katsumoto.

Ōsumi
Major Towns and Cities: Tarumizu, Shikaya, Kajiki.

Satsuma
Major Towns and Cities: Kamiizumi, Takajō, Akune, Nagashima, Kaseda, Tanabe, Taniyama, Tonakata, Yubijiku, Kiku, Chiran, Izukuri.

Tsushima
Major Towns and Cities: Izugahara, Takeshi.

SANINDÔ
With the Sanyōdō, it is part of the area called Chūgoku. The Sanindō has eight provinces:

Hōki
Major Towns and Cities: Hashizu, Sakai, Yonago.

Ina
Major Towns and Cities: Tottorri.

Iwami
Major Towns and Cities: Hamada, Nagahama, Ōmori.

One should not entrust a position and land to a man who has no talent, even if his family has held such for generations.
— Asakura Toshikage
Izumo
Major Towns and Cities: Mori, Matsue, Hirose, Kizuki, Hinomisaki.

Oki
Major Towns and Cities: Saigō.

Tajima
Major Towns and Cities: Toyooka, Hamasaka, Izushi, Wadayama, Ikuno.

Tamba
One of several of the best known production centers of fine ceramic-ware (yaki), known for its dark brown to red-brown color resulting from long firing and a thick ash glaze.
Major Towns and Cities: Fukuchiyama, Kashiwara, Sasayama, Kameoka, Sonobe.

Tango
Major Towns and Cities: Miyazu, Maizuru.

Sanyōdō
With the Sanindō, it forms the area called Chūgoku. Comprises eight provinces.

Aki
Major Towns and Cities: Yoshida, Tsuda, Kaidaichi, Kure, Mihara.

Bingo
Major Towns and Cities: Shōhara, Miyoshi, Onomichi, Mihara.

Bitchū
Major Towns and Cities: Takahashi, Okada, Kurashiki.

Bizen
One of the best known production centers (known as the “Six Old Kilns”) of fine ceramic-ware (yaki), mainly robust unglazed ware for everyday use. Bizen-yaki later becomes very popular with tea masters, and much used in the tea ceremony (cha-no-yu).
Major Towns and Cities: Okayama.

Harima
Major Towns and Cities: Himeji, Ono, Akashi, Maiko, Akō, Akamatsu.

Mimasaka
Major Towns and Cities: Tsuyama, Katsuyama.

Nagato
Major Towns and Cities: Hagi, Yoshida, Chōfu, Shimonoseki.

Suō
Major Towns and Cities: Yamanouchi, Mitajiri, Tokuyama, Yanagizu, Iwakuni.

Tōkaidō
One of the largest divisions of Japan, the Tōkaidō is comprised of 15 provinces:

Awaji
Major Towns and Cities: Takeyama, Kachiya.

Hitachi
Major Towns and Cities: Mito, Shimo-Date, Ushiku, Isohama, Kasuma.

Iga
Iga is rumored to be home to a long ninja tradition.
Major Towns and Cities: Ueno.

Ise
One of the most sacred spots in all Shintō is the Ise Grand Shrine complex in Uji-Yamada.
Major Towns and Cities: Tsu, Yamada, Hisai, Kanbe, Kawara, Yokkaichi.

Izu
Major Towns and Cities: Atami, Yugashima, Shuzenji, Shimoda, Hōjō.

Kai
The hidden gold mines in Kai make it one of the richest provinces in Japan.
Major Towns and Cities: Kōfu.

Kazusa
Major Towns and Cities: Ichinomiya, Otaki, Sanuki.

Mikawa
Major Towns and Cities: Koromo, Toyohashi, Okazaki, Tawara.

Musashi
The city of Edo is best known as the seat of the Tokugawa. Edo is also a major centers of the dyeing and paper-making industries.
Major Towns and Cities: Edo, Hachiōji, Shinagawa, Yokohama, Kanazawa, Kumagaya, Iwatsuki.

Owari
One of the major centers of production of ceramic in the Sengoku period.
Major Towns and Cities: Tsushima, Nagoya, Atsuta.

It is the act of a man of low rank to prune off an astringent persimmon and graft a sweet one to it. A samurai of middle or upper rank, and particularly the lord of a province, would find many uses for an astringent persimmon precisely because of its nature. This does not mean, however, that one should cut down a sprig that has already been grafted. Are not all things like this?
Sagami
Major Towns and Cities: Ogino, Hakone, Odawara, Yokosuka, Uraga.

Shima
Major Towns and Cities: Taba.

Shimōsa
Major Towns and Cities: Sawara, Chōshi, Chiba, Takaoka, Koga, Sakura, Narita.

Suruga
Major Towns and Cities: Ōmiya, Kojima, Shizuoka, Shimada, Numazu.

Tōtōmi
Major Towns and Cities: Hamamatsu, Yokosuka, Sagara, Kakegawa.

Tōsando
Comprised of 13 provinces:

Dewa
The city of Yamagata is known as one of the major centers of the dyeing industry.

Hida
Major Towns and Cities: Funatsu, Hakusan, Mori, Nakano, Takayama.

Iwaki
Major Towns and Cities: Mihara, Nakamura, Namie, Onanohama, Shirakawa, Taira.

Iwashiro
Major Towns and Cities: Fukushima, Kōriyama, Matsukawa, Nihonmatsu, Sukawara, Wakamatsu.

Kōzuke

Mino
One of the best known production centers (known as the “Six Old Kilns”) of fine ceramic-ware (yaki), producing white Shino ware, Seto ware and green Oribe ware, as well as being an important production center of paper (washi).
Major Towns and Cities: Gifu, Kanō, Iwamura, Nakatsu, Ōgaki, Sekigahara, Yawata.

Mutsu
Mutsu is the largest province in the country and is full of natural resources. Because of its size, Mutsu is often divided into three sections: Ōshū, Rikuzen, and Rikuchū.
Major towns and cities in Ōshū: Hirosaki, Kōtōriya, Sannohe, Hachinohe, Nobechi, Aomori, Sai, Ōminato.
Major towns and cities in Rikuzen: Kamaishi, Miyako, Kuji, Ichinoseki, Mizusawa, Iwayadō, Kurosawajiri, Ishitoriya, Morioka, Numakanai, Tōno.
Major towns and cities in Rikuchū: Iwagiri, Sendai, Matsushima, Shiogama, Oginohama, Ishinomaki, Shizugawa, Kisenuma, Tsukidate.

Ōmi
Major Towns and Cities: Kusatsu, Hikone, Nagahama, Chikukojima, Katada, Ōtsu.

Shimotsuke

Shinano
The city of Matsumoto is known as one of the major paper production centers in Japan.

If someone criticizes Bushidō or your own province, you should speak with him severely, without the least bit of ceremony. One must be resolved in advance.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
GEOLOGY

Japan is mountainous. Farmers have to really work to be able to get their crops. If they are fortunate enough to live in the great plains areas in the Kantō (the "rice-basket" of Japan), farmers have no problems, but if they live in the mountains of the province of Kai, it's a different story.

VOLCANOES

There are 285 volcanoes throughout the Japanese islands. Many of the mountains of Japan are actually volcanoes that may erupt at any time. There are 36 active volcanoes in Japan. Most are only dormant. Even the famous Mount Fuji is a natural disaster waiting to happen. (In Japanese, Mount Fuji is called Fujiisan. Please don’t ever say Fujiyama. Fujiyama is a different mountain.)

An eruption could last days or even weeks. It isn’t a continual flow, but a cycle of belching and flowing, then quiet, and more activity. Fissures, or chimneys, could open up far away from the crater itself, which send more burning lava down the mountainside.

In addition to lava flows and explosive eruptions, a danger with volcanoes is pyroclastic flow, which is a sudden expulsion from the volcano of heavy, hot, toxic gasses which flow down the mountain (usually with smoke and lava, but sometimes without), frying and killing everything it touches. No one knows when a pyroclastic flow will happen, but it usually occurs only during an eruption period.

Mercifully, eruptions are very, very rare.

EARTHQUAKES

The land is also prone to earthquakes, ranging from small tremors to huge, castle-devouring monsters. Note that in real life, the earth does not gape open, swallow people, and close up again, squashing them. Fissures might open up, but only if the earthquake is in cavernous or mined territories. The risk in earthquakes is in being flattened by falling debris, or being caught in a burning structure and turning into a fricassee. This is how most people in Japan are killed by earthquakes, since the buildings are predominantly wooden and paper constructs, and even the solid walls are usually built over wooden lathe. If one is out in the open during an earthquake, one should simply plant one’s feet firmly and enjoy the ride.

There are two types of earthquake: the swaying earthquake and the bouncing earthquake. If the ground is swaying side to side, its not as serious or dangerous as those that can be recognized by a pounding sensation in the ground. If one feels an earthquake, the first thing one should do is quickly identify sway or bounce. If it’s a bouncer, get underneath something solid or stand in a doorway. And watch for falling timbers and roof tiles.

Unfortunately, earthquakes are very, very common. So many happen, in fact, that people might not even notice most of them, so minor and subtle are they.

WEATHER

Since we have to have a basis somewhere, we are using Edo as the Japanese standard. It is geographically near the middle of the country, so you can assume a higher temperature in the south and lower temperature in the north. The rainfall is fairly consistent. The rainfall in September and October in Edo is phenomenal; four or five inches a day. Kagoshima, farther to the south, is hit by monsoons earlier, and June and July are wetter than in Edo.

The hottest month of the year is August, where the temperature in Edo averages 85°F (29.5°C). In Kagoshima, it is around 88°. In January, Edo temperatures drop to 48° (8.9°C), and in Kagoshima to 54° (12.2°C).

Despite the seeming warmth, it snows in Miyako during the winter, and in Edo as well. There are usually at least two good snowfalls that really slow down life in the cities, and often quite a few more. Those cities and monasteries at higher altitudes, such as Kofu (the principal city in Kai) and Hiezan, suffer much more snowfall.

For average precipitation and temperatures in Japan throughout the year, see the almanac in Daily Life in Japan.

Three times a year one should have an able and honest retainer go around the province, listen to the opinions of the four classes of people*, and devise some policy in regard to those opinions. Moreover, the master should also change his appearance a bit and make such an inspection for himself.

— Asakura Toshikage (* samurai, farmers, artisans and merchants)
MANNERS
&
CUSTOMS
This chapter contains a great deal of background information on the etiquette and social niceties of the Japan in which your SENGOKU campaign takes place. It is not exclusively reference material, however; game material and game mechanics also appear, so you will want to pay particular attention as you read for notices of what actually affects the running of the game itself, rather than just the background.

ETIQUETTE

It has been said that an armed society is a polite society. Feudal Japan is very well armed.

As important as status and position are to the Japanese, etiquette is the grease that allows the wheels of society to turn. The lower-ranked one is, the more fawning his manners will appear as higher and higher ranks are being addressed and interacted with.

Virtually all forms of social interactions will take one of three clear patterns: to one’s superiors, to one’s equals, and to one’s inferiors. If a low-ranking samurai deals with an equal, he will function on an equal level unless he is hoping for a favor, in which case he would behave in the inferior-to-superior manner. Were he to behave in the superior-to-inferior manner, it would be either insulting or humorous, depending on situation and intent.

If the same low-ranking samurai were to use equal-to-equal manners and speech to his lord, it would be a shocking example of lèse majesté—the servant would be declaring his equality with the master—and could get him severely reprimanded or even killed.

BOWING

Bowing is the standard greeting and farewell, and depending on the depth of the bow and its duration, one can immediately tell who is the superior and who is the inferior. Equals and friends may bow with little more than an inclination of the head informally, but as with all things, a formal situation requires formal behavior.

The most reverential form of bowing is a prostration, with one’s forehead touching the ground (sometimes referred to by its Chinese name, “kow-towing”). Usually this would only be used at court, or when summoned by one’s lord, although a peasant be-

SPEECH

The language itself is a barometer of social standing. Japanese has several different “politeness levels” with which one can speak. There are even certain verbs that are only used for different people. For example, when common people (or equals) eat, they will taberu; when someone more important than you eats, he will meshiagaru. When an equal does something, we say suru (do); when a superior does something, the verb is nasaru, and when it is an inferior, it is itasu. To these specialized vocabulary elements can be attached myriad forms of verbal endings, and to these can be married the various forms of simple pronouns. The result is a wonderful patchwork that can in a few words tell you everything you need to know about who is who.

In the English vernacular—with which we assume you will be roleplaying the game—such subtle nuances are literally impossible to get across. There are a few ways to convey the idea, however. When addressing a superior, a character should use as polite a speech pattern as possible. Refer to superiors in the third person, not the second (e.g., “Would your lordship allow his servant to undertake this assignment?” versus, “Let me go!”).

Players are free, of course, to forego this level of detail entirely, but it does help to simulate the “feel” of the culture in which they’ll be playing.

INDOORS

When going indoors, one removes his footwear before stepping up to the wooden or tatami-clad flooring. To fail to do so is insulting, to say nothing of just plain unclean. There are usually servants at side entrances with zori or geta, so if you are to take a walk in the garden, to an outhouse, or off to the tea pavilion, you need not be concerned about having left your footwear on the other side of the building. Even inns will have pairs of zori or geta at various entrances for the convenience of their guests.
Given the nature of the interior walls—usually paper on wooden lattice—sound travels. It is thus rude to be loud or boisterous. It is also poor taste to be seen to be listening in on a conversation in another room, although it would be hard not to hear it.

AUDIENCES

When having an audience with a lord or other important personage, there will be guards present (although they may be hiding behind wall partitions). One should always bow formally to the lord at such a meeting, and sit on the floor several feet away. There may or may not be a cushion to sit on. Don’t count on it.

When indoors, the lord holding the audience will invariably sit on a dais at one end of the room, and anyone else will be on the floor. Outdoors, if a formal audience is being conducted, there will be a tatami platform or a camp chair on which the lord will sit, in front of a semi-circle of camp-curtains bearing the lord’s crest. Watch the film Kagemusha; there are several different and excellent examples of audiences in it.

Sometimes, the person holding court will sit on his verandah, and the people in attendance will sit below on the ground. This is more typical for a larger group, when a single room might not hold everyone who needs to be there.

DRESS AND APPEARANCE

The weaving loom is in widespread use by clothiers, and has been in use since as far back as the Yayoi period (c. 300 BC to AD 300). By the Nara period (8th century), refined weaving techniques, introduced from China and Korea, were in widespread use. Woven cotton was introduced in the 15th century and became popular with the lower classes.

For common people of Sengoku Japan, clothing is usually of cotton, hemp or even nettle fibers; upper classes wear silk as well. Silk is made in Japan as well as imported from China.

Dyeing of material is accomplished using natural dyes from plants and minerals. The three methods are the batique technique, stencils, and tie-dyeing. Colors run the gamut from various earth-tones to bright jewel colors and pastels. Brocades and printed patterns are also commonly found. Older people wear darker, more subdued colors, while younger people wear brighter, more gaudy clothing. White is the color of death; people on their way to die will wear white, and people being prepared for funerals will be dressed in white as well.

Clothing is tied on or belted in place; there are very few instances in clothing of buttons being used (one is to hold the collar closed on a kimono worn under armor).

In rainy weather, upper-classes will make use of oiled paper umbrellas. The lower classes (and samurai on the march) wear raincoats of straw. All classes wear tall geta, if they can afford them, to keep their feet out of the mud and puddles.

**Foundation**

The universal male undergarment is the fundoshi (loincloth), a long, narrow cloth which wraps up between the legs and around the lower torso. Men undergoing arduous work such as farming, woodcutting, or construction might wear nothing but a loincloth and a headband, especially if the weather is oppressively hot and humid. The fundoshi also serves as a garment for swimming.

Many men also wrap a long cloth around their abdomens. This cloth, slightly wider than a shaku and as many as nine shaku in length, is called a haramaki. It serves to keep the belly warmer, and is often worn even in the summer under the rest of the man’s clothing. The belief is that if the belly is kept warm and secure, the person will be healthy.

Women of the upper-classes wear a red apron called a mō instead of any more binding undergarment.

**Kimono**

Although the word kimono means "thing to wear" and can, in a sense, refer to any item of clothing, it means... well, kimono. Kimono are always worn with the left side wrapped over right; wrapping the kimono right over left was how the dead were dressed.

The briefest and lightest kimono is called a jūban, and functions like a twentieth-century T-shirt. It is usually a plain, undyed hemp or cotton (or silk for the upper classes). Both men and women wear them, only the cut is slightly different.

Beyond this, most garments worn by women are variants of the kimono proper; sleeve size, fullness, length—all these vary, but the general cut is the same. For men, only the under-classes generally stopped with the kimono; a variety of vests, over-robes, and coats were worn over the kimono. The cut, fabric, and decoration serve to set the ranks apart when it comes to kimono. The upper classes had silk and hemp and cotton, while the lower classes didn’t have access to the silk.

---

Even if you are aware that you may be struck down today and are firmly resolved to an inevitable death, if you are slain with an unseemly appearance, you will show your lack of previous resolve, will be despised by your enemy, and will appear unclean. For this reason it is said that both old and young should take care of their appearance.

—Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**Men**

Men of the upper classes will invariably wear hakama (culottes-like trousers) with their kimono, even when lounging at home. Over this hakama and kimono combination, a buke who is lounging may add a dôbuku, which is a large, broad-sleeved coat similar to a happei. Standard wear for middle- and lower-rank buke is the kamishimo, a garment consisting of a matching hakama and a sleeveless, sideless vest (called a kataginu), worn over a kimono. In the film Shôgun, many such example of kamishimo can be seen. A more formal outfit is the suô or hitatare, which is a kamishimo to whose kataginu huge, free-flowing sleeves have been attached. An eboshi (cloth cap) of some sort is typically worn by those of rank. The armor under-robe is essentially a hitatare with closer-fitted sleeves. These large sleeves have ties at the wrists to enable the wearer to tie them closed so they will not get in his way.

Any of these garments may be decorated simply or elaborately with the owner’s or wearer’s clan crest.

When wearing armor, one may wear a hitatare over the armor; in this case, the sleeves are tied closed at the elbow (so that they balloon out slightly), and the hakama is worn over the cuirass skirplets. This outfit presents a very martial appearance.

*Kuge* wear a kariginu instead. A kariginu is a high- and round-collared over-robe with large sleeves. It is worn over the hakama. The kamnuri (cap of rank) is usually worn with a kariginu, especially in formal occasions. In the most formal of settings, kuge will wear a sokutai, a heavy, black courtrobe. In less formal conditions, a kuge man will wear a garment called a suikan, which is almost identical in cut to a kariginu, but it is worn inside the hakama, and with the collar open and tied back.

*Bonge* and hinin might wear short kimono only, with no pants, if the weather is warm. They may also wear cloth leggings around their shins. In cold weather, they will add trousers of similar cut to the hakama, but tighter and less wasteful of fabric. The outfit is similar to a twentieth-century jûdô gi.

Buddhist priests typically wear a simple kimono with a saffron kesu, a long cloth wrap worn over one shoulder.

Not all buke shave their heads and wear the topknot. There are two varieties of topknot; one is the tea-whisk style (usually worn with a full head of hair), which just gatherings the hair up straight and tight in a ribbon and lets the end splay out like a tea-whisk; the other calls for a small knot of ribbon at the top of the back of the head and lets the hair fall forward slightly. There is, as yet, nothing like the later Edo (Tokugawa period) hairstyle which has a shaven pate and a long queue of oiled hair folded forward over it. When donning armor for battle, bushi let their hair down, and leave it loose under the helmet.

Men of the upper classes wear tabi (split-toed socks) of either deerskin or cotton, and waraji (straw sandals). Those of the lower-classes make do without the tabi except during winter. Geta are not worn except at home in the garden during inclement weather. Zori are the more common alternative footwear.

Since Japanese clothing has no pockets, anything that needs to be carried is carried in the front flap of the kimono, or in the hanging sleeves. In the flap, a man will usually carry an ogi (folding fan), several sheets of paper (useful for writing, or for “personal business”) and possibly a wallet.

**Women**

Women of the kuge have had their teeth blackened and eyebrows shaved, and a tiny black dot of fake eyebrow was painted high on their foreheads; this is a mark of refined, quiet living. The women of the highest-ranking buke have adopted this practice to an extent, although most buke considered it an affectation. Some men among the kuge even blacken their teeth to appear elegant, but in this case there is also a sense of the effete about the practice, and to most buke it just seems odd.

Upper-class women—both buke and kuge—wear their hair long, and tie it once at the base of the skull with a ribbon and let it hang loose.

Court dress for kuge and buke women is an ancient garment called a jûni-hitoe. The term means “12-layered garment,” and although that may be a slight exaggeration, there are indeed several layers—eight to ten—of robes worn one on top of the other. The colors and patterns coordinate as to season, and it is a mark of a woman’s esthetic abilities that she makes no gaffes in choosing her apparel for the day. The jûni-hitoe is bulky and hot, and women wearing it are severely restricted in their range of motion. While they look stunning, they are prisoners of their own clothing.

Commonly, they will wear one- or two-layered and belted kimono with an over kimono (which is unbelted) as a sort of jacket. When they go outside, they will use this unbelted kimono as a sort of hat, holding it above their heads. This serves to keep the sun out of their eyes, and keeps their skin pale. It also keeps prying eyes from seeing who is stepping out. An alternative is a low,
Sake

Sake dates back to the 3rd century, originating from a type of sake called kuchikami no sake, or "chewing-in-the-mouth sake." Kuchikami no sake was made the way you might imagine; chestnuts and millet would be chewed by the whole village and then spat out into a tub to ferment. In Sengoku Japan, sake is the omnipresent beverage, and there is a bewildering variety of types. There are sweet sake, ceremonial sake, thick sake full of lees, dry sake, and so on. Contrary to popular opinion, not all sake is meant to be drunk warm; some sake are actually better—and should be served—chilled.

Sake is drunk out of low, broad cups called sakazuki, although more than one serious drinker of sake—when he has finished his soup—has converted the soup bowl into a sake cup. It is considered very poor taste to drink directly from the sake flask or jar. A servant or a neighboring companion pours the drinks. One should never pour his own. Is it rude to pour your own? No; it’s Just The Way Things Are. Only those who are crude and crass, drunk, or truly at ease with each other, will dispense with the pouring rituals.

Sake is brewed in the winter. Many large farms brew their own sake as an off-season occupation. Smaller farms may brew their own sake for personal use and for offering to guests. The quality is generally not as good as that of large, professional brewers, but on a cold winter day or evening, a warm cup of sake can taste very good and warm the belly regardless of its origin.

Sake merchants in towns are also known to be moneylenders, and have the reputation of usurers.

Tea

Tea, or cha, is a common beverage as well, and is served in larger cups, piping hot. Note that this is different from the tea used in the Cha-no-yu, or Tea Ceremony. Common tea is just a warm beverage; that is a ritual.

DINING AND DRINKING

Dining is done in whatever room serves the purpose; there are no set dining rooms or banquet halls in Japanese homes or estates. Each place setting is prepared on an individual table slightly larger than one shaku square.

Rather than a single large plate, each item of food gets its own plate. Often, the plates have specialized functions; this plate is used only for fish, that plate exclusively for pickles, etc. A bowl of rice accompanies every meal. This bowl may be refilled as many times as necessary from a large tub. One should never, ever, stick his ohashi (chopsticks) into the rice bowl so that they are standing up; that is how one offers rice to the dead and is an omen of very bad luck.

Dining is done with ohashi. Bowls and plates of food are brought close to the mouth and food is delivered with the ohashi. While spoons exist, soups are drunk from the bowl rather than ladled out a mouthful at a time.

For a listing of common foods and beverages, see Food and Foodstuffs in the Equipment List section (pages 179-180).

...to get so drunk as to draw one’s sword is both cowardice and lack of resolve.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
USING ETIQUETTE IN THE GAME

Whenever a player announces that he is “doing something” in a social or otherwise interactive scene, the GM should ask the player—if he does not volunteer the information—exactly how he is doing the action. This will allow the GM to determine if the player is being suitably polite (officious, crude, whatever) for the situation, and this will allow the GM to formulate the proper responses. If the GM thinks the player might just be forgetting something, he may give him a hint to make sure the action isn’t deliberate.

Consider this example:

Bob (playing Jûrobei): I go toward the dais and sit down.
GM: Why are you doing that?
Bob: Well, I just go up and sit on the cushion.
GM: Are you going to bow?
Bob: Oh, yeah. I bow, but not too low. I don’t trust the daimyô.
GM: Anything else?
Bob: No. I’m waiting silently for him to speak.

The GM now knows that Jûrobei is being deliberately insulting to the daimyô, for two reasons; the bow was not appropriate, and he is still wearing his sword. He can now follow the game according to this scenario.

It is, of course, most helpful if the player is specific and detailed in such instances:

Bob: I walk toward the dais, pause a few feet from the cushion, and prostrate myself on the floor.
GM: The daimyô nods and indicates the cushion.
Bob: I move to the cushion, kneel formally on it, and take out my wakizashi and place it at my right side, and bow again. I wait for the daimyô to address me.

This time, Jûrobei is being formal and very polite. The response of the daimyô will be far more positive this time than in the previous example.

SWORD & WEAPON ETIQUETTE

It is frequently said that the sign of a samurai is his two swords, but during the Sengoku Period this tradition is only starting to get off the ground. Most bushi wear or carry a long sword, and the short sword is often little more than a dirk. Since all but the warrior class are repeatedly forbidden weapons entirely, the wearing of swords by the bushi becomes a de facto sign of rank. During the Sengoku Period, people carry what they can get away with.

Katana (and the usually matching wakizashi) are worn thrust through the sash, edge up, at the left side (no one is left-handed in Japan). One way to get an idea of one’s rank is to observe how he wears his sword. One with rank and authority wears his katana thrust through his obi almost horizontally, sticking far out in front and behind; this establishes his “personal space.” A more humble or lower ranking man wears his closer to his body, so the scabbard is almost parallel to his leg. Part of the reason for this is that to touch the scabbard of another (called saya-ate) is an insult, and a virtual challenge to an immediate duel.

POSTURING

Threatening gestures with swords include: grasping the scabbard just behind the guard and pushing the guard forward with the thumb (breaking the “seal” on the scabbard); deliberately reaching across the body and grasping the hilt with one’s right hand but not actually drawing the blade; removing the cloth “sleeve” that travelers sometimes put over the hilt and guard to keep dust away; and pulling the scabbard forward but not quite out of the sash, so that the hilt is more accessible for a draw. One need not actually draw or strike if performing one of these actions (for such is the intent being telegraphed) but one must realize that if he is bluffing and has no intent to fight and if he backs down in the face of someone calling his bluff, he suffers a loss of face. Backing down from such a situation causes the character to lose Honor points (the exact amount determined by the situation; typically 20).

ENTERING BUILDINGS

When indoors in a private home or noble’s estate, one must surrender the katana. In an estate, castle, or even the home of anyone with rank, there is a servant whose job it is to receive these swords, and keep track of them. There is a closet or sword rack near the door where “checked” swords are kept until the owner of the weapon is preparing to leave.

When handing over a sword, the superior person will use one hand, the inferior two. The blade is always properly oriented (i.e.; for a tachi, edge down; for a katana, edge up). A superior person grasps the sword palm down on the scabbard, near the middle,
and hands it over horizontally; the recipient receives it in both open palms, one at the hilt and one near the foot. If an inferior hands one over, it is palms up, under the hilt and foot; the recipient grasps it, palm down, at the center-point. This is similar for all weapons, as well, be they firearms, spears, or blades.

Handing over a drawn sword (e.g., for inspection), one should grasp the sword in one hand at the very base of the hilt, holding the sword upright with the edge toward the one offering the sword. The recipient will grasp the hilt directly below the guard; this puts him in a position to cut right down and take your arm off. That is the idea.

It should be returned the same way. One thing implied in this is respect for the person receiving the sword; one is putting him in the dominant position, saying, “I trust you.” Of course, if you genuinely don’t trust the other person, you wouldn’t hand him a drawn weapon to begin with if you don’t have to.

When sitting or kneeling indoors—especially as a guest—one should remove the sword from his sash and place it along his right side, edge in. This makes the sword inconvenient to get to should remove the sword from his sash and place it along his obi but lie it on the floor on your left side, edge out. This is positioned for an easy draw. The key to a respectful attitude with swords is to indicate that it would be difficult to draw, cut, or otherwise defend oneself, while the other person would find it easy to attack.

**WEAPONS ON THE ROAD**

When carrying yari, naginata, or any polearm on the road, they are held point down, pointing at a spot on the ground about three feet in front; they can also be carried along the body in an attitude similar to “shoulder arms.” On the march, the blades are usually protected by lacquered covers. In addition to bringing the weapon into a guard position, the most threatening thing one can do is to jerk the haft and send the “sheath” flying; it implies you’re ready to use your weapon.

**KIRISUTE-GOMEN**

Kirisute-gomen is the right (gomen) of a samurai to cut down (kirisute) any member of the bonge or hinin class and walk off with impunity. The family may not seek financial or legal redress, for the killer was samurai. That doesn’t mean that the family can’t try to find someone who will avenge the death for them, however…

Most samurai would be unwilling to take on such a request, although rônin are likely to be more open to it. If the peasant was rude to the samurai, society would consider that his death was deserved. There have been cases, however, where samurai just wanted to test a new sword, and there was this peasant walking by… Such cases, while legally unprosecutable under kirisute-gomen, should provoke common outrage.

**FORMS OF ADDRESS**

One of the most difficult things about reading books like The Tale of Genji or The Tale of the Heike in the original (or even in a faithful translation) is the fact that personal names seldom pop up; almost all the referrals are to the people’s titles, and when titles change (which they often do; and usually without warning), the readers are just in for a bit of tough luck trying to figure out who is being discussed or who is talking to whom.

If you are addressing another PC or an NPC by name and not by his official title, you should use his surname (with the appropriate honorific added, of course). To use the given name of someone not a retainer, close friend, or family member is likely to be taken as a grave insult, and depending on your mutual ranks and positions, could result in a very undesirable situation for the speaker. The only way you could get around that is if you are in a room full of people with a common surname, in which case you could probably be excused for saying “Katsue-dono.”

PCs in a clan and who have a liege lord should address that lord as “tono” (sire), “oyakata-sama” (which is hard to translate, but it means something like “honorable lord [head-of-the-] house”), but rarely his last name with a proper honorific (e.g.; Honda-dono). With permission, one might be allowed the honor of addressing one’s lord by simply adding -dono to his given name. This, however, would be an incredible mark of favor.

The lady of the house—regardless of whether she is in charge of the clan herself (so rare an occurrence in Japan as to be remarkable) or is the wife of the lord—should be called “okugata-sama” both as a form of address and a term of referral.

One thing appearing in the book and the film Shôgun which is horribly inaccurate to proper historical usage is the -san/-sama fallacy. Originally, san was a contraction of -sama, and appeared sometime in the Edo Period. From the Heian Period up to the Edo, -dono was the polite form of address for equals, and the required form of address for superiors unless you chose to use a loftier title.

For example: your PC and the PC of another player are friends, both samurai of about the same rank and reputation. The other PC is named Naniwa Jûbei. You will likely call him just Jûbei when you are alone or with other friends or acquaintances. When

---

A samurai in service when on a journey, if he is a low ranking retainer, should ride with the baggage on a pack horse. And in case he falls off, he should tie up his two swords together so that they do not slip from their scabbards. But tying up the hilt of the katana into a thick bundle with a three shaku towel shouldn’t be done.

— Daidôji Yûzan
in public, you would more likely call him Jûbei-sama, or perhaps Jûbei-dono. In a court or in some other formal situation (e.g., clan council, tea ceremony, etc.) you would virtually have to call him Naniwa-dono. If he is an inferior, you can get away with calling him Naniwa-sama in a formal setting, but again, formality usually calls for the more formal—dono.

Another example: a similar situation, but your PC is in reality a ninja who by day functions as a tavern keeper. You have a good friend (the other PC) named Hozumi Genshirô, who is a low-to-middling samurai in the local clan, and occasionally you have worked together. You know each other well, have saved each other’s lives on numerous occasions, and have spent a few evenings getting pleasantly drunk together. Even alone, in private, you would likely call him Genshirô-sama. In public, it would be Genshirô-dono, or Hozumi-dono. Formal occasions, if they came at all, would require you to call him Hozumi-dono. For you to fail to do so would be both inappropriate for you (calling down the wrath of others around you for “uppityness”—but would also result in a loss of face for Genshirô if he doesn’t call you to task for it (losing Honor points equal to 2x his Membership Level, or 1x his Kao if he has no group membership)

An appended title useful for people of high rank is –gimi, which means “lord.” (Interesting historical footnote, à propos of nothing: Through an odd twist of linguistic fate, the same kanji is now read kun, and is the condescending address form used by superiors in offices to their inferiors, and by upperclassmen to their lessors in academe. One hundred years ago, it would have been Yorimasa-gimi, a term of respect, but now it is Yorimasa-kun, much less respectful, even condescending.)

Younger buke or kuge women would usually be addressed formally by their first name with an appended –hime. The term means “princess” and by itself it is a suitable term of address for all upper-class women (e.g., “Hime, have you seen Honda-dono?”). Alternately (though likely considered affected and quaint by the sixteenth century), you could address a well-born woman by her given name, appending to it the title –gozen. This is another difficult term to translate, but it essentially means “honorable –person-in-front-of-me.”

One important note; when you talking about someone who is not present—especially in a formal or polite setting—you should always use the honorific and title. Leaving it off is a slight, and shows lack of consideration and near complete disregard for the individual in question. Not many people could get away with using nicknames like “the Old Man.”

Japan also has a wealth of ways to say “you,” some of which are useful as insults. The most “effective” of these are kisama and onore, which are best used just before you challenge or fight someone, having as they do the general connotation of “you bastard!”
Women of the buke perform a form of suicide called ojigai, in which they thrust a dirk blade into their throats. They, too, can have a second if they wish, and in the full formal setting little changes.

Sometimes, when the person committing suicide had been ordered to do so, the kaishaku would strike even as the victim reached for the blade. In some instances this was a mercy, as not all could bear the pain.

There are a number of reasons for committing seppuku.

- **Preserving honor.** Perhaps the PC is about to be captured by the enemy, or is surrounded by hostile forces; suicide is preferable to ignominy.

- **Atoning for dishonor.** A PC who has committed some deed so heinous that he cannot live with the internal shame, or one who has lost so much face that he can’t bear the scorn of others, may prefer suicide to such a life.

- **Resolving inner conflict.** A PC who is instructed by his daimyō to do something he knows is wrong or shameful has only one way out; he can’t disobey his lord, and he can’t do that deed.

- **Kanshi (remonstrating his lord).** If his lord is behaving in a way that is shameful or injurious and fails to see it, he can write a letter to his lord and commit seppuku. Such acts are held in high esteem, as they show great loyalty.

- **As a sentence of death.** Samurai convicted of crimes were not executed like commoners. Rather, they were “invited” to commit seppuku. Such cases usually were the most formal, complete with official witnesses.

**SEPPUKU AND THE PC**

There is no mechanism that will prevent a seppuku if a player really wants the character to do it, but players should avoid doing so merely to “get rid of” a character. There is no reason not to “retire” a character and send him off to a monastery. GMs should discourage players from wanting acts of seppuku from PCs.

If the person performs the first cut he regains any recently lost Honor points (GMs discretion). If he performs two cuts he gains an additional 10 Honor points. If the character performs the third cut, he gains an additional 10 Honor points; his bravery and stoicism is inspiring and people will definitely remember him.

With each of these cuts, the subject must make a Concentration roll (the character may substitute Concentration with his Focus skill; the player may use whichever of the three skill scores is highest). The Target Number for the first cut is 14, the second 18 and the final cut requires a TN of 22. If he fails a roll, he can go no farther. If his first roll fails, he “chickens out” and fails to even make the first cut, in which case he suffers a considerable loss of face if there are witnesses (-3K Honor points). If there is a kaishaku, he will strike anyway, so the person dies with shame. If there is no kaishaku, the person is just unable to bring himself to do it and will have to stand up and get on with his life, regardless of what had brought him to the point of suicide. He will feel inner turmoil over his failure. A character who fails an attempted seppuku cannot try again for the same reason for one week (although something new could come up the next day that would entice him to try again).

The kaishaku must also be able to perform. That he will strike cleanly is expected, as the target is relatively immobile. Nevertheless, to do so properly and with panache is not a given: he must successfully make a skill roll for Swords (Kenjutsu) with a TN 18. If he fails the roll by more than 5 points, he has missed (-2K/ML Honor points). If the roll is missed by less than 5 points, he has struck, but didn’t take the head off, and the seppuku victim is lying there bleeding with a horrible back or head wound (-5K/ML Honor points). At the GM’s option, a kaishaku who rolls a critical failure (i.e., a natural 3 on 3D6) has “wimped out” (-3K/ML Honor points).

In any event of failure, he must make a second strike to finish the job. Each successive strike is at a cumulative -2 penalty (i.e., a second strike is at a -2 penalty, -4 for a third strike, and so on). Only after a second failure may he withdraw, humiliated. Any Honor losses for kaishaku who fail their rolls are cumulative. A kaishaku who fails the first roll by 6 points and then fails the roll by less than 5 points will suffer a total loss of 7K/ML Honor points!

GM’s may also reward exceptional kaishaku by giving them Honor points for an exceptional skill roll. A suggested reward is a number of Honor points equal to the Effect Number (see page 196, Creating Items, for more information).

---

**OPTIONAL: VENGEFUL GHOST**

If a PC commits seppuku and blames another for the actions leading to his death (this is called “funshi”), his accused opponent loses Honor points equal to the suicide’s Kao. If the suicide was able to make all three cuts or if he made two and there was no kaishaku to assist him (i.e., he died slowly and in great pain), he will return at the next full moon as a ghost to ever haunt the one who caused his seppuku. This ghost should be played jointly by the GM and player.

---

I am in accord with your resolution and accept your request for me to function as kaishaku. I instinctively felt that I should decline, but as this is to take place tomorrow there is no time for making excuses and I will undertake the job. The fact that you have chosen me from among many people is a great personal satisfaction to me. Please set your mind at ease concerning all that must follow. Although it is now late at night, I will come to your house to talk over the particulars.

— Letter from Yamamoto Gonnéjo in response to a request from Sawabe Heizaemon to act as kaishaku at his seppuku the next day.
KAO

All people in Japan wear a face; not the literal meaning of a person’s features, but rather the “face” of honor that is seen by others. Japan is a shame-based culture, in that loss of face, not guilt, is the primary factor influencing behavior in Japanese society.

A person with much honor has “great face” in the eyes of his peers, whereas a character who is shamed in some way is said to “lose face.” The shamed character “has no face.” Shame is gained (and honor lost) by characters who fail to live up to their various obligations and duties (See Giri, Gimu & On, below).

Kao represents the character’s personal honor or face, as seen by others, and may be used in place of PRE for skill rolls made by the character in social situations, at the GM’s discretion.

HONOR & KAO

In Sengoku, characters maintain Honor points. A character may have from a minimum of 0 to a maximum of 100 Honor points. For every 10 full points of Honor a character has, he gains 1 point of Kao; thus, characters start play with a Kao score equal to 10x their Honor. If a character’s Honor points drop below a 10 point threshold the character instantly loses 1 Kao.

For example, a character with 20 Honor has a Kao score of 2. A character with 29 Honor points also has a Kao score of 2. A character with 30 Honor points, however, has a Kao of 3.

Losing Honor

All Honor loss penalties are expressed as -mX. “X” represents the character’s Kao (K), Membership Level (ML), Skill Level (SL) or a combination (e.g. -2K/ML). Whenever a combination is listed, the penalty is based on the larger of the two numbers.

The base number is then modified by a “severity multiplier” (the “n” in the formula). The larger the multiplier, the more grievous the offense and more significant the loss of Honor. The multiplier will range from 1 (minor embarrassing error) to 5 (major offense). The more important the event or task, and the more witnesses there are, the higher the multiplier will be for failure. A table is provided below for guidelines in assigning Honor loss to the characters.

When Honor is Lost

The gain and loss of Honor points can only come from actions that are publicly known; those that are observed by or known to two or more people other than the character committing the act. Acts known only to the character himself do not qualify, per sé. While the secret commission of a wrongful act may gnaw at the character’s soul and torment him, it will not be something that will cause him to lose face (i.e., lose Honor points).

For example: if a character becomes drunk and assaults a young woman, he risks losing Honor if she tells anyone else (like reporting it to her family or the authorities). If she doesn’t tell anyone (for fear of losing Honor herself) or if he kills the girl, then he will not lose any Honor points until such time as someone else becomes aware of the act. The act becomes a secret that the character will likely guard very closely. Note that if he kills her to keep his shameful act a secret, while he will not lose Honor (because no one besides him is aware of it), it may well affect his Karma (see below.)

Note that even if one is publicly accused of a bad act they did not commit, the accused character will gain Shame unless steps are immediately taken to avenge or correct the insult or otherwise change the public perception of him. (Inaction is typically associated with guilt).

A Kao score of 0 is possible, and most embarrassing. Kao may not drop below 0, however. A person without Honor and Kao is the lowest kind of person. Measuring below 0 is therefore pointless.

Example of Honor/Kao Loss

Jirô has 32 Honor points (for a Kao of 3) and a Membership Level of 2 in his samurai clan. Matashirô has a Membership Level of 1 in his clan, and 14 Honor points (his Kao equals 1). Jirô challenges Matashirô to a duel. They agree to meet at the gate of the Kitobara-ji at noon on the next day.

That next day, Matashirô does not show up at the shrine at the appointed place and time. Initially, Jirô is the only other person aware of Matashirô’s deed, so Matashirô loses no Honor. But Jirô posts a sign in the town for all to see: “Matashirô avoided an honorable challenge and is a coward!” Now that Matashirô’s actions are known by two or more people (in this case a whole town!), he immediately suffers -5K/ML Honor points, or the larger of 5x his Kao (5) or 5x his ML (also 5). Losing 5 Honor brings his total Honor to 9, which reduces his Kao to 0! The only way for Matashirô to regain face (i.e., to regain his lost Honor points and raise his Kao) now is to have the duel with Jirô. If he doesn’t, the Honor loss stays.

Kao and Honor are explained in more detail in Creating Characters, pages 103 and 104.

Sample Honor Loss

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation involves:</th>
<th>Stat used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use of a skill</td>
<td>SL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intentional insult</td>
<td>ML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unintentional insult</td>
<td>K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to meet obligation</td>
<td>K/ML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to respond to an insult</td>
<td>K/ML</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multiplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor embarrassment; one witness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor social gaffe; few witnesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serious breach of etiquette; dozens of witnesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe breach of protocol; hundreds of witnesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extreme insult; witnesses very influential</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that even if one is publicly accused of a bad act they did not commit, the accused character will gain Shame unless steps are immediately taken to avenge or correct the insult or otherwise change the public perception of him. Inaction is typically associated with guilt.

A Kao score of 0 is possible, and most embarrassing. Kao may not drop below 0, however. A person without Honor and Kao is the lowest kind of person. Measuring below 0 is therefore pointless.

Example of Honor/Kao Loss

Jirô has 32 Honor points (for a Kao of 3) and a Membership Level of 2 in his samurai clan. Matashirô has a Membership Level of 1 in his clan, and 14 Honor points (his Kao equals 1). Jirô challenges Matashirô to a duel. They agree to meet at the gate of the Kitobara-ji at noon on the next day.

That next day, Matashirô does not show up at the shrine at the appointed place and time. Initially, Jirô is the only other person aware of Matashirô’s deed, so Matashirô loses no Honor. But Jirô posts a sign in the town for all to see: “Matashirô avoided an honorable challenge and is a coward!” Now that Matashirô’s actions are known by two or more people (in this case a whole town!), he immediately suffers -5K/ML Honor points, or the larger of 5x his Kao (5) or 5x his ML (also 5). Losing 5 Honor brings his total Honor to 9, which reduces his Kao to 0! The only way for Matashirô to regain face (i.e., to regain his lost Honor points and raise his Kao) now is to have the duel with Jirô. If he doesn’t, the Honor loss stays.

Kao and Honor are explained in more detail in Creating Characters, pages 103 and 104.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
ON, NINJÔ, GIMU & GIRI

These are inter-related concepts that are nearly impossible to translate succinctly. Gimu is obligation to repay others for what they have done for you. Giri is a sense of duty, or obligation. Ninjô is a consideration for others. On is indebtedness (an unpaid “debt of honor”). These four aspects of life are integral to the whys and wherefores that govern the behavior of “good” people in Japan. Good people have a sense of giri and ninjô; bad people do not.

ON

On (pronounced “own”) is, in its basic meaning, indebtedness, from the least to the greatest. When someone does something for another—a favor, a loan, a compliment, a gift, etc.—he “gives an on” to the recipient. The giver is called the “on man.” The recipient carries the on, as a burden, and is said to “wear an on.” The concept of receiving a gift with no strings attached is irreconcilable to the Japanese mind; there is always a string attached. The requirement to repay an on is the string.

One may wear an on from his parents, lord, from a friend, or a total stranger. To receive an on from someone not your superior (or at least your equal) gives one a disturbing sense of inferiority.

One bears an on to his mother, for everything she has provided for him, sacrifices made for him, and, indeed, simply for having given birth to him. There is a saying that “Only after a person is himself a parent does he know how indebted he is to his own parents.” One makes a partial payment of on to their parents by providing equally good (or better) rearing to their own children.

An on is also carried to the Shôgun, one’s daimyô or other master (such as a teacher). All leader types help “show the way” for their charges, and an on worn for them may at some time make it necessary to answer a request for help, to show preference for their children after death, and so on.

Japanese do not like to shoulder the debt of gratitude that an on implies. Honor demands that an on be repaid in kind. One should go to great lengths to repay an on, and the sooner the better. An on does not shrink over time; quite the opposite. The more time goes by, the more significant the on becomes; it “accrues interest,” if you will. A common saying is “One never repays one ten-thousandth of an on.”

A young student of classical literature graduates from training at a Buddhist monastery. The student wears an on from his teacher for imparting his knowledge and helping to show the student “the way.” Years later the student becomes an influential merchant. The teacher writes to him and asks him to give the teacher’s son a job. Because of the debt (on) to his teacher, the student is compelled to heed his former teacher’s request, whether or not it is truly his desire to do so, and he does so, giving the teacher’s son the best paying job he has to offer.

Even simple compliments made when greeting someone are a form of on that, unless returned, are “carried” by the recipient. Thus, the ever present courtesies, which are so important to the Japanese, are maintained by “manners” (and reinforced by giri).

Gaining Honor

Face is gained by acts of recognition and goodwill by others. If someone publicly recognizes your good deed, they honor you; they give you face. If someone gives you a gift of moderate value, they honor you; again you gain face. If someone makes it possible for you to fulfill an obligation without incurring a debt to them, they honor you in a big way; you gain much face.

Honor awards are expressed similarly to Honor loss. While the multipliers are still based on the size of the event or importance of the situation, the base number used is that of the other person—the person who does you the honor. In other words, the Kao, Membership Level or Skill Level used is that of the person doing the honoring.

For example, a rônin kills a bandit, rescuing the bandit’s victim, a farmer, from certain death. The farmer turns out to be the daughter of a local daimyô. The daimyô himself thanks the rônin profusely. The GM decides that this is worth 1K, or 1 times the farmer’s Kao. The farmer’s Kao is 3, so the rônin gains 3 Honor points. Later on this lucky rônin kills two more bandits, this time rescuing a lady in a kago. The lady turns out to be the daughter of a local daimyô. The daimyô himself thanks the rônin and offers him a position as a retainer in his clan! The GM decides this is worth 3ML, or three times the daimyô’s Membership Level. Because his ML is 10 (he’s the daimyô), the GM awards the rônin 30 Honor points, enough to increase his Kao by 3!

The two Ways of Loyalty and Filial Duty are not limited to the samurai. They are equally incumbent on the farmer, artisan and merchant classes. But among these classes a child or servant...may do unceremonious or impolite things and it doesn’t matter. If he is truly sincere in his filial feelings and truly cherishes his master or parent, that is all that is expected.

— Daidôji Yûzan
NINJŌ

Ninjō is compassion for others. It is similar to what Westerners call empathy. When one knows ninjō, he has consideration for the feelings of another. It also encompasses one’s own desires and “feelings,” such as love, kindness, and so on.

A samurai may practice kirisute-gomen, and cut down a peasant on the spot for some assumed insult. This is perfectly legal, but constitutes a willing disregard for ninjō; he has no feeling for the other fellow. (It may also incur a loss of Honor for the samurai.)

Bandits may form cooperatives to protect those who have no one else to do it for them (think Robin Hood or, in Japanese terms, Ishikawa Goemon), and they will operate out of a combined sense of giri and ninjō. They have the ability to protect the people, so they must exercise that ability (giri), and do it because they care and empathize with the underdog (ninjō). Such bandit groups are the forerunners of the Tokugawa Period (and even present-day) yakuza, who like to think of themselves as Robin Hoods and the defenders of the common man.

Whether or not your character “knows ninjō” is up to you. There is no societal requirement to adhere to the concepts of ninjō to the extent that giri is adhered to. Rather than providing rules for ninjō, we leave it up to you to define your character’s viewpoints and motivations for his actions; ninjō is best reflected by taking the appropriate Talents and Complications and through role-playing.

GIMU

Gimu is the obligation to repay an on to those to whom one can never fully repay. The on received from these people is immeasurable and eternal. The fullest repayment of these obligations is still no more than partial, and the debt is timeless. Gimu includes:

- Chu: Duty to one’s lord, the Emperor, and the Shōgun (-5K/ML)
- Ko: Duty to parents and ancestors (and, by implication, to one’s descendants) (-4K/ML)
- Ninmu: Duty to one’s work (-3K/ML)

Any failure to meet gimu results a loss of Honor points. These lost Honor points can only be regained by satisfying gimu.

GIRI

Giri is, in simplistic terms, duty. Giri requires the repayment of debts (on) with mathematical equivalence; there is also a time limit, per se. Giri encompasses both giri to the world and giri to one’s name.

Example: If someone saves your life, you will feel bound by giri to somehow repay him, perhaps by saving his life—even at the cost of your own.

A warrior who cringes in the back of the battle, avoiding contact with the enemy, suffers a loss of face because he is not fulfilling his duty to his liege lord (one form of giri), while his comrades up in the front lines, shouting out challenges and taking heads, gain face. Both of these men may be seen by others and end up with resultant gains or loss of Honor at the same time. Simply fighting in the battle in a standard way will not bring about a gain or loss of face, because it is giri to one’s lord.
Another form of giri is giri to one’s in-laws. In-laws are a “contractual family,” and repayment of on to them is giri, whereas repayment of on to one’s birth parents is gimu.

To say that someone “does not know giri” is an insult. It implies, in essence, that the person has no sense of loyalty, filial piety, or honor. Wild dogs do not know giri; a man must.

**Giri to the world:** Giri to the world is repayment of on to one’s fellows, and includes such things as:

- Duties to your liege lord (-5K/ML)
- Duties to your affinal family (-4K/ML)
- Duties to non-relatives due to on received (a favor, gift of money, et al.) (-3K/ML)
- Duties to distant relatives (due to on received from common ancestors) (-2K/ML)

**Giri to one’s name:** Giri to one’s name is the duty of keeping one’s good name and reputation. This includes:

- Duty to clear one’s name of insult or accusation of failure (i.e., the duty of feuding or vendetta) (-3K/ML)
- Duty to admit no (professional) failure or ignorance; protecting one’s professional reputation (-3K/ML)
- Duty to fulfill society’s proprieties (i.e., behaving respectfully, accepting and living within one’s station in life, curbing inappropriate displays of emotion, etc.) (-2K/ML)
- Remaining stoic when in pain (from a wound, hunger, cold, etc.) (-1K/ML)

As you can see, giri to the world and giri to one’s name are two sides of the same coin.

Any failure to meet giri results in a loss of Honor (see the comments above for suggested Honor loss penalties). These Honor points can only be regained by satisfying giri.

**CONFLICTING OBLIGATIONS**

In cases in which one’s obligations are in conflict (such as a conflict between giri and ninjō, or giri and gimu), the character must choose one to fulfill and forego the other. The only other option is seppuku.

For example: A samurai receives an order from his liege lord to perform an act that violates the Shōgun’s law. By fulfilling gimu to the Shōgun the character must ignore his lord’s order, which he cannot do. But by fulfilling giri to his lord the character violates gimu to the Shōgun.

Another example is a samurai who falls in love with another man’s wife. Giri demands that he abandon any hope or desire to be with her. But ninjō compels him to satisfy his desire for her. (Traditionally, and historically, conflict involving ninjō are much easier to resolve than those without)

In cases of such conflicts the character may have to decide which obligation he will fulfill and which he will forego. He resolves himself to suffer the consequences for failing to meet one or the other. Unless he can find a solution to his dilemma, seppuku may be his only recourse (because surely no “good man” would live with such loss of face). Such is the stuff of Japanese legends.

The most famous Japanese story involving a conflict between giri and gimu is the story of the 47 Rōnin. In the story, a lord in the Shōgun’s palace is insulted and he attacks the insulter (thus trying to satisfy giri to his name). The man is unsuccessful, however, and is subdued, for drawing a sword in the Shōgun’s palace is a capital offense. He has violated gimu (by breaking the Shōgun’s law) and is sentenced to death by seppuku, and his lands and family disbanded. 47 of his retainers swear vengeance. After more than a year of planning and waiting they kill the man who originally insulted their lord, thus satisfying giri to their lord. But they have violated gimu to the Shōgun in doing so, and in a final act of virtue, all 47 rōnin commit seppuku. Their honor is preserved.

**HERALDRY**

The vast majority of mon (crests) are by definition “assumed arms,” that is to say, they were chosen by the bearers with little restrictive control exercised, as there is no overseeing organization like European Colleges of Arms. In each samurai clan, there needs to be one officer with a wide knowledge of which family uses what crests, as it can often be a lifesaver, especially during a battle when an armored division is approaching and all that can be discerned is the crest on their banners—are they friend or foe?

The first official “roll of arms,” or compilation of family crests was completed under the auspices of the Muromachi bakufu (military government) around 1510–1520. The Tokugawa bakufu compiled very detailed records, creating what was called a bukan, listing the “armorial bearings,” standards, and residences and incomes of all the daimyō. Lesser books were also kept for individual clans and other, lesser families.

The pawlonia and the chrysanthemum are essentially Imperial emblems, and their use implies imperial favor or connections at some point in the past. There are dozens upon dozens of designs incorporating these elements, many of which were bestowed after a fashion by emperors past upon houses that had they wished to honor, or whose help they needed. Others are borne by institutions (notably shrines and temples) to display their erstwhile imperial connections.

Mon are more than heraldic crests; they are a major part of Japan’s graphic arts history, as well. The Takeda clan crest can also be seen as a fairly common fabric motif. The only difference is that in areas where the Takeda are exercising their influence, or in areas where the Takeda are especially disliked, it would be more than a little cheeky (or dangerous?) to wear something with their crest emblazoned all over it in their presence.

In fact, many designs now considered crests were first fabric patterns. It is not really clear when they first began to be used, but during the latter part of the Heian Period there are indications that certain designs had come to be favored by certain families, which used them to the near exclusion of others, making these the first recognized kamon (family crests).

During the Edo Period, designs will become excessively rococo, as their primary purpose of identification ceases to be an issue. Also, many wealthy merchants will begin to assume airs of gentility, and began adopting mon. Actors and courtesans follow suit. Most twentieth century mon books contain many Edo designs, and it is difficult to determine which were used by the civil and military aristocracy of “the good old days.”

---

The samurai has to set before all other things the consideration of how to meet his inevitable end. However clever of capable he may have been, if he is upset and wanting in composure and so makes a poor showing when he comes to face it, his previous good deeds will be like water and all decent people will despise him so that he will be covered in shame.

— Daidōji Yūzan
CATEGORIES OF MON

There are six commonly recognized divisions of mon: plants, animals, natural phenomena, man-made objects, abstract designs, and ji (characters). Estimates of the number of actual different designs hover between 4,000 and 5,000, representing 250-odd different subjects.

The plant category is by far the numerical leader, though the man-made implements category has some 120 different subjects represented, compared to 75 for plants. The animals category (including birds and insects) is third, with about 30 different subjects.

Martial motifs (and those with otherwise auspicious meanings) are particularly popular in among samurai houses.

ENCLOSURES

Contrary to popular opinion, all mon are not enclosed in a circle. A great number are, but there are a great many different kinds of enclosures. The simplest way mon are changed is with a slight alteration of the design; changing the number of veins on a leaf, making the lines slightly thicker, reducing the number of petals on a flower, and so on. A design could also be doubled or trebled; or it could be put in an enclosure that is narrow, fat, medium sized, or derived from an abstract design.

Rings are the most common form of enclosure. Some, however, are narrow, hair-line rings, while some are huge, monstrous circles that nearly overwhelm the designs inside them.

Enclosures actually have a large degree of variation. The melon enclosure, for example, can be of three, four, five, or even six lobes; each of these variations can have any number of shapes—round, square, diamond, etc.

CHOOSING A MON FOR YOUR PC OR CLAN

Perhaps the easiest way to choose a mon is just to select one from the pages of this rule book. Alternately, you can acquire a mon book and pick one from there. There are a few good such books listed in the bibliography (pages 304-306). Your last resort (which is your favorite, let’s face it) is to design your own.

There are certain mon that are recognized as the crests of famous, powerful clans. If you are playing in a historically based game, you might want to steer clear of them. If you are playing in a totally self-created Japan, there’s no reason you can’t use the famous Tokugawa triple-hollyhock crest.

BANNERS

Not all banners and flags are truly heraldic. Many actually have no designs to speak of, being merely geometric with a background color and a stripe or two, or divided or patterned fields.

Those bearing designs can bear the mon of the owner, a slogan (such as Takeda Shingen’s famous Fû-rin-ka-zan, or “Wind, Forest, Mountain” banner), or even just a picture. Sometimes the mon appears alone and very large; other times it is repeated two or three times vertically or in a triangular or other geometric pattern. Other forms of decoration are to mix a geometric color shift (e.g.; a broad strip of color across the top, or a horizontal or vertical color division) with the mon somewhere displayed.

In the film Ran, the various divisions of the Ichimonji clan were identified with different color banners and different designs (one stripe for Tarô, two for Jirô, three for Saburô); in Kagemusha, we were shown the same flag—Shingen’s mon on a solid color field—with the color of the field marking different divisions of his army.

Daimyô on campaign will have a personal standard marking their presence and their main base. Such standards are not always true flags, per se. Tokugawa Ieyasu has a huge golden fan, for example, and Hideyoshi has a huge golden gourd with several other pendant gourds. Nobunaga has a huge red European hat. The operative word here is “huge.” The term for such unique creations is uma jirushi, or “horse signs.” Among them are been helmets on poles, hats on poles, large umbrellas, fans, etc.

Armored bushi—especially the lower ranks, and ashigaru—wear a sashimono (a type of banner) on their backs. This banner serves to identify their clan, commander, or unit.

CAMP CURTAINS

Camp curtains (jinmaku, or tobari) are used to ring areas to keep out wind or prying eyes. On campaign, generals hold councils and lay plots from within a ring of jinmaku. Kurosawa’s films Ran and Kagemusha both show how camp curtains were set up and used.

Like banners, jinmaku have no single rule of appearance. They may be of one single color, may have a top strip and possibly a bottom strip in a different color, or even be striped. They may be single colored, with the owner's crest as a design. This can be a random repetition of the mon over the surface of the curtain, a regular single large crest centered to be directly between support poles, or a regularly repeating smaller crest forming a sort of high equator-line on the jinmaku.

Jinmaku are one ken (6 feet) in height, and three or four ken (18 to 24 feet) in length.
DAILY LIFE IN JAPAN
THE ECONOMY

Japan’s economy is based on the rice crop. One’s wealth, one’s finances, and the value of an estate are all counted in terms of the koku, a measure of rice sufficient to feed one man for a year (at a subsistence level). This is equal to approximately five bushels or 180 liters. An estate is valued at the amount of rice it can produce, so a small fief worth 100 koku means the village can support 100 people for a year. In point of fact, this is only rice output; it doesn’t take into account millet, other vegetables, fish, etc., so more people can survive there.

CURRENCY

Currency is in copper, silver, and gold. Paper currency is not in use in Sengoku Japan. All coins are produced on a monopoly basis by daimyô during the Sengoku Period (later, in the Edo Period, by shôgunate mints). Gold coins are used more widely in the Kantô region, near Edo, while silver prevails in the Kansai (Kyôto and Ôsaka areas). Gold is rarely seen outside of the coffers of daimyô and large merchant houses, and even they usually conduct their business in silver. Values of this coinage have shifted over the centuries, and there is no fixed way to set up a precise, “historical” currency in the game. The following system is a simplified model designed for speed of play.

The most basic unit of money is a copper coin called a zeni. We will refer to them as zeni, or copper pieces. The value of a zeni is one mon, in the same sense that the value of a penny is a cent. A zeni theoretically represents the cost of the barest minimum needed to feed a man for one day. In practice a zeni can buy such things as a cup of tea or a rest at a wayside stall; hardly adequate sustenance. 1,000 zeni equal one bu of gold (or one bu-shoban coin), the value of one koku of rice. Also in use is silver, which is measured in monme (about 4 grams); approximately 12 monme of silver equals one bu of gold.

The monetary system in Sengoku is thus based on the calendar, with each coin roughly corresponding to the amount of rice necessary to survive for a given period of time. A zeni (copper) is a “day,” monme (silver) are “months,” a bu-shoban (gold) is a “year,” and so on. Remember, though, that this is subsistence-level food; a small bowl of rice or gruel per day will not let a man starve to death (not quickly, anyway), but it isn’t what one would want to eat for very long. Plan accordingly when setting prices, money, and such things for your game.

For simplicity, the encumbrance on all coins, regardless of denomination, is .02, or 50 coins per pound. All of Japan’s coins are described below.

Zeni

A round copper coin, one sun (about one inch) in diameter, with a small, square hole in its center. The zeni equals one day’s worth of food for one man (in real terms, one barely decent meal, as mentioned above). Zeni are commonly strung together with a strand of hemp through the central holes to make a “string of cash,” usually of 100 or 1,000 coins. During the Sengoku Period most zeni are produced in China (with some also made in Korea); in the later Edo (or Tokugawa) Period zeni are minted in Japan proper (beginning in 1636). The zeni is abbreviated as “z” when listing prices of goods. For example, 6z would indicate an items costs 6 zeni, and is spoken of as “six mon.”

Monme-ita

The Monme-ita is a small rectangular block of silver. Historically the weight and value of this “coin” varied greatly. In Sengoku the monme-ita weighs 1 monme, corresponding to one month’s worth of subsistence-level food. The monme-ita is commonly abbreviated as “m” when listing prices of goods. For example, 2m would indicate an items costs 2 monme-ita.

Bu-shoban

The bu-shoban (also known as the ichibu kin or simply “bu”) is a small square gold coin. One bu-shoban equals 12 monme-ita (12 monme of silver) or one year’s worth of subsistence-level food (one koku of rice).

Four bu-shoban equal one ryô (a little more than 18 grams) of gold, the common form of expression of value (as opposed to currency) in Sengoku Japan. The bu-shoban is abbreviated as “b” when listing prices of goods. For example, 1b would indicate an items costs 1 bu-shoban.

Ni-bu

The ni-bu (“two bu”) is a rectangular gold coin. One ni-bu equals 24 monme-ita (12 monme of silver) or two year’s worth of subsistence-level food (two koku of rice).

Two ni-bu equal one ryô. Prices of goods are not generally listed in ni-bu.

Ryô

As described earlier, a ryô is a measurement of weight, specifically used when referring to gold. It is approximately 18 grams of gold. One ryô is equivalent in value to four koku of rice, or 4 bu-shoban in coin. A ryô is abbreviated as “R” when listing the price of goods. The koban, a coin rarely found outside the hands of the wealthiest, has a value of one ryô. The koban is an oblong coin about 2 sun (2.5 inches) long.

Non-standard Coins

There are two types of coinage that is produced by local samurai clans; the chôgin and mame-ita.

Chôgin can either be of gold or silver, but either way takes the shape of a rough, flattened cigar-shaped ingot with stamp marks to indicate the quality of the metal and the clan issuing it. The chôgin is the largest silver coin, and is imported from China. The chôgin equals one bu-shoban, and similarly corresponds to one year, although there have been minted especially large chôgin worth a ryô. The chôgin is abbreviated as “c.”

Mame-ita are small, pea-sized lumps of silver or gold stamped with the imprint of the issuing clan and occasionally a rough value indication. Mame-ita are valued by weight, typically, although they are commonly issued in values equal to a monme-ita, a bu-shoban, or a ni-bu.

However it may be with peasants and merchants, stinginess in a samurai is as much to be abhorred as throwing away the Three Sacred Treasures. For if he puts all the money there is before duty and grudges to spend it, how much more will he grudge throwing away his more precious life?

— Daidôji Yûzan
MONEY-LENDERS

One growing profession is that of the money-lender. Part of the merchant class, money-lenders provide loans to everyone from farmers trying to raise the money to pay their taxes, to daimyô who must equip and maintain their armies. Loan interest rates vary, with an average being 10% per year.

Money-lenders also exchange currencies for customers. This is an important function, as most merchants and daimyô in the Kantô region pay for transactions in gold coin, while those in the Kansai region use silver.

The typical commission for such transactions is 1%. This fee may seem trivial, until one realizes that literally thousands of bushoban and chôgin are exchanged in this manner every week. It’s easy to see why money-lenders, while considered the lowest strata of the bonge, are some of the most affluent.

MARKETS

Most towns have a weekly or bi-weekly market. These markets are usually held on days ending with the same number, and are named after this number. For example, so-called “two day” markets are not two days long, but rather they are held on the 2nd, 12th and 22nd day of each month. “Three day” markets are, therefore, held on the 3rd, 13th and 23rd day of the month.

On market days, vendors pushing carts full of their wares that become portable merchant stands and small shops abound. Items of nearly every category can be found, including vegetables, fowl and fish, tools, woodenware, lacquerware, tatami, painted screens, ceramic bowls and cups, and much, much more. In fact, some towns have grown up around such markets.

Merchants desiring to participate in a local market typically need only show up. Official permits, issued by the local ruling daimyô, are officially required, though this is seldom enforced.

The function of the market is much more than simply providing a place to buy food and supplies. Many merchants also specialize in spreading rumors and news, especially the traveling merchants, who make their living as much by telling entertaining stories and repeating the latest gossip from towns near and far.

VALUE OF COINAGE/EXCHANGE RATES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value in Food</th>
<th>(Rice) Koku (Zeni)</th>
<th>(copper) Monne-ita (Chôgin)</th>
<th>(gold) Bu-shoban Ni-bu Ryô</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zeni (copper) (z)</td>
<td>1 day .001</td>
<td>1 ( \frac{1}{83} ) .001</td>
<td>.001 .0005 .00025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monne-ita (silver) (m)</td>
<td>1 month .083</td>
<td>83 1 ( \frac{1}{12} )</td>
<td>( \frac{1}{12} ) ( \frac{1}{24} ) ( \frac{1}{48} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chôgin</td>
<td>1 year 1</td>
<td>1,000 12 1</td>
<td>1 ( \frac{1}{2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bu-shoban (gold) (b)</td>
<td>1 year 1</td>
<td>1,000 12 1</td>
<td>1 ( \frac{1}{2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni-bu</td>
<td>2 years 2</td>
<td>2,000 24 2</td>
<td>2 1 ( \frac{1}{2} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryô (gold wt.) (R)</td>
<td>4 years 4</td>
<td>4,000 48 4</td>
<td>4 2 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Money is a thing that will be there when asked for. A good man is not so easily found.

— Yamamoto Jin’emon
**COMMON FOODS**

Rice is the staple of the diet, forming the core of each of the three daily meals. Popular ways to eat rice include straight (no surprise there), with green tea poured into it, or with a raw egg broken over the rice and mixed in. Rice is eaten hot in bowls, pounded into paste and molded into yummy squares for soups, pounded into flour for rice cakes (mochi), and even made into crackers. A watery rice-gruel (okau) is the food of the elderly, the infirm, and the ill. Oh, yes; and then there’s sake.

Meat is seldom consumed in Japan, but fish and shellfish are eaten wherever they can be taken. Despite the virtual ban on meat due to Buddhist taboos, many buke love boar meat and foul, and will hunt when the opportunity presents itself. Beef, however, is out of the question. Oxen are for pulling imperial carriages or helping on a farm; not for food.

Soba (buckwheat noodles), a dish adopted from the continent, is a popular lunch for people on the go, who might stop in at an inn or tavern for some and a bowl or five of noodles. Soba, udon, don—there are about as many different kinds of noodle dishes as there are stars in the sky. In the evening, when the cool is descending, stalls appear in the streets of larger towns where a bowl of hot noodles in soup can be had for a yen or two. Of course, sake may also be available.

A popular snack is dangô, or sweet rice-flour dumplings. Conservatively speaking, there are, perhaps, seven million different kind of dangô. Each locality may have its own specialty. Some varieties are filled with a sweet red bean paste, others with roasted nuts.

**WHAT THERE ISN’T**

Forget about sushi. What we know today as sushi didn’t come into being until the middle of the Edo Period. The older form was fish that had been cleaned and gutted, then stuffed with rice to preserve them. At some point, someone tried eating that rice, and found it wasn’t bad.

Tempura is also virtually unknown, as it develops only during the latter part of the Sengoku Period as some Japanese become familiar with the eating habits of the Europeans (fried food? ick!) and start to adapt it to local tastes.

Don’t even bother asking about sukiyaki. Shame on you.

A typical meal is a large bowl of rice, pickled vegetables, misô or seaweed soup, and another dish (usually fish).

---

**CALENDAR & TIME**

**ERA NAMES**

Unlike the West, which uses computation based on the birth of Jesus Christ from which to date events, or the Ancient Romans who used the founding of the city as their pivotal date, or the Muslims who date everything from the Hegira, the Japanese have no single date to use. Actually, they could have used the mythical foundation of the empire in 660 BC, but they never did so formally.

From the seventh century down to the present, Japan has used a series of era names called nengô (literally “year number”), assigning events to a year within that era. From time to time, usually due to some great auspicious event or to end a bad era after a particular bad calamity, an emperor proclaims a new nengô. Some nengô span several reigns; some reigns saw several nengô come and go. It isn’t unlike the Anglo–Saxon Chronicles, with an entry beginning “In the fourth year of King Alfred’s reign…” but it is clear that this system has its flaws.

The longer one’s history gets, the harder it is to put things into historical context without having recourse to a list of era names and their volume of years. (Even historically, people found it difficult to keep track of era names and when things happened.)

Was Emperor Horikawa enthroned in Kanji 1 or in Otoku 3? And if this year is the year of the Battle of Sekigahara (Keichô 5), how many years ago was that? (Otoku 3, and it was 514 years ago.) In the 955 years between the institution of the nengô system in 645 and the Battle of Sekigahara in 1600, there were 194 nengô, for an average of one nengô every 4.92 years.

**THE CALENDAR**

The Japanese adopted the complex sexagesimal system of year identification from the Chinese in 604. Traditionally, great mystics called onmyôshi calculate the calendar for the Imperial Court, using secret knowledge and mathematical formulae. These secrets are guarded closely, and only members of the group may learn them.

In the Japanese calendar system, there are 10 “trunks” and 12 “twigs” which combine to form 60 terms for counting the years. These 60 years cycle over and over, so that since 1500 was Mizu-no-to U (“[the Year of the] Hare, Younger Brother of Water”), then 1561 and 1622 were also. Although it may at first seem cumbersome, it would be good to remember the basics of this system, for with it one can also identify hours of the day, days of the week, and so on.

Of the ten trunk (jikkan), five represent the “elder brother” (e) of the five elements (wood, fire, earth, metal, and water) and the other five represent the “younger brother” (to) of the five elements. The ten trunks are: Ki-no-e, Ki-no-to, Hi-no-e, Hi-no-to, Tsuchi-no-e, Tsuchi-no-to, Ka-no-e, Ka-no-to, Mizu-no-e, and Mizu-no-to (Elder Brother of Water, Younger Brother of Wood, Elder Brother of Fire, Younger Brother of Fire, Elder Brother of Earth, Younger Brother of Earth, Elder Brother of Metal, Younger Brother of Metal, Elder Brother of Water, Younger Brother of Water).

The twelve twigs are the 12 animals of the Chinese zodiac, or jû-ni-shi: ne (rat), usu (ox), tora (tiger), u (hare), tatsu (dragon),...
mi (serpent), ma (horse), hitsuji (goat), saru (monkey), tori (cock), inu (dog), and i (boat).

These two units combine to form compounds such as Ka-no-e Inu (“Year of the Dog, Elder Brother of Metal”). See the chart below for the Japanese reckoning for the years of the Sengoku Period.

Japan and China still use a simplified form of this system, where the zodiac animals rotate through in 12-year cycles and the additional element of the trunks is eliminated. There is no reason you can’t just do the same to simplify your campaign.

MONTHS, WEEKS, AND DAYS

In Europe, the equinoxes and solstices mark the beginning of the four seasons; in China and Japan, they are dead in the center of them.

Generally speaking, the Japanese calendar follows the lunar cycle. The first lunar month of the year is when the Sun enters the sign of the fish (sometime between January 20 and February 19).

One year (called a toshi) consists of 12 months, so each year has 360 days. On years in which the sun still hasn’t entered the Fish by February 19, a thirteenth, intercalary month is added, bringing the year to 390 days in number. It is not a very efficient system.

The months are generally either just numbered (e.g., First Month, Second Month, etc.) or are called by one of several colorful variants. If there is an extra month in any year, it is called by the name of the month in which the sun remains in the same sign, with the prefix Uru-, so if the month stays in Kaminazuki too long, there is an Uru-Kaminazuki. Each month begins with the dark nights of the new moon, which gradually grows larger until mid-month, when the moon is fullest.

Each month has 30 days, and is made up of three 10-day weeks (called shu). The three weeks are referred to as the upper (first), the middle, and lower (last) week. The last day in each week is taken to be a general day of rest.

Japanese do not have names for their individual days in quite the same way we in the West think of names for days of the week; they seem to have gotten along well with simply numbering the days. (More than one source suggests that they may have used the names of the ten trunks [rather than using them as references to their position as elder or younger brothers of the five elements], namely Kô, Otsu, Hei, Tei, Bo, Ki, Kô, Shin, Jin, and Ki, although this is not certain.) The sexagesimal cycle itself is also used for the days, beginning at the first day of the year, so that every two months the cycle repeats. In this instance, the first day of the year is Ki-no-e Ne, or “Day of the Rat, Older Brother of Wood.”

But why make yourselves crazy? Just use numbers.

The first day of each month is called Tsuitachi, and the last day Misoka. The last day of the year is called Ô-Misoka (“Great Misoka”).

One who is a samurai must before all things keep constantly in mind, by day and by night, from the morning when he takes up his chopsticks to eat his New Year’s breakfast to Old Year’s night when he pays his yearly bills, the fact that he has to die.

— Daidôji Yûzan
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Month (Meaning)</th>
<th>Season/Descr. (Days 1-15)</th>
<th>Season/Descr. (Days 16-30)</th>
<th>High Temp</th>
<th>Precip %</th>
<th>Precip (2d6)</th>
<th>Notes/Agriculture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Mutsuki (Good relationship)</strong></td>
<td>Risshun (Spring begins)</td>
<td>Usui (Rain water)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Kisaragi (Double-lined clothing)</strong></td>
<td>Keichitsu (Awakening of insects)</td>
<td>Shunbun (Spring equinox)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>8+</td>
<td>First plucking and drying of tea plant leaves. Lacquer is tapped in the mountains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3 Yayoi (Awakening nature)</strong></td>
<td>Seimei (Clear weather)</td>
<td>Koku (Rain for the rice)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10+</td>
<td>Nursery beds are plowed during the last week. On the last day the sprouted rice plants are sown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4 Utsuki (Deutzia scabra month)</strong></td>
<td>Rikka (Summer begins)</td>
<td>Shōman (Small abundance)</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5+</td>
<td>Cherry trees blossom. Silkworm eggs are hatched and fed mulberry leaves. Second plucking of tea leaves; leaves are dried. Cherry blossoms fall off the trees. Main fields are plowed, terraced, damned and flooded during last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5 Satsuki (Month of sowing)</strong></td>
<td>Bōshu (Work of sowing)</td>
<td>Geshi (Summer solstice)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5+</td>
<td>Rice seedlings are transported to the main fields during the first 7 days. Silk cocoons unreel on the 15th day. Frogs breed in the fields, croaking day &amp; night. Weeds in rice fields are hoed. A drought now will kill rice plants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6 Minazuki (Waterless month)</strong></td>
<td>Shōsho (Small heat)</td>
<td>Daisho (Great heat)</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>7+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7 Fumizuki (Letter-writing month)</strong></td>
<td>Rissu (Autumn begins)</td>
<td>Shōsh (End of heat)</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>9+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8 Tsukimizuki (Moon-viewing month)</strong></td>
<td>Hakaro (White dew)</td>
<td>Shūbun (Autumn equinox)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9 Kikuzuki (Chrysanthemum month)</strong></td>
<td>Kanro (Cold dew)</td>
<td>Shōsō (Beginning of frost)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8+</td>
<td>Rice is harvested, tied &amp; hung to dry. Rice is flailed, sorted and baled, and taxes are paid. Barley, wheat and millet is planted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10 Kaminazuki (Month of no gods)</strong></td>
<td>Ritto (Winter begins)</td>
<td>Shōsetsu (Small snow)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11 Shimotsuki (Frost month)</strong></td>
<td>Daisetsu (Great snow)</td>
<td>Toji (Winter solstice)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>9+</td>
<td>Winter crops are harvested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12 Shiwasu (Closing month)</strong></td>
<td>Shōkan (Little cold)</td>
<td>Daikan (Great cold)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sake is made</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One cannot accomplish things simply with cleverness. One must take a broad view. It won’t due to make rash judgments concerning good and evil. However, one should not be sluggish. It is said that one is not truly a samurai if he doesn’t make his decisions quickly and break right through to completion.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
TELLING TIME

There are actually three ways of telling time in Sengoku Japan. (Did you think after all this that it could be easy?) One method is designed so that there is an even number of hours of daylight and of night time, regardless of how long or short each ended up being; this results in a “clock” that indicates an equal number of very long daytime hours and very short nighttime hours in the summer and visa-versa during the winter.

The second method assigns numbers to the hours according to order, decreasing from nine to four (i.e., Ninth Hour, Eighth Hour, Seventh Hour, etc.), and is repeated twice. Needless to say, it can be confusing.

For the sake of gamers’ and GMs’ sanity, SENGOKU will use the third method of telling time, and consider it the standard throughout Japan.

This method of telling time is actually rather easy. The day is divided into 12 toki (or “hours”) of equal length, rather than the Western 24. Each 120-minute toki is given the name of one of the animals from the Chinese zodiac.

For example, the Hour of the Goat, or Hitsuji no toki, corresponds to 11 am to 1 p.m. on a modern clock.

This time is further broken into halves, but can be further divided into quarters and so on just as with the one-hour clock we use today. See the illustration to see how the Japanese toki correspond to Western hours.

Each half is divided into eight koku, each worth seven and a half minutes. The koku are further divided into 15 fun, a 30-second period. Each fun is composed of 60 byō, each a half-second in duration.

### Hours of the Day

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Name</th>
<th>Japanese Name</th>
<th>Hour of Day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Rat</td>
<td>Sho-Ne-no-Toki</td>
<td>11pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Rat</td>
<td>Sei-Ne-no-Toki</td>
<td>12am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Ox</td>
<td>Sho-Ushi-no-Toki</td>
<td>1am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Ox</td>
<td>Sei-Ushi-no-Toki</td>
<td>2am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Tiger</td>
<td>Sho-Tora-no-Toki</td>
<td>3am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Tiger</td>
<td>Sei-Tora-no-Toki</td>
<td>4am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Hare</td>
<td>Sho-U-no-Toki</td>
<td>5am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Hare</td>
<td>Sei-U-no-Toki</td>
<td>6am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Dragon</td>
<td>Sho-Tatsu-no-Toki</td>
<td>7am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Dragon</td>
<td>Sei-Tatsu-no-Toki</td>
<td>8am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Serpent</td>
<td>Sho-Mi-no-Toki</td>
<td>9am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Serpent</td>
<td>Sei-Mi-no-Toki</td>
<td>10am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Horse</td>
<td>Sho-Uma-no-Toki</td>
<td>11am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Horse</td>
<td>Sei-Uma-no-Toki</td>
<td>12pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Goat</td>
<td>Sho-Hitsuji-no-Toki</td>
<td>1pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Goat</td>
<td>Sei-Hitsuji-no-Toki</td>
<td>2pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Monkey</td>
<td>Sho-Saru-no-Toki</td>
<td>3pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Monkey</td>
<td>Sei-Saru-no-Toki</td>
<td>4pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Cock</td>
<td>Sho-Tori-no-Toki</td>
<td>5pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Cock</td>
<td>Sei-Tori-no-Toki</td>
<td>6pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Dog</td>
<td>Sho-Inu-no-Toki</td>
<td>7pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Dog</td>
<td>Sei-Inu-no-Toki</td>
<td>8pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser hour of the Boar</td>
<td>Sho-I-no-Toki</td>
<td>9pm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater hour of the Boar</td>
<td>Sei-I-no-Toki</td>
<td>10pm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Players’ Option: Telling Time

It is up to you whether you use the Japanese time or the Western time. Certainly it is easier at first to remember the Western clock, but if you can get a handle on the Japanese system, it will go a long way to increasing the atmosphere of the game.

Remember that the Japanese also used (and still do) numerical names for the months; so rather than just say “February 4,” say “the fourth day of the second month,” and when you really feel at home with it all use the classical names and try “the fourth of Kisaragi.”

If you really want to be precise with your time-telling, you can add more details. As we mentioned, each toki is divided into a first and second half, making each the equivalent of one Western hour. These are called the sho and the sei, and you can, for example, say “First of the Hour of the Hare” or “Second of the Hour of the Dragon” (or even “Ne no Sei-toki”) if you wish.

### Japanese/Western Time

| One Toshi | Equals...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 hours (120 min.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5 second</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wrap your intentions in needles of pine.

— Yamamoto Jin’emon
EDUCATION

GENERAL EDUCATION

For the lower classes, there is no proper schooling. Local temples often hold school sessions to teach rudiments of reading and writing and so on, but these are survival skills. Given the great complexity of the Japanese written language, many bonge (mostly farmers and such) — and virtually all hinin—are functionally illiterate; they can speak Japanese quite well, but are, at best, able to read and write hiragana (the most basic set of Japanese characters) but not katakana or kanji. Merchants and workers in villages are generally better educated than those in the fields. They can read the syllabaries, but not the Chinese characters that make up the lion’s share of Japanese texts.

Buke attend clan schools, where clan officials teach the children more than just the basics; they are given education in the classics (if deemed appropriate), tactics, and even introduced to schools of combat. Lords are always on the lookout for bright children, and instructors are watchful of their charges.

Education on most basic matters, like etiquette, is done at home.

MARTIAL ARTS TRAINING

One usually trains with one person through one’s entire career in a particular discipline. A PC should start with a teacher—best someone in his own clan or area—and work with him during “down time.”

In small towns and villages, finding a teacher (sensei) of a martial art will not be easy. The best chances of finding a sensei are in larger towns and cities, especially castle towns. It will be difficult to convince someone to teach a military skill to one not of his clan or not otherwise associated with him, however. It is up to the player and the GM to work out the details of any cooperation (or lack thereof) between potential teachers and their would-be students.

STUDYING WITH A TEACHER

For detailed rules on training with a teacher and improving one’s skill level, see Experience (page 226).

GAMES, SPORTS AND RECREATION

In a land of near-constant warfare, sports (as we know them today) aren’t really practiced. Every physical “sport” has a military application, even swimming. There are no teams, no meets, etc. Occasionally, clans will get together and hold a horse race between champions, or an archery competition, but there is still a recognizable military application here. Most popular recreational pastimes are indoor pursuits.

Because the samurai sits at the head of the three classes of… it is incumbent on him to be well educated and to have a wide knowledge of the reason of things. During times of war, however, a young warrior went to battle at fifteen or sixteen, so he has to start his martial education at twelve or thirteen. Since he has no time to take up a book or calligraphy brush, he is often illiterate.

— Daidōji Yūzan
of the previous move may be permitted. Captured stones count as one point each.

The game ends when all the stones have been placed or there is no longer any potential for capturing the opponent’s stones or gaining territory. Then, all the captured stones are placed in the opponent’s vacant spots. The player with the most vacant area under his control wins.

A variant called gomoku narabe (“five-eye line-up”) is played on a standard go board. It is similar to tic-tac-toe; the object is to be the first one to get five stones of one color lined up horizontally, diagonally, or vertically. Players alternate, black placing the first stone; the entire board is open for placement.

**CARDS**

Most of the amusements of the aristocracy can be grouped under the heading of awase, or “joinings.” There are games like kai-awase (shell-joining) utilizing both halves of clamsHELLs with scenes painted on them which are turned upside down and mixed up, and then players have to match two halves together, choosing only two cards per turn.

Such joining games led to the creation in the Heian Period of a card game called hyakunin isshū. In the “game,” there are 100 cards showing the last half of poems and an illustration, and 100 cards with the first half of the poems.

These poems are ancient, and all of the aristocracy knows them, or should. The illustrated cards are laid out, and one person, the caller, takes the other 100 and at random read aloud a poem. The players try to find and pluck out the corresponding card. The winner is the one who has the most cards at the end.

The game has become incredibly popular in Sengoku Japan and spread to the bake and even to the more well-educated bonge. Cards are usually made of sturdy paper, which is painted and then lacquered. Some cards are made of thin strips of painted wood. Cards, like most relatively fragile items, are stored in a small wooden box coated with lacquer.

**DICE**

The single most popular gambling is dice, known as Han-Chō. Each game has a banker who takes money (and occasionally personal possessions and even clothing) in hock in return for wooden chips. The bankers are guarded by one or several strong-arm men, often including some rōnin hired-swords or an out of work sumōtori or two.

The “dealer” is a man or woman stripped to the waist but for a haramaki (a belly-wrap, cloth to keep the stomach warm; for a woman “dealer” it is extended to cover her breasts). This person sits on the far side of a low platform like a tatami, draped with a plain white sheet. On the near side kneels the gamblers, who have small wooden pallets about the size of dominoes which they use as wagering chips.

The dealer holds his hands out and up (in a classic “Hands up! You’re under arrest!” pose), the two dice held between the index and middle finger and middle and ring finger of the left hand, and a small cup in the right hand. This is to show that there is nothing like a hidden third die, or some other cheating device. With a fluid motion, the dealer slams the dice into the cup and slaps the cup face down on the table.

The gamblers now lay their bets on their end of the platform, calling “han” (odd) or “cho” (even), also setting their “chips” horizontally or vertically to indicate which way they are betting. (A variant of the game has the dealer leave one die outside the cup. This requires a bit of skill on the part of the dealer, and is more commonly used by professional gamblers than amateurs.)

The dealer takes the cup away and calls the roll as odd or even. A croupier, dressed similarly to the dealer, takes away the losing bets with a rake and awards chips to the winning bettors.

These are illegal games, and are often run by gangsters. Cheating isn’t unknown, although it is hard to prove; those making such accusations at the scene are often hustled off by the watching strongmen, and beaten up. The film Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman and the Chess Expert, among other Zatoichi films, has a scene that is an excellent example of such a game.

**HANETSUKI**

This game, like many others, originated in the Heian courts. It is very similar to battledore or badminton. Two players, each using a wooden paddle called a hagoita, attempt to keep a shuttlecock aloft. The hagoita are often decorated with very bright colors and designs. It is generally considered a children’s game, and people loosing a point (i.e., dropping the shuttlecock) often have an “X” painted on their face in ink. It is very popular around the new year.

When one loses at gambling, he should take the consequences quickly. When he wins he should not taunt the loser. One should not dicker over the results of gambling.

— Hojo Shigetoki
EQUESTRIAN PASTIMES

The horse, or uma, has long been associated with the warrior class, dating back to the Heian era when the military crossed great distances to engage the Ebisu (or Ainu) in combat. Horses in Japan are of a slightly smaller, sturdier stock than those in the West. In Japan, only samurai and kuge are permitted to ride horses. And even then, only samurai of proper rank (ML5 in their clan) may ride them in peace time; those of lower rank may only ride horses in time of war, with rare exception (scouts, messengers and equestrian contests, as noted below).

Tack and bridle are covered in the equipment section.

Horse Racing

Horse racing is popular in some areas. The Sōma clan, in northern Honshū, are famous for their annual festival of a katchū keiba, where warriors, clad in armor and bearing their mon on gaudy, oversized banners on their backs, race around a course. The winners get a small monetary prize (or alcohol), and are invited to a banquet honoring their achievement. While it’s all in good fun, there can be no misunderstanding; this is training for war.

Inu Ōmono

A similar pastime, not as in favor as it once was, is the inu ōmono. In this “sport,” a large arena is set up and a few wild dogs are released. A few samurai on horseback, armed with bows and arrows, enter the pen. Their object is to run down the dogs and shoot them with the arrows. The winner is the one with the most “kills.” One version plays with blunt arrows, but the original method—still the preferred one in most circles—is to use sharps.

Shinki-sōdatsusen

Another popular equestrian pastime is Shinki-sōdatsusen, a mock battle, of sorts, in which the participants ride about a field attempting to gather red, blue and yellow shinki (holy flags), which are fired into the air by a cannon. The goal is to gather as many flags as possible before they strike the ground.

Yabusame

The last major equestrian sport is yabusame, or horseback archery. Yabusame is often encountered as part of Shintō religious festivals. Competitors wear traditional Heian Period hunting togs and riding pell-mell down a marked course (only 1 jō, or 3 meters, wide and about 60 jō ken, or 183 meters, long). On the side of this course are three evenly-spaced targets. The targets are thin wooden panels one shaku (one foot) square, mounted on six-shaku-tall poles. The riders have three arrows, and must try to shoot at each target with blunts. A squarely hit target will split in half; any other hit will split the target, but not evenly. The winner is the one to have most on target hits in the day.

In game terms, each player participant makes three skill rolls, using the lower of their Riding or Archery skill. A hit requires a TN of 22; a square hit (splitting the target) is TN 26.

SUMŌ

Sumō has been popular since ancient times and the traditions of sumō are linked with many Shintō rites. From the ritual purification of the sumō ring (no woman may enter it, for one thing) to the throwing of salt, to the huge Shintō rope amulet belt worn by grand champions, the sport is steeped in Shintō lore.

Sumō Matches

Official sumō tournaments are called basho, meaning “place” or “site,” a word which is also used as a suffix to seasons or locations to form the name of the tournament or event. The object is to get your opponent to touch the ground with any part of his body other than the soles of his feet, or to force him outside the rope circle. Forbidden tactics include: poking eyes, striking with a closed fist, kicking the stomach (kicking legs is fine), pulling hair, choking, bending fingers back, or grabbing the mawashi (belt) near the groin.

A formal dōhyō (ring) is a two shaku (two foot) tall square platform of packed earth, with a raised ring straw rope marking off the actual combat zone. A step is cut into each side. Two lines, about two shaku long, and about 3 shaku (three feet) apart, mark the starting positions of the wrestlers on the East and West sides of the circle. For formal basho, the dōhyō will undergo a ritual purification ceremony, the dōhyō-matsuri, which takes place the day before the scheduled bout. Once purified, no one may step in the ring except the participants or others with business there. No shoes are allowed and certainly no women.

In each wrestler’s corner is a bucket of salt. The sumōtori will rinse their mouths then get a handful of salt, and fling it onto the surface in a ritual act of purification. They may casually wipe sweat from their bodies with a rag proffered by their helper. They then take their positions, squatting near the center of the ring facing each other, where they glare at one another, pound the dōhyō, stand, slap themselves and generally try to intimidate the other. This is ritual, known as shikiri, may be repeated a number of times, until they are sufficiently “psyched” to fight.

Once the preparation is over, the gyōji (referee) steps up, holding a fan against his forearm, signaling that the match must begin. But it is the sumōtori themselves who decide when to begin. At a naturally and spontaneously determined instant, the two charge in a tachi-ai (“first charge”), slamming into each other, pummeling, pushing, pulling, and twisting. During the bout the ...
History of Sumō

Sumō bouts were once primarily performed as religious functions, called shinji-zumō, which were performed before the ruling Emperor or Empress. The belief was that the match would predict the outcome of the year’s harvest. This made shinji-zumō an annual court event during the Nara period. During the Heian period bouts were also being performed as court entertainment, being called sumai no sechie, the first important step leading to its eventual adoption as a national sport.

During the Kamakura period, sumō’s popularity increased greatly among the buke class, who embraced the “combat” sport. The samurai utilized sumō as both a training tool for warriors as well as entertainment, holding matches to entertain troops between battles. Ironically the rise of the buke class and subsequent decline of the Imperial court’s wealth caused a reduction in the number great sumō matches held by the court, and leading to a slump of popularity of sumō on the national scene for several hundred years.

During the Muromachi period, sumō contests began being held to raise money for local temples and shrines. These matches, called kanjin-zumō, were quite successful. Eventually, bands of “professional” sumō wrestlers, consisting primarily of rōnin, began touring the countryside and participating in kanjin-zumō events, earning a share of the take from the sponsoring temple or shrine.

In 1578 Oda Nobunaga (who is known for his enjoyment of “less refined” entertainment, especially sumō) gathered 1,500 men from throughout Japan for a spectacular one day sumō competition. This great feat caused an upsurge in the popularity of the sport and it remains so.

Each town may have a few local star sumōtori (wrestlers), and clans may have them as well. Sumōtori are usually bonge, but because of their personal fame and the fame they bring their home regions or clans, they are highly regarded as celebrities. (Some champions are even granted samurai status by admiring daihyō, who are sometimes also patrons.) Sumōtori need low centers of gravity, so they eat a protein-rich diet and tend towards obesity; but don’t be fooled. Those guys are all muscle and gristle, and they can move faster than one might think.

The gyōji determines the winner and no one questions his decision; to do so incurs a loss of -1K/ML Honor points, or -2K/ML for an offending sumōtori. Gloat- ing and sulking are considered very poor form (-1K/ML Honor points); very little emotion is shown by either participant. Fans sometimes signal their enjoyment or approval of the gyōji’s decision by tossing items into the ring for the winner, such as money or kimono, though most consider this unsightly.

The referee approaches the winner with his prize money inside a folded piece of paper which is placed on the flat side of the fan. He then squats and holds the fan out for the sumōtori, who waves his hand over the fan three times, as if to say, “No, no, I’m not in it for the money. I just love wrestling.” (This action also signifies thanks to the three Shintō kami of victory.) But he takes it anyway, and swaggers (or limps) off.

Training

The training center/home/gym of a group of sumōtori is called a heya, usually translated as “stable.” The life of a wrestler is very hierarchical; there are several levels of wrestler, from the newest apprentice to the grand champions, the yokozuna. As one gains more victories, one rises the sumō ladder. In fact, the word nobori, meaning “to climb,” is a popular suffix for sumōtori names. As one rises, life becomes easier. The beginners, having sworn fealty to their new lord (the stable master) and are little more than tsukebito (“personal manservants”) to the senior members and greater champions of the stable, doing menial chores for them in exchange for learning the sport.

Though the newer and younger sumōtori are considered officially part of their heya, their initial matches are considered mae-zumō (literally “pre-sumō”) and their names are not listed on any official lists or rankings. Novices must win three such matches before they can “graduate” out of mae-zumō.

To exert oneself to a great extent when one is young and then to sleep when he is old or at the point of death is the way it should be. But to first sleep and then exert oneself... to exert oneself to the end, and to end one’s whole life in toil is regrettable.

— Shida Kichinosuke
KEMARI

The Heian aristocrats started an outdoors game that is strikingly similar to a twentieth-century soccer exercise. The game, *kemari*, is played with a skin-covered ball about six or seven sun (about seven or eight inches) in diameter. There is even a special costume worn while playing, although one need not dress in the prescribed gear for an informal game.

The playing area is a square traditionally marked off by four trees in the corners. Players—as few as two or as many as a dozen—form a circle, and one person tosses up the ball, and kicks it back in the air with his foot. He can kick it back up as many times as he wishes (there is a bit of psyche-out here) before kicking it in a high lob in the direction of another player, who must keep the ball from striking the ground. The only part of the body that may touch the ball is the foot.

The person kicking the ball will say “ariyaaa” each time he kicks it back up, and “ari!” when he kicks it over to some one; this resulting “ariyaaa, ariyaaa, ariyaaa, ari!” is the equivalent of saying something like “here we go, here we go, here we go, here it comes!”

Except for the fact that it seems so modern, this is actually a game that was phenomenally popular during the 10th–16th centuries and beyond. While primarily a kuge pastime, some buke—especially those living in the Miyako area—have become inordinately fond of it as well.

One amusing kemari anecdote: an emperor and his kemari team were able to keep the ball airborne once for over 1,000 kicks; poets wrote of the day claiming that the ball “seemed suspended, hanging in the sky.” The emperor was so pleased that he retired the ball and gave it a high court rank (essentially ennobling the thing and making it a duke).

KYOKUSUI

This leisurely pastime is practiced almost exclusively by kuge. It involves two or more people sitting on the bank of a stream. Small lacquer sake cups are set into the water to float downstream. The participants compose improvisational poems as the sake cups drift by.

GROUP IDENTITY AND STATUS

Japan is a very group-oriented society. The axiom “The needs of the many outweigh the needs of the one” could well have originated in Japan. The needs of the group take precedence. It is a land where the phrase “The nail that sticks up will be hammered down” is supreme. The irony is, of course, that many who have succeeded in Japan—Nobunaga, Hideyoshi, and Ieyasu being classic examples—were nails that stood up and refused to be hammered.

The group consciousness is one reason why the clan structure is so important to the buke. Samurai, however, are not the only ones who rely on group identity.

Membership in an organization—be it large or small—is vital to self-worth. It is for this reason that rônin are both looked down on and often ashamed. The organization may be as small as a family unit in a tiny farming community or even employment as a maid in a Wayside Inn. Those not otherwise involved in such an obvious group entity may still, in fact, be involved in a group. The town blacksmith, for example, plays a vital role in his community, so his community is his group.

Throughout this book, next to each section describing an important societal group or organization, there is a Membership Table. On the table you will find the various ranks or titles within the group along with their corresponding Membership Level (For more information on Membership, see page 116).

CRIME ORGANIZATIONS

One of the dark sides of Japan’s group society is the existence of the crime syndicate. Though the formation of *yakuza* organizations and their elaborate membership rituals is still decades away, the roots are being planted in the more lawless regions of Sengoku Japan. These crime syndicates may be very small, just a few people running a closed operation, or they may be large and operate over several villages.

Oftentimes these criminal organizations are made up of *bonge* or *hiin*, but more than one such body has been headed by a local samurai or kuge official. Avarice or a desire for power are not the domain only of the lower classes.

Such criminal syndicates may operate with the open collusion of the local police, or they may bribe officials from time to time, whenever necessary. They may be so bold as to operate in broad daylight. Some police cannot be bribed, however (a rare occurrence, that!) and in such instances, the syndicates must do their work in the shadows and at night.

The larger and more structured organizations have a head—an *oyabun* (lit. “parent-role”)—and all the others are *kobun* (lit. “child-role”).

Typical activities for criminal organizations are smuggling and gambling. Prostitution, being legal, is not a concern, although they may run some of the houses of prostitution as money-making operations. The larger organizations seldom involve themselves with anything so crass as simple robbery, unless there is a real killing to be made.

---

With the passing of time, the criminal will forget the reason for his crime. It is best to execute him on the spot.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
LONE ROGUES

Few criminals operate alone. Those who do fall under the category of “cat burglar” or some such, as this is typically the limit of their activities. The trouble is, without a fence to whom to sell the stolen merchandise, things can be difficult. Robbers usually steal money, then, so their targets tend to be wealthy merchants. Robbing a samurai house is a very dangerous prospect, and severely ups the ante on the risk factor.

The typical “uniform” of the burglar (or, indeed, anyone out at night with some nefarious purpose in mind) is a black kimono and tight hakama, with a kerchief tied about the head and knotted under the nose so that only the eyes, mouth and chin show. To keep as low a profile as possible, the burglar seldom carries anything but a simple tantō.

THE ARTS

Japan has a finely developed sense of the aesthetic. Two concepts that run throughout Japanese art are wabi and sabi. Both concepts are hard to define, even in Japanese. In the West, artistic appreciation has factors related to beauty in the aesthetics, while wabi and sabi speak more to the emotional levels.

Wabi implies a sense of the ephemeral, that to all things come oblivion, and hence is a bittersweet appreciation of a transitory beauty. Sabi evokes a certain melancholy, a patina of age, timelessness, a shopworn feeling of familiarity. Wabi and sabi—and another concept called shibui—stress the simple, the natural, even the rustic, over the baroque and rococo.

THEATER

Kabuki does not appear until the early days of the seventeenth century, so has no place in a Sengoku Period game. The preeminent form of theatrical entertainment is Nō. Many daimyō even learn parts of particularly famous plays and perform them for the amusement of their vassals and family. Before settling out to battle (and eternal glory) against Imagawa Yoshimoto at Okehazama, Oda Nobunaga sings an “aria” from the play Atsumori. (In the film Kagemusha, Nobunaga sings it again upon finding out that Shingen really is dead.) Hideyoshi is particularly proud of his repertoire, as well.

In Nō, the actors (who are all male) pantomime the actions of the play in very stylized motions while singers recite the lines and musicians punctuate their actions. The costumes of the actors are incredibly elaborate and costly. Over their faces, they wear carved and painted wooden masks which are themselves works of art which may be centuries old. These masks are stylized, standardized representations. There is the jealous woman, the old warrior, the oni, etc.

The Nō stage is a raised square platform three ken (six meters) to the side, bare, and open on three sides. Extending like a veranda along stage left, and “fenced off” visually separate the two areas, is the singers’ area. The back is always solidly paneled, the work box, for example, indicates a ship. The entire construction is roofed, and the audience sits in a nearby structure or in seats on the ground facing the stage.

There are few props or set decorations. A small open basket-work box, for example, indicates a ship.

Nō dramas are also commonly staged outside at night to the light of bonfires. Such a Nō performance is called takigi (bonfire) Nō, and it hearkens back to Nō’s roots. There is an excellent scene of what takigi Nō looks like in the film Kagemusha.

MUSIC

There are many kinds of music in Japan. Some music is very formal and performance oriented, while other music is more personal and played for self-amusement.

Gagaku

Gagaku (court music) is extremely esoteric and only performed for the kuge (who have to pretend to like it). To the untrained ear, most gagaku compositions sound exactly alike. To the trained ear, only a few sound alike.

There are a few unusual instruments that are encountered mostly in gagaku. One of them is the shō, a mouth organ with several long, narrow pipes, which resembles nothing so much as an small octopus afflicted with rigor mortis, lacquered, and up-ended. Another, which is used in other music as well, is the hichiriki, a tiny, shrill flute. There is a story about a nobleman whose home was burgled of all his goods; the thief left only a hichiriki. The noble, disheartened, sat down on the floor and began playing a plaintive tune. The thief, hearing it in the distance, was so moved that he immediately returned all that he had stolen. Some, however, suggest that he returned the things in order to stop the man playing the hichiriki.

Gagaku is played in a formal setting on a stage or cleared and defined space in a room.
General Music

The *shamisen* will not be created for many years. The standard stringed instrument is the *biwa*, a heavy, lute-like instrument. It is plucked with a broad plectrum rather than the nails. Biwa are often played by itinerant musicians who recite classic poetry to its soulful sound. Both men and women play the biwa in about equal numbers. Biwa players are often blind, and make their living playing.

The *koto* is a five *shaku* (five foot) long zither that lies flat on the floor and is plucked by three “nails” worn on one hand. Large bridges hold the strings up, and enable the koto to be tuned to several different keys. Women are more likely to learn to play the koto than men are, although there is nothing effete about playing the koto. Well, not in *kuge* circles. *Buke* consider the koto a woman’s instrument.

The *shakuhachi*, the vertical bamboo flute, is one of the most recognizable of Japanese instruments. It is made from a section of bamboo near the root, and is one *shaku*, eight (*hachi*) sun in length (about 1.8 feet), hence the name “shakuhachi.” There are longer and shorter shakuhachi as well, allowing for bass, tenor, and alto instruments, but the standard is the midrange model. The shakuhachi can be used as a weapon if necessary, in which instance it functions as a club. More than one shakuhachi has actually been a fake, a case for a concealed blade. The mournful sound of the shakuhachi is frequently heard around Zen temples, and it is particularly favored by priests of the Fuke sect, who use it in their meditations. Few women play the shakuhachi.

The *fue*, or flute, is higher-pitched and more shrill. It is also popular among the more old *buke* families, who remember the good old days when they were more aristocratic. Kuge families enjoy them, too.

There are several varieties of Japanese drum. The *kotsusumi* is hourglass-shaped, about a *shaku* (one foot) long, with two heads held tight by a series of cords. The kotsusumi is held over one shoulder and the head popped by the other hand. Squeezing on the cords tightens the heads, and produces a higher pitch. The kotsusumi is frequently encountered as an instrument in a Nô play. *Taikô* (lit. “great voice”) are the large, two-headed drums seen at festivals. The taikô proper actually comes in several sizes, from slightly larger than one shaku in diameter to the huge ō-daikô, which can be up to five or six *shaku* (almost two meters) in diameter. They are also double-headed, with the body of the drum being a section of a tree. Taikô are struck by *bachi*, large drumsticks, and playing them takes both energy and skill. Taikô are often used for signaling in armies, as their booming, sonorous voice travels great distances clearly.

**PAINTING**

The Japanese art of painting is not limited to black and white, contrary to popular opinion. To be sure, *sumi-e* (painting with ink) is popular, but it has more of a Zen quality to it, and black-and-white painting is linked in many minds with Zen practitioners.

Anyone who has seen the elaborately decorated interior of a noble’s estate, a *daimyô*’s castle, or a *samurai* villa, has seen the works of art that are the walls themselves. Most of the full-color paintings are actually done on the paper used to cover walls and screens.

Smaller scale paintings are often mounted on scrolls, and hung on walls or rolled up and put into storage. Since some scenes are deemed more suitable for different seasons, these kakemono (hanging scrolls) are changed depending on the season or for a particular visitor.

**POTTERY**

Potters make both the average quality, day-to-day eating utensils and the beyond-belief works of art used in the Tea Ceremony (*Cha-no-yû*). Potters work for weeks and put all of their material into a huge kiln, firing it all at once. Some of the more picky masters deliberately break over half the produce for not being up to their standards. Bowls, plates, and cups are made in a variety of ways, including freehand and wheel-thrown.

In keeping with the concept of *wabi-sabi*, most of the highest-regarded pieces actually have a rough or lopsided appearance. Depending on the potter’s skill level, he will either be making utensils or works of art, and his regard in the community and his position with the cognoscenti will vary.
THE ARTS/MILITARY CONTROVERSY

The older, more aristocratic samurai families are descended from noble and illustrious houses. They value the arts and are cultured. Some of the newer upstart samurai clans don’t have the benefit of good breeding and centuries of family history.

The value set of these two types of family came into conflict in what became known as the bun-bu-ichi, or “arts/military controversy.” Some clans placed great store in learning arts, writing, gaming, etc., while others totally eschewed such things—even outright forbidding them in some instances—in favor of learning to fight, fight, fight.

Not all who came up from nowhere are so outwardly hostile to the arts. Hashiba (later Toyotomi) Hideyoshi, who had been born a peasant, embraced the tea ceremony and Nō with open arms. One might say in his case that he was overcompensating for his rustic background, but he is nevertheless an example that most rules have an exception.

In his precepts, Katō Kiyomasa said, “The practice of Nō dancing is absolutely forbidden.... A samurai who practices dancing... should be ordered to commit seppuku.” He also said, “One should read books concerning military matters, and direct his attention exclusively to the virtues of loyalty and filial piety. Reading Chinese poetry, linked verse, and Japanese poetry is forbidden. One will surely become womanized if he gives his heart knowledge of such elegant, delicate refinements.”

On the arts side, Shiba Yoshimasa said, “It is fairly certain that most ordinary men have picked up The Tale of Genji and Sei Shonagon’s Pillow Book and read through them any number of times. There is nothing like these books for the instruction of a man’s behavior and the baring of the quality of his heart.” Hōjō Sōun said, “A person who has not studied poetry is the poorer for this lack, and thus one should study it. One should always be genteel in his speaking.”

OPTION: BUN-BU-ICHI

Given the differences that being of a martial clan or an artistically aware clan could have on play, characters playing samurai may have a choice of which kind of clan affiliation they have. As this might affect the whole game, you will have a choice between using the standard buke caste package or one which reflects a clan’s biases (see page 112).

The person who practices an art is an artist, not a samurai, and one should have the intention of being called a samurai. When one has the conviction that even the slightest artful ability is harmful to the samurai, all the arts become useless to him. One should understand this sort of thing.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo

TEA

Sadō is the Way of Tea. The Tea Ceremony is called Cha-no-yū. Tea was introduced from China in the seventh century. A form of tea ceremony was in evidence in the fifteenth century, introduced by the priest Shukō (d. 1502), but it wasn’t until the middle of the sixteenth that the Tea Ceremony as we now know it came into vogue. This we owe to the inveterate tea master, Sen no Rikyū.

Rikyū studied Zen at Daitoku-ji under the abbot, Kökei. He also studied Tea. His designs for the teahouse and the path leading to it are intended to break down barriers of social distinction and stress the equality of all men—a rather radical concept. The entrance to a formal teahouse is a half-height door that one entering or exiting must crawl through. Regardless of rank, all must stoop and crawl.

The proper teahouse is two or four-and-one-half mats in size. It is designed for two people (or three or so in the “larger” room) only, though tea ceremonies have been conducted out of doors for many more people by Hideyoshi and others.

In the full Tea Ceremony, a light, special meal is served first. In a more compacted ceremony, sweets are presented instead. The sweets form a pleasant contrast to the thick, bitter tea. The tea used in Sadō, called matcha, is powdered rather than in leaf form, and very bitter. The host places a small amount of it into a special tea bowl (the form and decoration of which alters by the season) by means of a special small bamboo spoon, and then ladles a small quantity of very hot water into the bowl. He then whips the powder and water into a deep froth with a bamboo whisk (chasen). The host places the bowl before the guest (or the senior guest), and bowls, offering the tea. The guest picks up the bowl, rotates it in his hand so that the bowl’s “face” is in the right direction, and sips the tea up. He wipes the tip of the bowl with his fingers, rotates the bowl, places it on the floor, and bows in thanks. The host retrieves and rinses out the bowl. If there is a second guest, the host will now make a second bowl for that guest; if not, he will make himself a bowl.

The exact motions, down to the number of times the bowl is wiped, the ladle is tapped on the side of the pot, or the cleaning napkin is snapped, are all specified by tradition. A master will do them all with perfect precision and poise, with no lapse of self-control or concentration (TN 24).

Conversation is kept to a minimum—or disallowed entirely—during the actual preparation and drinking of the tea. Weapons are also not allowed (at least, as a tradition). No hostility is allowed during the ceremony. It is a moment of calm in the world, an island of Zen peace and quiet. It also affords a chance for clandestine conversations afterwards, and many plots have been hatched over—or rather, after—tea. There is a story telling that Hideyoshi once went to a Tea Ceremony planning to assassinate the host, but the service was so splendid and the host so composed and refined in his execution of his hostly duties that Hideyoshi recanted and did not act. Some say he even admitted the fact to his host later and apologized.

Because of the closeness of the samurai to the Tea Ceremony, the best utensils have become more and more expensive, some requiring a virtual king’s ransom to acquire. Daimyō have been known to reward a favored retainer with a particularly valuable tea bowl or tea container (natsume). A story tells of how Date
Masamune once nearly dropped a valuable tea bowl—worth several hundred koku—and he gasped as it fell and grabbed for it. He paused, and thought: “I am a general who has faced death on the battlefield numerous times. Never before have I experienced fear like that!” And in order to regain his inner balance, he lifted the bowl above his head and deliberately smashed it into a hundred pieces.

An example of the Tea Ceremony can be seen in the film *Shôgun*, when Lord Buntaro performs the Cha-no-yû in an attempt to reconcile with his wife, Toda Mariko. Another film, *Rikyu*, depicts the life of the great tea master.

**FAMILIES & CLANS**

Family ties are important. Among the lower classes, extended families (usually the paternal line) living in the same area or building are not uncommon.

Filial piety is the rule of the day, and it pervades every level of society. Each child respects—or should—his father and his father’s father. Even adult children are respectful of their parents, and will try to avoid crossing them.

**CLAN INTERRELATIONSHIPS**

Clans are larger than families. There may in fact be several families under one clan. These families may be related or not. One family is, of course, the titular clan head. The interrelationships of clans within clans can get confusing. For example, let us look at the Takeda clan in the year 1574.

The Takeda family itself is the head family in the clan. There are actually several branches of the Takeda family: the family of Takeda Shingen is the main line, and those of his uncles and brothers are the supporting family. In addition to this, there are vassal families (which are actually clans themselves) such as the Asakura, Baba, Yamagata, etc.

The Tokugawa clan is also made up of several main family divisions (which will be formalized after Sekigahara, forming the go-sanke or “three honorable families”: the Kii Tokugawa, the Mito Tokugawa, and the Owari Tokugawa) and a number of hereditary vassal clans—such as the Hosokawa and Honda—and their related families.

**MARRIAGE**

Marriage is a contract between families as much as a liaison between two people. Noble houses are constantly arranging marriages for their daughters with the sons of allied (or potential ally) houses.

These marriages didn’t always bring the hoped-for peace; Oda Nobunaga married his beloved younger sister off to Shibata Katsuie, and in 1583 sent Hashiba Hideyoshi at the head of a large army to besiege the castle and kill Katsuie. The wife refused an offer of safe conduct and committed suicide with her husband.

For the common folk, marriage is more simple. While arranged matches are still the norm, it is more common for bonge to have a love match than it is for the kuge or the buke. Even priests are expected to marry; there is no celibate rule for clergy in Japan. Indeed, “rule” over shrines and temples is often inherited by the son of the head priest or abbot.

**Go-betweens**

Marriage go-betweens, called baishakunin, are common. Using a go-between spares both families from the possibility of personal failure and shame should the arrangement not work out, or the young couple find each other anything but acceptable.

The parents of a marriageable daughter (around 16 or 18) or son (18–22) might contact a friend or someone they know who has a track record in finding suitable matches, and ask this person to look for a mate for their child. If the parents are looking into a particular person as a prospective spouse of their little darling, they might go to an older person who knows the intended, and ask for introductions. Such introductions are commonplace, and usually take place at the gardens of a temple or shrine.

The go-between is an honored position, and even has a place in the wedding party.

**Weddings**

There are Buddhist marriage services and Shintô services which differ in many respects. Most weddings are conducted in the Shintô model. In this wedding, the prospective bride and groom enter, and sit down before a low table. Behind them are lines of people...
representing their respective families. As a Shinto priest intones prayers, they each take three ritual sips from a proffered ladeful of sake.

Weddings are gay occasions, and are followed by long, boisterous parties attended by the friends (and occasionally the family) of the new couple. At these parties, where sake flows freely and there is food for all, the couple may sit at the high place in honor; but more often the new bride herself is doing much of the entertaining.

Polygamy

Samurai lords often have more than one wife. One was the official wife-of-record, and the others are what are usually called concubines. A true wife is almost always of the same caste, but concubines can be from the buke or bonge caste. As noted elsewhere, children born from a Lord’s concubine are considered “legitimate,” and of buke caste, even though the mother might not be. (Several classic Japanese stories tell of a concubine of bonge birth plotting to advance the status of her son with a samurai lord.)

Divorce

In Japan, a man may divorce his wife for any practically any reason he feels is justified. Some of the more common reasons for divorce are a woman’s inability to bear children or her failure to bear a male child. When a man divorces his wife, he merely says “I divorce you,” and sends the dejected woman back to her family with her persona belongings. Regardless of the reason, a divorce causes a woman to lose 3K Honor points, as she must face the shame of “failing” in her role as a wife.

As a rule, women are not permitted to divorce their husbands, for any reason. Like any rule, however, there is an exception. A woman who flees her husband and enters a Buddhist temple is considered safe. The man may not enter after her, else he face the wrath of the Buddhas who have taken pity on the poor woman. If the woman remains in the temple for three years, she is considered legally divorced from her husband, regardless of his feelings on the matter. Most women in this situation simply shave their heads and become Buddhist nuns (ama), completing the “break” from her past life entirely.

Mistresses

The upper-class male in feudal Japan who doesn’t have at least one mistress somewhere is the exception rather than the rule. While some men may truly loved their wives, ultimately Sengoku Japan is a man’s society: wives are for keeping the home up and running and bearing children; mistresses are for good times.

This is not a reference to prostitutes: we mean real, honest-to-goodness (if that’s an appropriate term) kept women, here. The woman might be an entertainer, a farmer’s daughter, a shrine maiden, a geisha, a prostitute at a local house of ill-repute (remember the prostitute that Kasigi Omi was in love with in Shôgun?), or even the wife of another man.

Sometimes the wives know about the mistresses; sometimes they don’t. Sometimes they are in denial about it. Generally, they regard their husbands keeping lovers as something to be expected, and as such, seldom make a fuss over the issue.

If a married woman is caught with another man, it can mean death for both. If a married man is caught with another woman, it is merely embarrassing.

HOMOSEXUAL LOVERS

While not as openly accepting of same-sex love as ancient Greece, feudal Japan is generally more open and accepting of this vice than feudal Europe is. Many famous generals of the period had a young male lover in their entourages. Perhaps there was something about males sharing experiences together on campaign that made for a closer relationship than was possible with the wives back home.

Young men who served as full-time attendants to samurai, abbots or other men of power, are often chosen for their effeminate qualities. These androgynous men (boys, really) are known as bishonen. Bishonen are also commonly found working as male prostitutes, onnagata (male actors who portrayed female characters), or both.

Homosexuality or bisexuality, like having affairs and mistresses, is the domain of men. Some say that a man’s love for another man is stronger by far than the love of any woman.

CHILDREN, CHILDHOOD, AND COMING OF AGE

Children are named at the seventh day after birth.

As the child grows up, he is taught at home the things he needs to know about life and society. Since schools are unavailable for most children, this “home schooling” is all the education they may ever get. Nearby Buddhist temples may teach children to read, and hold similar basic education classes, but they are few and far between.

Any children exhibiting any signs of left-handedness are trained out of it. Everyone in Japan must be right-handed; the society is geared for right-handed people. In Sengoku Japan, there is literally not one adult—not one—who is left handed.

Due to the enormous strictures placed on the Japanese adult, children are allowed a certain social leeway that adults are not; in fact, they often seem spoiled. This freedom is all too short, however, for as soon as a child is able, he must join in the family occupation, be it out in the field planting rice, in the inn serving dishes, helping father clean his writing utensils, etc.

Children of clerics are taught to read and write at a much more critical level than peasants, as it is part of their future lives. Children of the buke and kuge, as well, are tutored by the finest teachers (usually scholars and clerics) their families can find. Some clans even establish schools for the sons of their retainers.

Not much education is afforded daughters. Typically, they learn from their mothers what a wife is supposed to know how to do. If

Much less is it fitting for a samurai to lay his hand on his sword or menace his wife with his clenched fist, an outrageous thing that only a cowardly samurai would think of doing.

— Daidôji Yûzan
they are of the upper classes, however, their lives are more serene and they learn instead how to read and write, and the arts. Cleaning and cooking are for the maidservants’ daughters to learn.

**Hakamagi**

At an age between three and seven, a buke or kuge son goes through the hakamagi ceremony, in which he is made to stand on a go board, with his feet clad in tabi, and to pick up a go stone using his toes. This ceremony marks his entry into society, in a way; it is also the first time the lad is dressed in men’s clothing, hence the name. Why, we don’t know. They just do it. The ceremony is also called chakugo, which is written with the same two kanji, only they are reversed.

**Genbuku**

The genbuku ceremony marks the official coming-of-age for the sons of the kuge and buke. Here his hair is cut and dressed for the first time in the adult fashion, he is presented with his first real sword and he is given his new, adult, name. If kuge, this will also be his first wearing of his kamnari, or cap of rank. Buke use the occasion to first wear an ori-eboshi, an elaborate warrior’s headdress. For daughters of the kuge (and the very highest levels of the aristocratically tied buke), the eyebrows are shaved, and their teeth blackened. The genbuku occurs generally at age 13.

**Inheritance**

There is no rule that says that the oldest son inherits. Although there is preference for the older child, the oldest son (or sons) may be passed up in favor of a younger son, or even a grandson. In at least one famous instance, an adopted son inherited the lordship of the clan over the natural sons of the daimyō. That adopted son was Uesugi Kenshin, rival to the great Takeda Shingen, and he was an adult at the time of his adoption.

Many times poorer samurai families will find themselves in debt to merchant families, and to wipe the debt out will adopt a son of the merchant, making the lad a samurai, and giving the merchant family connections. Poorer bonge families may commit infanticide rather than bring into the family yet another mouth to feed.

---

**DEATH AND BURIAL**

When someone dies, and is in the vicinity of his home, he is taken there to lie for a day, where family, friends, and neighbors may come and pay their respects. The deceased lies in bed, on his futon, with a comforter drawn up to his chin, and a handkerchief over his face. The handkerchief may be removed to view the departed.

**CLERGY**

A Buddhist priest comes and chant prayers for the soul of the departed, shaves the head, and takes the body away to be cremated, and his ashes interred in the family plot (if there is one).

Most Buddhist temples have attached cemeteries, and each cemetery has at least one grave site for those who have no such familial ties. Since it is the duty of the living to care for the deceased (clean up their grave, visit, etc.) those who have no one to care for them are interred in this common grave, which everyone cares for as a social duty.

The Shintō priesthood will not come in contact with a dead body, as it would pollute them. Even Shintō dead must be cared for and handled by the Buddhist clergy.

**UNIDENTIFIED BODIES**

Bodies found in the streets or in town and which are obviously the result of foul play (e.g., missing a head, a dozen arrows in the torso, etc.) are taken to the local dōshin headquarters, where an investigation is performed. If they cannot identify the deceased, descriptions of the body and the nature of its discovery are posted at various sites near where it was found and at general posting signs in town. If no one comes forward to claim the body, after the investigation it is turned over to the nearest Buddhist temple to be prepared for cremation and burial.

**COFFINS**

Japanese coffins are made of wood and look like large tubs or barrels. The body is placed inside the coffin in a sitting position, and then sitting upright.

If the body is claimed, the family takes it home, washes it, and lays it out (if it is presentable) as described in the first paragraph. Otherwise, they quietly call a priest in to make the proper services.

Typically, mourners will come, offer a pinch of incense at the Buddhist altar, say a prayer for the departed, and give the bereaved an envelope containing a small amount of money as a sign of respect. This money will go towards paying for the funeral, the priest’s service, etc.

**FUNERALS**

Depending on the social class of the deceased, the funeral can be sparse or elaborate, and the immediate family (and retainers, if appropriate) will be treated to a wake before the funeral proper. An example of an elaborate Buddhist funeral ceremony is portrayed in the movie Shōgun.
AFTER THE FUNERAL

Upon returning from a funeral, before one can enter a house, he must have salt sprinkled on him. This is a Shintô tradition. As death is a pollutant, the man has now come into contact with it and is unclean, and must be purified by salt. Otherwise, he brings the death pollution (and the resultant bad luck) into his house.

MOURNING

The death of a family member calls for the survivors to observe a period of mourning, according to tradition. During this time, the person in mourning wears white clothing (if they can afford it) and offers prayers for the deceased at the family’s in-home shrine. These prayers help guide the deceased's spirit to Paradise and, if Buddhist, to aid them when it comes time for their judgment.

Contact with others except family members is avoided, so as not to cause them pollution; no visitors outside the family are allowed to enter the home. Those in mourning are considered in a state of pollution due to their proximity to death (i.e., the deceased). In addition, mourners must not visit a shrine for like reasons (although they may visit a Buddhist temple, where such strictures do not exist) and most cover their heads whenever out of doors, even if only with paper, so as not to defile the sun. During the period of mourning there can be no weddings, no division of property, no drinking of sake or eating of meat, and no shaving or hair cutting.

The period of mourning varies, depending on the relationship of the deceased to the survivor. The death of a parent calls for a mourning period of 50 days, that of a husband 30, a wife 20. The death of a son requires 15 days mourning, the death of a daughter 10, a nephew 5 and a niece 3. With the passing of a more distant relative a mourning period of one day is usually sufficient.

CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

In the Edo Period civic law enforcement really comes into its bureaucratic own. In the Sengoku Period, the local ruling clans usually supply the local police force, or supplement them.

Dôshin are bonge or low-ranked samurai. Their overseers and higher-ups, the yoriki, are more important samurai. The "badge" of the dôshin is a jitte, an iron truncheon that is useful for breaking both swords and heads.

There is no police uniform per se, though they tend to wear something like a black haori (a loose, buttock-length coat) with the clan crest on the back for ease of identification. When going to make a "bust"—as in on an illegal gambling game, or at a local crime syndicate—a dôshin might wear kote (armored sleeves) and a jingasa (conical iron hat), and perhaps even a kendô-type dô (chest protector).

INVESTIGATIONS

Prisoners are taken to the police headquarters-cum-jail, where they are interrogated. Interrogation usually amounts to torture, as the police have always stressed confession over trial.

Prisoners are kept in a jail cell where the “bars” are a lattice of thick wooden planks running horizontally and vertically. The door is typically only half-height, requiring the prisoners to crouch low upon entering and leaving the cell.

As he must die, the goal of a samurai should be to fall performing some great deed of valor that will astonish both friend and foe alike and make his death regretted by his lord and commander behind a great name to the generations to come.

— Daidôji Yûzan
Shirasu

A “hearing” takes place in the local magistrate’s courtyard. The magistrate sits on the verandah, in a recessed area designed for these hearings, while two recorders nearby write down the account of the transpirings. On the ground, front and center, is the accused, who kneels, trussed up like—well, like a common criminal. Attached to his bindings is a long leash-like rope which is held by one dôshin. Two more dôshín stand at guard, on either side, their backs to the verandah and facing the accused. Behind the accused on the left and right, kneeling on the ground, are witnesses and accusers.

The hearing is usually very quick, especially if the accused has already confessed. Indeed, some magistrates will not even hold a hearing without a “confession.”

The typical penalty for most crimes is death. If the accused is a samurai, he will be “invited” to commit seppuku. If a commoner, it’s off to the execution grounds.

EXECUTION

Those convicted of serious crimes—murder, robbery, arson—are led back to jail, and at some time in the near future (they don’t know when until their names are called) they are taken to the local place of execution.

Several people may be executed at once; dôshin believe in conservation of energy, and unless a crime has been particularly heinous, will save up till they have four or five to perform. All are be paraded to the execution ground, tied up, often blindfolded, with low-ranking dôshín walking before them carrying signs detailing their crimes.

The executions are public, although the public is kept at arm’s length from the actual execution by a bamboo palisade (to say nothing of a large detachment of armed samurai from the local daimyô there to insure peace).

There are two methods of execution: beheading, and crucifixion. There are other methods of killing (boiling someone, for example), but those are generally used as a form of torture. Executions are performed in one of the following ways.

Beheading

The convict is made to kneel blindfolded in front of a pit, trussed if necessary (although criminals in Japan are known for resigning to their fate rather than fighting once caught), and supported on either side by a dôshin. He leans forward, and awaits the stroke of the executioner’s sword. This executioner, in all respects, functions like a kaishaku in a seppuku, complete with the bucket of water for his blade. The reason for the blindfold is not so the criminal will show no fear; it’s so he won’t know when the stroke is going to come, and it could be several minutes. In a way, it’s a last dig at someone who has offended society and the law. The head is then posted somewhere (usually on the execution grounds or at the entrance to a town) as a warning to other miscreants.

Crucifixion

In the case of crucifixion, the criminal is tied spread-eagle to a cross lying on the ground (note that the cross actually has a second, shorter crossbar for the legs), and the cross is then raised up by ropes. Unlike the old Roman crucifixion in which the victim was left to die a slow and excruciating death, the Japanese criminal gets off easy. Two dôshín armed with yari approach. They
cross the lance blades in front of the face of the condemned man, and then each one thrusts the lance into one side of the man’s ribcage. Death is fairly instantaneous. He may be left on the cross for a while, or taken down immediately. The body may then be beheaded, and the head posted as a warning.

**Testing Blades**

(Tameshi)

A samurai might have a new sword he wants to test, and may be granted permission to test it at the execution ground. Because some special blades are tested officially, and the results recorded (and often carved into the tang of the blade, marking it as a particularly well-made weapon), this is an excellent opportunity to see what the sword is actually capable of.

These tests are to determine cutting potential, and call for more than a simple beheading; a professional sword tester, or at least a master swordsman, will wield the sword for the samurai. There are several cuts that can be made: through the torso, diagonally from the shoulder down; through the body at the waist; through the body at the hips, etc. Sometimes two or even three criminals are tied together, standing, so a swordsman can make a multiple-body cut.

There is an anecdote that tells of a criminal who, upon reaching the execution ground and seeing no cross, asked what was to happen. The sword tester approached, and told the condemned man that he would be testing a new sword with a cut through the abdomen. The criminal replied, with some sarcasm, that he wished he’d have known that, so that he might have eaten several handfuls of gravel beforehand, and perhaps nick or dull the nice, new blade.

**OTHER FORMS OF PUNISHMENT**

On the off-hand chance that the penalty is not death, the criminal will often be tattooed to mark him permanently as an offender of society. A single black ring or line around the upper arm near the armpit or on the upper forearm itself for one offense, a second such tattoo for a second, and so on are typical. Facial markings, like a triangle on the forehead, are also used.

Other punishments for “lower” crimes vary, and may include (in order of severity) shaving one’s hair (typically reserved for female criminals), house arrest, banishment to a certain distance (e.g., 10 ri from the city or town), or banishment to a remote island.

**POPULAR ENTERTAINMENT**

Nô is typically the purview of the upper classes, the buke and the kuge. The lower classes get their entertainment via musicians and puppet shows. Religious festivals also provide an opportunity for the common folk to dance and sing and generally have a good time. Sumô is a pastime enjoyed by members of all classes.

Traveling minstrels are common in larger towns, and even in waystation towns near main roads. A character with an appropriate skill level with an instrument (4+) may make a decent living playing in the inns and for the wealthy holding private parties.

**CITIES, TOWNS, AND VILLAGES**

Even smaller towns and villages will have at least one brothel. To be sure, many inns (yado) have maids who may offer their charms to paying customers, and quite a few innkeepers make a good side-living as operators of “houses of ill-repute”—but a real brothel, run by a mama-san, with anywhere from two prostitutes (joro) on up, will be common in almost every community. Naturally, the “quality” of the services and cost of the night will vary with the size of the community. The larger the community, the more one will have to choose from.

There will be one temple in any town of at least 100 people, with one head priest and a few monks or supporting priests, and one shrine (including the smaller, unmanned variety) for every 15 people. It is up to the GM to determine what is appropriate for any given locale. Smaller villages will have only one local shrine of importance enough to warrant a priest, and that shrine will be the center of local festivals.

There will always be at least one yado, or inn—more in the larger towns. “Restaurants” and other eating establishments are typically attached to inns, although there are tea houses serving noodles and light meals as well.

Most towns are farming communities, unless they have grown up around other structures. Examples of this are jôkamachi (castle
tions), daimyō capitals, and cities like Miyako (the capital) which grew up around the imperial court. Castle towns have a high percentage of service businesses such as inns and teahouses catering to the large number of people coming and going in town. Castle towns also have larger populations which support more merchant shops and temples.

MIYAKO

The capital city of Japan—what in future years will be called Kyōto—has been called variously Heian-kyō, Kyō, Raku, Kyō-no-Miyako, and just Miyako. Most versions contain some variation on the concept of “Capital.”

Miyako was laid out in a grid after the pattern of the T'ang Chinese capital of Ch’ang-an. The imperial palace is smack in the center at the northernmost section of the city, at the end of a long, 30-jō (300-foot)-wide main street that runs to the main gate from the southern entry to the city. Large avenues run off the main drag east and west, with smaller streets going both directions. The main streets break the city into sections, and one’s social position can be determined by what “block” he lives on. The closer to the imperial palace you live, the more important you are. The first block—Ichijō—even became the adopted surname of one branch of the Fujiwara family, as did the second block—Nijō—and the third—Sanjō—and so on. It is easy to get around in Miyako, as the grid formations and the ring of mountains on three sides make maintaining one’s orientation a simple matter.

Miyako is the heart of Japan, at least culturally. The political center shifts to wherever the bakufu or supreme warlord sets up its headquarters, but be it Kamakura, Muromachi, Azuchi, or Ōsaka, Miyako is the direction in which all heads turn.

CASTLE TOWNS

Castle towns (jōkamachi, or “under-castle towns”), along with provincial and daimyō capitals, are not laid out in the same way as Miyako. Experience with civil war after civil war in the capital showed the folly of cities laid out in straight lines and grids. They are indefensible. Hence, their streets are laid out in complex patterns. Or, rather, with no pattern.

In Miyako, four consecutive right turns would put you back on the street you started from. In most other cities, four consecutive right turns could leave you hopelessly lost. Even though the castle may stand out in the city, just because you can see it from wherever you are doesn’t mean you can find the correct path to it easily.

Most streets are also narrow (only two or three ken, or four to six meters, wide at best) so maneuvering an army in a city isn’t an easy task.

Castle towns exist to support the castle and the samurai. The population of some castle towns may have concentrations of samurai of over 20 percent, unlike the countryside where samurai are only slightly less rare than flying cows (prior to the 16th century, this situation was actually reversed). Most castle towns, however, are more realistic with about 10 percent of the population being samurai.

Inns (yado), food establishments, entertainment and even houses of prostitution support the samurai presence. A second tier of such establishments exists farther from the city center to support those supporting the samurai. On the very outskirts of the town are the farming communities, if there are any.

Unlike Europe, there are no walled cities.

TOWNS AND VILLAGES

Regular towns and villages have a smaller concentration of samurai, and a higher concentration of farmers (or fishermen, whichever is more appropriate). Some towns are one-industry towns, like Settō. They specialize in a single product (pottery, in this case) to the extent that some work to obtain the raw materials, others to create the product, and still others to convert the product into art forms. Such towns are very insular, and may look with curiosity on outsiders. Such one-industry towns may specialize in lacquer and lacquerware, pottery, or even just making charcoal for cooking and heat.

Children will go to the temple school until they are 10 or so, at which time they begin to work at what their life-long career will be—fishing, farming, or apprenticing to their father’s business or craft. Poorer townsmen may sell a daughter or two to a local (or better, a distant) brothel merchant. Healthy sons may join the retinue of a lord as an ashigaru during times of war.

The smaller a town is, the lower the quality of the available goods and services (excepting, of course, any local specialty). Smaller towns are even more insular than usual for Japanese communities, and strangers attract attention and notice.

Towns have a headman—not unlike a mayor—who is a commoner with the wealth or social standing to allow him such a position. The headman is either provided a stipend from the ruling samurai clan or is exempt from taxation. The headman is ultimately responsible for everyone in his community, and answers directly to the samurai in charge of the town.

The actual day-to-day running of a small town is not the affair of samurai, daimyō or not, so the headman sees to such affairs. In addition, the headman is responsible for collecting the taxes and transferring it to the local daimyō. The lord of the local area, of course, can step in at any time and interfere, support, or supplant the work of the headman. Such is the karma of a commoner’s life.

Below the headman are the five-family groups. One person represents five families, and reports to the headman on matters of import. This usually focuses on the rice harvest, but may include crime, grievances, and so on.

TRAVEL

Roads in Japan are packed dirt, and often marked with rows of trees (tall cedars or pines). Few roads are well maintained. The central trunk road from Edo to Ōsaka—the Tōkaidō—is the most famous and strategic road in the nation. At several points on the Tōkaidō, when there is a strong shōgunal government, there will be official checkpoints manned by samurai of the bakufu rather than local daimyō, who will investigate and detain any suspicious travelers.

There are no carriages or wagons (gissha) used on the road. In the cities people may use handcarts to move things around, but on the road one walks or rides. The only one who gets to ride in a carriage is the Emperor, or highly placed members of his court, who travel in specially designed vehicles pulled by a single ox, called horen.

The master who governs his domain well loves wise retainers, while the man who exploits the people loves flatterers.

— Imagawa Sadayo
Those who don’t want to walk have the option of riding a horse, or in a palanquin. Those of rank ride in elaborate, enclosed palanquins called norimono, which are usually carried by personal retainers. The enclosed norimono is supported by a long central pole running along its roof. The interior can get stifling hot in the summer, but such is life.

The other form of palanquin is a kago, a privately rented basket or hammock arrangement slung from a long pole—sometimes with a scant roof—and carried by two kagoya (kago-bearers) who may or may not be licensed. Kago-bearers can often be found hanging around at way stations and rest stops, and at inns along the way. One will encounter a way station or rest stop about every 7 ri or so along a main road. At these stops the kagoya will be relieved with fresh ones.

In town, kago-bearers can almost act like a taxi service. Not all kago-bearers are honest; some are notorious bandits, who beat and robbed their fares after they got out of earshot or around the corner from the way station.

**ROAD COURTESY**

Roads are narrow, even the major trunk roads, and there are few roads in Sengoku Japan that are wider than a modern two-lane highway for any stretch of the way. They may widen briefly before a way station, to allow for the extra activity, but the road itself is narrow all the way. This makes for rather complex traffic dynamics. The general rules of the road are: walk on the left and make way for someone bigger and more important than you are.

There is a general camaraderie on the road, and all who travel on it—high or low—are sharing the hardships of the way. For this reason, a nod of the head from a commoner to a samurai is typical on the road (the commoner always nods first, of course). If addressed by the samurai, the commoner will have to stop and bow, but in passing a simple nod suffices.

If an official retinue is approaching with people on horseback and perhaps someone in an elaborate palanquin, etiquette (and the laws of self-preservation) require that everyone who doesn’t know he outranks the party approaching should step off the road and either bow or prostrate himself facing the party until it passes.

People may walk abreast for the entire width of the road, but when encountering another group or individual coming from the opposite direction, the group of visibly less rank should break up and drop back to allow the other to pass.

If two bushi pass each other and their scabbards should happen to connect, the one “offended” may demand instant satisfaction. It is up to the other whether he should mollify the offended party or fight. Whether the contact was accidental or deliberate, and regardless of who actually hit whose scabbard, such encounters could make for interesting road side entertainment, as travelers scatter to the shoulder, watching the fight but trying to stay out of the way. One way to avoid this unpleasantness, of course, is to walk on the left side of the road (hence the rule mentioned above).

If anyone is cut down on the road—commoner or samurai—it is bad form to be caught or seen rifling the body for money or other valuables. Samurai who cut down another will leave the body there as it fell, perhaps even knowing that the other has a more valuable sword than he. Eventually a detachment of dōshin or samurai will come from the nearest town to take the body away. It will be placed on a tatami or board about six shaku by three, covered with a thin straw mat, and carted off to town (where all the valuables will somehow disappear unless quickly locked up by the yoriki or they are claimed).

**STOPPING ALONG THE WAY**

Major roads have way stations at regulated intervals. Many of these stations are marked by a yado (inn) of some sort, where travelers can rest. Inns invariably have a number of people staying there, from samurai to peasants. They will be a cross of all walks of life in Japan, but groups will in general keep to themselves. Despite the natural reticence Japanese have in dealing with strangers, the discomforts of the road, mutually shared, may make for occasional lapses in shyness and class barriers will drop for a time.

The inns will be typically of lower class than a town inn, but may charge as much as the better inns in town, given that they have a virtual monopoly on the road. The option is sleeping out somewhere on the side of the road (which the poorer folk often do, taking the resultant risks), but nowhere near the establishment, thank you very much.

These official inns are supposed to be safe, and they are checked regularly by whatever official patrols run through the area. There may be graft, however, and just because the establishment is (more or less) honest doesn’t mean that their patrons are.

One of the signs that you are near a town when on the road is the sudden appearance of tea stands and what can only be called “snack bars.” These little stalls, often no larger than a couple of twentieth-century phone booths, provide a few narrow benches
and an opportunity to sit for a moment and enjoy a cup of tea or some dumplings or maybe a bowl of noodles for a few zeni. The proprietors of these establishments—common folk—are often well-versed in local gossip, and love to collect and pass along tales they’ve overheard, especially to important-looking “o-samurai-sama.” Another common site at roadside inns are shakaba-jorō (“post station trollops”), cheap prostitutes who cater to male travelers with a few coins to spend for an evening of fun before hitting the road again the next day.

**POLICE AND PATROLS**

There is little in the way of “police” patrols on the road; dōshin typically operate only in towns and cities. The closest thing to a police force on the road may be an occasionally passing samurai or body of samurai in the service of the local daimyō checking up to make sure the road is safe and clear. If such an official body is met, they will be unarmored, but will have on jingasa (camp hats) bearing the daimyō’s mon, and likely they will be wearing armored sleeves (kote). Obviously, factors such as the importance of the road, the current attitude of peace or war, and the strength of the daimyō will have a bearing on the size of the force. It should be no more than a dozen men, at any rate.

Any official on the road may have the right to stop and investigate individuals he encounters.

**ARMOR ON THE ROAD**

Travelers on the road do not as a habit wear armor. Only during wartime or otherwise on campaign do bushi wear their armor on the march; armor is carried in a special chest called a gusoku-bitsu (armor box), which, depending on the style and size of the armor inside, can be worn as a bulky backpack or carried hanging from a pole thrown over the shoulder. If one is carrying a gusoku-bitsu, it of necessity prevents him from carrying any other gear. The more wealthy and higher-rank bushi will have two re-

In times of necessity, one may travel in armor, but clothing is worn over it to disguise its appearance. This is, of course, only a halfway successful concealment, as the armored sleeves and part of the breastplate will show, but people dressed this way are usually lords or samurai on official business, so people rarely look twice. Either way, a full helmet will not be worn; only a simple cloth cap or a jingasa will be worn.

If one is on the road in armor, he can expect to be looked upon with scorn by other bushi, avoided by all commoners (who will probably assume him to be a bandit and will draw to the far side of the road or the other side of the tavern or inn), etc. Any official police or security detachment will surely stop such a person, and investigate and interrogate him thoroughly.

**WEAPONS ON THE ROAD**

Weapons may be borne on the road, but must be sheathed. This includes polearms of all types, which have lacquered wooden or papièr-mâché...sheaths to protect the blades from inclement weather and dust while on the road. Sword hilts are often covered with a cone of fabric which extends a bit beyond the tsu¬ba (hand guard). This serves to keep out the road dust, but it also subtly shows that the wearer is peaceful, as the swords can’t be easily drawn and controlled with this cloth sleeve in place.

Bows are usually carried unstrung and in their cases, but people aren’t as stressed at seeing a strung bow; they would likely assume the bearer is going hunting (assuming that his garb is suitable to that activity). Arrows are carried in a lacquered chest or quiver.

Even teppō (matchlocks), when carried on the road, have cases. Considering how rare such weapons are, possessing them—especially doing so openly—could be taken as a threatening sign; they should be sheathed or otherwise concealed.

The key with any weapon, then, is that when on the road they should be somehow difficult to get to and use; weapons that are difficult to bring to bear are safe weapons.

**RIDING**

Traveling by horse can make things difficult, as putting up a horse for the night and providing fodder can cost more than putting oneself up. When mounting a horse, Japanese always do so from the right side, not the left, which is the rule in Western riding.

Japanese kura (saddles) structurally have more in common with camel saddles than the Western concept of horse saddles. In the West, saddles sit firmly on the horse’s back, and the rider sits in the saddle. In Japan, the saddle is perched on the horse’s back, and the rider sits on it. Japanese saddles are made of wood and lacquered black or crimson. Saddles of the social elite are often very ornately decorated, using mother-of-pearl or metal inlay, painted designs, etc. The abumi (stirrups) are also very different from what we in the West are familiar with. The Western form of metal loop into which the foot is thrust is unknown in Japan, where the stirrup is a sideless box, shaped similar to a capital letter J on its side, onto which the foot is placed.

Only samurai of sufficient rank (ML 3+) may ride horses during peacetime. During times of war, any samurai may ride a horse. If commoners travel with a horse, they must walk beside it. In the intervals of one’s work one should learn horsemanship. After becoming well-founded in the basics, other techniques should follow with training.

— Hojo Nagauji
LAND

It is no understatement that Japan is a mountainous country. Getting around isn’t terribly difficult, as there is a highway and roadway system in place. The problem getting around is passing checkpoints during times of strife. These barrier checkpoints can be as frequent as the boundaries of each town the road passes through to as few as on the borders of various provinces or han (fiefdoms). The upper class has little trouble, whereas the lower classes have to jump through more hoops to convince authorities of their right to travel.

There are also different kinds of terrain that you will have to work with. For the effect of terrain on movement, see Distance and Movement (page 198).

Highways

There are few major roads in Japan. Only a few are of major importance, and they really come into their own during the Tokugawa regime. The highways are typically three ken or 18 shaku (six meters) wide and are dirt paved, though they may narrow to as little as one ken (two meters) wide, especially in rough terrain (mountain passes and the like). Roads are commonly lined with rows of trees, and at 1 ri intervals one can find a small mound of stones on the side of the road, marking distance.

There is no underlay as in Roman roads. Rather, these highways are just graded and compacted earth, with a stretch of cleared ground on either side as “shoulders.” The most famous highway in the land is the grand trunk road that runs from Edo to Kyôto, the Tôkaidô (lit. “Eastern Sea Road”). After a bad rain, the roads can be a pain to travel.

When you get a horse direct from the ostler, if the previous rider is a samurai, you should wait to dismount until he has dismounted at the bidding of the ostler. … if you dismount at the bidding of the groom, the other will be constrained to change his mount though he may not have that intention. And if one takes the trouble to get off a horse, he may be embarrassed if he has to mount again.

— Daidôji Yûzan

Roads and Highways of Japan

When you get a horse direct from the ostler, if the previous rider is a samurai, you should wait to dismount until he has dismounted at the bidding of the ostler. … if you dismount at the bidding of the groom, the other will be constrained to change his mount though he may not have that intention. And if one takes the trouble to get off a horse, he may be embarrassed if he has to mount again.

— Daidôji Yûzan

63
Oshū Kaidō: The Oshū Kaidō runs from Edo to Aomori to the northeast. It passes through Musashi, Shimosa, Shimotsuke, Iwaki, Iwashiro, Rikuzen, Rikuchū, and Mutsu.

Nikkō Kaidō: The Nikkō Kaidō connects Edo to Nikkō in central Shimotsuke Province.

Roads

Villages are often like those along the Nakasendō. There will be fewer (if any) official stations, little in the way of official guards (though there may be a few bored bushi from the local daimyō stationed there just to keep an eye on traffic in the lord’s domain), and less in the way of safe havens. Any tea shops, kago-bearers, or inns appearing along such roads are use-at-your-own-risk establishments. Most are on the up-and-up, but if one wanted to go into banditry on the road, a by-way is more suitable than a high-way.

The Wilderness

Mathematicians tell us that the shortest distance between two points is a straight line. Those mathematicians have never been to Japan. Traveling a straight line from one village to another may necessitate scaling a mountain, fording a river, and plodding through a sodden rice paddy. Nevertheless, for people wanting to avoid any contacts on the road, this may be the way to go. There are no check stations in the wilderness, just an occasional hamlet or isolated shrine, temple, or farmer’s hut.

There are no inns in the wilderness, no food stalls, no kago-bearing horses. Travel is at its most difficult in the wild, but it’s not all mountain and stream. The only respite for travel in this mode is an occasional cave, a small hamlet found by chance, or the odd isolated commoner’s hut. Some farmers are willing to put up strangers, especially ones who look important. More than one Japanese horror story begins with a lone traveler in the wild seeking a night’s refuge in a lonely farm house, only to find—to his short-lived regret—that the owner is not a little old lady, or a simple farmer couple...

LAKES AND RIVERS

Travel down rivers or across lakes is typically controlled by local officials, who sell licenses to ferry operators. One can try to obtain passage on such a craft, in which case whatever fees demanded must be paid, or one can try to find a boat somewhere else. The actual ferry operators, pilots, and sailors are all bonge, but they might report to a low-ranking bushi from the local clan. Such craft are typically slow and ungainly, and will be carrying cargo as well as a handful of paying passengers. They are low and square in profile, with blunted bows and sterns.

Smaller water craft are sculled. Unlike the West, which rows with pairs of oars (one on either side) of the craft, Japanese boats have a single broad oar attached to the stern. The person sculling stands in the stern and maneuvers the oar to propel the boat. It is a difficult skill to learn, and those who don’t know how to scull will only succeed in bobbing the craft about aimlessly in the water.

SEA

There are many ferry routes in operation between Japan’s three major islands and major ports and cities on those islands. During times of a strong central government, shipping and passenger traffic is governed and overseen by a government bureau. Otherwise, local daimyō control it (which can get interesting when ferry or shipping routes touch on several fiefs). Sometimes a local criminal syndicate will control shipping and smuggling goods in addition to taking regular paying fares. In such cases, the syndicate or their officers will either have to bribe or be in the service of a daimyō somewhere, as they will need a base of operations.

Fishing boats are small, with only one or two men in the “crew,” while coastal junks have a crew of eight or 10. The largest cargo ships usually have a crew of 20. Daimyō also have large galleys they use for rapidly transporting men and material (examples of this ship appear in the films Shōgun and Lone Wolf & Cub).

A final form of boat is the warship, of which there are several varieties and sizes. These will be treated elsewhere, as their use isn’t related to travel per se.

Trade Routes

Merchant ships carrying trade cargo often take on board passengers as well. Few are the boats that cater exclusively to passengers. Merchant boats travel familiar routes along the coast and inland waterways of Japan, occasionally stopping at small islands to drop off or pick up goods and passengers. Stops are made at least once a day at coastal towns, and even small villages along the coast are likely stops for these boats. Below are some common trade routes used by merchant vessels.

The Osaka-Shimoda route travels west through the inland sea, an area known for pirate activity, and east to the city of Edo. An important port of call on this route is the port town of Shimoda.

The Tsuruga-Ōsaka route connects the port towns of Tsuruga and Obama via an overland route to the northern end of Lake Biwa. From there, travel continues by boat across the lake and down the river to Ōsaka.

The Chōshi-Edo route follows the inland waterways from the city of Chōshi northeast to Edo.

The Fushimi-Ōsaka route connects the town of Fushimi, located 2 ri south of Miyako, with Osaka. This route is used heavily by travelers between these two cities, who prefer it to walking the overland route.

In crossing rivers one should always engage a wading coolie, for if you grudge the expense or think you are an expert in the water and cross without one, and your horse falls and the luggage gets wet and perhaps a servant is injured, you will look very foolish.

— Daidōji Yūzan
RELIGION
Japan is the land of eight million kami. This doesn’t count the number of Buddhist deities added to the mix. The two main faiths are Shintō and Buddhism, but in the 1540s, Christianity was introduced to the country and has started to make slow headway in some areas.

The Japanese do not worship a single particular deity. One will not find a Japanese who only worships Hachiman, or who only worships Amaterasu. The Japanese revere all the gods, holding them in equal esteem. Even priests at a particular shrine dedicated to a particular kami will pray to all the kami (and even, likely, the Buddhas). Only the staunchest of Buddhist and Shintō adherents—and these are few and far between, even among the ranks of the clergy—will worship only the deities of their particular faith.

One might say that in terms of faith and adoration, Japanese are equal opportunity worshippers.

The only exception, if it may be called one, is that some individuals and families may hold a particular deity in special reverence. For example, Hachiman, the god of war, is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto clan. Nevertheless, they do not worship this one deity to the exclusion of others.

**SHINTŌ**

Shintō is the native religion of Japan, indigenous to and extant on the islands before the arrival of Buddhism from the continent.

Shintō has no holy scripture, no moral precepts, no sins per se, no dogma, no concept of sin, no need for redemption or justification. It concerns itself more with man’s harmony with his universe and his fellow man. Part of this idea of harmony is the avoidance of pollution and the need for ritual purity. The various forces of nature themselves are deified. It is an agricultural religion, stressing fertility.

In Shintō, there are many things which cause pollution; any disease, contact with death, menstruation, and in some instances even sexual congress. Shintō promotes cleanliness and purity.

Before the Introduction of Buddhism, Shintō was inextricably linked with the Imperial family. The greatest shrines—Ise, Heian shrine in Miyako, etc.—were governed by children of the emperor. After the introduction of Buddhism, Shintō became more structured and organized, and the imperial family became more linked with Buddhism, although they still supplied the clergy for the key imperial shrines.

Although the introduction of Buddhism in 552 AD caused years of strife between adherents of Shintō and the new faith, it wasn’t long before the two religions were living side by side in a kind of synchronistic existence.

Shintō is the worship of kami, or gods. Not all gods are personified deities like Amaterasu or Susano-o, however. An ancient tree might be a kami, as might be a raging river, or even a phenomenal typhoon (witness the kamikaze, or spirit wind, which saved Japan from the Mongols in 1281).

**COSMOLOGY**

The first god was Ame no Minakanushi, who remained motionless in the center of all creation. He was followed by Takamimusubi, Kamimusubi, Umashiashikabihiko, Amaterasu, and these are few and far between, even among the ranks of the clergy—will worship only the deities of their particular faith.

One might say that in terms of faith and adoration, Japanese are equal opportunity worshippers.

The only exception, if it may be called one, is that some individuals and families may hold a particular deity in special reverence. For example, Hachiman, the god of war, is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto clan. Nevertheless, they do not worship this one deity to the exclusion of others.

**SHINTŌ**

Shintō is the native religion of Japan, indigenous to and extant on the islands before the arrival of Buddhism from the continent.

Shintō has no holy scripture, no moral precepts, no sins per se, no dogma, no concept of sin, no need for redemption or justification. It concerns itself more with man’s harmony with his universe and his fellow man. Part of this idea of harmony is the avoidance of pollution and the need for ritual purity. The various forces of nature themselves are deified. It is an agricultural religion, stressing fertility.

In Shintō, there are many things which cause pollution; any disease, contact with death, menstruation, and in some instances even sexual congress. Shintō promotes cleanliness and purity.

Before the Introduction of Buddhism, Shintō was inextricably linked with the Imperial family. The greatest shrines—Ise, Heian shrine in Miyako, etc.—were governed by children of the emperor. After the introduction of Buddhism, Shintō became more structured and organized, and the imperial family became more linked with Buddhism, although they still supplied the clergy for the key imperial shrines.

Although the introduction of Buddhism in 552 AD caused years of strife between adherents of Shintō and the new faith, it wasn’t long before the two religions were living side by side in a kind of synchronistic existence.

Shintō is the worship of kami, or gods. Not all gods are personified deities like Amaterasu or Susano-o, however. An ancient tree might be a kami, as might be a raging river, or even a phenomenal typhoon (witness the kamikaze, or spirit wind, which saved Japan from the Mongols in 1281).

**COSMOLOGY**

The first god was Ame no Minakanushi, who remained motionless in the center of all creation. He was followed by Takamimusubi, Kamimusubi, Umashiashikabihiko, Amaterasu, and these are few and far between, even among the ranks of the clergy—will worship only the deities of their particular faith.

One might say that in terms of faith and adoration, Japanese are equal opportunity worshippers.

The only exception, if it may be called one, is that some individuals and families may hold a particular deity in special reverence. For example, Hachiman, the god of war, is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto clan. Nevertheless, they do not worship this one deity to the exclusion of others.

Japan is the land of eight million kami. This doesn’t count the number of Buddhist deities added to the mix. The two main faiths are Shintō and Buddhism, but in the 1540s, Christianity was introduced to the country and has started to make slow headway in some areas.

The Japanese do not worship a single particular deity. One will not find a Japanese who only worships Hachiman, or who only worships Amaterasu. The Japanese revere all the gods, holding them in equal esteem. Even priests at a particular shrine dedicated to a particular kami will pray to all the kami (and even, likely, the Buddhas). Only the staunchest of Buddhist and Shintō adherents—and these are few and far between, even among the ranks of the clergy—will worship only the deities of their particular faith.

One might say that in terms of faith and adoration, Japanese are equal opportunity worshippers.

The only exception, if it may be called one, is that some individuals and families may hold a particular deity in special reverence. For example, Hachiman, the god of war, is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto clan. Nevertheless, they do not worship this one deity to the exclusion of others.

**SHINTŌ**

Shintō is the native religion of Japan, indigenous to and extant on the islands before the arrival of Buddhism from the continent.

Shintō has no holy scripture, no moral precepts, no sins per se, no dogma, no concept of sin, no need for redemption or justification. It concerns itself more with man’s harmony with his universe and his fellow man. Part of this idea of harmony is the avoidance of pollution and the need for ritual purity. The various forces of nature themselves are deified. It is an agricultural religion, stressing fertility.

In Shintō, there are many things which cause pollution; any disease, contact with death, menstruation, and in some instances even sexual congress. Shintō promotes cleanliness and purity.

Before the Introduction of Buddhism, Shintō was inextricably linked with the Imperial family. The greatest shrines—Ise, Heian shrine in Miyako, etc.—were governed by children of the emperor. After the introduction of Buddhism, Shintō became more structured and organized, and the imperial family became more linked with Buddhism, although they still supplied the clergy for the key imperial shrines.

Although the introduction of Buddhism in 552 AD caused years of strife between adherents of Shintō and the new faith, it wasn’t long before the two religions were living side by side in a kind of synchronistic existence.

Shintō is the worship of kami, or gods. Not all gods are personified deities like Amaterasu or Susano-o, however. An ancient tree might be a kami, as might be a raging river, or even a phenomenal typhoon (witness the kamikaze, or spirit wind, which saved Japan from the Mongols in 1281).

**COSMOLOGY**

The first god was Ame no Minakanushi, who remained motionless in the center of all creation. He was followed by Takamimusubi, Kamimusubi, Umashiashikabihiko, Amaterasu, and these are few and far between, even among the ranks of the clergy—will worship only the deities of their particular faith.

One might say that in terms of faith and adoration, Japanese are equal opportunity worshippers.

The only exception, if it may be called one, is that some individuals and families may hold a particular deity in special reverence. For example, Hachiman, the god of war, is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto clan. Nevertheless, they do not worship this one deity to the exclusion of others.

Japan is the land of eight million kami. This doesn’t count the number of Buddhist deities added to the mix. The two main faiths are Shintō and Buddhism, but in the 1540s, Christianity was introduced to the country and has started to make slow headway in some areas.

The Japanese do not worship a single particular deity. One will not find a Japanese who only worships Hachiman, or who only worships Amaterasu. The Japanese revere all the gods, holding them in equal esteem. Even priests at a particular shrine dedicated to a particular kami will pray to all the kami (and even, likely, the Buddhas). Only the staunchest of Buddhist and Shintō adherents—and these are few and far between, even among the ranks of the clergy—will worship only the deities of their particular faith.

One might say that in terms of faith and adoration, Japanese are equal opportunity worshippers.

The only exception, if it may be called one, is that some individuals and families may hold a particular deity in special reverence. For example, Hachiman, the god of war, is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto clan. Nevertheless, they do not worship this one deity to the exclusion of others.

Japan was created by the gods Izanagi and Izanami, who were husband and wife. They descended from heaven on a bridge called Ukiyoshi. Izanagi dipped his spear into the primordial ooze that was the Earth, and withdrew it. The drops that fell formed the island called Onokorojima, which became the home of the two gods. (Campaign idea: no one knows where Onokorojima is, but there are several islands near Awaji that claim the honor.)

At first, the result of their sexual union wasn’t more gods: it was islands (and no, we’re not making this up). The first eight island-children were Awaji, Shikoku, Kyūshū, Oki, Sado, Ikeshima, Tsushima, and Honshū. Next to come were Kibikojima, Azukishima, Ōshima, Himeshima, Chikashima, and Futagoshima.

The next children were indeed gods, and a nearly infinite number of them: the gods of water, of the winds, of trees, of mountains, thunder, food, rain, rivers, roads, fires, etc. The god of fires was the last child to be born. His birth caused the death of Izanami. Izanagi, distraught, beheaded the child-god in revenge, and repaired to Yomotsu no Kuni (the Land of Shadow) to beg Izanami to return. The horror of Izanami’s decomposed body sent him back to the world of light. To purify himself from the pollution of death, Izanagi washed his garments, and from the washings came a further 26 gods. Amaterasu Ômikami, the goddess of the sun and ancestor of the imperial line, was born from his left eye. Tsukiyomi no Kami, god of the moon, was born from his right eye. From his nose was born Takehaya Susano-o no Mikoto (usually called Susano-o), god of the earth.
The earthly domain of Amaterasu, called Takamagahara, is the Yamato/Izumi region. Tsukiyomi’s realm of Unabara is identified as the Ryūkyū Islands (Okinawa) or Korea. Susano-o’s Amegashita is the Bizen/Bitchū area of Honshū.

After this, Izanagi retired to Hi no Waka no Miya. Amaterasu sent her grandson Ninigi no Mikoto to rule Japan, and Jinmu Tennô, the mythical first emperor, was Ninigi’s great-grandson.

Susano-o went to visit Amaterasu in her domain, but his behavior so offended her that she retreated to a cave and vowed never to come out, plunging the world into dark. The gods held a conference to see what to do. One made a mirror, another fashioned jewels, and one made a rope; a goddess sang and danced at the cave entrance, enticing Amaterasu to the cave mouth to see what was going on. She saw her reflection in the mirror and stepped out of the cave, and the mouth was blocked by the rope so she couldn’t go back in. Susano-o was banished to Izumo for his naughty behavior.

The earthly domain of Amaterasu, called Takamagahara, is the Yamato/Izumi region. Tsukiyomi’s realm of Unabara is identified as the Ryūkyū Islands (Okinawa) or Korea. Susano-o’s Amegashita is the Bizen/Bitchū area of Honshū.

After this, Izanagi retired to Hi no Waka no Miya. Amaterasu sent her grandson Ninigi no Mikoto to rule Japan, and Jinmu Tennô, the mythical first emperor, was Ninigi’s great-grandson.

Susano-o went to visit Amaterasu in her domain, but his behavior so offended her that she retreated to a cave and vowed never to come out, plunging the world into dark. The gods held a conference to see what to do. One made a mirror, another fashioned jewels, and one made a rope; a goddess sang and danced at the cave entrance, enticing Amaterasu to the cave mouth to see what was going on. She saw her reflection in the mirror and stepped out of the cave, and the mouth was blocked by the rope so she couldn’t go back in. Susano-o was banished to Izumo for his naughty behavior.

THE PRIESTHOOD

Priests in general are called kannushi or shinkan. The head priest of a shrine is a gūji, while his assistants (also priests) are called gon-gūji. Lower level priests are called negi, and their assistants are called gon-negi. If there is only one priest at a shrine, he is still the gūji.

Shintō clergy are strict vegetarians.

Before any structure is built, the ground must be consecrated by a Shintō priest (by casting the Bless Land prayer; see Magic, page 237). Not to do so is believed to invoke the wrath of the gods, and guarantees bad luck for the new structure and those who dwell in it or use it. The service has been described in some sources as introducing the structure to the local deities.

Priests of smaller shrines may be only part-time clergy, living in the local area and even having an occupation as an artisan or craftsman of some sort, and officiating or serving in the shrine as required.

Clergy will celebrate births (but not until ritual purity has been re-established), weddings, building consecrations, etc. They will not celebrate a funeral, as that is beyond the pale of their purity-based, pollution-avoiding faith.

Priesthood is hereditary, although there is nothing to stop someone from a non-priestly family from becoming a priest.

For additional information about Shintō priests, see Magic (page 233).

Pollution

Minor Pollution (-1 PIE each)
- Attend a funeral
- Eating meat
- Speaking ill of or otherwise offending any kami
- Present at any birth
- Close proximity to death (i.e., a corpse), blood or disease
- Any interference with agriculture/crops

Major Pollution (PIE to 0)
- Defiling a shrine
- Contact with death (i.e., any corpse), blood or disease
- Menstruation
- Contracting a disease
- Critically failing a spell-casting skill check

Shintō Shrine ML (2 OP per level)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Initiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Gon-negi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Negi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Gon-gūji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Gūji</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SHRINES

Shrines (called jinja or jingū) range from huge and important installations such as the Ise Grand Shrine to the very small and almost unnoticed shrines on random street corners.

These small shrines, taking up less space than a twentieth-century mailbox, dot the land (although they are more frequent in towns) and can often be encountered in the mountains and in the woods. Structurally, these tiny shrines look like full-sized buildings, with roofs and doors, and even a small torii in front. Offerings are often left in front of them—an orange, some rice balls, a small jar of sake. More than one starving traveler has survived by taking the food offered at such a shrine (something which is nevertheless frowned on). If one were to open the doors, the shrine might be found to contain a small mirror or a bead necklace, in homage of two of the great imperial treasures; a very rare shrine might contain a small sword in homage of the third treasure. Mirrors are the most common item.
In addition to the small model shrines and the larger shrine complexes, a “shrine” might be an ancient tree, an oddly shaped rock, or even a mountain stream.

The most singularly recognizable aspect of Shinto architecture is the torii, a gateway to a shrine or other sacred Shinto precincts. A torii is made of two vertical uprights holding up a long lintel that extends beyond the vertical supports on both sides. Some are painted red, others left their natural wood tone. Other signs of sacred territory is a thickly braided rope (shimenawa) stretched around or across something being honored (such as the natural “shrines” mentioned above, the work area of a swordsmith, and so on). Pendant from this rope can often be found zigzag folded paper streamers. inside shrine precincts may often be found several of the smaller shrines, as well as an ancient tree identified as sacred with its rope marker.

Shinto architecture lines up on an East-West axis. Buildings in Shinto complexes are regularly torn down and rebuilt (usually on a 20-year cycle), and the rebuilding of some of the more famous shrines—like Ise—becomes almost a national festival.

Most shrines have a stall selling small wooden plaques with pictures on one side. These plaques are called ema, and worshippers buy one, write a “petition” (essentially a prayer) on the reverse, and hang it on a frame or tree. Unlike in Western cities, it is perfectly acceptable—even expected—to share your wish with other people.

Worshippers at a shrine will approach the main building, throw some coins into the offering box (this is to help “influence” the kami to grant the person’s petition, and also helps fund the upkeep of the shrine), tug on a large rope attached to a bell, clap twice (these last actions are to attract the attention of the kami), pray, then bow and leave.

Small pieces of paper (omikuji) that predict your future are also available. These papers are tied around a tree branch, after reading, to make the good fortune come true or to avoid the predicted bad fortune (some crafty people also use these as a covert way of exchanging messages to people who don’t wish to—or are unable to—meet face to face).

“In reverence and awe: The great kami of the purification place who came into existence when the great kami Izanagi deigned to wash and purify himself on the plain of Ahagi [east] of Tachibana [near] the River Wotô in Himuka in Tsukushi, shall deign to purify and deign to cleanse whatever there may be of sins and pollutants committed involuntarily or deliberately by the officials serving here today. Listen ye to these my words. Thus I say reverently...”

— Beginning of the Shinto Purification prayer

Atsuta Jingû
One of the most important shrines in all Japan. One of the three sacred treasures, the Kusanagi no Tsurugi (Grass-Mowing Sword), resides here. It is from Atsuta that Nobunaga set out against Imagawa Yoshimoto. (Nagoya, 3rd c.)

Ise Jingû
Ise is the most important shrine in all of Japan. Consists of an outer and inner shrine. The outer shrine honors the goddess of the harvest, the inner honors Amaterasu. Two of the imperial treasures, the jewels and the mirror, are housed in Ise. (Ise, foundation date uncertain.)

Izumo Taisha
Okuninushi is enshrined here. During the tenth month (Kaminazuki), all the kami repair to Izumo Taisha to visit him, making Izumo the only place where kami can be found that month. (Izumo, foundation date uncertain.)

Kasuga Taisha
3,000 stone lanterns (all are lighted only once in February and in August) line the pathway to the main building. (Nara, 710.)

Kirishima Jingû
This shrine on Kyushu is dedicated to Ninigi no Mikoto. (Kirishima, foundation date uncertain.)

Kotohira-gû
Also called Konpirasan. This shrine on Shikoku is particularly revered by seafarers and other travelers. The deity enshrined is viewed as Okuninushi (under the name of Onamui), Shinatsuhime, or Susano-o. It is halfway up a mountain (Zozusan) at the end of a 785-step stairway—takes 1 hour to climb. (Kotohira, foundation date uncertain.)

Tsurugaoka Hachiman-gû
Built at the order of Minamoto no Yoritomo, the Tsurugaoka Hachiman-gû enshrines the war god Hachiman, the tutelary deity of the Minamoto. Its relationship to the Minamoto, and the tragedy of Yoshitsune, is the reason for its great popularity. (Kamakura, 1180)

THE PANTHEON
Japan has been called the land of eight million kami. It should come as no surprise that we have no intention of listing them all here. Most don’t have names, anyway, and never answer their mail. This list is therefore merely representational.

Amaterasu Ōmikami: Goddess of the sun and ancestress of the emperor. Child of Izanagi and Izanami. The Grand Shrine at Ise, Japan’s most important Shinto site, is dedicated to her.

Ame no Minakanushi: Creator of the universe. Dwells motionless in the center of all creation.

Inari: Goddess of rice (and hence of wealth). Her shrines are guarded by kitsune (fox) statues, and she is often depicted as a fox.
IZANAGI: God who created the first Japanese island. Descendant of Minakanushi in the 16th generation. He also generated many of the kami that live in Japan. Husband of Izanami, he is “retired.”

IZANAMI: Goddess who gave birth to the Japanese Islands and many of the kami. Descendant of Minakanushi in the 16th generation. She died and now dwells in Yomotsu no Kuni.

HOMUSUBI: The last child of Izanagi and Izanami. He was the god of fire, and his birth caused the death of his mother, for which his father beheaded him. This does not seem to have affected his ability to function as a deity.

KAMIMUSUBI: God who is one of the three creators of the world. An offspring of Ame no Minakushî.

KUNITOKOTACHI NO MIKOTO: First god of all. He is revered in Ōmi.

LOCAL KAMI: Also called “Kami of Place.” These are localized kami dwelling in (or existing as the divine force of) plants, rocks, rivers, trees, etc.

NINIGI NO MIKOTO: A grandson of Amaterasu. It was to Ninigi that the three sacred treasures were entrusted, and he was sent to take charge of Japan. Emperor Jinmu was Ninigi’s great-grandson.

OKUNINUSHI: Kami of healers and all medicinal arts. He is a descendant of Susano-o.

SHINATSUHIKO: Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime. They are twins, children of Izanagi and Izanami.

SUSANO-O NO MIKOTO: Brother of Amaterasu. Exiled to Izumo for his actions (he used to uproot trees, destroy harvests, cause fires, etc.) which insulted Amaterasu. He is revered by some as god of the sea, and others as god of the moon.

TAKAMIMUSUBI: God who is one of the three creators of the world. An offspring of Ame no Minakushî.

TSUKUYOMI: Goddess of the moon. She was born from the right eye of Izanagi, and is a sister of Susano-o and Amaterasu. She dwells in Unabara (identified as either Korea or the Ryūkyû Islands).

YOMOTSUKAMI: God of Yomotsu no Kuni, the Shintô underworld, also known as Yomi. Some identify him as Susano-o.

BUDDHISM

The Buddhist faith, which is called Bukkyô or Butsudô in Japanese, was introduced to the empire from Korean contacts in the sixth century when a Korean king sent statuary and sutras (in Japanese, keiten) as a gift to the emperor Kinmei. Dôshin and Tonei came shortly after and began preaching the new faith under the protection of Soga no Iname, who built the first temple at In Nara. The Mononobe and Nakatomi, staunch supporters of Shintô, opposed the new faith. A virtual civil war began and finally ended in 587 with the imperial recognition of Buddhism.

There are dozens of sects and sub-sects running the gamut of political and religious views.

Devout Buddhists believe in reincarnation and karma. The endless cycle of birth, death, and rebirth is man’s fate unless he can be freed from his karmic prison. The goal of the Buddhist is to lead a good life and be released from his woes and enter into Nirvana. To do this, one must reach satori (enlightenment). The way in which one reaches enlightenment varies from sect to sect.

The sacred scriptures, or sutras, reveal the teachings of Buddha. One of the primary duties of the Buddhist priest is to spread the teachings of Buddha through both preaching to lay people and setting a good example by living according to Buddha’s law.

THE PRIESTHOOD

Despite the terminology often used in the West, not all Buddhist clergy are monks, and not all temples are monasteries. What Westerners sometimes call monasteries are in fact temples with many, many resident priests (many Zen temples fall into this category). Some sects strongly encourage marriage for their clergy.

Buddhist priests are called sô or sôryô. The head priest in a temple, what Westerners mistakenly usually call abbots, are sôjô. Celibates—monks—are called bôzu. Nuns are called ama or bikuni. Warrior clerics are sôhei, although there are fewer of them in Sengoku Japan than there were in the 12th and 13th centuries, when just about every major temple had its own standing army.

A monk can’t fulfill the Buddhist Way if he does not manifest compassion on the outside and persistently store up courage within. And if a warrior does not manifest courage on the outside and hold enough compassion within his heart to burst his chest, he cannot become a retainer. Therefore, the monk pursues courage with the warrior as his model, and the warrior pursues the compassion of the monk.——Tannen, a Buddhist priest
Shugenja are Buddhist clerics adhering to a sect called Shugendō. They are the masters of Buddhist magic and mysticism. Buddhist clerics, both male and female, are required to shave their heads. This they usually do once every several weeks, so clergy often have a “five o’clock shadow” on their heads. Officially they are supposed to be vegetarians, as well, although if the only food available is meat they will eat it.

As many itinerant clerics subsist off begging, if they are given food containing meat, it is a lesser sin to eat the meat than it would be to refuse the charity or waste the food. Only the shugenja will avoid meat at all cost.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transgressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minor Transgression (-1 PIE each)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causing harm to any life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Committing adultery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lying or exaggerating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking abusively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Succumbing to greed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eating meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major Transgression (PIE to 0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Killing a living thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cursing or otherwise dishonoring the Buddhas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critically failing a prayer-casting skill check</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Buddhist Sect ML (3 OP per level)

- **10** Head of Sect
- **7** Elder priest
- **5** Sōjō (head priest of a temple)
- **3** Sō/Sōryō (priest of a temple), Ama/Bikuni (nun)
- **1** Initiate

### Temples

Temple are large complexes, unlike Shintō shrines. There may be a dozen or more priests in residence, who may or may not be married. Temples live tax free, often off of their farming land which is farmed for them by bōnge much as larger European monasteries in the middle ages had serfs on their land. Temples may be complex structures with subsidiary temple compounds within the walls of the main temple. Each temple sanctum will have a worship area and Buddhist statury. While shrines have torii marking their entrance, a great gate guarded by statues of warrior divas or shishi will open to a temple.

Of course the founding temples of the various sects will be very important to those particular sects. In addition, however, there are several temples which are well known all across the land and of great importance to Japan. The city of Nara (and much of the environs of Miyako) are virtually one huge complex of temples, so only the most critical of those will be mentioned.

**Byōdo-in**

Also called the Phoenix Temple. This picturesque Tendai sect temple was originally a Fujiwara villa. It sits out by a pond like a phoenix spreading its wings. (Uji, 1052.)

**Chion-in**

The seat of Jōdō Sect Buddhism. It is one of the largest and most famous temples in Japan. (Miyako, 1211.)

**Engaku-ji**

Built to honor those who fell repelling the Mongols in the thirteenth century. In the Kamakura Period, this Rinzai-zen temple was of major importance. (Kamakura, 1282.)

**Enryaku-ji**

The major temple on Hieizan, a mountain about 345 ri from Miyako. The vast temple complex is often referred to simply as Hieizan, or Mt. Hiei. It is the seat of the Tendai sect, and for centuries has maintained a large standing army of sōhei. At its height, there were 2,500 or more temples on the mountain. Nobunaga goes to war on them for siding with Asakura Yoshikage, and burns the entire complex to the ground and kills every man, woman, and child on the mountain in 1571. (Yamashiro, 788.)

**Hasedera**

Houses a 30-shaku-tall (about 10 meters) statue of an eleven-faced Kannon, the tallest wooden statue in Japan. (Kamakura, 733.)

**Hongan-ji**

Headquarters of the Jōdō Shinshū sect. In 1591, to curry favor with the sect, Toyotomi Hideyoshi greatly expands the main complex. (Miyako, 1272.)

**Kenchō-ji**

This was the most important temple in Kamakura—a center for training Zen priests. (Kamakura, 1253.)

Even if a man is a priest, it is useless to give him rank while he is under the age of forty.

---

— Anonymous I-Ching master
Kinkaku-ji
The Golden Pavilion. Originally a retirement villa for Shōgun Yoshimitsu, it is now part of the Rokun-ji. (Miyako, 1397.)

Kiyomizu-dera
This picturesque temple hangs partially over the edge of a cliff on the outskirts of Miyako. It is dedicated to the 11-headed Kannon. (Miyako, 780.)

Kotoku-in
Famous primarily as the site of the Daibutsu, the 37-shaku-tall (about 12 meters) bronze-cast statue of Buddha. It is second in height to the one in Tō-daiji. In 1495, the wooden building housing the statue was destroyed by a tidal wave. (Kamakura, 1252.)

Kōya-son
Like Hieizan, Kōya-son is a mountain full of Buddhist priests and monks, with occasional problems caused by their sōhei. Unlike Hieizan, Kōya-son in Kii retains the solemnity of a Shingon temple complex. Some have considered it the “capital” of Japan’s Buddhism. Two “eternal flames” have been burning in a support building since the eleventh century. Kōya-son is frequently the site of exile for persons of import, be they kuge or buke nobles. (Kōya-son, 816.)

Nanzen-ji
The buildings of Miyako’s most important Zen temple were all destroyed in the Ōnin War, and are being rebuilt during the last half of the 16th century. It was originally a villa belonging to Emperor Kameyama. (Miyako, 1264.)

Ryōan-ji
Site of the most famous sand/rock garden in the world. This Zen temple was designed for contemplation; from no angle (save the air) can a viewer see all fifteen of the stones, which look like small islands in a sandy ocean. (Miyako, 1473.)

Sanjūsangen-dō
The popular name of the Rengeo-in. It is so named for the long hall of 33 pillar spaces, 390 shaku by 33 shaku wide (about 130 by 11 meters). Archers used to have competitions to shoot an arrow the length of the hall without striking walls, ceiling, or floor. A wooden, 1,000-headed Kannon statue is the main item of reverence. (Miyako, 1164.)

Sensō-ji
Also called Asakusa Kannon. Edo’s oldest and most famous temple. A statue of Kannon appeared near the spot in a fisherman’s net in 628, and this was taken as the sign to erect a temple to her. The shop-lined street leading up to the temple is famous in Edo. The main entrance, Kaminari Mon (Thunder Gate), is guarded by fierce images of the gods of thunder and wind. (Edo, 645.)

Shinshō-ji
Shingon temple dedicated to Fudō, a statue of whom is the object of veneration. When Taira no Masakado revolted, the intervention of Fudō is given credit for his defeat. The statue originally had been at another site, but in a dream Fudō told the abbot that he wanted to stay in the area, so Emperor Shujaku had the complex expanded. In the temple treasury is a sword said to cure insanity and possession by touch. (Narita, 940.)

Shoren-in
Also called Awata Palace. This is the residence of the head of the Tendai sect. The position is so important, the head of the sect is almost invariably a member of the Imperial family. The garden, by Sōami, is one of the most famous in Japan. (Miyako, 1263.)

Tō-daiji
The main hall of Tō-daiji is of the most famous buildings in the world. The Daibutsu-den holds the 54-shaku-tall (about 18 meters) statue of the Buddha. In 1567, the Daibutsu-den is burned down in a battle (the statue is undamaged) and will not be rebuilt for centuries. The temple is held by the Kegon sect. One support building, the Kaidan-in, is one of the most important ceremonial sites in Japan, and is the site of ordination of new priests. The Shōsō-in, the world’s most famous store and treasure house, is on the Tō-daiji grounds. (Nara, 752.)

Tōshō-daiji
This temple, virtually unique among the ancient temples of Japan, has never encountered fire or earthquake, and the original buildings still stand. The Ko-dō was formerly part of the Imperial palace in Nara, and is the only surviving relic of Nara palace architecture. (Nara, 718.)

Yakushi-ji
Temple dedicated to Yakushi Nyōrai. Yakushi-ji is a close neighbor of Tōshō-daiji. The temple is also called the Heavenly Palace, and has enjoyed the patronage of several emperors. (Nara, 718.)

Zuigan-ji
Zuigan-ji is the most important Zen temple in northern Japan. On the rocky cliff face are carved many images of the Buddha; it is part of the training of novices to carve the reliefs. It is important to the Date family, who rule the area. (Matsushima, 827.)

THE PANTHEON
Japanese Buddhism recognizes the Buddha as the “major deity” in their faith, but there is also a large number of other deities—some borrowed from Shintō, some from the continent—who also play a part. There are actually several Buddhás (Nyōrai) in the Japanese pantheon.

Meeting with people should be a matter of quickly grasping their temperament and then reacting appropriately... especially with extremely argumentative people. After yielding considerably one should argue them down with superior logic, but without sounding harsh, and in a fashion that will allow no resentment to be left afterwards.

—Anonymous priest
Groups

Bosatsu: Those who were once human and are one step away from achieving Buddha-hood, but refuse to enter paradise in favor of remaining here to help man are called bosatsu (bodhisattvas). Particularly important ones are called daibosatsu.

Go Chi: The Five Buddhists of Contemplation. They are Taho, Yakushi, Dainichi, Askuku, and Shaka.

Myô-ô: The Buddhas—the Nyôrai—are not allowed to undertake any actions of violence. When violence must be done to maintain order in the universe, it is undertaken by the Myô-ô. Myô-ô are deities of great power and incredible stature. They can level buildings, uproot trees, and carve trenches in the ground. When they appear, they are huge, muscled, armored warriors with fierce visages, and wielding two-edged swords.

Nyôrai: A Buddha, one who has achieved enlightenment.

San Senjin: The Three Gods of War are Marishiten, Daikokuten, and Bishamonten. They are depicted as huge warriors clad in Chinese armor, or as a single warrior with three heads and six arms, riding on a wild boar.

Shi Daitennô: The Four Heavenly Kings protect the four corners of the world from evil demons. They are depicted as warriors clad in Chinese armor. They are Jikoku, Kômoku, Tamon (or Bishamon), and Zôchô.

Buddhist Deities

Amida: Buddha as master of paradise in the Pure Earth of the West. He is revered especially in Jôdô Sect Buddhism.

Dainichi Nyôrai: One of the persons of the Buddhist trinity, Dainichi represents wisdom and purity. He is the cosmic Buddha, and is often identified with Amaterasu. He is one of the Five Buddhists of Contemplation.

Enma Ô: The judge of the dead and overseer of the Buddhist hells. King Enma’s job is to determine the fate of a dead soul. There are three options: returning to the world as some form of ghost (to pay of a karmic debt or fulfill some unfinished action); spending a certain time in one or several of the various torments of hell to burn off bad karma; or being reborn. (Those who’ve earned paradise don’t stop off in hell.)

Fudô Myô-ô: Fudô is a deity empowered to combat devils. He is represented as surrounded by flames, holding a sword in his right hand and a rope to snare evildoers in his left. He always has a fierce expression on his face.

Hachiman Daibosatsu: Hachiman was originally the emperor Ôjin, son of Empress Jingû. He was deified as a great bodhisattva (daibosatsu) as the god of war, and is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto.

Jikoku: One of the Great Heavenly Kings. He watches over the east.

Jizo: Jizo is the patron deity of travelers. Small stone statues of him, also called jizo, can be seen at the sides of roads everywhere. Sometimes they are very crude. He is depicted as a bôzu with a gem in one hand, and a pilgrim’s staff (a long staff with rings at the head) in his other hand. He is also a patron of children and pregnant women. Sometimes, jizo are erected at the sites of the death of a child. He is especially popular with bonge.

Kannon Daibosatsu: The Buddhist goddess of mercy. She is the assistant of Amida. Various “forms” of her are worshipped, and there are statues of 11-headed or 1,000-headed Kannon, etc.

Kômoku: One of the Great Heavenly Kings. He watches over the west.

Marishiten: The “Queen of Heaven.” She is depicted as having eight arms.

Tamo Nyôrai: A Buddha. He is one of the five Buddhists of Contemplation.

Tamon: Tamon is another name for Bishamon. As one of the Great Heavenly Kings, he protects the north. See below under Seven Lucky Gods, under Ryôbu Shintô.

Yakushi Nyôrai: One of the Buddhas; goddess of wisdom. She is one of the Give Buddhists of Contemplation.

Zôchô: One of the Great Heavenly Kings. He watches over the south.

BUDDHIST SECTS

Most sects have subsets or branches, divisions of the main sect, which may or may not have differences from the umbrella sect. The different sects themselves are, while all Buddhist, not necessarily in agreement over dogma and articles of faith. It may be compared to the Western Christian churches. What is known in the West as the Eastern Orthodox Church has branches like the Serbian Orthodox Church, the Russian Orthodox Church, the Greek Orthodox Church, the Bulgarian Orthodox Church, the Orthodox Church in America, etc. All of these are branches of the same tree, and are unified in their faith.

The followers of the Hokke sect are often the most fanatic of all Buddhists. They stress the Three Great Secrets: adoration, law, and morals. The phrase “Namu myôho renge kyô” (“I take my refuge in the Lotus Sutra”) is the mantra of this sect, replacing the Nembutsu of Amida Buddhism. The doctrine they follow is the sutra containing the last instructions of the Buddha; the Lotus Sutra is their supreme scripture. Faith in the Lotus Sutra is shown by aggressively refuting other beliefs—even those of other Buddhist sects. The founder, Nichiren, said, “The Nembutsu is hell; Zen are devils; Shingon is a national ruin; and Rishshû are traitors to the country.” Persecution for this vigorous refutation is wel-
coned as expiatory of one’s sins, and is called “reading the Lotus Sutra with one’s body.” A follower of this sect is not supposed to even seek or accept help—monetary, food, whatever—from “heretics,” for such tolerance of heresy implies complicity in its teachings. In 1489, Hokke had half of Miyako as adherents, and Hokke was constantly being attacked by the sōhei of Hieizan. After a series of attacks, Hokke lost its control over the capital, and persecutions by Oda Nobunaga have done much damage to the sect. The hard-liners are the Fujiu-Fuse branch.

**Hossō**

Hossō was founded in 657 by Chitsû. There are two divisions of Hossō: Nanji-den, and Hokuji-den. The original seat was Genkō-ji in Settsu.

Hossō came from China. It emphasizes workings of consciousness and its interrelationship with the environment around one.

**Ikkō**

(Later to be called Jōdō Shinshū, or True Pure Land.) The Ikkōshū was founded in 1224 by Shinran. There are nine divisions: Hongan-ji, Takada, Bukkō-ji, Kōshō-ji, Kibe, Senshō-ji, Chōsei-ji, Jōshō-ji, and Gōshō-ji. The original seat was Hongan-ji in Miyako.

Ikkōshū has definite political goals as well as spiritual ones, so it was often the object of hostility from various daimyō over the years. Adherents were even able to create an autonomous theocratic region in Kanazawa for about 100 years after defeating the local daimyō. They waged an 11-year-long battle against Nobunaga in Ōsaka.

Ikkōshū teaches that nothing a man does—good deeds, prayer, becoming a monk—can gain him salvation. Rather, salvation is a gift of the mercy of Amida Buddha. It is one of the most prosperous and populous sects. This sect preaches the importance of families, and de-emphasizes monasticism. Its hierarchs are all members of the warrior class, for they offered names using either characters for Ami or Da, and women add “Ichibō” (“One Buddha”) to their names. Ji found support among the warrior class, for they offered ordinary funerals as well as services for battlefield deaths. Ji is unique among Pure Land sects for worship of Shintō deities, as it identifies them as manifestations of Amida Buddha. Jishū retinues of daimyō became models for guilds of artists and esthetes (many members are prominent in the arts and literature). Jishū may have been the leading Pure Land sect, but the chaos of the late sixteenth century is causing it to fall, as it is too closely tied to the old order, and adherents are shifting their alliance to the rising Ikkōshū.

**Jōdō**

Jōdō was founded in 1175 by Hōnen. Jōdō (Pure Land) concepts originated in China, but never really caught on there. It became popular in Japan during the thirteenth century and under men like Hōnen and Jakuen, where it attained independent status. There are five main branches, some of which have their own divisions: Chinzei (Shirahata, Fujita, Nagoshi, Obata, Sanjō, Ichijō), Seizan (Nishidani, Fukakusa, Higashiyama, Saga), Chōraku-ji, Kuhon-ji, and Ichinengi.

Jōdō is an Amidist faith; the adherents all seek rebirth into the Amida Buddha’s Western Paradise (the “True Land” of their name). In this world view, there have been many great savior Buddhas, each of whom rules a separate Buddha-land, and some of them are better than others, with Amida’s the most pure of all. His paradise is called Gokuraku (“Blissful”). The founders stressed the importance of repeating the Nenbutsu mantra, and it is believed that if one says it correctly just once, his salvation is guaranteed. Male members of the sect often take names using either characters for Ami or Da, and women add “Ichibō” (“One Buddha”) to their names.

**Kegon**

Kegon was founded in 735 by Dōsen. Its seat is Tō-daiji in Yamato.

The Kegon sect is ancient—one of the six Nara sects—but has grown less and less active, and their numbers are few. There are less than 100 Kegon temples in Japan. Their scholarship, however, is still highly regarded.

**Ritsu**

Ritsu was founded in 754 by Ganjin. Its seat is the Tōshō-daiji in Yamato.

By the Sengoku Period, it is on a serious decline. It stresses the ascetic disciplines. A variation of Ritsu manages to merge Ritsu’s studies with Shingon’s esoteric Buddhist doctrine.
Shingon

Shingon was founded in 806 by Kūkai. There are two divisions: Kogi and Shingi. The original seat is Tō-ji in Yamashiro. Shingon is a major Buddhist sect, one emphasizing esoteric Buddhist doctrines. No innovations of any significance have emerged in Shingon since Kūkai established the doctrines. Key elements are mandala-drawing and mantras: Shingon seeks to sanctify the world via magic. Faith in Shingon is based on wisdom and reason, to help man find out the origin of his soul. He has to purify his actions and achieve Buddhahood. Shingon venerates Amida as one of the Five Wisdom Buddhas, but the center of the faith is Dainichi Buddha, the center of the esoteric Buddhist mandalas. Kūkai saw Dainichi as the Six Great Elements (earth, water, fire, wind, space, and consciousness) combined with the three constituents (essence, attributes, and functions), and the four mandalas. Postures, mantras, and hand gestures are integral to Shingon meditation, “entering self into self so that the self enters into self.” The headquarters of Shugendō is a Shingon temple: Miyako’s Daigo-ji. This is a popular faith.

Tendai

Tendai was founded in 805 by Saichō. There are three branches: Sanmon, Jimon, and Shinjō. The seat is Enryaku-ji in Ômi. By following the three precepts of shunning evil, doing good works, and being kind to all beings (man and animal), all men are able to attain perfection. This is a popular faith. It teaches the “Lotus Sutra.” Their stronghold on Hieizan is the target of Nobunaga’s rage.

Yûzû Nenbutsu

Yûzû Nenbutsu was founded in 1123 by Ryōnin. Its seat is Sumiyoshi in Settsu. Its popularity is fading fast, but it was the first of the great Amida-worshipping sects. Yûzû began the Nenbutsu mantra.

Zen

Zen was founded in 1202 by Eisai. There are three divisions of Zen, some with their own branches: Rinzai (Kennin-ji, Rôfuku-ji, Kenchô-ji, Engaku-ji, Nanzen-ji, Eigen-ji, Daitoku-ji, Tenryû-ji, Myôshî-ji, and Shôkoku-ji), Fuke (Kisen, Kassô, Kichiku, Kogiku, Kozasa, and Umeji), and Sôtō. Its original seat was in Heiankyô.

Zen is not the most popular Buddhist sect, but it has an inordinate percentage of followers among the buke. Zen stresses “contemplation” and considering and knowing the self as a means of achieving Buddhahood. There is a saying that “Rinzai is for a general, Sôtō is for farmers.”

SHUGENDŌ

Adherents are called shugenja or yamabushi. The founder is considered to be En no Gyôja (En the Miracle-man), a quasi-legendary figure from the 8th century. If your SENGOKU game includes magic, then there is no doubt that En created Shugendō, and there is no doubt that they can do what they hope to do. In a chanbara or anime Japan, shugenja are masters of otherworldly magic, exorcists, and healers. Shugendō combines elements of Shintô—worship of certain locales, especially mountains, as sacred (if not divine)—with the doctrine, symbolism, and ritual of esoteric Buddhism like Shingon or Tendai, from which most shugenja come. The Shingon branch (Tôzan-ha) is based in Daigo-ji in Miyako, and the Tendai branch (Honzan-ha) is based in the Shôgo-in, also in Miyako. The difference between the branches is inconsequential.

The forerunners of the shugenja were the mountain hermits (hijiri) who took to the mountains to give themselves over to solitary asceticism, fasting, immersion in icy waterfalls and streams, and recitation of holy texts (e.g., the Lotus Sutra). They sought power to vanquish disease-bringing spiritual beings. They hoped to make themselves impervious to heat or cold, and enable their souls to travel betwixt heaven and hell in a form of astral projection. During the Heian Period, they organized into groups with prescribed rules of asceticism.

The rituals are strict secrets, and are not written down. All education and knowledge is transmitted orally only to disciples who have been initiated into the order. In game terms, only characters with a Membership in a yamabushi sect may study their mystic arts, without exception.

The principal ritual exercise is “entering the mountain” (mineiri), an ascent of a particular holy mountain at each of the four seasons. The climb is both symbolic (leaving the profane real world and climbing to the spiritual) and purposeful (to imbue oneself with power). Ascetic exercises are performed on the way up. The power gained enables the shugenja to subdue spiritual enemies, supernatural animals, and battle vengeful or discontented ghosts. The key mountains are Ôminesan (Kinbusen-ji, founded by En himself, is on the mountain, in Yamato), Köyasen (Katsuragi Shrine is on the peak, in Yamato), Ushiroyama (Bitchû), Daises (Hôki), and those around the triple-shrines of Kumano (Kii) and Dewa (Uzen).
Yamabushi temples are called yamadera and are located exclusively on sacred mountains. Yamabushi use the same Membership Level table as Buddhist priests, above.

The film *Men Who Tread on the Tiger’s Tail* gives an excellent look at yamabushi, as well as some of their prayers and mudra (mystic hand gestures).

Transgressions

Minor Transgression (-1 PIE each)
- Stealing
- Committing adultery
- Lying or exaggerating
- Speaking abusively
- Equivocating
- Succumbing to greed
- Avoiding hardship
- Refusing charity
- Wasting food

Major Transgression (PIE to 0)
- Cursing or otherwise dishonor the Buddhas
- Critically failing a prayer-casting skill check
- Eating meat

**Ryôbu-shintô**

Ryôbu-shintô is the doctrine that Shintô and Bukkyô are in fact the same religion.

In the early days of Buddhism in Japan, the greatest difficulty was getting the populace at large to worship any but their familiar Shintô deities and anywhere but shrines and other Shintô sites. In the ninth century, some in the Shingon sect, following the concept of ryôbu (two sides), suggested that the kami of Japan were actually localized manifestations (gongen) of Buddhist deities originally from India. This belief led to more or less of a merger between the two. Only Ise and Izumo—primarily due to their relationship with the Imperial family—maintained a pure Shintô outlook, while the rest of the Shintô establishment went in for Buddhist synchronicity, and much of the shrine properties were turned over to Buddhist clergy. Therefore, many temples have any number of small shrines in their complex.

It is partly because of Ryôbu Shintô and the domination of Buddhism that Shintô priests, while respected, don’t have the same social considerations that are given to Buddhist clergy.

It is also for this reason that some deities cross the line. For example, the so-called Seven Lucky Gods, whose origins are partly Chinese and Indian Buddhist, and Japanese Shintô. They appear under Ryôbu-shintô because they, more than anything else, bear witness to the synchronization.

Note that there is no Ryôbu-shintô priesthood. While lay people may claim a belief of base religions (as may the priests themselves), clergy must choose one faith or the other to which they dedicate their lives and gain the use of faith-based “magic.”

**SHICHIFUKUJIN: THE SEVEN LUCKY GODS**

The seven lucky gods are usually depicted together riding on a large treasure boat. They come in on the boat on New Year Day (Ganjitsu) bringing happiness and good fortune for the year, and so are often depicted on New Year’s objects.

**Benten:** This goddess is Indian in origin. She is depicted riding on a dragon and playing a biwa. She is particularly venerated on Enoshima. Benten (also called Benzaiten) is the goddess of love. She is also considered the goddess of eloquence, music, and wisdom.

**Bishamon:** This god of luck is also one of the three gods of war. He is depicted in Chinese armor and holding a spear or a small pagoda or both. He is also called Tamon, and is one of the four great kings of heaven who protect the world.

**Daikoku:** This is the god of riches and wealth (and farmers). He is depicted as a short, portly man sitting on bales of rice. He carries a large sack over his shoulder laden with riches, and carries a small magical mallet that either creates gold when it strikes or grants wishes, depending on who you listen to.

---

The man who shuts himself away and avoids the company of men is a coward. Only evil thoughts allow one to imagine that something good can be done by shutting oneself away. For even if one does some good thing by shutting himself away, he will be unable to keep the way open for future generations by promulgating the clan traditions.

— Ryôi, Buddhist priest
Ebisu: The third son of Izanagi and Izanami, Ebisu is the god of good food (and the patron deity of tradesmen and fishermen). He is depicted with a fishing line and a fish (a tai, or sea bream, to those planning a sashimi menu).

Fukurokuju: This god of popularity (although he is generally considered, like Jurōjin, also a god of longevity) is depicted as a bearded old man with his bald head rising like a shining dome. He often appears with a crane. He is the god of good health.

Hotei: This god of joviality and good times has a large, rounded belly. Originally, he was a monk in China in the 10th century, and thus the only human of the seven. He is considered by some the god of luck and chance.

Jurōjin: The god of longevity is depicted as an old man with either a stag, tortoise, or a crane beside him (these three being symbols of longevity). He carries a staff with a scroll of worldly wisdom tied to it.

CHRISTIANITY

Christianity is the religion of the Europeans, the nanbanjin who first came to Japan in the middle of the sixteenth century. Christianity teaches that there is one God with three persons: the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. The Son, Jesus the Christ, took on the body of a man and came to the world almost sixteen centuries ago. He was executed by the authorities for sedition and blasphemy, but He rose from the dead and His followers spread the faith. That faith now is the predominant—and virtually only—one in Europe and part of Asia. In Europe, the largest sect is that of the Roman Catholics, with their seat at the Vatican in Rome. The Pope is the head of the church.

The Christian Church in Japan is Roman Catholic. Some larger cities (like Miyako, Osaka, Nagoya, etc.) have churches, built with the permission and sometimes even the help of the local daimyō. There is a consideration that the daimyō are more interested in trading with the nanban than accepting and helping their religion grow, but that is not an issue with the missionaries, who only see opportunities to advance the faith.

JESUITS AND FRANCISCANS

The missionary work in Japan is in the hands of the Jesuits and Franciscans, although there is considerable rivalry. The Society of Jesus (or the Jesuit Order, The Order, or the Jesuits), a well-trained and elite corps of scholar-priests, are at the heart of the mission, and are concentrating their evangelism on the upper classes in the hope of spreading the faith from the top down. The Franciscans, on the other hand, are humbler, less well-educated, and more interested in working with the peasantry. The Jesuits view the Franciscans as interfering with their work, and often try to have the Franciscans exiled or removed to other provinces.

Most Jesuits in the country speak some Japanese and a few are even fluent, while only a few Franciscans have advanced language skills.

Jesuits wear saffron-colored habits to enable them to “fit in” better with the Japanese society (as saffron is regarded as a clerical color). The Franciscans scorn this idea, and continue to wear their humble hair-shirt robes.

PROTESTANTS

A sect in Europe has arisen in the past few centuries that is hostile to Rome’s one-man rule of the Christian church. They call themselves Protestants. The Protestants generally stress the concept of salvation by grace, considering the Roman requirements for good works and confession to be man-made additions to the faith. Not surprisingly, when members of the Protestant sect meet members of the Roman Catholic sect, arguments and hostility can break out.

Since Protestants are in the majority in Holland and England, it isn’t likely to become a problem in Japan unless an English or Dutch ship, perhaps one piloted by an Englishman, were to accidentally find itself in Japanese waters…

Sins

Minor Sins (-1 PIE each)
Stealing
Coveting (desiring) other people’s property
Dishonoring or disrespecting one’s parents
Succumbing to greed
Bearing false witness against someone

Major Sins (PIE to 0)
Murder
Committing adultery
Praying to other gods or their images/idols
Blasphemy (taking the Lord’s name in vain)
Heresy; speaking against the Church or Pope (Catholic/Jesuit only)

CHRISTIAN CONVERTS

The Christian missionaries have done some effective work. Many Japanese and even a small number of daimyō have actually become Christian, including one of the sons of Oda Nobunaga. While not all view the new, foreign faith with hostility, some view it with some suspicion and are likewise dubious of the motives and loyalties of those who have accepted baptism. Some daimyō are hostile to those in their clan who have expressed an interest in conversion, while a few are unconcerned. More than one daimyō has ordered an important retainer or two to convert in order to gain favor with the missionaries in the interest of trade...
and commerce. The missionaries may suspect this, but hope that a conversion—any conversion—can still effect positive results for their work.

Japanese who are baptized are given Christian names, which the missionaries use in referring to them and they use amongst themselves. The other Japanese still refer to them by their Japanese names.

Most of the converts are centered in Kyūshū and the southern half of Honshū.

There are several converts studying the faith with an interest in the priesthood, but there is not yet any sign that the church plans to ordain any to clerical office.

One of the things that make life difficult for converts is the ongoing hostility expressed by the Japanese authorities. Permission to proselytize has been given and retracted with monotonous regularity at all levels. Toyotomi Hideyoshi and Oda Nobunaga, when in charge, vacillated between support and repression of the foreign religion. If they could figure out a way to press foreign trade while prohibiting the religion, they probably would do so.

**PILGRIMAGES**

Devout adherents to both Shintō and Buddhism undertake pilgrimages from time to time. Pilgrims are supposed to walk (or take a boat when necessary), rather than ride horses or in palanquins. Pilgrims wear special garb and are readily identifiable regardless of rank or station. Part of the object of a pilgrimage is that all become equal in the efforts they exert.

A pilgrimage requires some effort, and usually is actually a linked event. For example, rather than go to a single temple somewhere, one might make a circuit of all the temples ringing Kyūshū, or the 33 temples of Kannon. Pilgrimages can be undertaken as a sort of expiatory quest, just as a simple act of devotion, or even to obtain something from the gods. For example, undertaking a pilgrimage to the 33 temples of Kannon, all in Miyako and the neighboring provinces, is believed to preserve one from condemnation to hell.

If one has purely religious motivations, one may gain the attention of one or more deities, gain Honor points, just make the GM happy, etc. It is up to the GM and the player whose PC is undertaking a pilgrimage to agree on the actual goals and ultimate ends and results of the pilgrimage. A suggested reward for pilgrimages is a number of Honor Points equal to the character’s PIE stat.

**FESTIVALS**

Festivals (matsuri) are largely Shintō in origin, although owing to Ryōbu Shintō the distinction may often be unclear, and they may even be celebrated at temples (which are related to or connected to shrines). Only a few are Buddhist in origin.

During festival times, stalls are set up near temples and shrines at which are sold small charms and amulets, inexpensive children’s toys, and festival “fast foods” like grilled noodles and rice cakes. **Bonge** really come into their own during festivals, for while the buke and kuge play their roles, it is really the bonge who dance about and sing and play, and it is largely they who pull the floats and carry the **o-mikoshi** (“sacred cars”—large, ornate, lacquered and gilded cabinets borne on poles). Festival music (**matsuribayashi**) is also common, performed mostly by amateur musicians from amongst the revelers.

There are basically two types of matsuri: the strictly local, and the national. As an example of the former, consider Miyako’s Gion Matsuri. As an example of the latter, we may look at the Tanabata Matsuri, which is celebrated from one end of the country to the other.

There are three parts to a typical matsuri. The **kami mukae** is a ceremony held in a shrine or other sacred place to welcome the kami to earth. The **shinkō** is the “main event” of the festival, and is the part of the festival when **mikoshi** are paraded through the streets and the crowds celebrate. The **kami okuri** is a closing ceremony performed to respectfully see the kami off to return to where he lives.

**POPULAR MATSURI**

A common sight at matsuri—especially Shintō matsuri—is processions of teams of laborers carrying **o-mikoshi** through the streets by teams of laborers chanting “wasshoi-wasshoi!” These **o-mikoshi** can weigh a great deal, and there is often rivalry (sometimes, one hopes, good-natured) between groups and shrines, and competitions to get through the streets can get rowdy.

**Gion Matsuri**

(Miyako) Although a month-long festival, the highlight is Yamahoko-junkō, on the 17th, when huge floats weighing over a ton are pulled through the streets by teams of sweating celebrants. It began in the 9th century. The festival’s fame has resulted in many others throughout Japan bearing the same name.

**Hina Matsuri**

(National) Also called “Girl’s Festival.” In houses with little girls, families set up displays of dolls representing an ancient imperial court. This is not a true matsuri in the sense that there is no great celebration.

**Izumo Taisha Jinjaisai**

(Izumo) During the 10th month, which is called Kaminazuki (the month without gods) in the rest of Japan, all the Shintō kami go to the Izumo Grand Shrine and visit with each other. During that month, and only in Izumo, the month is called Kamiiaruzuki (the month with gods). Several solemn events are held to honor and propitiate the assembled deities.

**Namahage**

(Regional; snow country) Men called **toshindon** dress as goblins, wearing full-body—covering straw rain capes, wigs, and fierce masks. The men carry pails and large kitchen knives, and go around from house to house threatening the children with the knives (talk about scarring someone’s psyche!) and admonishing them to be diligent, good children.

**Nebuta Matsuri**

(National) This pre-harvesting festival is held throughout Japan during the first week of August. The festival is to ward off
sleepiness, so that the work can’t be interfered with. Most local variations, like the Aomori, Hirosaki, and Kuroishi Nebuta, feature huge, lighted drums pulled through the streets at night.

O-Bon

(National) The Buddhist Festival of the Dead. As part of it, in Miyako, large characters are burned like giant bonfires (one character is 40 ken, or about 80 meters, wide) on the side of Nyoigatakeyama and other mountains to direct the souls of deceased ancestors after having returned to earth for O-Bon. Dances (Bon odori) are common during the evening hours, with large crowds circling the beating drums in a greatly seemingly choreographed Japanese line dance.

Ōmisoka

(National) Also called Gannetsu. On the last night of the year, it is customa r y to visit the neighborhood temple and shrine. At the temple, the bell (dotaku) tolls 108 times (called joya no kane), each bong wiping away one of the 108 sins to which people are heir. Bonfires on the temple grounds keep visitors warm. They are offered warmed amazake to drink, a sweet sake thick with lees, to keep out the chill. The year’s first visit to the shrine is called hatsumôde which means, not surprisingly, “first visit.”

Setsubun

(National) As winter begins to give way to spring, people go to shrines where local celebrities such as honored samurai or local sumô champions who were born in the same year of the tiger, or the dragon, etc.) cast beans from the shrine shouting “Oni wa sumô! Fuku wa uchi!” (“Demons out! Good luck in!”). People repeat this ceremony at their homes, casting beans into dark corners.

Sōma Nomaoi

(Sōma, in Mutsu) The Sōma clan have developed a tradition of using military exercises as a festival. They hold horse races with armor-clad riders, and the highlight of the three-day festival is when mounted warriors attempt to capture and cajole a wild horse along a narrow course to a local shrine. Colored streamers are fired into the air, and riders compete to be the ones to catch them, as the lucky rider gets the blessing of the kami, who watches the events from his o-mikoshi at the top of the hill.

Tanabata Matsuri

(National) According to a Chinese legend, the daughter of the Emperor of Heaven (she was called “the weaver” and lived east of the Milky Way) was betrothed to the ruler of the far side of the Milky Way, who was called “the herdsman.” They spent so much time on their honeymoon that they neglected their duties, so were condemned to be separated and allowed to meet only one night a year; the seventh day of the seventh month. Young girls hope the weaver will make them skilled at sewing, and help them find faithful husbands like the herdsman. It is believed that petitions to the deities made on this day will be granted inside three years. The festival is celebrated with drumming, dancing, drinking, and general festivities.

Tango no Sekku

(National) Also called “Boy’s Festival.” Families having male children will fly windsock pennants shaped like carp (hence the name koi nobori) from poles. They can be quite ostentatious, and are flown from peasant houses as well as the houses of great lords. Like the Hina Matsuri, it is not a true matsuri in the sense of community activity.

Taue Matsuri

(National) These festivals, celebrating the planting of rice and the invocation of the gods for a good harvest, are held throughout the fifth and sixth months. Different locales have their own traditions, but dancing, drumming, and elaborate costumes are common features.

Tenjin Matsuri

(Ōsaka Tenman-gû) This is one of Japan’s three biggest festivals. Parades of o-mikoshi are carried down the street, following which they are placed in boats and there is a parade of these boats along the Dōjima-gawa.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Festivals During the Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōmisoka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setsubun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hina M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kasuga M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tagata M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taue M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tango no S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takigi Nō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gion M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanabata M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O-Bon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sōma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nomaoi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenjin M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsukimi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nebuta M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Izumo Jin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namahage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

…existence is impermanent as the dew of evening and the hoarfrost of morning, and particularly uncertain in the life of a warrior, and if he thinks he can console himself with the idea of eternal service to his lord or unending devotion to his relatives, something may well happen to make him neglect his duty to his lord and forget what he owes to his family.

— Daidōji Yūzan
SOCIETAL STRUCTURES
Status is everything in Japan. The measure of a man is his station in life, from the lowliest eta to the divine Son of Heaven, the emperor himself. In Japanese society, every person is born into a certain caste, which more or less defines their entire life. Cultural acceptance (and samurai enforcement) have kept the caste system in place for over 1,000 years.

**THE IMPERIAL COURT**

The imperial court consists of the emperor, his wives and concubines, and his immediate children (and their wives, if his children are male; daughters are married off to kuge families and are out of the circle of the imperial court). A narrow circle of the highest officials, courtiers, ladies-in-waiting, and guardsmen also make up an extended body of the imperial court.

### Kuge Membership (4 OP per level)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Emperor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Imperial princely family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Regent/Minister of Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Minister of Right (or Left)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Grand Councellor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Middle Councellor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Councellor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Court Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Courtier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Member of kuge house</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE EMPEROR**

The emperor of Japan, the Son of Heaven, is a direct descendant of the goddess of the sun, Amaterasu Ōmikami. At least, that’s what everyone believes. Although he may even be to all outward appearances a Buddhist, the emperor’s divine ancestry can’t be doubted. This doesn’t make him inviolate; just highly respected. After all, if an emperor is a descendant of the goddess, his brother and son are, too; so what’s the difference if you remove the emperor and put one of them on the throne if they support your cause?

The emperor’s name is never used by any of his subjects. Rather, he is referred to as “His Majesty the Emperor” (Tennō Heika) and addressed as “Heika” or “Ue-Sama” (both mean “sire”). Even members of his family will usually use his title.

If he chooses, he may take the tonsure and “retire” to a remote palace estate that is perhaps all of five miles from the imperial palace. If he is strong enough, he can continue to govern anyway as a retired emperor, pulling the strings of his successor (or even his successor’s successor).

The emperor will likely never make an overt appearance in your game. If he does, it is a monumental occasion. He is more like the person in the background—his presence is acknowledged, people know about and talk about him, some people you interact with may have even interacted with him in the past—but for him to show up in person would be so rare as to be a noteworthy event.

---

*There is nothing that surpasses ruling with benevolence. If governing with benevolence is difficult, then it is best to govern strictly. To govern strictly means to be strict before things have arisen, and to do things in such a way that evil will not arise.*

— Tzu Ch’an
entered monasteries, devoting their lives to prayer; still others spent their whole lives scheming with various *daimyô kuge* houses to get themselves placed on the throne.

Sometimes it wasn’t the son scheming for power; it just as easily could be a jealous brother, even an uncle. More than one imperial father has come out of retirement to reassert control over an uncooperative son he’s put on the throne.

The concept of primogeniture, in which the oldest son inherits, is not in force in the imperial house, or anywhere else in Japan for that matter. While the eldest may inherit due to the fact that he’s been around the longest, the emperor can designate whichever of his sons he wants to follow him, as can any family head.

Imperial children—sons and daughters alike—are well educated, and speak in a stilted, rarefied form of Japanese. They might also read and write Chinese, and have considerable familiarity with the Classics. Most are likely to be considered “soft,” although more than a few had character and personal strength that surprised their contemporaries.

Imperial daughters are given in marriage to powerful *kuge* and *buke* families. Such a marriage is considered to be quite a coup, and the imperial princesses are considered prizes. Although their imperial status ceases the moment they marry, they still are family; and family connections can be more important than an imperial title.

**COURTIERS**

No royal court anywhere in the world has ever been able to function without the presence of sycophants, flatterers, officials, and supernumeraries. The court of the Son of Heaven is no different.

Most of the courtiers are mid-level *kuge* nobles. The truly high-ranking and powerful *kuge* are only likely to be in attendance if there is something they specifically need. By themselves they have more power than they could gain from fawning on the emperor. The lower-level *kuge* hope for assignments within the imperial palace which could bring them to the attention—and, they hope, into the favor—of the emperor.

Among the people at court are a few true friends of the emperor; but such friendship sparks jealousy, and that can be a dangerous thing, even in the rarefied atmosphere of the imperial palace compound. Even when the emperor is not present, the yards and buildings will be full of people milling about, having conversations, hatching plots. The Emperor’s presence is not required for his entourage to continue to function.

**LADIES-IN-WAITING**

Given the great number of women in the Imperial family, is to be expected that there is also a great number of professional companions for them. The ladies-in-waiting, like the imperial guard, all come from some of the finest *kuge* families in the capital. Many of them are married, and spend alternate weeks (or months) living in the palace and attending to their duties and at their own homes seeing to their husbands and families. It is a popular pastime for the various concubines and wives of the imperial house to try to match their single (and even their married) ladies-in-waiting with some of the handsome young guardsmen. Love affairs and broken hearts are a common occurrence in the inner palace.

---

*After reading books and the like, it is best to burn them or throw them away. It is said that reading books is the work of the Imperial Court, but the work of the House of Nakano is found in military valor, grasping the staff of oak.*

— Yamamoto Jinzaemon
There were traditionally four levels of Japanese society: samurai, merchant, artisan, and farmer. Or at least, such is the historical distinction in Japan. Note that this leaves out the clergy, the court nobles, the untouchables, and—yes—the ninja (called shinobi). Where do they fit?

Roughly, Japan’s society during the Sengoku Period can be divided into four categories, but they are different ones from the list above. The categories are: kuge, the court aristocracy; buke, the military aristocracy; bonge, the commoners, with their broad range of occupations and positions; and the hinin, or non-persons, such as eta and shinobi. Clergy, being as they are devoted to a higher calling, are out of the loop, so to speak. It is for that reason that a peasant who has become a monk may interact with an Imperial prince while as a simple peasant he would not have been able to do so.

A person was born into his caste, and would not ordinarily be able to move up or down the social ladder, but this is the Sengoku Period, where anything is possible. Toyotomi Hideyoshi, who ruled all of Japan for years until his death in 1598, was born a peasant and had been Oda Nobunaga’s sandal-bearer. Though his low birth did not allow him the office of Shôgun, he was still able to become the undisputed master of the buke. In a wonderful twist of irony, he was the one who declared that people would remain in the social classes to which they had been born.

Any member of a given caste automatically is superior to the highest ranking person in a lower caste. Officially, at any rate. For example, even the lowliest samurai foot soldier outranks the headman of a large peasant village on the social ladder; any buke, regardless of his status score, automatically outranks every bonge.

KUGE

Most of the kuge reside in or near the capital. By the sixteenth century, most have grown rather soft and effete, although some may still dream of past glories when kuge families like the Fujiwara ruled Japan. Although to a typical samurai there may be little difference between the lowest-ranked member of the aristocracy and the highest, the kuge can tell the difference and do things the other way around.

If a member of the kuge has an estate or domain he governs which is outside the narrow region of Miyako, he will invariably have someone assigned to manage it for him; usually a buke relation, or even a poorer kuge relation. Kuge living outside Miyako are considered to be sad cases, and depending on their reason are pitied (such as exiles), or dismissed out of hand (such as kuge who have taken up the way of the sword).

Even kuge who join the ranks of the clergy generally stay in Miyako, building their pavilions or temples there, settling there, staying “at home.” Wanderlust is not a common trait among the kuge. Something that is, however, is class-consciousness.

Kuge rank is determined by the color of their clothing, which gates they can use on entering and leaving the imperial palace compound (if, indeed, they can enter), and what duties they may have. Members of the imperial guard are culled from the ranks of the kuge, and they consider it an honor to be Guard of the Eastern Gate, or some similar title, even though buke may in fact support their security.

Due to the constant state of warfare, the social order in Miyako is not as secure as it once was. Kuge, while highly respected, are often nearly impoverished, having to live off the good will of buke families who support them in return for favors at court.

The extended Imperial family, with all its myriad webs of interrelated kinship, is at the top of the kuge pecking order, with the emperor himself at the pinnacle.

BUKE

Buke are to be found all over Japan. Many buke are in fact descended from kuge, and as has been said, the noblest houses—among them the Tokugawa, Takeda, and the Hôjô—are actually distant descendants of an emperor or two. The buke originally were soldiers, warriors whose job it was to maintain the social order, and often by fighting wars in the hinterlands against “barbarians.” They governed and guarded estates and domains belonging to the kuge absentee-landlords. Until the tenth century, at any rate. Now, buke are the de facto masters of Japan. There is still, however, an emperor in Miyako, and only he can assign the office of Shôgun. Of course, many buke want that office, so control of the capital is an important thing.

The irony is that with military rank comes civil rank; even the Shôgun has an Imperial court ranking—otherwise, he could not approach the emperor.

All buke need not be samurai. A member of a warrior house may take the tensure and enter a monastery. Many did. Some even became high-ranking members of their clerical calling while retaining control of their clans and even living in their own castles or estates. Takeda Shingen and Uesugi Kenshin are but two examples of these “laymen clergy.” It was also a common trait among buke to “resign from the world” in their old age, but some still would come out of monastic retirement to fight for their clan.

This, then, is the common thread of the buke: no matter what other calling the buke member has—he be a scholar, a priest, an artist of great repute, etc.—he is first and last a warrior. His skill with sword or bow may be at the level of a peasant farmer, but if he feels his clan threatened or if his duty calls, he will to war. On the other hand, the venerable retired monastic may have been one of the best swordsmen in all Japan; he just chooses another path.

Buke who have lost their clans or declared their independence may, of course, do what they will, but the world will always consider them warriors, regardless of what they do or where they go.

BONGE

Commoners hold such occupations as merchants, artisans, farmers, craftsmen, etc. The large majority of the population of any village or city is made up of bonge; contrary to popular opinion, not all the peasantry are tied to the land like serfs. Entertainers, doctors, courtesans, sailors, fishermen, the large majority of the Buddhist clergy—all come from the ranks of the bonge.

Craftsmen and farmers are actually rather highly regarded as commoners go. Merchants, however, are viewed with some disdain, as they do not themselves produce; rather, they function as middlemen, living off the labor of others. Of course, this view is not necessarily in keeping with reality, but it serves to show how the buke and the kuge viewed them. It is ironic that the merchants eventually became powerful and wealthy, as did the bourgeoisie.

Since it’s the samurai’s business to destroy rebels and disorderly elements and give peace and security to the three classes of the people, even the least of those bearing this title must never commit violence or injustice against these three classes. One should always be considerate to these people, sympathetic to the farmers on one’s estates and careful that artisans are not ruined.

— Daidôji Yûzan
Many hinin live in or near dried out riverbeds on the outskirts of town in little ghettos, and these people are known as kawaramono, or “riverbed people.” Kawaramono are members of the lowest social strata.

Kawaramono are scavengers, primarily, who barely manage to eke out their living. They are typically employed for removal of “night soil,” which they process and sell to farmers to use as fertilizer for a few zeni. Kawaramono are sometimes employed by inns and local shrines to deal with the removal of any dead or blood on the premises. Because the kawaramono are so poor, they must do anything they can to survive. Some have turned to acting or putting on public entertainment displays (acrobatics, etc.) where they live in the hopes of drawing a crowd which might be generous when the proverbial hat is passed. (For this reason, the word “kawaramono” is often used as a synonym—albeit a slightly pejorative one—for “actor.” Note that some of the most famous and affluent actors were from this caste.

In an odd twist of fate, some of the most famous landscape architects and gardeners in Japan are Kawaramono. Called sensui kawaramono, they find jobs as artisans designing, laying out, and working on the gardens of the rich and powerful. These people, though they are outcasts, work among the highest strata of society, but are not fully accepted by them no matter how much their work is respected and appreciated. They are tolerated and respected within the limits of what they do, but they are still social inferiors. (Consider the way the white establishment treated black entertainers in the early 20th century and you wouldn’t be far from the right idea.)

It is a fact that fish will not live where the water is too clear. But if there is duckweed or something, the fish will hide under its shadow and thrive. Thus, the lower classes will live in tranquility if certain matters are a bit overlooked or left unheard.

—Yamamoto Tsunetomo
THE BAKUFU

The bakufu is the military government; literally, the power behind the throne. At the top of this pyramid is the Shōgun, ruling from his palatial estate in the Muromachi district of the imperial city of Miyako. Surrounding him is an army of retainers, officials, and guards.

If the Muromachi bakufu was byzantine and complex, that of the Tokugawa a few decades later would be virtually incomprehensible. Mercifully, Sengoku doesn’t address the Edo Period, or this would be a much larger rule book than it is.

Depending on when your game takes place, there may not actually be a bakufu; the last shōgun of the Ashikaga house, Yoshiaki, was deposed by Oda Nobunaga in 1573, and Tokugawa Ieyasu was not granted that title until 1602. You may actually wish to play in a parallel Japan, where the Ashikaga bakufu never fell, or a “personalized” Japan where the bakufu is headed by an NPC the GM creates. It is up to you.

THE SAMURAI CLANS

This is where the power really lies throughout most of the Sengoku Period.

The lord of the clan is typically a daimyō, although daimyō are technically titles of feudal landholders, and not all clans held land under their own name. Still, during the Sengoku Period, the concept of daimyō is in flux; no one is certain how much land one must have to deserve the title. Under the tradition of subinfeudation, the head of the Honda clan, under the Tokugawa, are daimyō as is the head of the Tokugawa clan. Is not a samurai who holds a town in fief for the Honda, and who himself has a household of 20 samurai, a daimyō? Well, the issue is cloudy. Rather than argue over such points, in the Sengoku game, we will refer to the head of a clan as its lord or its daimyō, assuming the terms to be interchangeable.

Daimyō rule a fief that they hold from the Emperor (nominally, at any rate) through the bakufu. When there is no bakufu in charge, they rule their fief by right of tradition, heredity, or force. In Japanese, a fief is called a han, and it is usually referred to by who they rule themselves from their duties for long periods on a plea of illness, and in the end they will be of little service to the Asakura house.

9. On the choice of servants, cleverness is less important than other qualities in a servant. Honesty is important. Even a lazy fellow makes a good servant or messenger if he is of especially good appearance. But do not employ one who has neither good character nor good looks.

10. Do not treat as servants those who are not your servants.

11. Do not entrust confidential papers to a samurai from another province, unless it is unavoidable.

12. Do not allow other families to persuade persons with a special talent to leave your service, whether monks or laymen.

13. In preparing for battle, do not waste time selecting an auspicious day or correct direction.

14. Three times a year you should send honest and capable persons on a tour of inspection throughout the province. The should listen to the views of people of all classes and remedy errors in government. One of you [sons/heirs] ought sometimes to take on this duty, wearing a light disguise.

15. No castle or stronghold other than that of the ruler is to be built in the province. All important people must reside in Ichijōgatani (the castle town), and their estates are to be managed by bailiffs or servants.

16. When passing in front of monasteries, shrines, or dwelling houses, rein in your horse. If the place is pretty, praise it. If it is in poor condition, express your sympathy. This will have a good effect.

17. When judging lawsuits be completely impartial. If any wrongful act by an official comes to your notice, punish it severely.

Should a samurai hear any talk about his lord or should anything about him escape his own lips, if he is laying down he must spring up, and if he is sitting at ease he must straighten himself up, for that is Bushidō.

— Daidōji Yūzan
rules it, rather than where it is. Therefore, the Takeda han is the province of Kai, the Date han is Mutsu in the north.

STRUCTURE

The lord is, of course, the head of the clan. Below him he has a number of clan officials, called bugyô or tairô or karô or whatever term a given clan chooses to use, who may be family members (cousins, brothers) or trusted retainers who are the heads of their own sub clans. These offices are all “councilors.” One of these officials is the metsuke, the clan’s chief internal affairs officer. It is his job to see to it that nothing is amiss in the clan.

Below this level, but directly attached to the daimyô (rather than answering to the officials) are the koshogumi and the hatamoto. Koshogumi are special individuals attached to a lord’s entourage. They include physicians, clergics, special advisors, spymasters, strategists, etc. The hatamoto are specially exalted samurai retainers, who have general access to their daimyô and the right to come and go as they please. Hatamoto are also a sort of personal guard, if needed. Their very title means “foot of the banner” and reflects their position in camp when on campaign: at the lord’s side in the main headquarters.

Below the officials are the clan officers. Below them are the simple samurai, of varying levels (lesser officials, overseers, captains, and the rank-and-file). Below these are ashigaru (who, as we know, may or may not actually be buke).

<p>| Samurai Clan Membership &amp; Income Table (3 OP per level) |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ML</th>
<th>Income/Year</th>
<th>Examples of Rank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10,000+ koku</td>
<td>Daimyô/Lord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>2,000 koku</td>
<td>Councilors (bugyô, tairô or karô; may be head of sub-clan)²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1,000 koku</td>
<td>Metsuke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>500 koku</td>
<td>Hatamoto²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>200 koku</td>
<td>Koshogumi (individuals attached to a lord’s entourage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>100 koku</td>
<td>Clan Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>50 koku</td>
<td>Lesser Official</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>20 koku</td>
<td>Captain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10 koku</td>
<td>Samurai (rank-and-file)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5 koku</td>
<td>Ashigaru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A retainer’s income may be paid in koku, or in a like amount of bu-shoban. If a retainer has a fief this income comes from the taxes collected from the fief. If not a fief-holder, a samurai is likely to live in or near a garrison and receive a stipend of either koku from the clan’s rice stores or gold coin (bu-shoban) from the clan treasury.

2 These positions answer directly to the daimyô, and not to the Councilors or metsuke. In addition, they may seek a private audience with the daimyô without first going through the “chain of command” for permission, as do other retainers.

JOINING A CLAN

Becoming a member of a samurai clan is a great honor. It not only involves joining a family, but also confers samurai status to a buke, and elevates any bonge who is accepted into the clan to buke caste.

SHINOBI RYÛ AND CLANS

“To withstand hardship is the ninja’s duty. The ninja must forget about his family. That is our burden.”

— Ninja prayer

In Sengoku Japan, ninja are considered an unspeakable non-truth. That is, the average citizen, regardless of caste, believes that they exist but they have never seen a shinobi and certainly would never speak about them in public. Those that do speak about them do not call them ninja. Instead, they are called shinobi, a pronunciation of the first kanji character making up the word “ninja.” SENGOKU refers to the members of this profession as shinobi, in keeping with the “traditions” of the period. Coincidentally, shinobi also roughly translates as “stealth.” Thus, a ninja sword could be called a ninja-tô (“tô” meaning “sword”) or shinobi-gatana; they both mean the same thing. Many tools specific to the ninja have the term “shinobi” in the name.

Another terms used to refer to ninja is “kusa,” which means grass. They are so called because of their ability to disappear in tall grass or hide away from a target or adversary, and are nearly undetectable when so hidden.

Shinobi clans are modeled loosely after the samurai clans. Some clans hold widely diverging views; some seek to maintain a constant balance of power, some work for a single lord and will do anything to advance him and him alone, while still others sell their services to whomsoever will pay their prices. Some clans have strong rivalries against others, some are totally neutral and do not bother another clan unless first bothered, and others view other clans as compatriots and potential allies. In short, it runs the gamut.

The two regions most famous for the “production” of shinobi are the province of Iga and Kôga han in Ômi province. (Note that residents of the latter pronounce the name Koka, so that if a stranger is around, everyone will know it.)

| Shinobi Clan Membership (2 OP per level) |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 10 | Jônin (Ryû/clan head) |
| 5 | Chûnin (cell leader) |
| 1 | Genin (operative) |

For a detailed look at the history, traditions and philosophy of the shinobi, see SHINOBI: SHADOWS OF NIHON

A man is a good retainer to the extent that he earnestly places importance in his master. This is the highest sort of retainer.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
STRUCTURE

The head of a shinobi clan is called the Jûnin. Below him are two broad levels: the Chûnin and the genin. The Chûnin are the administrators, the clan elders, the teachers, the various masters and officials. The genin are the clansmen, the shinobi who undertake the day-to-day activities and assignments. In Mafia terminology, the Jûnin is the don, Chûnin are capo-regime or “capos,” and the genin are the soldiers.

In some cases, the Jûnin is a public figure, sitting in judgment like a feudal lord, while in others only a few of the chûnin may know the identity of the Jûnin.

RELIGIOUS SECTS

See Buddhist Sects in the chapter Religion.

RYÛ

Ryû, or schools, play an important role in Japanese society. Schools are very formalized in Sengoku Japan, and typically specialize in a single art or group of arts within a field. Martial ryû, for example, may teach all major bugei (martial skills) but specialize in sô-jutsu (spearmanship) or ken-jutsu (swordsmanship).

There exist some ryû that specialize in the classical arts, but most ryû are of the martial variety. Many Buddhist temples, while not “ryû” in the strict sense of the word, teach many arts to anyone with a desire to learn, including tea ceremony (Cha-no-yû), Chinese and Japanese classical literature, calligraphy, and so on. Other ryû were restricted to members of a particular clan or group, such as ryû operated by a samurai or shinobi clan, local police, or even a merchant guild or corporation (za).

Each ryû has a founder who established his unique style of a particular art. The founder’s style or “tradition” (which can also be called a ryû) may be completely original or based on a slight modification of an existing ryû. But no matter what it’s origin, each ryû maintains a strong sense of identity and students generally carry a great sense of pride in their ryû. Rivalries between ryû can be as strong and violent as those between any samurai clan or religious sects. Indeed, some inter-ryû rivalries last many years; the equivalent of personal or familial blood feuds.

JOINING A RYÛ

Joining a ryû, like joining any formal group in Japan, requires a serious commitment on the part of the prospective student, as well as formal application to join the group. Generally, a letter of introduction is presented to the sensei (teacher or master) of the ryû. This letter must be written by someone of influence, such as a lord or daimyô, an old friend of the sensei to whom it’s written, another well-respected sensei, etc.

In game terms, the GM can use a contested status roll, with the appropriate modifiers (see Status, page 91). Letters of introduction afford the applicant the benefit of any additional appropriate modifiers.

For example, a letter written by an old friend of the sensei from the same village as him would afford a +6 to the applicant’s status roll; a letter from the local daimyô is quite influential and could effectively allow the applicant to “Invoke a superior’s status” as per the Status rules (page 91).

Once accepted, it is not uncommon for the student to submit a kishômon or seishi, a written pledge to become a student.

Some ryû were not as formal in their approach to taking in new students. Ryû operated by samurai clans or covert ryû of the various shinobi clans, for instance, were open to practically all members of its clan. Commercial schools, too, were often less selective, as they received their primary income from taking students. Other ryû, still, operated under a philosophy of transmitting its teachings to as many people as possible, and would take in as many students as it could accommodate.
Once accepted into the ryū, the new student must swear loyalty to his new master, the soke of the school. This vow of loyalty—formally requested and willingly given—extends into all aspects of his life and may only be discounted if it conflicts with his loyalty to a liege lord (i.e., daimyō), in the case of samurai. The soke or sensei (teacher), in essence, becomes the student’s new “master.” Most ryū also require a pledge of absolute secrecy from the student as part of the vow of loyalty.

**STRUCTURE**

At the head of a ryū is the soke, or headmaster. The soke is addressed as “sensei.” The soke may be the founder of the ryū, especially if the ryū is relatively new (less than 50 years old). In more established ryū the founder is often deceased or retired, the ryū having been entrusted to his best pupil, who becomes the new soke. The soke is the absolute master of the ryū. Like a minor daimyō, nothing happens in the ryū without the soke’s consent. To act without authority is tantamount to hamon (formal expulsion) or, in some cases, death. The soke is the only individual within a ryū who may possess the norimono and inkajo, or scrolls of instruction; indeed, it is the soke’s responsibility to maintain these scrolls.

Below the soke is the shihanke, or master teacher. Shihanke are those students who have obtained the inkajo (the “rank of the seal”), a special certification allowing the shihanke to pass on the traditions and teachings of the ryū to others. The shihanke acts as the representative of the soke in all matters in which the soke is not present. Disobeying the shihanke is to disobey the soke—unthinkable. The shihanke is a position of incredible honor, requiring not only great skill but trust on the part of the soke. As bearers of the inkajo, shihanke may start their own dōjō or training center under the soke’s ryū. Some shihanke even go on to found their own ryū. The successor to a soke is always chosen from among the shihanke in the ryū.

Below the shihanke are one or more shihan, or senior instructors. The shihan assist the soke and shihanke with instruction, and may in fact assume nearly all teaching duties at the ryū, depending on the whims of the soke. The shihan are often responsible for training new students, bringing them up to a basic level of understanding of the ryū and techniques it teaches before introducing them to study with the shihanke or the soke himself. Students attaining this level of membership are awarded the menkyō-kaiden, or “license of complete transmission,” signifying that they have learned all that can be taught to them by the soke of the school. While not entirely accurate, it signifies a mastery of the basics of the art. Refinement only comes to the student through additional practice and study (i.e., higher skill levels).

Only students who have received the menkyō-kaiden are eligible to learn any okuden or hidden (secret arts) associated with the ryū.

Below the shihan are the students themselves. Students are in a constant process of learning and experience. Senior students are those who have mastered all of the basic elements of the art. Upon reaching this level of proficiency, they are awarded the menkyō (“license of completion”) from the soke, indicating the student has achieved proficiency with the art. Intermediate students are those who have achieved a minimum level of proficiency in the art and can perform all of the basic techniques without assistance. Initiates make up the lowest strata of students and, as discussed above, are those tasked with most of the work necessary to keep the ryū running.

**LIFE IN THE RYŪ**

Life for the new student can be harsh. Menial chores (cleaning the dōjō and its grounds) and looking after the more senior students (cooking their meals, drawing their baths) are typical duties of the new student which must be accomplished when they are not in training, which accounts for the majority of the daylight hours. In game terms, any member of a ryū with a Membership Level (ML) of less than 3 can expect to be treated quite poorly while he proves his worth and loyalty to the school and increases his skill.

More senior students dedicate much time to training, like their inferiors, but down time is their own. Some students may head into town to seek entertainment, write letters, engage in prayer, or anything else they desire (as long as it does not reflect poorly on the ryū).

Senior students assist the sensei in conditioning of students, and the best students aspire to become assistant teachers. In some ryū, assistant teachers train low level students in the basic skills of the art (up to skill level 3) before allowing them to begin training with the sensei.

**OKUDEN**

Each ryū maintains one or more secret, advanced techniques which are only taught to the most senior (and thus the most trustworthy) students within the ryū. These secret techniques are called okuden (hidden teachings), hidden or okugi (secret teachings). We shall refer to them throughout the rest of this book as okuden.

Okuden are advanced techniques which build on the basic principles established for the particular art, which allow the character performing them to achieve incredible results beyond the reach of lesser-trained characters. Examples of okuden include:

- **Weapon breaking:** Allows someone using a two weapon bugei to trap and break an opponent’s weapon.
- **Seeking Blade:** Allows someone using a bladed weapon skill (like ken-jutsu) to attack weak portions of his opponent’s armor, effectively ignoring half of the opponent’s Killing Defense due to armor (if any).

A number of sample okuden are listed in Creating Player Characters (page 114). GMs and players are encouraged to develop additional okuden for their campaign. In addition, upcoming SENGOKU supplements will introduce new okuden, as well.

**SAMPLE RYŪ**

The following are a number of martial ryū existent in Sengoku Japan. Players may select from among these to represent their...
character’s associated ryū, or use these as models for creating new ryū for the campaign (with the GM’s permission, of course).

**Aisu-Kuge Ryū**
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords).

**Araki Ryū**
This school, founded by Araki Mujin sai Minamoto no Hidetsuna, teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), shuriken-jutsu (Throwing), and Chains.

**Asayama Ichidensai Ryū**
Founded in the Tenshō Era (1573–1593) by Asayama Ichidensai Shigetatsu, this ryū is a martial art strongly associated with the goshi (farmer warriors) or jizamurai (landed bushi). This ryū encompasses ken-jutsu (Swords), battō-jutsu (hard, cutting blows), iai-jutsu (quick-draw swords), kama-jutsu (Kama), bō-jutsu (Polearms: Staff), shuriken-jutsu (Throwing) and Ju-jutsu. The fast-draw (or iai-jutsu) techniques of this ryū are all practiced using pairs of swords; there is no single sword drawing. (Requires Two-Iai skill; bought as a variant of the Two Sword skill, for use with iai-jutsu)

**Batenen Ryū**
This ryū teaches yadome-jutsu (Arrow Cutting) with the katana (Swords).

**Daitō Ryū**
Founded by Sekiguchi Hachiroemon Ujikiyo, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), ju-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

**Enmei Ryū**
Founded by Shibuki Shinjūrō. Edo period. Teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

**Ganritsu Ryū**
Founded by Iishino Chōsai Ienao. This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

**Hakutsu Ryū**
This ryū teaches ju-jutsu and atemi-waza and techniques of grappling in armor.

**Hasegawa Ryū**
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords).

**Hioki Ryū**
This ryū teaches kyū-jutsu (Archery).

**Hoki Ryū**
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords).

**Hozo-in Ryū**
This ryū teaches sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lance).

**Ikkan Ryū**
Founded by Katono Izu Hirohide, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

**Isshin Ryū**
This ryū teaches kusari-jutsu (Chains).

**Itto Ryū**
Founded by Itto Kageshisa (1562?–1653), this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and Iai-jutsu as a “one sword” technique (Two Swords skill not allowed for students of this ryū).

**Jitsuyō Ryū**
Founded by Yoshiyuki, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

**Jukishin Ryū**
This ryū teaches ju-jutsu.

**Kankai Ryū**
This ryū specializes in suie-jutsu (Swimming) techniques of swimming and fighting in water while wearing armor. Other skills taught include ken-jutsu (Swords) and tanto-jutsu (Knives).

**Kashima Shinden Jikishinkage Ryū**
Founded by Matsumoto Bizen-no-Kami Naokatsu (1467–1524) in the early 16th century, this ryū encompasses ken-jutsu, specializing in the katana (long sword) and wakizashi (short sword). Jikishinkage Ryū, as it is sometimes known, has its roots in the style practiced at the Kashima-ji. The ryū was originally known as Kashima Shinden Ryū. Large clubs, called furibō, are used in training in this ryū. In addition, the ryū teaches a two-handed style of wielding the wakizashi.

**Kashima Shinto Ryū**
This ken-jutsu ryū is headed by Tsukahara Bokuden, who is said to have taken more than 100 heads in battle during his lifetime. It was originally closely associated with the Kashima han (fief). This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing). The Kashima samurai clan was destroyed by the Satake clan in 1573, after which this ryū survived but maintained no clan affiliation.

**Katori Shinto Ryū**
Founded by Katono Izu Hirohide, this ryū is popular in the northern provinces of Japan. This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

**Kobō Ryū**
This ryū specializes in suie-jutsu (Swimming) techniques of swimming and fighting in water while wearing armor. Other skills taught include ken-jutsu (Swords), tantō-jutsu (Knives) and ba-jutsu (Riding).

...youthful samurai should continue to exercise daily with the bow and matchlock, in drawing the sword, and in jujutsu beside other martial arts, because as they grow older they won’t have the time to practice what they wish.

— Daidōji Yūzan
Kobori Ryū
Founded according to legend by Fujiwara no Komata, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Koto-Eiri Ryū
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords).

Kukishin Ryū
This ryū teaches bō-jutsu (Polearms: Staff).

Kurama Ryū
Founded in the Tenshō Era (1573–1593) by Ono Shokan, this ryū emphasizes training with the katana. This martial school is often characterized by its frequent use of Ochiotoshi, an okuden technique of cutting through the opponent’s sword with your own.

Kusaka Ryū
Founded by Shutō Sama no suke Eikichi, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Kyushin Ryū
This ryū teaches ju-jutsu.

Maniwa Nen Ryū
Founded in 1368 by Soma Shiro Yoshimoto (later known as Soma Shiro Yoshitsune), this ryū is one of the oldest existent traditions in Sengoku Japan. In 1494, Higuchi Kaneshige took this art to the village as a style taught to inhabitants for the village’s defense. This ryū is known for its practitioners being very strong swordsmen. Other bugei associated with this ryū include naginata-jutsu (Polearms: Glaives), sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances), and yadome-jutsu (Arrow Cutting).

Māsaki Ryū
This ryū teaches kusari-jutsu (Chains) as its primary bugei.

Mukai Ryū
This ryū teaches suie-jutsu (Swimming) and tantō-jutsu (Knives).

Muso-Jukiden-Eishin Ryū
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) as its primary bugei. Other skills taught include sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances), and jūmonji (Arts). Other skills taught include ten-nen (Two Swords), ni-ten (Two Swords), and suie-jutsu. This ryū is patronized by the powerful Fujiwara clan and has a great many adherents. This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances), and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Muso-Shinden Ryū
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords).

Nen Ryū
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances).

Nichioku Ryū
This ryū emphasizes kyū-jutsu (Archery) as its primary bugei. Other skills taught include ken-jutsu (Swords).

Omori Ryū
This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) as its primary bugei. Other skills taught include sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances), naginata-jutsu (Polearms: Glaives), and ba-jutsu (Riding).

Onko Chishin Ryū
Shuriken-jutsu. Founded by Musashi Miyamoto Shome during the Edo period, in the early 17th century. Teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), ni-ten (Two Swords), and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Oshima Ryū
This ryū teaches sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances).

Shinkage Ryū
Founded in the first half of the 16th century by Kamizumi Ise no Kami Fujiwara no Hidetsuna (also known as Kamizumi Musashi no Kami Fujiwara no Nobutsuna; 1508–1578), this is one of the most influential ryū in all of Sengoku Japan. The Shinkage ryū grew out of the Kage school. This ryū is patronized by the powerful Fujiwara clan and has a great many adherents. This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances), and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Shinnusō Hayashizaki Ryū
Founded in the late 16th century by Hayashizaki Jinsuke Shigenobu (1542–1621), this is one of the older Iai-jutsu schools of Japan, and was adopted as an official style of the Tsugaru clan by lord Tsugaru Nobumasa. Techniques taught by this ryū include seated two-sword drawing and well as single-sword iai-jutsu and battō-jutsu. Practitioners of this ryū’s ken-jutsu are well known for their frequent use of jūmonji (control by crossing the enemy’s attack) and yoko ichinoni (horizontal draw and block against attackers from multiple directions—treat as Reverse Cut okuden bought for iai-jutsu).

“"The sword of the Shinkage ryū is not a yang blade, but a yin (kage) blade; it does not employ any posture; its posture being postureless. The position of the Shinkage ryū is to do things in response to the opponent’s moves. It is a ryū that aims not to slash, not to take, not to win or lose.""
—Yagyu Mitsuyoshi (1607–1650)

Shintō Ryū
Founded by Iishino Chosai. A common ken-jutsu (Swords) ryū, practiced by many swordsmen throughout Japan.

Shintō Shobu Ryū
Founded by Sodatoyogoro Kageyama, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).
Shishin Ryū  
Founded by Kobori Kankaiyu  
Nyūdōshō Kiyohira, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Shōsetsu Ryū  
Founded by Hirayama Kōzōsen, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Shoshō Ryū  
Founded by Masugi Saburōzaemon Mitsuoki, this ryū teaches shuriken-jutsu (Throwing). This ryū is known for its use of the tantō-gata (sword-shaped) shuriken.

Takemura Ryū  
Founded by Mori Kazumino Shigekatsu, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Ten Ryū  
Founded in the 11th month of 1582 by Saito Hangan Denkibo Katsuhide from Ibaragi. Denkibo studied Kashima Shintō Ryū under Tsukahara Bokuden. On the last day of a 100-day shugyō (warrior’s pilgrimage) and prayer at Kamakura Tsurugaokahachimangu (a Shintō shrine dedicated to Hachiman, the kami of war), Denkibo had a dream in which he received a norimono (teaching scroll) explaining Makoto no Michi (The Way of Sincerity). Denkibo believed this to be the Way of Heaven, and he therefor named his art Ten Ryū—Tradition of Heaven. Ten Ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), naginata-jutsu (Polearms: Gaives), Broken Naginata (Polearms: Staff), tantō-jutsu (Knives), shuriken-jutsu (Throwing), and kusarigama-jutsu (Chains and Kama). This ryū is known for the ken-jutsu okuden called Egurizuki, a stretching, spiraling, binding thrust (treat as Piercing Thrust okuden that also allows the Disarm maneuver), and Kozui Ken, a technique of cutting to the bone marrow (treat as the Cut from Heaven okuden for any single bugei of this ryū).

Tenshin Ryū  
Founded by Tenshin Kogenta, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Tenshin Shoden Katori Shintō Ryū  
Founded in the early 15th century by Izasa Ienao (1386–1488), instructor to the ninth Ashikaga shōgun, Yoshimasa, this is one of the oldest ken-jutsu ryū in Japan.

Tenshinden Ryū  
Founded by Katono izu Hirohide, this ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

Yagyū Ryū  
Founded by the Yagyū at the end of the Sengoku period (late 16th century). This ryū teaches ken-jutsu (Swords), sō-jutsu (Polearms: Lances) and shuriken-jutsu (Throwing).

IKKI

In the 1400s, tax revolt groups—to a man commoners—especially under the influence of militant Buddhism, formed ikki (Leagues) to oppose the bakufu and other government authorities. Adherents to the Jōdō Shinsshū (True Pure Land Sect) created communities that were so fanatical they were called Ikki Ikki (Single-Directed League). In 1488 the Ikki actually assassinated the lord of Kaga and set up their own government, which ruled Kaga, Noto, and Echizen for nearly a century. This is the Ikki to which Nobunaga is so hostile. Other prominent Ikki groups appeared in Kii, Ise, and Settsu. All of them were directed by the temple headquarters.

The Ikki Ikki have been more than just recalcitrant in the Sengoku Period. They are able to field impressive armies of fanatical adherents, most poorly armed and equipped. What they lack in materiel, however, they more than make up for in enthusiasm and determination. They do not recognize the authority of the central government, and do not tolerate the interference of clans in governing their territories. The Ikki Ikki view themselves as sovereign to themselves, subject only to their master in Hongan-ji.

In 1575, Nobunaga finally goes head-to-head against the “Ikki rabble.” Forced to retreat to their mountain headquarters in Hizan, they expect to wait out the hegemon, but they cannot. Nobunaga has other ideas. He orders the mountain fired; every wall and building on the mountain is put to the torch. Monks, priests, warriors, men, women, and children—all are killed. Those who try to escape are gunned down. Tens of thousands perish, and the back of the Ikki is broken for ever. Nobunaga even brings along a Jesuit observer, Luis Frois, who writes of the glory of God and with efficacious praise for the general’s elimination of the rebellious heathen rabble.

EUROPEANS IN JAPAN

Europeans have been in Japan since Fernaõ Mendez Pinto was carried by a storm from Macao to the port of Nishimura on Tanegashima in 1543. Most of the Europeans in Japan now are involved with the Roman Catholic mission, although a handful of men are diplomats from the Portuguese colony of Macao (or rather, representatives from Portugal).

Not all is calm among the foreigners. The majority of clerics are Jesuit-trained, although quite a few Franciscans have come from Spain. In addition to the political rivalries between Spain and Portugal, now united as they are under the Portuguese king, the Jesuits and Franciscans have their own ideas as to how the nation should be evangelized. The Jesuits work from the top down, gaining confidence and support from the daimyō and government authorities, while the Franciscans work in the fields and hamlets, gaining converts among the peasantry.

Merchants from Macao carry a trade in Chinese silks for Japanese silver and gold. They are seldom seen outside the major cities and port towns like Nagasaki, however.

Sailors are the least likely to be accepting of Japanese values or culture, and they are the greatest cause of the low opinion Japanese have of the foreigners. Sailors prefer the lower class entertainments, and will drink and brawl until the police or other authorities have to come. For this reason, they are often restricted to...
certain areas of town where they can cause little disturbance; the neighborhoods of the eta.

Europeans in Japan are called Nanbanjin (Southern Barbarians) by the Japanese. The Japanese consider them loud, crude, smelly, and uncultured. On the whole, at least in Japanese terms, they’re right. While the Japanese bathe frequently, the Europeans seldom do, though those who have been “in country” long enough to “go native” are far more accepting of the Japanese concept of cleanliness.

Europeans, no matter how native, almost to a man still prefer the European diet and lifestyle, and while they will accept Japanese traditional life and eat Japanese food when presented, they will prefer furniture, meat, wine, butter, and cheese.

**STATUS**

Status is important to everyone, but especially to the Japanese, for whom membership in a group might define their personality and attitudes.

Membership with a fire-fighting crew, or with a local builder’s gang, define how others view one, as well. Is the group well thought of? Is it full of lazy ne’er do-wells? Is it known to be a hotbed of illegal activity? And, within this group or organization, what is the position—and hence the accountability—of the person in question?

The same holds with samurai, of course. A low-ranking samurai of a powerful, wealthy clan is going to get a lot more respect than if he had the same rank in a no-name clan.

**INVOKING ONE’S STATUS**

In SENGOKU, one’s status is typically determined by one’s affiliation with a group. The more important an individual’s group or group leader is, the more important one is in the social hierarchy. Status is determined by one’s Kao (other’s perception of his personal honor) and his Membership Level (ML) within the group.

To attempt to influence someone with status, roll (KAO + ML + 3D6). The character you are trying to influence also rolls his own (KAO + ML + 3D6). The degree of success or failure determines the outcome of the attempt. Subtract the result of the subject’s roll from the roll of the person making the attempt, resulting in the Effect Number (this number may be a negative) and consult the Status Effect Table (at right).

When dealing with someone of a higher or lower caste, an adjustment is made to the roll. The person of the higher caste adds +10 for each “level” of difference in castes between the two characters.

For example, suppose Kanta, a peasant farmer with a KAO of 3 and a ML of 2 in his village attempts to influence Morita, a buke with a KAO of 3 and a ML of 4 in a major samurai clan. Kanta rolls KAO (3) + ML (2) + 3D6 (13), for a total of 18. Morita, however, rolls KAO (3) + ML (4) + 3D6 (10) plus he adds +10 to the roll because he is one level higher in caste than poor Kanta, the farmer, making Morita’s total 27. Morita is almost guaranteed to “win” such checks because he is a member of a higher caste.

As you can see, a character’s Membership Level is nearly worthless when dealing with someone of a higher caste, and almost irrelevant when dealing with someone of a lower caste.

**Nanbanjin** are treated as one caste level lower than their Japanese counterpart for purposes of making Status rolls.

For example, a Spanish Jesuit priest of Portuguese soldier (i.e., warrior) would be treated the same if he were of the bonge caste.

---

**Status Effect Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-20 or more</td>
<td>Refuses and draws weapon, claiming to be insulted; Hostile to asker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-15 to -19</td>
<td>Refuses, and calls for guards or defenders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-10 to -14</td>
<td>Becomes angry and shouts his refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-5 to -9</td>
<td>Refuses brusquely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1 to -4</td>
<td>Refuses politely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 to 4</td>
<td>Agrees but insists on never again asking such a thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 to 9</td>
<td>Agrees but insists on secrecy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 to 14</td>
<td>Asks for some consideration in return (e.g., a favor or money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 to 19</td>
<td>Agrees in full, without conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20+</td>
<td>Totally agreeable to this and any other suggestions; Provides more support than requested.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MODIFIERS TO STATUS ROLL**

GM’s desiring a bit more complexity (and historical accuracy) in their games may apply the following modifiers (as many as appropriate) to rolls involving attempts to influence others with status (Membership Level).

**Status Roll Modifiers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Add to one attempting influence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Same clan/ryū</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strange clan/ryū</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rival clan/ryū</td>
<td>-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostile clan/ryū</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanbanjin</td>
<td>-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non–human (tengu, etc.)</td>
<td>-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From same town</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old friend*</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old rival/enemy*</td>
<td>-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject is much poorer</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject is much richer</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previously influenced subject</td>
<td>+1 per influence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previously failed to influence subject</td>
<td>-1 per previous failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request benefits requester more</td>
<td>-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request benefits requestee more</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flattery used</td>
<td>Complementary skill roll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gifts</td>
<td>+1 for bu equal to ML of target (cumulative)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* (Note: A person may be both at the same time)

---

By bringing shame to a person, how can you expect to make him a better man?

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
INVOKING A SUPERIOR’S STATUS

PCs can invoke the name of their superior (e.g., samurai master, daimyō, a family or clan head, yoriki, or the head priest of a temple or sect) when the PC is performing official duties. In these situations the person acts with the full authority of their superior. The effective Membership Level (ML) of the PC becomes equal to their superior’s ML -1 when invoking their master’s name. This can be a significant jump if the superior’s status is much higher than that of the character invoking his name. This is, in some ways, similar to intimidation, but in this context it is socially acceptable, if not expected, and can be quite effective.

Note that if of a higher caste than the person being cajoled, it is likely to result in abject kow-towing as the person on the receiving end trips over himself attempting to placate the speaker. If of a lower caste, it may gain the person making the attempt no advantage at all, but still conveys the “righteousness” of his actions. In game terms, this tactic is most advantageous when used with someone of the same caste.

For example: Yoshii, a samurai with a KAO of 3 and a Membership Level (ML) of 3, is guarding prisoners and has orders from his superior (ML 5) to allow no one inside the jail until the superior returns. Along comes Hondo, a samurai of the same clan with KAO 5 and ML 4, who asks to be allowed to enter the jail. Yoshii refuses to let Hondo in, apologizing and explaining that he is acting on orders from his superior. Hondo becomes angry and tries to throw his weight around, ordering Yoshii to let him in. Hondo rolls KAO (5) + ML (4) + 3d6 (8), for a total of 17. Yoshii rolls his KAO (3) and his superior’s ML-1 (4) + 3d6 (11), for a total of 18. Yoshii stands his ground, despite Hondo’s verbal assault. The only way Hondo will get into the stockade tonight is if he cuts Yoshii down.

Had Yoshii failed to beat Hondo’s roll, Yoshii would have been convinced by Hondo’s argument (or been sufficiently intimidated by it) to let Hondo enter.

This procedure is appropriate for role-playing situations between a PC and NPC(s). For situations in which a PC fails his roll, the GM should tell the player that his character is intimidated and must acquiesce, but that the decision of how the PC reacts is ultimately up to the player.

Characters may add both the +10 per level bonus for being of higher caste as well as the bonus for invoking a superior’s status, creating a significant advantage. Of course, simply winning such a social contest doesn’t necessarily exonerate one from wrongdoing, especially if the superior finds out about his name being invoked and doesn’t like the reason it was invoked.

IMPROVING YOUR MEMBERSHIP LEVEL

Characters may improve their Membership Level (i.e., their standing within their group) one of two ways. The first is by an instant reward from their master or group head. The second is by making a merit check at the end of each full year of game time (at the end of each campaign year). In both cases, once the increase has been approved by the GM, the character must still spend the Experience Points necessary for the increase (see Perks: Membership, in Chapter 13, Rules).

INSTANT REWARDS

Instant rewards are given at the discretion of the GM for actions “above and beyond the call of duty,” that is, for acts beyond what is normally expected for that character given his caste and profession. (Instant rewards to a character’s ML are in addition to any Honor Points that may be forthcoming.) This can be a serious test, indeed, for those characters in a profession whose demands are already high, like samurai. Instant rewards to a character’s ML should not be for exemplary behavior alone, but rather for extreme cases of heroism, acts of great loyalty or sacrifice and so on.

For example, a samurai might be instantly promoted in status by saving his lord’s life against great odds, giving his lord his own sword after his lord lost his in an earthquake, or making some other suitably impressive personal sacrifice for his lord.

Instant rewards should not exceed an increase of one point of ML, unless, of course, the GM feels it is particularly appropriate or it suits the story.

MERIT AWARDS

Merit awards are slightly more complicated. To receive an increase in ML due to merit, the character must achieve a certain number of goals throughout the preceding year (measured in game time, not in real time). The minimum number of goals required to be eligible for a merit increase is equal to the character’s current ML +1. Thus, if a character has a current ML 4, he must achieve a minimum of 5 goals to even be considered for a merit increase.

A character may only increase his ML by one point per game year using this method. In addition, the character must pay the appropriate number of Campaign Points (CP) once the conditions are met in order to receive the promotion within the group and the accompanying increase to his ML.

Each major caste and profession has an associated list of goals. Some of the goals listed are mandatory for all members of that group. Other goals are optional. This affords the player some discretion as to which goals he wishes his character to try to attain. The suggested goals for each group is given below. The GM is free to generate additional goals which he feels are appropriate to his campaign and add them to the list.

Using Merit Awards

Merit awards should be encouraged by the GM. They are designed to promote roleplaying of the cultural and political aspects of Japanese society during the Sengoku-jidai. These should be taken as roleplaying opportunities as well as possible plot hooks. For instance, simply being invited to and attending an official clan court function seems simple enough, but what if the character is only of ML2? His chances of being invited out of the blue are pretty slim. Perhaps he can use that Contact with a clan councilor to get an invitation. Or maybe the character decides to try to impress his lord by entering the clan’s yabusame competition and winning first place.

Meeting with people should be a matter of quickly grasping their temperament and then reacting appropriately… especially with extremely argumentative people. After yielding considerably one should argue them down with superior logic, but without sounding harsh, and in a fashion that will allow no resentment to be left afterwards.

— Anonymous priest
Communicate Your Character’s Goals

Players should provide the GM with a list of his character’s goals for the coming year. The GM should use the character’s declared goals as jumping-off points for roleplaying scenes, providing some “spotlight” for each character, or even as ideas for full-fledged adventures, involving the other characters in scenarios designed to achieve goals by one or more members of their party.

GOALS BY PROFESSION OR GROUP TYPE

Samurai Goals

• Increase your ken-jutsu (Swords), kyū-jutsu (Archery) or naginata-jutsu (Polearms: Naginata) skill score to ML+1
• Increase your ba-jutsu (Riding) skill score to ML+1
• Increase a classic art skill score equal to your ML
• Spend an amount of bu equal to 2x ML on social functions
• Be invited to a social function by a superior
• Be invited to and attend an official clan court function
• Have your advice solicited by your lord and followed successfully
• Act as kaishaku (second) for another clan member performing seppuku
• End the year with no outstanding debts or obligations
• Exposure a traitor in the clan (either real or fabricated)
• Donate a number of bu to a Buddhist temple equal to your ML
• Attend a Nō performance
• Hire a courtesan with a ML higher than your ML
• Equip and maintain 3 personal retainers for every 100 koku of land or 100 bu of stipend.
• Present a meaningful or expensive gift to your lord (but not too expensive!)
• Build or have built a shrine to a clan ancestor or clan kami
• Defeat a notorious threat in his clan’s province or fief
• Win a formal contest or challenge (incl. duels) on behalf of the clan
• Defeat a samurai of higher ML than you in a sanctioned duel
• Manage a fief without any disruptive or successful ikki (uprisings) for one year
• Lead troops to victory in a battle
• Take a number of heads of minor samurai (ML4 or lower) in battle equal to your ML
• Take the head of an enemy with higher ML than your own in battle
• Enter into an arranged (i.e., political) marriage to benefit the clan
• Receive public praise or recognition from your lord

Ryū Student Goals

• Win an organized contest or formal challenge (i.e., duel) on behalf of the ryū
• Increase your score in the ryū’s primary skill to equal your ML+1
• Increase your score in one of the ryū’s secondary skills to equal your ML
• Defeat a senior student in a sanctioned, non-lethal duel
• Win a public challenge while representing your ryū
• Win a duel (lethal or non-lethal) when publicly challenged
• Defeat a student from another (rival) ryū in a public fight
• Increase your Meditation (meiso) score by 1
• Receive public recognition from your soke (ryū head master)
• Win a sparring match against a fellow student of higher ML
• Perform a public service on behalf of your ryū
• Publicly defend your soke’s honor
• Learn a new okuden
• Develop a new okuden

Buddhist Priest Goals

• Win a public religious debate (using contested NT+[Religion]+3D6 rolls)
• Solicit and receive donations totaling ML x 10 bu
• Convert someone to Buddhism
• Convert someone of another sect to your sect
• Convert someone of significant status to Buddhism
• Pray for someone at their time of death
• Perform a segaki rite
• Increase a Classics (Japanese or Chinese) skill score to ML+1
• Learn a new sutra ritual to increase ability
• End the year with less than 5-ML minor transgressions
• End the year with no major transgressions
• Sponsor a new initiative into the sect or temple
• Increase your Buddhism (Butsudō) score to equal your ML+1
• Supremely master Buddhism (i.e., obtain a skill level of 10)
• Complete a pilgrimage to a previously unvisited important or remote temple
• Sponsor or arrange a sumō tournament or Nō performance to raise money for your temple
• Heal or cure a number of people equal to your MLx10
• Save the life of any living creature at significant risk to yourself
• Perform a month of labor, free of charge, for another temple or peasant village
• Build or cause to be built a new temple for your sect
• Spread the teaching of Buddha (i.e., increase someone else’s Buddhism skill score by 1)
• Exorcise an evil spirit
• Live in abject poverty for the entire year
• Make a significant sacrifice for a needy person (e.g., give your last coin to a beggar)
• “Overcome” an adversary without violence
• Increase your Meiso (Meditation) skill score to equal your ML+1
• Convince a daimyō to build a Buddhist temple within his castle
• Create a significant religious artwork
• Intercede with the local daimyō or bakufu (Shōgunate) on behalf of commoners (bonge or hinin)
• Intercede to the Buddhas or spirits on behalf of laymen
• Resolve a dispute between two (or more) enemies without violence
• Suffer punishment in place of or on behalf of another
• Deliver or pray for a newborn child

Yamabushi / Shugenja Goals

• Successfully perform a magical rite for the betterment (or downfall) of the community at large
• Complete a pilgrimage to the four sacred mountains of each direction
• Construct a Named Item or kami/spirit-inhabited item
• Perform ritual purification rite under mountain waterfall
• Contact a Bodhisattva
• Travel to another realm, plane or state of being; e.g., Jigoku (hells) or Ten (heaven)
• Perform an extraordinary feat that gains a number of followers or believers equal to your MLx2
• Befriend a supernatural ally (e.g., tengu, oni or yōrei)
• Exorcise an evil spirit
• Defeat a prominent enemy by use of magic
• Win a supernatural duel
• Supremely master a spell (i.e., obtain a skill level of 10)
• Increase your Shugendo skill to ML+1
• Supremely master Shugendō (i.e., obtain a SL of 10)
• Increase your Buddhism skill to ML+1
• Supremely master Buddhism (i.e., obtain a SL of 10)

Never to be outdone in Bushidō; To be of good use to the master; To be filial to my parents; To manifest great compassion and to act for the sake of Man.

— Four vows of the samurai, by Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Shintō Priestly Goals

- Solicit and receive donations equal to your MLx10 in bu
- Perform a public Shintō rite or ceremony
- End the year with less than 5-ML minor transgressions
- End the year with no major transgressions
- Sponsor a new initiate into the priesthood
- Increase your Shintō skill score to equal your ML+1
- Supremely master Shintō (i.e., obtain a skill level of 10)
- Complete a pilgrimage to a previously unvisited important or remote shrine (e.g., the Ise shrine)
- Sponsor an event to raise money for a local shrine
- Arrange or participate in a Shintō matsuri (religious festival)
- Perform ritual purification on an influential person (e.g., someone with a ML higher than yours)
- Conduct a wedding ceremony
- Build or cause to be built a new shrine (or a replacement for a 20 year old shrine)
- Spread the knowledge of the kami (increase someone’s Shintō score by 1)
- Exorcise a mischievous kami
- Defeat a mischievous kami in spirit combat
- Convince a daimyō to build a Shintō shrine in his castle
- Create a significant Shintō religious artwork or artifact
- Intercede to the kami or spirits on behalf of laymen
- Invite a kami to aid someone else

Shinobi Goals

- Maintain a “normal” life (i.e., Secret ID) without being discovered
- Increase Ninjutsu score to ML+1
- Successfully complete a solo mission
- Maintain a cell of a number of ninjas equal to your ML
- Defeat an enemy of the clan
- Escape from being captured
- Convince someone that your caste or profession is something other than what it truly is
- Provide misinformation to an enemy or target that they act on, leading to an advantage for your client or clan
- Complete a mission without taking a life
- Take the life of a fellow shinobi who is captured and cannot escape
- Convince someone (other than a shinobi) that you are of the same profession
- Obey an order from your Chūnin, which leads to great personal sacrifice, without question
- Infiltrate an organization and gain the trust of their leader
- Create a new spell
- Increase your Meiso (Meditation) score to ML+1
- Sponsor an event to raise money for a local Buddhist temple
- Perform ritual purification on an influential person (e.g., someone with a ML higher than yours)
- Intercede to the Buddhas or spirits on behalf of laymen
- Resolve a dispute between two (or more) enemies
- “Overcome” an adversary without violence
- Spread the teaching of Buddha (i.e., increase someone else’s Buddhism skill score by 1)
- Sponsor a new initiate into the sect or temple
- Solicit and receive donations totaling ML x10 bu

THE SOCIAL RANKING IN JAPAN

This chart illustrates the social hierarchy of Japan in the Sengoku Period. Each caste is given in all capital letters.

[IMPERIAL KUGE]
- Emperor
- Imperial family

KUGE
- Relatives of Imperial family
- Court nobles
- Courtiers

BUKE
- Shōgun
- Daimyō
- Hatamoto
- Samurai
- Ashigaru
- Jizamurai
- Rōnin

BONGE
- Farmers
- Artisans
- Entertainers
- Merchants

NANBANJIN

HININ
- Criminals
- Kawaramono
- Eta

* Some ashigaru are actually bonge, but their status as warriors, especially when attached to a clan, here affords them the status—if not the actual rank—of buke.
† While technically a samurai, and therefore accorded status, in point of fact most rōnin are mistrusted, feared, and even loathed by many people, even the peasants who often have better lives than do the masterless samurai.
** Nanbanjin, (‘southern barbarians,’ or European foreigners) are not part of the caste system; they are in truth outside it. If they were to fit on the chart, though, it would be about here, as a rule.
†† The clergy are technically outside the caste system as well; it allows for erstwhile commoner, kuge, and buke to be equal. In point of fact, however, the clergy is highly politicized and status counts here, too.

In times of war or in times of peace it is sufficient for both the upper and lower classes to worship our ancestors and study their teachings. One worships the head of the clan or discipline to which he belongs. Outside learning for retainers of our clan is worthless.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
CREATING CHARACTERS
One of the great advantages of the Fuzion gaming system is the elimination of so-called “character classes.” Each PC can be uniquely tailored to do what you as the player and you as the GM want and can work with. The following rules are based on the Fuzion system, adapted to fit the Sengoku game. If you are familiar with the system, most of this will be very easy for you to follow and work through.

We will start with the first step, generating your PC’s background and basic personality, and then move on to his statistics (which define his potential and abilities), what his abilities actually are, and his profession.

**LIFEPATH**

This is the first step of creating a character; getting a concept and history established. Lifepath is a special flowchart of events, personality quirks and plot complications, which are used to give a character roleplaying depth and complexity. In effect, the Lifepath is your character’s “origin story,” telling where he came from, what he’s done and what he’s like.

**Using the Lifepath**

To use the Lifepath, simply follow the instructions in each box of the chart, rolling a die or making a choice as instructed.

Generally speaking, the Lifepath can be used to personalize your Sengoku character with little or no modification. There are some items, however, that, because of the genre, will lend themselves to a certain selection. Players are free to choose any of the items on the list or roll the indicated dice to randomly select one.

**Taking New Complications**

As part of the Lifepath process, you may also elect to take a few Complications, which are situations, problems or personal limitations that enhance the roleplaying aspect of the character, and (coincidentally), generate extra Option Points (page 111) to be used in the creation of the character later. Note that in Fuzion, Complications are not just window dressing; a big part of getting more Option Points is roleplaying your Complications.

Along the Lifepath you’ll see events are a good place to link up to a possible Complication.

For example, Parents Murdered would be a great place to take on a Responsibility, such as a Dependent (your baby sister), a Vow (to avenge your parents’ deaths) or a Code of Honor (live by Bushidô, the Warrior’s Code).

**Paying For Items Gained**

Note that any Skills, Complications and Perks generated by the Lifepath process need to be accounted for by the character’s normal expenditure of points during character creation.

For example, a character’s Lifepath indicates that he gains a +1 to a skill level because of a teacher. The character does not get the bonus to the skill level for free; he must spend the Option Point to increase the level.

Likewise, a character whose Lifepath indicates a new Complication (such as an Enemy) would receive the points for that complication, should the player decide to keep it.

**It’s Optional**

To reiterate, the Lifepath is a tool for ideas, to help players flesh out the details of their character’s background. It should not be considered a limiting or mandatory part of character creation. It’s optional. If you want to use it, it should help you come up with ideas to fill out your character’s background. If you don’t want to use it and have plenty of ideas of your own, then you can skip it altogether. Or you can use the Lifepath to generate some background information for your character and make up the rest. It’s up to you.

**BASIC PERSONALITY (HITOGAKA)**

Start by deciding what your character is like; basic personality, values, and world view. You may either roll (2d6) or choose one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>Amiable, well-mannered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Devout, pious, holy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Imperious, condescending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Greedy, bad-hearted, jealous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Gentle, kind-hearted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Honest, hard-working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Industrious, frugal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Spoiled, fickle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Boastful, rascal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Uncouth, boorish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Violent, quick-tempered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Next: Go to **What You Value Most**)

**What Do You Value Most?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>Friendship</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Having a good time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Knowledge, Enlightenment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Piety, Honesty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>Loyalty, Fealty, Honor (e.g., Bushidô)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Your Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Possession, Heirloom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Vengeance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

From the time he is young a samurai boy should liken his parents to the master, and learn everyday politeness and etiquette, the serving of other people, the ways of speech, and even the correct way of walking down the street.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Go to Your World View

Your World View

Roll 2d6 or select from the following to define your character’s overall philosophy and attitude about life.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Philosophy</th>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Philosophy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Every life is sacred.</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Sanyôdo Region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Karma is karma and the world is an illusion.</td>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>Tôkaidô Region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Life is fleeting, like cherry blossoms.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Aki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Never let your feelings show.</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Bingo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Honor above all things.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Bitchû</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>My life belongs to my master and is his to use.</td>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>Bizen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I must prove my worth to earn respect.</td>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>Harima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>People are untrustworthy. Be careful who you depend on.</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Mimasaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>No one’s going to dishonor me again.</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Nagato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>People should know their place, as I do</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Suô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>How you die is important because it shows how you lived.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now move on to Early Background and Childhood Events.

Early Background

You have a choice of determining your caste; you may chose it outright (being mindful that you will have to “pay for” your selection later), or you may roll for it on the following chart.

Birth Caste (Kaikyû)

What caste were you born into? Roll 2d6 or choose from the following list. Note that the following table does not reflect the historical population breakdown of Sengoku Japan. Instead it reflects the heroes of the genre.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Caste</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-5</td>
<td>Hinin (non-persons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-5</td>
<td>Bonge (commoners)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-11</td>
<td>Buke (military class)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Kuge (Imperial nobles)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note your character’s caste and consult the Caste Template for appropriate Perks, Complications and Everyman Skills for your character’s caste.

It is natural that one’s disposition be affected by different styles of different regions. But it is vulgar and foolish to look down upon the ways of one’s own district as being boorish, or to be at all open to the persuasion of the other place’s ways and to think about giving up your own. That one’s own district is unsophisticated and unpolished is a treasure. Imitating another style is simply a sham.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Where Did You Grow Up?
In what kind of environment did your character grow up? Roll 2d6 or choose one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Environment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Exotic environment (Wilderness, foreign country, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Remote hut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Small hamlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–6</td>
<td>Village (mura)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–10</td>
<td>Town (machi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11–12</td>
<td>City</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Comes Next?
Any Childhood Crises? Big problems or traumas? Roll 1d6 once below and go to the appropriate table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A Boring Childhood: Go to Life Events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–6</td>
<td>Go to Childhood Events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHILDHOOD EVENTS
A crisis occurs in your character’s early youth. Roll 1d6 to see how your family was affected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>One or some family members were…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–6</td>
<td>Your entire family was…</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

…then roll 1d6 for the rest of the story (see below):

1–3 Enemies (Teki)
1 betrayed by a friend and lost everything they had (e.g., samurai characters become rônin).
2 exiled, and later returned under an alias. (A good reason to buy a Secret or Enemy).
3 murdered before your eyes. (Good reason to buy a Vow of vengeance.)
4 hunted by a powerful group or organization (e.g., a rival samurai clan, shinobi clan, large bandit gang, etc.)
5 abducted or mysteriously vanished; you were inexplicably left behind.
6 killed in a war or disaster, or assassinated (Possible source of a Vow, Secret or Enemy.)

4–6 Secrets (Himitsu)
1 accused of a shameful act they may or may not have committed. Roll 1d6:
1–3 a trusted servant (or friend if bonge or hinin) takes the blame and commits suicide; 4–5 punished by the lord with house confinement for 1d6+2 months; 6 a “ curse” is laid on the household.
2 considered to have some kind of unique birthright, ability or status (e.g., illegitimate child of a daimyô or a wealthy merchant, etc.; Above-average skill or stat; talent; magic ability; descendant of kuge; inherit leadership of a clan, ryû, or secret art/okuden.)
3 unknown — you grew up alone, never knowing your true heritage
4 shamed from your father’s dishonorable deed — you carry shame from father’s dishonorable deed (-10 Honor).
5 not the real thing — you were adopted at birth and your parents are of a different social caste.
6 in possession of a unique artifact or skill (possibly an okuden).

Your next step is to chart the course of your life after Childhood by moving on to Life Events.

LIFE EVENTS
Roll 2d6+13 to determine your character’s starting age (or simply choose your character’s age). For each year over 15, roll once below and go to the appropriate table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Good with the Bad (roll 1d6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>Friends and Enemies (roll 1d6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Love and War (roll 1d6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Nothing Happened that Year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you have completed all the years up to the present, Go to Current Situation to see where you are now.

...at the age of seven or eight...a boy should be introduced to the Four Books, the Five Classics and the Seven Texts, and taught calligraphy so that he remembers how to write. Then, when he is fifteen or sixteen, he should be made to practice archery and horsemanship and all the other military arts, for this is the way a samurai should bring up his sons in time of peace.

— Daidôji Yûzan
### Good With The Bad
Roll 1d6 of choose one of the following.

1–2 **Something Good:** Roll 1d6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Make a Contact (see Perks): A local power player (daimyō, machi-bugyō, yoriki, whatever) befriends you. Their level of effectiveness is worth 1d6.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mentor: You gained a teacher or mentor in your life. This person has taught you one new skill up to a level of 1d6/2 (round up).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>Debt Owed (see Perks): Someone owes you big time. Roll 1d6/2 to determine the level of the favor owed you. Type of contact subject to GM approval.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Membership (see Perks): You have been nominated for membership in a select group. Roll 1d6/2 to determine your new status (group is up to GM)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Windfall: Your financial ship just came in; an inheritance (sōzoku), gambling score, or just a good investment Roll 1d6 x 100 Monme-ita for the amount. Players may opt for a valuable possession/heirloom of a like value (e.g., master-quality katana or daishō, suit of armor, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3–6 **Something Bad:** Roll 1d6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Imprisonment: You have been exiled, imprisoned, or held hostage (your choice). Roll 1d6 x 1 month for length of imprisonment. A good place for a Psychological Complication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Falsely Accused: You were set up, and now face arrest or worse (buke become rōnin). A good place for an Enemy Complication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Accident or Injury: You were in some kind of terrible accident or maimed in some other way. A good place for a Physical Complication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Hunted: You incurred the wrath of a powerful person, family or group. A good place for an Enemy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Mental or Physical Illness: You were struck down by a severe physical illness or Psychological complication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Emotional Loss: You lost someone you really cared about. 1-2; they were murdered. 3-4; they died by accident or illness; 5-6, they vanished, killed themselves or just up and left without any explanation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Go back to *Life Events.*

### Friends And Enemies
Roll 1d6 or choose.

1–3 **Make an Enemy:** Roll 1d6 (or choose) and see below

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enemy: Bitter ex-friend or lover.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Enemy: Relative.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Enemy: Partner or associate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–5</td>
<td>Enemy: From rival clan, group or faction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Enemy: Powerful official or noble.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4–6 **Make a Friend:** Roll 1d6 and see below

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Friend: Like a sibling or parent to you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Friend: Partner or associate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Friend: Old lover (choose which one).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Friend: Old enemy (choose which one)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–6</td>
<td>Friend: Have common interests or acquaintances.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Go back to *Life Events.*

### Love and War
Roll 1d6 and consult the table below, or select one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A Pleasurable Time With No Obligations: No unusual events associated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–3</td>
<td>Had Love Trouble! (Hiren): Any of these might be a good hook for a Compulsion, Enemy, or Psychological complication. Roll 2d6 and see below or choose one of the following (there are separate entries for male and female PCs where appropriate):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(Male): The proprietor refuses to sell you the courtesan’s contract (or if bonge/hinin, you couldn’t afford it anyway). (Female): Your husband takes a wife of higher status; you are reduced to a concubine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(Both): There is a conflict between your duty and your affections (e.g., you’re from different social strata).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(Both): There is a child from your union. Roll for sex: 1–3 = male; 4–6 = female.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(Both): Your lover leaves you or your husband divorces you for another woman.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(Male): You run up a ruinous debt at the reed house. (Female): Your lover or husband falls in love with a courtesan (or a geisha, if you’re playing in the Tokugawa Period)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued on next page)

---

*However much we do for them as children, we cannot but feel that however well we fulfill our filial duties it is never really adequate.*  
— Daidōji Yūzan
This section will shape the character’s chosen profession, if not actual caste. If the character is a shinobi, this profession could be their “cover.” Roll 2d6 to determine where your life is right now:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Occupation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Criminal/Underworld</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Law Enforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>Mundane Occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Business/Merchant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Unaffiliated/Freelancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Artisan/Craftsman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Scholar/Mystic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Military</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some suggested occupations for characters are given below. This list is merely a sampling of possible professions.

**Criminal/Underworld**

- **Kuge**: Smuggling, assassination, and political power brokering is not unknown among the rarefied atmosphere of the imperial capital, though kuge usually work through buke middlemen or their own retainers.
- **Buke**: If rônin, he is a lone bandit (nobushi) or a member of a local gang (kumi); He may be the leader of a bonge gang. If a samurai, any illegal activities must be kept secret from his clan; if he is discovered he may be forced to commit seppuku (or at the very least lose 5K Honor points!).
- **Bonge**: Common criminal (thief, bandit, or member of a small gang), entertainer (juggler, actor, etc.) or prostitute.
- **Hinin**: As for bonge.

**Law Enforcement**

- **Kuge**: Imperial palace guard officers.
- **Buke**: Yoriki (police captain), clan censor/inspector (metsuke) or town magistrate (machi-bugyô), prison guard.
- **Bonge**: Policeman (dôshin), executioner.
- **Hinin**: Hired policeman’s assistant (tesaki), jailer, government spy (onmitsu) or execution grounds attendant.

**Government**

- **Kuge**: Imperial courtier, imperial minister (Minister of Shrines and Temples, Minister of the North Gate, etc.), councilors.
- **Buke**: Retainer from daimyô’s inner circle, clan official, tax collector.
- **Bonge**: Page or assistant to the local samurai or magistrate, village or town council member, court jester, attendant, samurai’s courtesan.
- **Hinin**: Government spy (onmitsushi), executioner, eta village council member.

---

8 **(Both)**: Your lover’s family forced you to separate; any children from the union stay with the father.

9 **(Both)**: You were coerced into a loveless marriage (by your clan head, parent, etc.).

10 **(Both)**: Your lover was unfaithful with a rival, someone of higher status, etc.

11 **(Both)**: You break up, but lover vows revenge someday.

12 **(Both)**: You marry (for love).

4 **Had a Tragic Romance (Hiren)**: Any of these might be a good hook for a Compulsion, Enemy, or Psychological complication. Roll 1d6 or choose one:

1. Lover died in accident or was murdered.
2. Lover mysteriously vanished.
3. Lover’s contract is sold to an establishment or person in a far off province or city.
4. Lover died from an illness.
5. Lover went insane.

5-6 **Involved in Battle (Ikusa)**: Note that this table applies primarily to those whose profession is arms; other characters have the choice of re-rolling the 1d6 or selecting one of the above. Any of these might be a good hook for a Compulsion, Enemy, or Psychological complication. Roll 1d6 and see below:

1. You were routed by the enemy (−1 Membership Level and −2K Honor, −3K if ML5 or higher). A good place for an Enemy Complication.
2. You fought on the losing side of a battle and your daimyô is killed (samurai become rônin; if already a rônin, this explains it).
3. You incurred a serious wound in battle. A good place to add a Physical Complication.
4. You performed well in battle, gaining much experience. +1 to any appropriate Skill (GM’s discretion).
5. You gained the notice of your lord and receive a 2d6 x 10 bu reward.
6. You defeated a prominent enemy samurai or prominent mystic character, gaining your lord’s favor. Gain +1 KAO and +1 Membership Level (Bonge or hinin are offered Membership, becoming samurai), a reward of 2d6 x 100 bu, or appropriate item (like a Legendary quality katana).

Go back to Life Events.

---

Even…a cantankerous parent must be revered as a parent, his bad temper be appeased, his aged infirmities consoled with and regretted, without showing any signs of annoyance. For exerting oneself to the utmost for such a parent is real filial piety.

— Daidôji Yûzan
Mundane Occupation
Kuge: Imperial courtier, court scribe, advisor.
Buke: Garrison duty, road checkpoint guard, toll collector, escort, ashigaru.
Bonge: Farmer, fisherman, porter, laborer, courier, carver (kijishi), sedan-chair carrier (kagoya), woodcutter.
Hinin: Butcher, gravedigger, leather tanner, corpse-handler.

Business/Merchant
Kuge: Imperial Treasurer, etc.
Buke: Martial ryû instructor, clan’s merchant liaison.
Bonge: Merchants, money-lender, shop or inn keeper, accountant, money-changer.
Hinin: Reed house proprietor, theater troupe manager, landscape artist.

Unaffiliated/Freelancer
Kuge: This is an inappropriate selection for kuge, unless they have severed their ties with the Imperial Court and become monks or perhaps kensai (sword masters).
Buke: Bodyguard (yoinbô), rônin seeking a lord (daimyô) to serve or army to join, wandering swordsman (shugyôsha), Buddhist monk (bôzu), etc.
Bonge: Bodyguard (yoinbô), wandering craftsman or entertainer, doctor (ishi), wandering monk (bôzu), thief, hermit.
Hinin: Wandering craftsman or entertainer, ninja, hired assassin, etc.

Artisan/Craftsman
Kuge: Painter, calligrapher, poet.
Buke: Swordsmith, calligrapher, poet.
Bonge: Carpenter, roofer, stonemason, mat-maker, screen maker, plasterer, dyer, wood-worker, lacquerer, wood-worker, potter, paper maker, sandal maker, armorer, sake brewer, entertainer.
Hinin: Tanner, entertainer.

Scholar/Mystic
Kuge: Priest, court scribe, classical literature historian.
Buke: Priest, shugenja, onmyôji, tactician, wandering student (shugyôsha), court scribe.
Bonge: Wandering scholar (kataribe), priest, shugenja, onmyôji.
Hinin: Monk, shugenja, onmyôji, storyteller.

Military
Kuge: Palace guard, warrior (bushi).
Buke: Warrior (bushi), mercenary (if rônin), scout, troop commander or general (taishô), weapon instructor, foot soldier commander (ashigaru taishô), toll collector, spy, militant monk (sohei).
Bonge: Foot soldier (ashigaru), spy, militant monk (sôhei), samurai attendant (chûgen).
Hinin: Foot soldier (ashigaru), grave-digger.

Go to Current Outlook.

CURRENT OUTLOOK

These selections are appropriate to all characters, although they may be most suited for samurai and like individuals. Great emphasis should be placed on the fact that the character must constantly struggle with his own desires conflicting with his duty to his master. Roll 1d6 to determine where your life is right now or choose one of the following.

1. I am forced to live out this life to atone for past misdeeds.
2. I am a puppet of more powerful forces.
3. I must constantly prove my worth or become worthless.
4. My purpose is to serve my master.
5. I crave temporal power (or spiritual enlightenment).
6. Karma is karma and life is just an illusion.

Next, choose a Caste Package (page 111) and a Profession Template (page 123).

If one does not understand from the very beginning that the world is full of unseemly situations, for the most part his demeanor will be poor and he will not be believed by others.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**CHARACTERISTICS**

Characteristics are numbers which define the natural attributes and inherent abilities of a character. All people and creatures can be described using characteristics; this lets you compare one person to another, which is often important in the game.

*For example, a person with a Strength characteristic of 5 is stronger than a person with a Strength of 4 but not as strong as a person with a Strength of 6.*

**WHAT THE NUMBERS MEAN**

A character’s basic structure is defined by his characteristics. The numbers applied to the characteristic show how good (or poor) the character is in relation to other people. You have to decide what kind of person your character is before we can go on. Is he an “Everyman” thrust into grand adventure? Or is he a veteran of years in the wars, who shies away from nothing? And what numbers best represent a character?

Stats are typically paired with a skill to accomplish a desired task (see *Skills*). When designing a character for *Sengoku*, it is important to emphasize those characteristics that will help your character to excel in his chosen profession, but it is just as important not to overlook the other characteristic.

The set of descriptions to the left can be applied for each characteristic and skill. The label is the default name for this level as given in the basic *Fuzion* rules (see the table to the left).

These value ranges may overlap some, particularly at the lower end of the range. “Normal” people often have values of 1 to 4, for instance. Usually 7 is the value where the real world stops and where fiction begins to take over.

Note also that many characters will have characteristics and skills in a wide range of values. Characters in Heroic (Chanbara) campaigns may have one or two characteristics in the Incredible range, and the rest Competent or Heroic. Most characters have some abilities they perform better than others; it’s rare to have someone with the same characteristic values across the board.

**Reality Levels**

One of the advantages of *Fuzion*’s various plug-in rules is that they allow GMs to custom tailor the reality level of their campaigns. Since *Sengoku* functions on three key levels: Historic (Competent), Chanbara (Heroic), and Anime (Superheroic), the campaign levels are set.

**Reality Level Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Campaign</th>
<th>Reality</th>
<th>Starting Stat</th>
<th>Stat</th>
<th>Start. Stat/ Skill Max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>CP/OP</td>
<td>Avg</td>
<td>Skill Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historic</td>
<td>Competent</td>
<td>45/45</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chanbara</td>
<td>Heroic</td>
<td>60/60</td>
<td>4–5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anime</td>
<td>Superheroic</td>
<td>75/75</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary vs. Derived Stats**

There are two kinds of characteristics in *Fuzion*-powered games. Primary characteristics are “bought,” using a pool of points which we’ll discuss later.

---

One who is a warrior should have a thorough understanding of [right and wrong]. If he knows how to do the one and avoid the other, he will have attained to Bushidô.

— Daidōji Yûzan
A good example of a primary characteristic would be a character’s Body characteristic, used to judge how tough he is. Derived characteristics are created by applying a simple mathematical formula to a specific characteristic. A good example of a derived characteristic would be a character’s Sun, which is figured by multiplying his Body by 5.

The Power to Buy Characteristic Points

The power to buy your primary characteristics comes from a pool of points called Characteristic Points (CP), given to you by the GM when you make your character. But how do you determine that value? The best option is for the GM to multiply the number of Primary Characteristics by the average value the GM wants the characters to have; this will give you the starting CPs for the campaign.

In SENGOKU, characters receive the number of character points indicated in the table above for the different campaign levels. SENGOKU assumes a Chanbara-level game; most SENGOKU products (such as Shiki: Four Seasons and Shinobi: Shadows of Nihon) will be written for this campaign level.

Buying Characteristics

Primary Characteristics are purchased at a ratio of 1 (CP) for one level of ability or +1 in that characteristic.

For example: David wants Matahei to have a Strength of 5, so he pays 5 CP.

Primary characteristics are purchased with characteristic points (CP). Each player starts with a set number of Characteristic Points to allocate to his character’s stats. The number of CP players start with depends on the campaign level of the game, as shown in the table above (45 CP in a Historic-level game; 60 CP in a Chanbara-level game; 75 CP in an Anime-level game).

The average stat score for starting characters in SENGOKU is also based on the campaign level (3 to 4 for Historic-level characters; 4 to 5 for Chanbara-level, and 6 for Anime-level characters).

The maximum score a starting character may have in any primary characteristic varies based on the campaign level. Beginning Historic-level characters have a maximum score of 5, and beginning Chanbara-level characters have a max score of 8. Beginning Anime-level characters have no maximum stat score.

PRIMARY CHARACTERISTICS

In SENGOKU, character stats are arranged into four groups. They are: the Mental Group, the Combat Group, the Physical Group, and the Movement Group. Each of the Groups is presented below and listed with its component characteristics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mental</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aesthetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical</td>
<td>Strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combat</td>
<td>Reflex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement</td>
<td>Movement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Confucius was a sage because he had the will to become a scholar when he was fifteen years old. He was not a sage because he studied later on.

— Master Itei
**Combat Group**

**Technique (TECH):** Your ability to manipulate tools or instruments. This is not the same as reflexes, inasmuch as this covers the knack of using tools. One character might have a high Technique, but might not be able to fence or juggle. On the other hand, another might have high Reflexes, but only a fair level of Technique.

**Reflexes (REF):** Your response time and coordination, as used in aiming, throwing, juggling. A stage magician, for example, would have a high Reflex score. Most importantly, this is the characteristic that shows your chance to hit things.

**Dexterity (DEX):** Your overall physical competence, as pertains to balancing, leaping, jumping, combat and other athletic activities. A gymnast would have a high Dexterity. Most importantly, this characteristic is used to avoid being hit.

**Movement Group**

**Movement (MOVE):** Your speed of movement; running, leaping, swimming, etc. There is only one primary characteristic in this group; the rest are all derived characteristics.

**DERIVED CHARACTERISTICS**

Derived Characteristics are characteristics that are created by performing some simple math on a character’s already existing Primary Characteristics.

**Endurance (CON x 10):** Endurance (END) represents how long a character can expend energy, whether in physical endurance (e.g., using STR) or in the use of a special ability. It is spent in the same way as Hits or Stun points. When it runs out, you are exhausted and cannot do anything more except rest and recover. Generally, 1–2 points of effect, 2 points of STR, 1 minute or hour of time (or 1 point of “power” used) costs 1 END point. END is regained whenever you take a Recovery Action (page 206), which restores as much END as your REC score (see Recovery, above).

**Stun (CON x 5):** How much stunning/brawling damage you can take before you are battered into unconsciousness, calculated as points. Important: At the start, you may elect to move points from Stun into Hits or vice versa, as long as the total moved is limited to 1/2 of the starting Stun Value.

Example: with 35 Stun and 35 Hits, I could move up to 17 points from Stun into my Hits or up to 17 points from Hits into my Stun. Once moved, the new totals are permanent (i.e., they can’t be changed again once the character is brought into play).

**Hits (BODY x 5):** How much killing damage you can take before you are dying. Any armor you have may be subtracted from any Killing or Stun damage you take. You may move Hit points into Stun and vice versa, with the GM’s approval (see above).

**Stun Defense (CON x 2):** Stun Defense (SD) is a measure of how resistant you are to Stun damage. Any Stun damage your character takes is reduced by your SD score.

**Recovery (STR + CON):** Recovery (REC) determines how fast the character recovers from injury (i.e., from Stun and Killing damage). Your character gets back this many Stun points each Turn spent resting, and this many Hits back for each day spent resting with medical attention. (For more advanced rules on healing see Recovery, page 223.)

**Run (MOVE x 2m):** This is the number of meters a character can move in three seconds (i.e., one Phase). The character is at full DEX when defending against attacks, but may not take another action in addition to his movement. If you are using ken instead of meters, divide this number by 2 (i.e., MOVE x 1) to determine the number of ken a character runs in a three second Phase. Characters may come to a complete stop in one Action.

**Sprint (MOVE x 3m):** How far the character sprints in a flat-out run in three seconds. The character is at -3 to his DEX when defending against attacks while sprinting and cannot take any other action. A character must run for one full Phase before switching to a Sprint.

When reducing speed, a character must move down to a normal move (i.e., MOVE x 1) on his next available Phase, and then come to a complete stop on his following Action. Characters can attempt to “stop short,” coming to a complete stop in one Action, by making an Athletics skill roll (DEX + Athletics + 3d6) with a Difficulty Number of 14 plus his total movement (i.e., his “velocity”) in meters.

For example: Toshii, who has a Move score of 4, has to run to catch the river ferry. He begins a Run on his first available Action, moving 8 meters (or 4 ken) that Phase. On his next available Action he increases to a Sprint, moving 12 meters (6 ken). Unfortunately, Toshii doesn’t make his ferry and must stop short or fall into the water. Since Toshii is moving at a speed of 12 meters per Phase, he must make an Athletics roll with a DN of 26 (14 + his velocity).

**Swim (MOVE x 1m):** How far the character swims in a three second Phase. If a character is swimming in rough conditions (rough water, under fire, etc.) the GM may require the character to make an Athletics roll to stay above water (characters may substitute Suie-jutsu for Athletics). Two consecutive failed skill rolls for swimming indicate the character is drowning (for rules on drowning, see Asphyxiation and Drowning, page 220).

**Leap (MOVE x 2m):** How far a character travels (horizontally) in a standing leap, in meters. For a running leap, add half of the character’s velocity to the distance. For vertical distance, divide the distance by 2 (i.e., MOVE x 1).

**Resistance (WILL x 3):** Resistance (RES) is your ability to resist mental or psychological attacks or stress; basically your mental “Hits.” RES comes into play when resisting the effects of fear, PRE Attacks, potential sanity loss, and so on.

**Honor (KAO x 10):** Honor (HON) represents the characters honor and glory, as perceived and recognized by others. A character with a high Honor score has many achievements, a good reputation and much face. Characters will gain and lose Honor regularly during play to reflect the effect that the character’s actions have on his reputation and in the way others perceive him. The character’s KAO score is tied directly to his Honor. Starting characters receive 10 points of Honor for each point of KAO. Once play begins, however, Honor becomes more significant; characters receive one point of KAO for every 10 full points of Honor that they have; a character’s KAO score will fluctuate, as well. Thus, if a character has 40 Honor their KAO score is 4. If they have 30, 31 or even 39 Honor points, their KAO is 3. Losing even a small amount of Honor can have serious implications, to be sure.

...to act in a bullying manner to one who is weaker than himself is a thing that a brave samurai never does. And he who likes and does what a brave man hates and avoids is rightly described as a coward.

— Daidōji Yūzan
TO DETERMINE A COMPLICATION’S VALUE

To determine the value of a Complication, add together the Frequency Value, the Intensity Value, and multiply the resulting total by the Importance.

Example: Bob takes Responsibility as a Complication for his character, Tajomaru. He decides that this will affect Tajomaru Frequently (10), and he decides Tajomaru is responsible for the care of his lord’s youngest son, Oniwaka. Since Oniwaka is three years old, it is difficult and Tajomaru is considered Challenged (Intensity 10); but since Tajomaru is not in any danger and his skills aren’t affected (divide by 5), taking care of Oniwaka is worth \((10 + 10)/5 = 4\) Points. But if Oniwaka was constantly exposed to extreme danger from which Tajomaru has to rescue him (such as warfare, or intra-clan strife), Bob could milk the situation for up to 20 points.

Frequency

Just how often does your problem impact your life? The answer is the problem’s frequency; essentially, how often the GM can inflict it upon your character as part of the trade for those extra OP. This table is used for creating new complications and to derive the final value for the sample complications listed below. Just add the appropriate value for the frequency of the complication (based on how often you determine the complication affects your character) to the listed value for the complication’s Intensity.

For example, if you select Honest: say nothing rather than tell a lie, which is worth 5 points, and you decide that your character is only honest to this degree when questioned about his past, you may decide that he would only likely be questioned about his past about once every game session (worth 10 points on the Frequency table). This brings the total value of the Complication to 15 so far. If you decided that his Honesty complication applies to everything, that would easily come into play more than once every gaming session, ringing the total value of the complication (thus far) to 20.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Guideline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infrequently</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Once every few gaming sessions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequently</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Once every gaming session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantly</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>More than once every gaming session</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Combinations

One way to get more Option Points (OP) when creating a character is to take on a few complications—social, mental, physical, spiritual or emotional situations or problems that define and enhance your character. Complications can also be linked to various Lifepath events (see Lifepath, page 96) to add to a character’s background. Complications will vary depending on the campaign. The value of a complication is based on its frequency, intensity and importance in the campaign.

The list of complications below already have their intensity values determined for a typical SENGOKU campaign, but players wishing to alter their value, or to create new complications, can use the guide below to do so.
MENTAL COMPLICATIONS

Mental complications represent psychological problems that require counseling, purification or other assistance to deal with effectively.

Bad Tempered (Gekido)

Your just irritable, all the time. When your temper flares: You’ll risk embarrassment or financial loss (5), You’ll risk incarceration or bodily harm or financial/social ruin (10), You’ll risk life and limb (15)
Importance: Buke (Major, divide by 2); Others (Extreme, x1).

Bipolar

Your character is a classic manic/depressive, prone to fits of erratic up moods punctuated with severe, terrifying depressions. You are often: Moody (5), Liable to lay around and mope (10), Liable to run around frenetically risking life and limb or sink into a miserable stupor (15), Suicidal (20).
Importance: All (Major, divide by 2).

Coward (Okubyō)

You lack nerve, especially in combat. This is not a good complication to take for samurai PCs, due to the potential for loss of Honor. Bonge can take it without stigma, however. When faced with danger: You avoid it or tremble at anything you imagine as danger (5), You freeze motionless and can’t react (10), You try to run away as far as possible from the threat (15).
Importance: Bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Kuge (Major, divide by 2); Buke (Extreme, x1).

Delusion (Mōsō)

You believe something that isn’t real, which affects your behavior to a noticeable degree. You may believe your true parents are quite wealthy/powerful, that your koi (carp) talk to you, or that you are the true and rightful Shōgun of Japan. You will: Risk ostracism, embarrassment (5), Risk hospitalization, bodily harm or financial/social ruin (10), Risk life and limb (15).
Importance: All (Extreme, x1).

Forgetful (Kenbō)

You have trouble remembering things. You: Can’t find things you’ve put down without looking for them (1), Have difficulty remembering names and faces and generally known facts: -1 to INT-based skill rolls to recollect (5), Have very poor memory and forget details easily, even friends and family; -3 to INT-based skills (10), Are suffering from bouts of virtual senility, with inability to recall simple facts, including your own identity; -5 to INT-based rolls to recollect (15).
Importance: Elderly characters, bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Kuge (Major, divide by 2); Buke (Extreme, divide by 2).

Honesty (Shōjiki)

You always tell the truth, even if it hurts. To be honest, you’ll even: Risk expulsion or embarrassment (5), Risk bodily harm, social or financial ruin (10), Risk life and limb (15).
Importance: Priests (Minor, divide by 5); Others (Extreme, x1).

When pressed with the choice of life or death, it is not necessary to gain one’s aim. But not having attained one’s aim and continuing to live is cowardice.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**Impulsiveness (Isamiashi)**
You just can’t help yourself; you always jump into things without thinking. To follow a whim you’ll: Risk expulsion or embarrassment (5), Risk bodily harm, social or financial ruin (10), Risk life and limb (15).
**Importance:** Bushi (Major, divide by 2); Others (Extreme, x1).

**Intolerance**
You’re bigoted and intolerant of those who are different from you. When you encounter them you are: Civil but distant (5), Rude and verbally abusive (10), Abusive even at risk of life and limb (15).
**Importance:** All (Extreme, x1).

**Jealousy**
You are jealous to the extreme. Towards the one you “love,” you are: Obsessed and watchful (5), Confrontative and accusatory (10), Physically violent (15).
**Importance:** Bonge and hinin (Major, divide by 2); Kuge and buke (Extreme, x1).

**Kleptomania (Tôheki)**
You steal things compulsively. You can’t help it. You’ll even: Risk arrest or embarrassment (5), Risk bodily harm or financial/social ruin (10), Risk life and limb (15).
**Importance:** All (Extreme, x1).

**Lazy (Bushô)**
Some days you just can’t get up. You don’t like manual labor as a rule (1). Given a choice, you’d rather sit around and relax than do anything at all strenuous (5). It takes a serious threat to get you to motivated (10), You won’t work unless faced with death (15).
**Importance:** Non-buke (Major, divide by 2); Bu ke (Extr., x1).

**Lecherous (Sukebe)**
You can’t resist grabbing or pawing someone you find attractive, or at least making lewd comments. You’ll even: Risk expulsion, embarrassment or financial loss (5), Risk bodily harm or financial/social ruin (10), Risk life and limb (15).
**Importance:** Bu ke (Extreme, x1); Non-buke (Major, divide by 2).

**Obsessed**
You just can’t get that special (to you) person or thing out of your mind. You: Talk about it all the time and will risk embarrassment or financial loss over it (5), You’ll risk incarceration, bodily harm or financial/social ruin over it (10), You’ll risk life and limb over it (15)
**Importance:** Bu ke (Minor, divide by 5), Non-buke (Major, divide by 2).

**Phobia (Kyôfushô)**
You have a phobia; an unreasoning fear of some common thing, such as dogs, heights, sounds or a color. When faced with your phobia, you feel: Discomfort (5), Quaking, paralyzing fear (10), Berserk terror (15), Catatonic (20).
**Importance:** Bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Kuge (Major, divide by 2); Bu ke (Extreme, x1).

**Shy (Uchiki)**
You hate dealing with others. Note: Due to Japan’s rigid social structure, this complication can be a dangerous one to take; failure to acknowledge a superior can be tantamount to a death sentence! Many people in Japan are expected to be somewhat shy, especially women; this represents an extreme case of shyness that interferes with normal social interaction. You will: Refuse to speak to new people (5), Avoid all interactions with new people (10), Physically remove yourself from situations involving new people (15).
**Importance:** Kuge (Minor, divide by 5); Bu ke (Major, divide by 2); Bonge and hinin (Extreme, x1).

**Slow Learner (Boke)**
You don’t learn as quickly as most people. For the purposes of study and training times, your INT is at a penalty. (Note: Learning penalties for Poor Literacy and Slow Learner are cumulative.) You: Have a tougher time than most grasping complex concepts, -1 INT (5); Have a tough time grasping simple concepts, -3 INT (10). Are extremely slow-witted, -5 (15), Are an imbecile and cannot learn any skill above a score of 3, -5 INT (20).
**Importance:** Bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Bu ke (Major, divide by 2).

**Stubborn (Gankô)**
You just hate to give in—to anyone. This is another potentially fatal complication. To prove you’re right, you will: Risk ostracism, embarrassment (5), Risk hospitalization, bodily harm or financial/social ruin (10), Risk life and limb (15).
**Importance:** All (Extreme, x1).

**Unlucky**
Things never go your way; you have constant disasters. Travel and adventure only hold for you: Inconvenient misfortunes (5), Costly or dangerous misfortunes (10), Very costly or dangerous misfortunes (15); Deadly, life threatening dangers (20).
**Importance:** All (Major, divide by 2).

**Vane (Kyoeishin)**
You are obsessed with your appearance. You take every opportunity to touch up your hair or clothing (5), You go out of your way to impress others with your appearance (10), You must always be in the focus of attention and demonstrate your fashion sense and grace (15).
**Importance:** Kuge (Minor, divide by 5); Bu ke (Major, divide by 2); Bonge and hinin (Extreme, x1).

**PHYSICAL COMPLICATIONS**
These complications relate to a physical handicap you must overcome. Many physical complications can be attributed to war injuries, including Missing Limb (severed in battle), Impaired Hearing (explosions or head wounds), Impaired Vision (eye wound), and Reduced Mobility (wounded leg or knee).

---
Shame and repentance are like upsetting a pot of water. If one will rectify his mistakes, their traces will soon disappear.
— Yamamoto Tsunetomo

107
**Addiction/Dependence**

You must have a particular substance or situation or you will suffer severe mental or physical duress. The substance/situation you need is: Common—e.g., sake, prayer, sex, heirloom (5), Uncommon—e.g., tobacco, religious purification (10), Rare—e.g., rare herbs, gold, European wine/brandy (15), Very rare—tengu feather (20).

**Importance:** Buke (Extreme, x1); Others (Major, divide by 2).

**Age**

You are either younger or older than usual; this is reflected in your characteristics. Very old/young: Reduce any 2 characteristics (except Mental Group) by 2 (10), Extremely old/young: Reduce any 3 characteristics (except Mental Group) by 3 (15).

**Importance:** All (Minor, divide by 5).

**Illness**

You suffer from a chronic condition that is not easily treatable, even by a physician or exorcism. You have: A bad cough/bronchitis (5), Pneumonia (10), The pox, leprosy (15), The plague (20).

**Importance:** Bonge and hinin (Major, divide by 2); Kuge and buke (Extreme, x1).

**Impaired Hearing**

You are hard of hearing. Generally, to make a Perception roll based on hearing you will need: To beat a DN 4 points higher than everyone else’s (5), magical aid just to hear at all, +8 to all hearing Perception DNs (10), New ears; you’re totally deaf (15).

**Importance:** Elderly (Minor, divide by 5); Non-buke (Major, divide by 2); Buké (Extreme, x1).

**Impaired Vision**

You suffer from an injury or birth defect which has affected your sense of sight. You are: Color blind (shikimô) (5), Suffering from poor eyesight (kisshî), -3 to Perception rolls based on sight (10), Nearly blind or missing one eye (katame), -5 to Perception rolls based on sight (15), Totally blind (mômoku) (20).

**Importance:** All (Major, divide by 2).

**Insomnia (Fumin)**

You are unable to get a good night’s rest. Characters without adequate rest (10-CON hours) each night function at -3 to all skill rolls requiring concentration or alertness. You: Have difficulty sleeping and getting to sleep (5), Cannot sleep without some kind of natural aid; sake, drugs, etc. (10), Cannot sleep around any noise or movement whatsoever (15).

**Importance:** All (Major, divide by 2).

**Missing Limb**

Due to an injury, punishment or birth defect you are missing a limb. You’re missing: One or more fingers (5), A hand (10), An arm (15).

**Importance:** All (Extreme, x1).

**Overweight**

Most people in Japan are of thin to medium build. You are heavier than normal for your height. You are: Fat (5), Obese (10).

**Importance:** Sumôtori (Minor, divide by 5); All others (Major, divide by 2).

**Poor Literacy**

You are not as well-schooled in reading and writing as your peers. (Note: Learning penalties for Poor Literacy and Slow Learner are cumulative.) You: Read slowly, -1 INT for study and training (5), Cannot read or write (10).

**Importance:** Bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 2); Buké (Major, divide by 2); Kuge (Extreme, x1).

**Reduced Mobility**

You are unable to get around normally. Your movement: Is reduced by one quarter (5), Is reduced by half (10), Is reduced to dragging yourself by your arms at a Move of 1 (15), Non-existent; you’re a total quadriplegic, unable to move below the neck (20).

**Importance:** Non-buke (Major, divide by 2); Buke (Extreme, x1).

**Vocal Impairment**

You have a condition that affects your speaking ability. When you speak you can: Only whisper, stammer or stutter (5), Only make sounds, but cannot speak (10), Cannot make a sound; totally mute (mugon) (15).

**Importance:** All (Major, divide by 2).

**Vulnerability**

You’re susceptible to a certain situation or substance and take extra damage or effect when exposed to it. The substance or situation is: Uncommon; poison, mythical beasts/monsters (5), Common; magic, spirits/possession, illness/disease, fire, water, or alcohol (10), Very common; animals/natural beasts, swords, arrows (15).

**SPECIAL COMPLICATIONS**

These are problems with serious social and societal consequences for you.

**Bad Reputation (Fumeisei)**

People “know” about you. At least, everyone’s heard a story or two, even if untrue. When you are mentioned or seen you are: Frequently recognized (5), Always recognized (10).

**Importance:** Hinin, merchants and rônin (Major, divide by 2), All others (Extreme, x1).

**Distinctive Features (Tokuchô)**

You stand out and are noticed in any crowd, with features that are: Easily concealed — e.g., a scar, tattoo or speech impediment (5), Concealable with Disguise or performance skills — e.g., the pox, advanced leprosy, provincial dialect (10).

**Importance:** Something “abnormal” or “impolite” (Major, divide by 2); Something “normal” (Minor, divide by 5).
Enemy (Teki)

These are forces which are actively working against you. Your enemy’s value is determined by three things: their Capabilities, their Extent, and their Intensity of enmity against you.

**Capabilities:** What can they do to you? They are: Less powerful than you (5), As powerful as you (10), More powerful than you (15), Have access to powerful weapons, powers or other resources (20).

**Extent:** How far can they reach? They are: Limited to a single town or area (5), Limited to a single province or region (10), Able to reach every island of Japan (15), Interdimensional, magical or spiritual in nature (20).

The following are some suggested values for groups or people based on their Capabilities in **Sengoku Japan.** A small bandit gang, minor samurai clan, local police official (yoriki), local merchant guild (za), or single person/blood feud (15), Large bandit gang, major samurai clan, kuge family, or martial ryū (20), Shōgun (25), shinobi clan, minor kami (30), major kami (35). These values do not yet take into account any modifier for Intensity (below).

**Intensity:** Instead of using the normal Intensity table, use the following scale. The Intensity of your Enemy is based on the reason that they want you. Your character is: Being watched (divide by 5), Being hunted for capture or imprisonment (divide by 2), Marked for death (divide by 1).

Oppressed (Kanbetsu)

You are part of an oppressed or otherwise downtrodden group, suffering from a social stigma, which affects the way people treat you and interact with you. (Bear in mind that Japanese are seldom outright rude to anyone’s face, regardless of their social position.) In **Sengoku Japan,** you are: Snubbed; others ignore or refuse to deal with you—e.g., branded criminals (5), Oppressed; there are laws controlling where you live, work or can travel—e.g., bonge caste, nanbanjin (10), Outcast; you’re a non-person—e.g., hinin caste (15), Enslaved; you’re treated as property and can be sold or mistreated at will—e.g., common courtesans/prostitutes, all lay women (in historically-based campaigns) (20).

**Importance:** All (Minor, divide by 5).

Outsider

You’re not a local and stand out like a sore thumb, attracting attention both unwelcome and possibly dangerous. You are obviously: From a distant place—e.g., Asian foreigners (5), From a very distant place—e.g., Europeans (after 1543) (10), Never before seen in these parts—e.g., Europeans (before 1543) (15).

**Importance:** Non-Japanese Asians (Minor, divide by 5), Europeans (Extreme, x1).

Personal Habits

People just can’t stand you. They find you: Annoying — e.g., nosy, talk too much, drunkard, unshaven or unkempt (5), Disgusting—e.g., rarely, if ever, bathe (10), Horrible—inhuman, monsters (15).

**Importance:** All (Major, divide by 2).

Poverty (Hinkon)

Money is hard to come by for you, harder than for most. Financially, you are: Poor, with just enough for a bed and a few meager meals—e.g., some rōnin, most farmers, low-ranking samurai, bonze (5), Dead broke and probably on the street, with barely enough to eat — e.g., hinin, overtaxed commoners, truly desperate rōnin (10). In debt, with others actively seeking to take what little you have (15).

**Importance:** Hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Bonge and kuge (Major, divide by 2); Buke (Extreme, x1).

Public Figure

You are a figure in the public eye and very well known; you can’t make a move without getting attention: You are newsworthy and your activities rate discussion or a public announcement if there is an official or gossip nearby—e.g., European priest/missionary, popular local entertainer, wealthy merchant, master craftsman or swordsman (5), You are frequently talked about and people always notice your actions on the street—e.g., past or current sumō champion, master of a classical art, (samurai) master of local fief or town, infamous criminal, head of local temple/shrine (10), Your every action is the subject of gossip and public interest, and curiosity seekers follow you everywhere—e.g., local daimyō, leader of a religious sect (15).

**Importance:** Japanese (Major, divide by 2); European (Extreme, x1).

---

...if one thinks selflessly and adheres to the four vows of the samurai, surprising wisdom will occur regardless of the high or low points of one’s nature.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Secret
You have a secret that, if revealed, would cause problems for you. The higher the point value, the more dire the consequences of your secret’s exposure. If revealed, your secret would expose you to: Ostracism, embarrassment—e.g. lost financial records, a sexual fetish (5), Hospitalization, bodily harm or financial/social ruin—e.g., committed a minor crime, a relative betrayed their lord (10), Death—e.g., committed arson, betrayed your lord (15).
Importance: All (Major, divide by 2).

Secret Identity
You are trying to hide your activities under a secret identity or other smoke screen. You currently are: Living a normal life, unnoticed by anyone—e.g., of another caste, opposite sex, (5), Both- ered by a single person or small group trying to uncover your real identity—e.g., criminal, shinobi, of another caste (10), Everyone’s trying to uncover your real identity—e.g., high-ranking samurai or bakufu official, rightful heir to samurai clan or the Shōgunate (15)
Importance: Non-shinobi (Major, divide by 2); Shinobi (Extreme, x1).

SPIRITUAL COMPLICATIONS
These are problems with serious spiritual and religious consequences.

Bad Karma
You have acquired bad karma for a past misdeed, either in this or a previous life. You have: 1 point of bad Karma (5), 3 points of bad Karma (10), 5 bad Karma points (15), 10 points of bad Karma (20)
Importance: All (Major, divide by 2).

Impurity
You have committed acts which cause a stain on your hara (spirit). You are considered in acts of pollution (Shintō), in transgression (Buddhist), or in sin (Kirishitan). This tarnish on your spirit remains until the impurity is removed by purification, blessing or confession, respectively. You: Have committed a minor transgression, -1 PIE until rectified (5), Have knowingly committed several minor transgression but for a good cause, -3 PIE until rectified (10), Have committed a major transgression without cause, PIE at 0 until rectified (15).
Importance: Priests and shugenja (Extreme, x1); All others (Major, divide by 2).

RESPONSIBILITIES
These are things you’ve chosen to deal with, no matter how much trouble they cause. Codes of Honor, family matters and the like are all Responsibilities.

Code of Honor
You live by a code of conduct and honor that dictates many, if not all, aspects of your life. These are the personal rules you will not break, no matter what. A Code of Honor might be a code against killing, never attacking from behind, or never sheathing your sword once drawn unless it has drawn blood. This code puts more restrictions on you than the “normal” societal rules of Japan. Any violation of this code without redress causes a loss of 5K Honor. To keep your code you will: Risk expulsion or embarrassment—e.g., (5), Risk bodily harm or financial ruin—e.g., loyalty to an employer or ryū (10), Risk life and limb—e.g., Bushidō, shinobi code (15).
Importance: Bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Buke (Major, divide by 2); Kuge (Extreme, x1).

Dependents
These are those who need your protection and help; you feel obligated to look after them. They could include children, family, or friends. Generally, they are: Equal to you in abilities — a friend, coworker (5), Challenged, or otherwise weaker than you—e.g., bonge family, pet dog, small child in a cart (10), Have special problems, requirements or dangers associated with them — e.g., an elderly or handicapped relative, someone with a bounty out for them, a bonge village threatened by bandits (15)
Importance: Bonge and hinin (Minor, divide by 5); Buke (Major, divide by 2); Kuge (Extreme, x1).

Sense of Duty
You always do the right thing, and follow a higher moral code toward those you feel responsible for. You will do this: For your friends (5), For a special group/organization—e.g., your retainers, clan/gang, students/ryū, employees (10), For all humanity (15), For all life itself—e.g., Buddhist pacifism (20).
Importance: All (Major, divide by 2).

Vow
This is a promise you must keep, no matter what. It could be to protect someone, follow an ideal, a vow of fealty, priestly vows, or a vow to avenge your parents’ deaths. A vow (of fealty) is generally a prerequisite of membership in a group (though GMs may make exceptions). To fulfill this promise you’ll: Risk expulsion or embarrassment—e.g., marital vows (5), Risk bodily harm or financial ruin—e.g., fealty to the Emperor, loyalty to your ryū soke (10), Risk life and limb—e.g., fealty to a daimyō or shinobi Jōnin, Buddhist sect’s priestly vows, avenge parent’s death (15)
Importance: All (Extreme, x1).
CAMPAIGN OPTIONS

Campaign options are bought with Option Points (OP) and include Caste Packages, Skills, Martial Arts, Talents, Perks, Spells (detailed under Magic) and Ki Powers (detailed under Ki). Each character starts with a number of OP (based on their caste and profession level; see Reality Level on page 102) and may obtain as many as 50 additional OP from various complications (see Complications, page 105). In addition, any Characteristic Points (CP) not already spent on Stats may be converted to OP; each 1 CP is worth 5 OP.

HOW DO I GET EQUIPMENT?

Characters in SENGOKU pay for all standard, non-magical equipment with money. Starting money is determined by buying levels of Wealth (see page 116). All characters begin play with a certain amount of equipment, based on their caste and profession (see Caste Packages, right side of this page, and Profession Templates, page 123).

Once game play begins, characters may acquire equipment by other means, such as receiving equipment as payment for jobs, scavenging from slain foes, and even creating them using the various Art skills. (The GM should adjust his Experience Point rewards to reflect this.)

The GM always has the option of giving OP awards “on the spot” as befits the campaign story. Players can, if they wish, convert those points to money.

CASTE PACKAGES

Because SENGOKU players have the option to choose their own caste, the following are the Caste Packages that a player may select for his character.

Note that as SENGOKU is based on historic Japan, samurai are the dominant class, and all perks and complications are reflective of this fact.

The net cost, in brackets next to the name, is the cost in Option Points (OP) to be of that caste (negative scores are points you receive for taking that caste for your character). You do not have to pay for anything listed separately—it’s all figured into the total cost of the Package. None of the complications associated with the caste count towards the maximum points a character may have in complications. The skills referred to in the package are detailed in the Skills chapter (page 139).

Characters may purchase only one caste package.

THEN WHAT?

Once you have selected a caste package for your character, write all of the information down on your character sheet. Then you need only allocate points to the character’s primary characteristics (if you haven’t don’t so already), purchase additional skills and/or improve the character’s existing skills, buy any perks, talents or okuden you want for the character, note the character’s starting equipment (listed under the profession templates, starting on page 123), and you’re ready to play!

Alternately, you can simply select one of the profession templates in the book (page 123-138). The profession templates incorporate the caste packages, so almost all of the work is already done for you. All you need to do is add a few points to customize the character and you’re done!

Regardless of class, a person who does something beyond his social standing will at some point commit mean or cowardly acts. In the lower classes there are even people who will run away. One should be careful with menials and the like.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
PLAYING OPTION: BUN-BU-ICHI

Read the section on Bun-bu–ichi in the chapter Daily Life (page 53). You can choose whether your buke character is from a clan that favors arts or eschews arts and games. Given the differences this could have on play, and that this might affect the whole game, you may have a choice between using the standard buke caste package (as above), or all buke may choose their clan preference as on the following charts. Since not all clans really cared one way or the other about the arts and neither favored them, nor condemned them, you will thus have three possible alternatives for a buke package.

Buke from art-favoring clan  [-10]
- Perks: None
- Skills: Choice of Archery or Firearms 2, Polearms: Spear 2, Calligraphy 3, Riding 2, Swords or Knives 2, any two Classical Art skills at 2 each.
- Starting Equipment: As for Buke.

Buke (from martial only clan)  [-10]
- Perks: None
- Skills: Archery or Firearms 2, Armory or Bowyer 2, Heraldry 2, Polearms: Spear or Polearms: Naginata 2, Riding 2, Swords or Knives 3, plus one additional martial skill (bugei) 2.
- Starting Equipment: As for Buke.

Note that there are more weapon points for buke whose clans have a strong military emphasis. They can choose either to distribute the points evenly among their usual weapons, add a third weapon, or emphasize a single weapon with the extra points. Buke in arts-favoring clans get to choose an art form they wish to follow or excel in from the list of Skills, and start of with the “standard” buke military ability.

TALENTS

Talents are innate abilities that cannot be learned; rather, they are “gifts.” They have many functions in SENGOKU. Some are like minor powers, while others are better described as “skill enhancers,” representing certain “knacks” a character may have. Some function like skills and, as such, they will likely have a Stat associated with them for when rolls are needed.

All talents have a cost of 3 OP unless otherwise noted. Talents marked with an [X] may be purchased in levels, with each level costing the listed OP. Talents in italics are those abilities which are either thought of as improper for decent folks to use (at least publicly) or are somehow restricted.

Absolute Time Sense: “Knowing the Stream.” The character has an innate knowledge of the passing of time. The character always knows what time it is, even after being unconscious for a time.

Acute Hearing [X]: “Ears in Harmony.” The character hears in a wider range and more effectively than others; +1 on all Perception rolls based on hearing.

Acute Smell [X]: “The Hunting Wolf.” The character smells a wider range of odors more distinctly than most and can identify things and creatures based on such information; +1 on all Perception rolls based on smell.

Acute Vision [X]: “Eyes of the Falcon.” Sees more clearly over a longer range than most and possesses excellent night-time vision (though not as good as Night Vision), +1 on all Perception rolls based on sight over a distance and +2 vs any Range Combat penalties.

Ambidexterity: “The Battling Monkey.” The character is able to use both hands equally well (without the normal −3 penalty for using an off hand).

Animal Empathy: “Buddha’s Natural Harmony.” The character has an almost preternatural affinity for animals; +1 on all Animal Handler, Riding, and related skill rolls.

Beautiful/Handsome [X]: The character is more attractive than the average person, and gains +1 on all PRE-related skills where looks would count (GM’s discretion). (3 OP).

Beautiful Voice: “Voice of the Gods.” The character has an amazing singing and speaking voice; +1 on related skills/tests.

Blind Fighting: “The Sightless Path.” The character can make a Perception roll to avoid penalties in melee combat while blinded; requires a Perception roll each Phase. Coupled with Acute Hearing, this talent can turn a seemingly helpless blind man into a serious threat.

Charismatic: “The Stirring Soul.” The character has a natural leadership and inspirational ability; +1 on all related PRE tests, Leadership, Flattery and Oratory skill rolls.

Combat Sense [X]: “Blessing of Hachiman.” The character has a natural gift for combat situations, and gains +1 to all Initiative rolls.

Counterstrike: The character may choose the special Counterstrike action during combat. When using Counterstrike, the character gets a free attack against anyone who attempts to hit the character with a melee weapon and misses. The character may counter-strike up to a number of opponents in one phase equal to his score in the combat skill being used. Each successive counterstrike after the first is also at a cumulative −2 AV penalty. May be bought for any melee weapon or unarmed combat skill.
Among the men serving our clan, if there are some without talent or ability, they should be treated with special charity because of the strength of their determination. However, a man who is lacking in both determination and appearance will amount to absolutely nothing, regardless of the care taken for him.

— Asakura Toshikage
OKUDEN

Okuden ("inner art") are a special category of talent. Also called hidden ("secret art"), they are the secret skills taught only to prized students. Okuden may only be purchased by characters who possess the appropriate requisite skill with a score of at least 5 and who have a ML of 5 or better in the ryū teaching the okuden.

The prerequisite skill (if any) is listed in parenthesis. In the case of multiple skills, one must be selected for that okuden; an okuden must be purchased separately for each skill it is to be used with, without exception.

Only one okuden may be used by a character in a given Phase; characters may not use multiple okuden at the same time.

Different martial schools and traditions (ryū) have different names for various okuden, but the effects in game terms is the same.

For instance, while two ryū may have the Furious Wind okuden for ken-jutsu, one may call it "Butterfly Alighting on the Rock" while the other ryū may call it "Splitting Your Foe in Two."

A number of historical ryū are listed earlier in this book (see Ryū, page 86). GMs are encouraged to create several ryū with their own unique okuden for their own campaign.

During character creation, characters simply pay the listed OP cost for the okuden. Once play begins, however, the character must spend time in training and study of the okuden in addition to the listed OP cost. For purposes of calculating the time required for learning an okuden, treat the okuden as a "Desired Skill Level" of 10. Time spent learning an okuden may not be applied toward improving a character’s level in the prerequisite skill; an okuden and a prerequisite skill may not be studied concurrently.

For example; a character spends 16 weeks learning the Piercing Thrust okuden for his Swords skill. His current Swords skill score is 7. Any time the character spends studying the okuden (whether successful or not) cannot be applied to any time required to improve his Swords skill above 7.

The Archer’s Path: The character is able to load, draw a bow and loose an arrow as a single action. May be bought for Archery (3 OP)

Blade Trapping: The character has the ability to trap an opponent’s blade between his bare hands with a successful Block maneuver using an unarmored combat skill (Atemi-waza, Ju-jutsu, etc.). The character must have empty hands and receive the attack when using this okuden. A character who successfully traps a blade takes no damage from the attack. A successful trapping keeps the opponent from being able to move or use his weapon; he has the choice to drop it or try to pull back. The character with the skill may attempt to throw his opponent. May be bought for any unarmed combat skill. (3 OP)

Chakuzen-jutsu: The character may perform the "ceiling walking technique," by pressing his limbs and torso snugly against a wall or ceiling and manipulating the slightest handholds or crevasses to keep his body in position. The character may use up to his normal STR while in this position for Strikes, lifting objects, and so on. In addition, the character may crawl at a rate equal to 1/2 his MOV. May be bought for Climbing. (10 OP).

Cut From Heaven: The character may increase the damage done with a bladed weapon. The character inflicts +1d6 damage for each -2 AV penalty, up to a maximum of +3d6 (for a -6 AV penalty). May be bought for any bladed weapon skill. (3 OP)

Dogakure: The character may hurl up to five shuriken (or other small objects) in a single Action, using the Autofire rules (page 214). This okuden may be purchased twice, allowing the character to hurl up to 10 shuriken in one Action. May be bought for Throwing. (10 OP)

Furious Wind: The character may attempt to strike multiple opponents in a single Action. The character rolls against each target separately. However, the character suffers a cumulative penalty of -2 for each target; this penalty is applied to the attack roll for each target. May be bought for any single-weapon bugei (martial skill). (5 OP)

Hidden Blade: The character conceals his blade—under water, in a thick fog, in a billowy sleeve, etc.—thus concealing its true position from his opponent. Surprising his opponent, the character gains a +3 AV for his first action (either a Strike, Block or Pin) with the blade. Subsequent actions are unaffected. To receive the bonus, the sword must be hidden again. May be bought for any bladed melee weapon skill. (5 OP)

Karumi-jutsu: The ability to leap great distances. The character may leap up to an additional 20 meters (10 ken). Costs +1 END for each 10 meters (5 ken). May be bought for Athletics. (10 OP)

Lightning Strike: The character may attack a single target twice in one Round. Both attack rolls suffer a -2 AV penalty. May be bought for any single-weapon melee skill (e.g., may not be bought for Two Swords skill). (5 OP)

Piercing Thrust: The character’s strike becomes an Armor Piercing attack. May be bought for Knives, Swords or Polearms: Lance. (10 OP)

Reverse Cut: The character may strike at opponents to the side or even behind him with no penalty. May be bought for any melee weapon skill. (5 OP)

Seeing With The Ears: The character is able to attack an opponent—or rather, a target—that he only hears, but doesn’t see, such as in the case of someone crawling about in a ceiling or behind walls or in the bushes. Training for this skill also enhances one’s hearing, so there is a greater chance of one with this skill noticing the opponent even when others cannot. In the case of detection of such an opponent, the character can attack as if the target were in plain sight. May be bought for any weapon skill. (8 OP)

Seeking Arrow: The character is able to fire an arrow to strike an opponent’s vulnerable points, effectively cutting the target’s DEF by 1/2 with a successful roll (takes one Action; DN 20). +2 Difficulty for each successive attempt. May be bought for Archery. (Roll of 10 + 3d6 for 10 OP; +1 to roll for +2 OP)

Seeking Blade: The character is able to strike at an opponent’s vulnerable points, effectively cutting the target’s DEF by 1/2 with a successful roll (takes one Action; DN 20). +2 to the DN for each successive attempt. May be bought for any bladed melee weapon skill. (Roll of 10 + 3d6 for 10 OP; +1 to roll for +2 OP)

Smashing Blow: The character adds +1 Stun for each die rolled for damage. May be bought for any non-bladed melee weapon skill. (5 OP).
KI POWERS

Ki powers are special abilities which border on the fantastic or supernatural, although they are not mystical in the traditional sense. Ki Powers may only be purchased by characters that possess the Focus Ki skill (see page 145). It is recommended that ki powers be limited to Chanbara and Anime level campaigns.

To use a ki power, the character must spend an available Action to activate the ki power. Once activated, the appropriate amount of Ki is “burned.” Ki powers require 1 Ki per Phase to activate and maintain, unless otherwise noted. Some ki powers allow characters to put more than one point of Ki into the power, enhancing its effects. (See Ki, page 223)

(GMs are free to forgo the Focus Ki roll. This makes the use of ki powers very easy for characters (as they are automatic). While seemingly unbalancing, the cost of using such powers is self-regulating, as each character has a limited amount of Ki points to spend equal to their Focus Ki score.)

Basic Ki Powers

Armor of Hachiman: The character has the ability to deflect and/or avoid Killing Damage from melee or missile weapons. This is treated as “armor” that does not stack with any other defenses. Once activated, the power remains in effect until the users wills it to cease or the character becomes unconscious. (5 OP for every +2 Killing Defense; maximum of 6KD)

Deaden Sense: This Ki Power allows the user to temporarily deaden one of the target’s senses, rendering it unusable. This Ki Power may be used at range, using the character’s Focus Ki skill with his REF stat to achieve an AV. This power may be used on oneself. The maximum distance that this power may be cast is 30 meters (15 ken). (15 OP per 2 Phases of deadening of a single sense)

Immovable Mountain: A character using this power focuses his Ki to resist inertial force, and takes reduced Knockback from attacks (including shoves). (2 OP for -2 meters of Knockback)

Lack of Weakness: It is much harder to spot a weakness with Seeking Arrow or Seeking Blade on a character using this power. Each point of Lack of Weakness adds to the Difficulty Number for skills using a Seeking okuden. (5 OP to raise the DN of Seeking okuden skill rolls against the character by 5.)

Project Force: The character is able to manipulate physical objects at range as if he were physically touching them. The character may exert up to 2 STR for each 3 OP spent on this Ki Power, up to a maximum STR score equal to the character’s Focus Ki score. The character may lift and move whole objects, and strike opponents doing the normal damage for the STR used. For an additional 2 OP, the character can use fine manipulation. Costs 3 Ki per 2 STR projected per Phase, +2 Ki per Phase for fine manipulation. (15 OP for 2 STR, +10 OP for fine manipulation)

PERKS AND PRIVILEGES

Perks are useful items, privileges, or contacts a character has access to in a campaign. Perks can be special licenses or symbols of authority, friends, favors, or fringe benefits accruing from a profession. They are purchased with Option Points just like any Skill, and function as a value gauge of how powerful the Perk is (1 being lowest, 10 being best—the GM is the final arbiter of a Perk’s worth on the 1–10 scale); level 8 or 9 should really mean something!

Many Perks have mixed benefits, both good or bad, and game play should reflect this. Think about it: Being a well-connected, wealthy merchant might be nice, but there are bandits and ninja out there who’d love to have some of that money, to say nothing of wanting to find out what you know about other things…

Once the GM has established the level of the Perk, he must decide just how much impact that perk has on the world; for example, in an anime game, being a master swordsman wouldn’t mean that much, but in a chanbara game it would be of moderate impact, and in a realistic, historical milieu such people are so rare as to be of high impact on the game. The impact is matched to the chart below and the basic cost for the Perk (listed below) is multiplied by the value indicated. This will be the final cost.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Campaign</th>
<th>Multiply</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Style</td>
<td>Perk By</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very High Impact</td>
<td>x4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Impact</td>
<td>x3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate Impact</td>
<td>x2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little or No Impact</td>
<td>x1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contact

You have an “in” with someone who can help you out in some way (usually off the record, of course). The following Contacts are typical in SENGOKU. The number in parentheses is the cost of the Contact.

Authority Figure: Student of military ryū (1), Town policeman (dōshin) (2), Town police captain (yoriki) (3), Head of martial arts school (3), Town magistrate or samurai fief-holder (4), Samurai general (5). Minor daimyō (6). Major daimyō (7). Imperial noble/kuge, or shōgunate official (8). Shōgun (9).

Religious Figure: Franciscan priest (1), Jesuit priest (2), Shintō or Buddhist priest (3), Shugenja sect leader (4), Sōhei sect leader (5).

Foreigner: Nanbanjin ship crewman (1), Nanbanjin ship pilot (2), Nanbanjin trader (3).

Underworld Figure: Criminal gang member or bandit leader (2), Leader of a large criminal gang (3), Ninja genin/clang member (5), Ninja chūnin/supervisor (7).

Commoner: Business or shop owner (2), Laborer/craftsman (2), Bonge village elder (2), Wealthy merchant (3).

A man exists for a generation, but his name lasts to the end of time.

— Yamamoto Jin’emon
Debt Owed
Someone owes you a debt (an on; see On, page 35) which has yet to be repaid. Similar to a favor, but with greater social implications; a man cannot refuse to repay a debt without losing face. If a character refuses to repay a debt or favor when called upon to do so, he loses 3K Honor Points. The cost of a Debt Owed is one half the cost listed for Contacts (round down).

Good Karma
You have acquired good karma for a past good deed or pious act, either in this or a previous life. You have: 1 point of good Karma (5), 2 points of good Karma (10), 3 points of good Karma (15)

License
Your character has a legally sanctioned right to do things that would normally be considered illegal (license to collect taxes, hunt criminals, etc.). Licenses are individual cases, granting you authority rather than “loaning” you use of the authority of a group (as above)—you get no resources, but you also don’t have so many responsibilities. For example: License to run a shop at level 1 allows you to have a noodle stall or tea hut; at level 6 you can do the same at an official road station, or have a small tea house; a level 10 will allow a major tavern at an official station. The following Licenses (Menkyô) exist in Sengoku.

Sail or own merchant ships (1). Travel outside your home province (1), Run a business or shop (1), Use a Japanese port and conduct trade (nanbanjin only) (1), Preach a foreign religion (2), Start your own sub-ryû or school (2), Marry someone from outside your caste (2), Start your own crime gang (2), Carry the two swords of the samurai (dai-shô) (3), Start your own samurai clan (4).

Membership
You can call upon the resources of an organization, person, government, or group—but you also have responsibilities. The character’s Membership Level (ML) represents his status in the organization, not the influence of the group (that’s what the multipliers above are for).

For example: A Membership Level of 1 (ML1) in a samurai clan will cost 3 points, and will let you be (if buke) an ashigaru captain; a ML10 will cost 30 points, and let you be the daimyô of the clan.

The following organizations/groups exist in Sengoku. The cost given is the cost per level of membership.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Group</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Pt.</td>
<td>Inferiot/hinin groups (Franciscan order, small criminal gang, hinin village)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Pts.</td>
<td>Commoner/bonge groups (Society of Jesus, merchant house/guild, Shinô shrine, shinobi clan, large criminal gang)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Pts.</td>
<td>Major/buke groups (Samurai clan, Buddhist sects)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Pts.</td>
<td>Imperial Court</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a samurai is in service his lord may have large expenses to meet and may need to borrow from his retainers’ salaries for a certain number of years. In this case, whether the amount is great or small, it is highly improper for a samurai to suggest, or even hint in the privacy of his family much less outside of it, that this causes him any difficulty or embarrassment.

— Daidôji Yûzan

Renown
Your reputation, usually in a favorable light. People go out of their way to curry favor with you, or to at least avoid getting on your bad side. At 3, most local people know you; at 6 you’re name is known far and wide; at 9 you’re a national figure. Different levels of fame and the associated cost, depending on one’s profession, are available. The numbers in parenthesis represent typical Renown scores for each type of person, assuming they are, indeed, known in a favorable way. (Characters with a poor reputation should buy Bad Reputation; see Complications)

Politics: Daimyô (9), Imperial Court official (8), Shomyô (daimyô of a small clan) (5–7), Famous general (4–6), Town yoriki (3–4).

Entertainment: National sumô champion (6–7), Famous Nô actor (5–7), Imperial Court poet (4–6), Local sumô champion (3–5), High-ranking courtesan (3–5).

Underworld: Leader of large criminal organization (2–5), Shinobi Jônin (2–4), Infamous criminal (2–4), Leader of small criminal/bandit gang (1–3).

Miscellaneous: Master swordsmit (3–6), Mystic/spell-caster (3–5), Wealthy merchant (2–4), Nanbanjin (2–4), Founder of a school (1–6), Master artisan (1–5), Founder of Temple (1–4), Chinese or Korean (1–3), Doctor (1–3).

Wealth
Characters are assumed to be “lower middle class” within their caste; the character has enough to get by— a steady job, clothes his back and simple tools to ply his trade (i.e., starting equipment)—and a disposable income of 10 coins per year. The Wealth perk boosts one’s lifestyle. Spending 1 OP places you comfortably in the middle class. Only merchants, powerful daimyô, and heads of large criminal organizations should ever exceed wealth level of 6. The following levels of Wealth are available to characters in Sengoku.

Disposable income in the table below is given as a number. The type of coin depends on the caste of the character: Hinin = zeni (copper); Bonge = monme-ita (silver); Buke and kuge = bu-shohban (gold). The disposable income represents how much money the character can freely spend in a year while still managing to cover basic expenses (a home, basic clothes, food, etc.)

If converting OP to money, the character receives 1 coin for each OP converted (type of coin based on caste, as above).
Everyman Skills (Nichijō Gi-jutsu)

Everyman Skills are those skills that are common to all characters, regardless of caste or profession. They are considered skills or abilities possessed by everyone in the campaign setting. All characters receive an automatic score of 2 in each Everyman Skill at no cost. Characters may not “sell off” these skills; they are part of the culture and/or natural human ability. They may be increased as other skills, at a rate of 1 OP per level during character creation and as per the rules for improving skills once play begins.

Some Everyman Skills are also listed alphabetically within other skill sections; they are marked with an asterisk for easier identification. Everyman Skills include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Athletics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folklore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Knowledge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language (native language)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Expert (home village/town)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shintō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deduction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversational</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yōkai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**How Good is My Skill?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>Everyday: You’ve learned the basics of this task and can do this thing most of the time, though not very well. You’re an apprentice or a beginner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>Competent: You are well trained and practiced in this skill, and can perform it well in everyday circumstances. You can handle unusual applications of the skill with some difficulty. You’re considered a professional.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–6</td>
<td>Heroic: You are a master of this skill, and are capable of unusual applications of the skill. You are considered a master craftsman, swordsman, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–8</td>
<td>Incredible: A skill at this level means you’re one of the very best in the world. You are at ease with unusual applications of the skill, or even new applications. This is entering the realm of fiction, of amazing skill that’s not quite impossible!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9–10</td>
<td>Legendary: A skill at this level puts you in the realm of the greatest practitioners of this skill in history. You are pushing forward the boundaries of the skill and what it can be used for, and have entered the realm of genius and fiction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11+</td>
<td>Superheroic: Skills at this level are better than anyone could believe in the real world. This realm belongs to comic books, fantasy, mythology or anime.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SKILLS**

Skill resolution is very easy. Every skill is related to a characteristic. When you use a skill, you simply add your score in that skill to the appropriate stat, and add that total to a die roll of 3d6. Compare the total to the Difficulty Number (DN). The DN is assigned to each task by the GM. In the case of contested skills the DN is equal to your opponent’s Stat + Skill + 3d6 (or Stat + Skill + 10 in combat). The stat listed is the “default stat” for the Skill. GMs may require the character to use a different stat depending on their particular use of the Skill.

For example: Ken-jutsu (Swords) is normally used with the REF stat. If a character was to study an opponent’s style to try and determine which ken-jutsu ryū’s style he was using, the GM could call for a Swords skill roll using INT instead of REF (i.e., INT + Swords + 3d6).

**WSGOUKOU** uses a specific, expanded list of skills. The various skills are listed under their appropriate headings, namely: Classical Arts, Martial Arts, Practical Skills, Forbidden Skills, and Magical Skills. Forbidden Skills are generally thought of as improper for “decent folks” to use (at least publicly). While some of these “low” skills may also be Everyman skills, it should be noted that their use in mixed company may be treated as suspect, at best.

Due to the length of the skills list, only the actual title of the Skill and the Skill’s default stat appear in this section. For a full account of the skill, see Skills, page 140).
## SKILL LIST

### Forbidden Skills (Kindan Gijutsu)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Name (Japanese Name)</th>
<th>Primary Stat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barbarian Customs (Bangaku)</td>
<td>INT (PRE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blowgun (Fukkburi-jutsu)</td>
<td>INT (REF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry (Yugen)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demolitions (Hai-jutsu)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disguise (Hensu-jutsu)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Espionage (Onmitsu)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forcery (Gishooin-jutsu)</td>
<td>WILL (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnotism (Saimin-jutsu)</td>
<td>WILL (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lockpicking (Kagiake)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninjutsu (aka Ninpo)</td>
<td>DEX (TECH)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Classical Arts (Gei-jutsu)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Name (Japanese Name)</th>
<th>Primary Stat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calligraphy (Shogakukan)</td>
<td>INT (AES)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classical Literature (Kobun)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese (Kangaku)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese (Koten Bangaku)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flower Arrangement (Ikebana)</td>
<td>AES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incense Ceremony (Kôdô)</td>
<td>AES (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music (Ongaku)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drums (Taiko)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flutes (Fue / Shakuhachi)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lute (Biwa)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koto (Koto)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singing (Utai)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nô (Nô)</td>
<td>DEX (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Painting (E-gaku)</td>
<td>AES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poetry (Shikka)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea Ceremony (Cha-no-yû)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea Connoisseur (Suki)</td>
<td>AES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Practical Arts (Jitsuyu Gijutsu)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Name (Japanese Name)</th>
<th>Primary Stat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acrobatics (Karumi-jutsu)</td>
<td>DEX (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acting (Momonane)</td>
<td>PRE (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal Handling (Bakuro-jutsu)</td>
<td>PRE (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armoring (Gosoku-tsuchi)</td>
<td>TECH (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astronomy (Tennmongaku)</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athletics (Taidô)</td>
<td>DEX (CON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Badminton (Hanetssuki)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boating (Fanagato)</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer (Yami-shi)</td>
<td>TECH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bribery (Baishû)</td>
<td>PRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism (Bukkôdo)</td>
<td>INT (PIE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bureaucracy (Shinshi)</td>
<td>PRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business (Jitsuyu)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpentry (Mokkô)</td>
<td>TECH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carving (Chôgaku)</td>
<td>AES (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christianity (Kirishitan)</td>
<td>INT (TECH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing (Honobôri)</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concealment (Meisai-jutsu)</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentration (Haragai)</td>
<td>WILL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confucianism (Jagaku)</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contortionist (Nawanake-jutsu)</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conversation (Danwa)

| PRE |
| AES/TECH |
| TECH |
| TECH |
| INT (TECH) |
| INT |
| INT |
| INT |
| INT (TECH) |
| INT |

## Martial Arts (Bugei)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Name (Japanese Name)</th>
<th>Primary Stat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Archery (Kyû-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrow Cutting (Yadome-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atemi-waza (Atemi-waza)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Axes (Ono-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binding (Hojo-jutsu)</td>
<td>TECH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chains (Kusari-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fans (Tessen-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firearms (Hô-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forced March (Hayagake-jutsu)</td>
<td>CON/WILL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iai-jutsu</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jitte (Jitte-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ju-jutsu (Ju-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kama (Kama-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knives (Tanto-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninpo Taijutsu (Ninpo Taijutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nunchaku (Nunchaku-te)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe (Kiseru-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polearms (See below)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glaveses (Naginata-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man-catchers (Sodegarami-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lances (Sô-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staves (Bô-jutsu and Jô-jutsu)</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranged Evade</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strategy (Sakusen)</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battles (Senjo-jutsu)</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaigning (Shusai)</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siege (Chikajo-jutsu)</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sumai</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming (Suie-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swords (Ken-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing (Shrikken-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Swords (Ni-tô ken-jutsu)</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Magical Arts (Mahô-jutsu)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Name (Japanese Name)</th>
<th>Primary Stat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism (Bukkyô)</td>
<td>INT (PIE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ommyôdo (Ommyôdô)</td>
<td>INT (PIE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shintô (Shiten)</td>
<td>INT (PIE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shugendo (Shugendô)</td>
<td>INT (PIE)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Everyman skills indicated in bold type.

---

Even if you are aware that you may be struck down today and are firmly resolved to an inevitable death, if you are slain with an unseemly appearance, you will show your lack of previous resolve, will be despised by your enemy, and will appear unclean. For this reason it is said that both old and young should take care of their appearance.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
OCCUPATIONS
In this chapter, we will provide an overview of the most commonly occurring professions that might be met with in feudal Japan, and how they may affect gameplay. The most pleasant aspect of the Sengoku game is that there is no such thing as the “character class” per se. Your PC will have a caste to which he belongs, and you can choose a suitable occupation for him from the following list of occupations. There is no reason you can’t even mix and match: a magic-using kuge bushi is not unplayable in the context of Sengoku (as a matter of fact, it might be interesting to play one!).

With each occupational listing are indications of which castes are suitable for that profession, and we give any specifications as to how to use that profession for your PC. The next chapters actually explain the method of character generation, the various skills your characters (or NPCs) might have, and the actual templates for several specific professions.

For the GM, we also provide “typical stats” for an NPC of this occupation, within each possible caste. To make the game truly flavorful, however, be advised that merely using the same NPC stats over and over is by itself insufficient. You must imbue each character with his own unique personality to make him stand out from the crowd. The meaning of the stats of each profession will become clear as you read the next few chapters. For an explanation of the skills referred to in the following occupations, see the chapter Skills (page 139).

There is no reason a person of one caste and occupation may not attempt to pass himself off as one of another calling; however, the character’s stats will reflect his true nature, occupation, and lineage: only his actions are those of another profession (assuming he knows it well enough to pull it off). For example, a more exalted samurai may attempt to pass himself off as an ashigaru, but while people will react to him as he appears, he will still have the abilities of a samurai of his true rank. This ability to appear other than what you are is critical for shinobi, as a shinobi out in the streets in his nightsuit wouldn’t last five minutes—but who would expect the man at the noodle stand on the corner to be a top shinobi, a master of disguises, who is gathering information on the comings and goings of the estate next to his setup?

CASTE VS. OCCUPATION

The buke are the military aristocracy (the warrior caste, if you will), while the kuge are the civil aristocracy. The bonge are just that; commoners. As one can surmise from the fact that some members of the kuge served military roles—with some Imperial princes even doing stints as Shōgun—and the fact that many samurai were famous men of letters, caste and occupation are two totally different matters. Put another way, not all buke were bushi, and not all bushi were buke.

An aristocratic scion may learn to fight and develop a taste for battle. A samurai may choose to cloister himself and devote his life to the arts. The only exception is that unless he takes the tonsure, a samurai is always expected to perform his duty for his clan, no matter what his “main” profession may be.

A NOTE ON WARRIORS

By the Edo Period the term bushi was synonymous with the word samurai. Since the caste system had been locked into place, this was a natural development. Since all samurai are by default buke, bushi would then refer to any member of the buke caste.

Be that as it may: the Sengoku Period was an age of social upheaval, and not all who donned armor or took up a sword were members of a warrior caste. Some, like Hideyoshi, were peasants who proved unusually skilled. Some kuge, like Prince Morinaga, found their destiny on the field, as well. It’s a world for the taking.

For this reason, for the sake of simplicity, within the contexts of the Sengoku game, the term “samurai” shall mean any buke in the service of a daimyō (i.e., a retainer), while “bushi” will refer to any warrior, regardless of caste.

BASIC CLASSIFICATIONS

To make things go more smoothly, the following chart should give you an idea of the relationships of specific occupations. Some occupations will appear under more than one heading, as the occupation crosses certain boundaries (e.g., sōhei, the Buddhist warrior monks).

Shintō Clerics

Güji (shrine head priest)
Itako (medium—also must be a Miko)
Kannushi (Shintō priests)
Miko (shrine maiden)
Pilgrims (laymen)

Buddhist Clerics

Ama (nuns)
Bōzu (monks/bonze)
Komusō (traveling monks)
Nisō (Buddhist Priestess)
Pilgrims (laymen)
Risshi (senior Buddhist priests)
Shugenja (yamabushi mage-mocks)
Sō (Buddhist priests)
Sōhei (warrior monks)
Sōjō (Abbots)
Sōzu (temple overseer)

Warriors

Ashigaru (low-ranked bushi in a clan)
Budōka (martial artists)
Bushi (warriors, any caste)
Hatamoto (samurai direct retainer to lord)
Jizamurai (farmer samurai/gentry)
Kensei (weapon masters)
Rōnin (masterless buke)
Samurai (buke warriors in service)
Sōhei (Buddhist warrior monks)
Wakō (pirates)

A man who would have a gardener do a carpenter’s job, or a carpenter do a gardener’s job, is no judge of men and is highly incompetent. No matter how bright a person is, he will have his strong and weak points. If one will comply with men’s various abilities and use them appropriately, all matters will be assigned correctly and the master will be without trouble.

— Asakura Soteki
Mystic Professions
Yamabushi or Shugenja (Buddhist mage-monks)
Itako (Shintō mediums)

Commoners in General
Akindo (merchants)
Baishun (prostitutes)
Ichi (masseur)
Eta (untouchables)
Hikyaku (couriers)
Hizoku (brigands)
Hyakushō (farmers)
Isha (physicians)
Kantaimono (entertainers)
Nusubito (common thief)
Sensui Kawaramono (riverbed folk gardeners)
Shokunin (artisans and craftsmen)
Sumōtori (sumō wrestlers)
Wakō (pirates)

Outsiders
Chinese Artists and Scholars
Chinese Diplomats
Korean Artists and Scholars
Korean Prisoners of War
Nanban Clergy (Jesuit or Franciscan)
Nanban Sailors and Traders

Shinobi
Genin (clan functionary)
Chūnin (clan official/manager)
Jōnin (clan head)

OCCUPATIONS AND NPC CLASSES

The following occupation and class templates are available in SENGOKU:
Abbot (Sōjō)
Artisan or Craftsman (Shokunin)
Ashigaru
Bandit (Akutō/Hizoku)
Buddhist Priest (Sō)
Chinese Artist or Scholar
Courier
Court Official
Daimyō
Doctors (Isha)
Entertainer
Eta
European Foreigner (Nanbanjin)
European Priest/Missionary (Nanban no bateren)
Executioner
Farmer (Hyakushō)
Fisherman (Ryōshi)

Players may use the following profession templates as starting points for creating characters. They are not mandatory, however; they are merely guides for beginning players. Experienced players are free to create characters from scratch, borrowing from the templates or ignoring them altogether, as they see fit.

Average People
In the interests of simplicity, the average person (i.e., typical NPC) may be taken to have certain things in common. In game terms, we will assume that their basic statistics are all at a score of 3 (i.e., the average score for the average person).

Average Person (Adult)

Not to forget one’s master is the most fundamental thing for a retainer.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Creating Characters Using the Templates

To create a new Sengoku character using the profession templates, simply follow these steps.

1. Select a Caste Package (from page 111) and write down the complications, perks, talents and skills for that package on a blank character sheet in the appropriate spaces (or on a blank piece of paper). We recommend you write these in pencil, as they will likely change.

2. Select a profession template and add the complications, perks and talents and skills listed for that template to the character sheet. Ignore any duplicate listings for complications, perks or talents, and combine scores for any duplicated skills.

3. To improve your character's characteristics, add either 5 points (for Historic-level characters), 20 points (for Chanbara-level characters) or 35 points (for Anime-level characters) to the primary characteristics and recalculate the derived characteristics for the character. Record the updated scores on your character sheet.

4. Spend an additional 20 points (Historic-level), 35 points (Chanbara-level) or 50 points (Anime-level) to improve the character's existing skills or buy new skills, perks, talents, skills and okuden for the character.

5. You may take additional complications for your character to receive additional OP, if you wish. These extra OP may be spent to improve existing skills or buy new skills, perks, talents, skills and okuden for the character. (Remember the campaign limit for complications, though.)

6. Record all equipment listed for the Caste Package and Profession Template you selected on your character sheet. These are the items your character begins play with.

7. Determine your character's Wealth (see page 117). All characters have a default Wealth of 1 (with 1 coin of disposable income per year). You may also purchase additional levels of Wealth. (Note: Samurai—buke in service to a daimyō—receive an annual stipend, determined by their Membership Level in the clan; see page 85. Samurai characters receive this amount in addition to any additional Wealth purchased for the character.)

8. Choose a family name and given name for your character. You should talk to your GM about the name of the clan or ryū your character is a member of, if any.

9. Create a background (or “back story”), a basic personality and motivations for your character, and you’re ready to play!

Multiple Occupations

There is no reason that NPCs (or PCs, for that matter) will be limited by a single occupation. For example, an NPC can be an innkeeper by day, and a nusubito (thief) by night; in such instances, the PC or NPC should have all relevant “skills” for doing his chosen work.

Another good example is a character who is a daimyō. It is logical to assume that most (if not all) daimyō were once bushi. Thus, a player creating a daimyō character would be wise to select the daimyō template and add those skills, perks and complications unique to the Bushi profession.

Any equipment indicated for a profession which duplicates an item already provided by another profession should be ignored; characters do not receive duplicate items as part of their starting equipment.

...a man whose profession is the use of arms should think and then act upon not only his own fame, but also that of his descendants. He should not scandalize his name forever by holding his one and only life to dear. On the other hand, to consider this life that is given to us only once as nothing more than dust and ashes, and lose it at a time when one should not, would be to gain a reputation that is not worth having.

—Shiba Yoshimasa
**Sōjō**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aes</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Str</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bod</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Equipment:**
- Buddhist robes and kesa
- Calligraphy set

**Perks:**
- ML 5 in sect (15)
- Renown (3)

**Complications:**
- Honest: Risk bodily harm (Const, Maj) (-5)
- Public Figure: Head of temple (Const, Maj) (-12)
- Vow: Buddhist priestly vows, risk life & limb (Const, Maj) (-15)

**Skills:**

**Equipment:**
- Buddhist robes and kesa (Above average quality), calligraphy set.

**Allowed Castes:**
- Buke, Kuge.

**Description:**
Sōjō are the head priests of a Buddhist temple or monastery. As clergy, they are outside the normal caste system, but it is still rare for a sōjō to come from any but the highest ranks of society. Many sōjō of major temples are actually related in some distant way to the Emperor, others to powerful daimyō.

On the road, sōjō are accompanied by priests or monks from their temple or sect.

They dress in the fashion of the priest, but in better, more impressive clothing. Their robes are often fine silk brocades.

A sōjō may possess the ability to use magic, but at a higher level. Sōjō from the buke caste will retain their daishō (katana and wakizashi) but will keep the swords stored away, not carried on their person.

---

**Shokunin**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aes</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Str</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bod</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Skills: Choice of one Classical Art or Practical Skill +2, choice of one additional Practical Skill +2, Business +2, Streetwise +2, Teach +2.

**Equipment:**
- Cloth apron (deonburi), artisan/craftsmen’s kit (for applicable art/craft), wrapping cloth (furoshiki).

**Allowed Castes:**
- All.

**Description:**
The artisan and craftsman typically concentrates his skills and efforts in the construction of works of art in usually a single field. Possible areas are: cabinetry; architecture; calligraphy; painting; lacquer; armoring; swordsmithing; goldsmithing; weaving; statuary (casting or carving); stonemasonry; literature/poetry; ceramic/pottery, and so on.

Some artisans are also clergy, doing their art as a form of meditation or contemplation. In this case, their caste of origin does not matter, and they may be of any caste. If the artisan is not clergy, caste is limited.

---

**Ashigaru**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aes</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Str</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bod</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Equipment:**
- Lance (yari), katana or wakizashi, complete ashigaru armor (see page 161), sword cleaning kit, bamboo water bottle.

**Allowed Castes:**
- Bonge, Buke.

**Description:**
An ashigaru may either be from the lowest ranks of the buke or a bonge who enlists in the local daimyō’s army. Their social standing will likewise be uneven. To other samurai or bushi, they are the non-coms, the mudfeet. To peasants, they are still warriors, awe-inspiring at times, fear-inspiring at others.

Most of the ranks of samurai armies are made of ashigaru. For this reason, it is usual for an ashigaru to wander about alone.

If your PC is a very low-ranked samurai, you may consider him an ashigaru. If, on the other hand, your PC is a bonge and you wish him to be attached to a clan, he will have to become an ashigaru, attached to someone’s clan, in which case going out “campaigning” would be hard to explain to his superiors.

---

One should not be overly fond of famous swords and knives. Even if one has a swords valued at 10,000 coins, he will not overcome 100 men carrying spears valued at 100 coins.

— Asakura Toshikage

www.sengoku.com
Akutō

Int 3 Will 3 Pre 4 Aes 2
Pie 2 Kao 2 Str 4 Con 3
Bod 4 Tech 3 Ref 4 Dex 3
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 20
Hits 20 Rec 6 Res 9 Hon 20

Perks: ML 3 in criminal gang (6).
Complications: Enemy: Local authorities (more powerful, limited area, capture) (-10), Lecherous: Risk bodily harm (frequent, major) (-8).
Skills: Athletics +1, Climbing +1, Disguise +1, Interrogation +1, Knives +2, Local Expert: operating area +3, Persuasion (intimidation) +3, Polearms: Lances +2, Streetwise +3, Stealth +1, Survival +2, Swords +3.
Equipment: Yari or katana, provision bag (kate-bukuro), bamboo water bottle, traveler’s rations (3 day’s worth).
Allowed Castes: All.
Description: Akutō (also called hizoku) are or bandits; brazenly open thieves, rapists, or killers. They may have been trained as bushi (former ashigaru who have deserted their erstwhile lords) or they may be self-taught. They will do whatever it takes to achieve their ends.

Sō

Int 3 Will 4 Pre 3 Aes 3
Pie 5 Kao 3 Str 2 Con 3
Bod 2 Tech 3 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 10
Hits 10 Rec 5 Res 12 Hon 30

Perks: ML 2 in Buddhist sect (3), Renown: Local priest (1).
Talents: Mystic: Bukkyō (5)
Complications: Poverty: poor (Constant, Minor) (-4), Public Figure: Buddhist priest (frequent, major) (-7), Vow: Buddhist priestly vows, risk life & limb (constant, major) (-15).
Skills: Buddhism +3, Calligraphy +3, two Classical Arts (choice) +2, Classical Literature: Chinese +3, Diplomacy +2, Language: Chinese (& kanji) +2, Meditation +2, Oratory +2, Persuasion +2, Rhetoric +2, Teaching +2.
Equipment: Buddhist robes and kesa (Average quality), “seven-ring” staff (shakujō), Buddhist rosary.
Allowed Castes: All.
Description: Sō are Buddhist priests, who are usually attached to a single temple or monastery. Sō wear simple kimonos in solid, somber colors (or saffron), over which they wear a kesa (a large, rectangular piece of fabric hung from a band of fabric around the neck). A priest knows many sutras (sacred Buddhist scriptures), often by memory. They may also possess the ability to use “magic” or mystic prayers.

Chinese Artist/Scholar

Int 4 Will 2 Pre 2 Aes 4
Pie 3 Kao 3 Str 2 Con 3
Bod 3 Tech 4 Ref 3 Dex 4
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 5 Res 6 Hon 30

Perks: Contact: Minor daimyō (6).
Complications: Outsider: Chinese (Infrequent, Minor) (-2).
Skills: Choice of two Classical Arts or academic skills +2, Calligraphy +2, choice of Research or High Society +2.
Equipment: One set Chinese clothing, 10 sheets of paper (washi), calligraphy set, straw hat (kasa).
Allowed Castes: N/A.
Description: The specifics for scholars and artisans apply here. In addition, the character is from China, so will usually be a member of a daimyō or Imperial courtier’s suit, or visiting a monastery or temple. It is highly unlikely (1 in 6 chance) that he will be in Japan entirely on his own. His specialty will be the varied arts, crafts, sciences, or knowledge of the Chung Kuo (The Middle Kingdom), not Nihon (Japan).

Needless to say, the knowledge of a Chinese scholar of a Chinese subject will tend to be better than that of a Japanese scholar of the same subject.

Cultivated people consider justice foremost. When cultivated people have courage without justice, they become rebellious. When petty people have courage without justice, they become brigands.

— Confucius
Hikyaku

Int 3 Will 4 Pre 2 Aes 2
Pie 3 Kao 3 Str 3 Con 4
Bod 3 Tech 2 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 5 End 40 SD 8 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 7 Res 6 Hon 30

Perks: License to pass government highway checkpoints unimpeded (5).
Complications: Poverty: poor (constant, minor) (-4).
Skills: Athletics +1, Bureaucracy +1, Expert: Highways & roads +2, Forced March +4, Streetwise +1.
Equipment: Portable paper lantern (chôchin), quart of lantern oil, straw hat (kasa), backpack, bamboo water bottle.
Allowed Castes: Hinin, Bonge.
Description: Hikyaku (or “flying legs”) are responsible for carrying messages over long distances. They are available at post stations in most towns. Some daimyô keep a few couriers on staff, though they are easy enough to hire in town.

Important messages sent by courier will not be a courier and it is a relatively well-paying job, earning about 1 monme per ri of distance covered. Missing a deadline, however, can prove fatal.

Kuge Courtier

Int 3 Will 3 Pre 4 Aes 3
Pie 3 Kao 4 Str 3 Con 3
Bod 3 Tech 2 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 6 Res 9 Hon 40

Perks: Contact: Major daimyô (7), Debt Owed: by major clan official (5), +2 ML in Imperial Court (8).
Complications: Public Figure: Kuge (frequent, extreme) (-20), Sense of Duty: to Emperor (frequent, major) (-5).
Skills: Bureaucracy +2, Bribery +2, Diplomacy +2, Flattery +3, High Society +2, two Classical Arts +2 each.
Equipment: Tachi (ceremonial sword), kantô, ceremonial court robe (above-average quality), sachet.
Allowed Castes: Kuge
Description: Kuge court officials are typically high-ranking members of their castes, although even lower ranking men can be functionaries. Kuge courtiers rarely, if ever, walk; they are typically carried in a kago borne by two kagoya (kago-bearers). Kuge courtiers will have a personal retinue consisting of a number of bodyguards equal to the kuge’s ML (treat as Samurai), 1d6-2 attendants (treat as ML 1 kuge courtiers), and a number of porters (treat as “average men”) equal to his ML. If traveling outside the Imperial palace, triple the number of guards (3 x kuge’s ML); in addition, there is a 4 in 6 chance that an escort of 2d6+6 samurai from the local daimyô’s clan will also be with the kuge’s retinue.

Samurai Courtier

Int 3 Will 3 Pre 4 Aes 3
Pie 3 Kao 4 Str 3 Con 3
Bod 3 Tech 2 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 6 Res 9 Hon 40

Perks: Contact: Major daimyô (7), Debt Owed: by major clan official (5), ML 6 in samurai clan (18), Renown: Known far and wide (6).
Complications: Public Figure: High-ranking court official (Frequent, Major) (-10), Vow: Fealty to daimyô, risk life & limb (Frequent, Extreme) (-25).
Skills: Bureaucracy +2, Bribery +2, Diplomacy +2, High Society +2, Diplomacy +1.
Equipment: Tachi (ceremonial longsword), court vest (kaginu), handkerchief (fukusa), purse (uchi-bukuro), complete upper-rank samurai armor (page 134).
Allowed Castes: Buke
Description: Samurai courtiers are typically high-ranking members of their clans, although even lower ranking men can be functionaries. Senior courtiers are involved in the management of the clan, sits in court with the daimyô and influences the decisions made on behalf of the clan. Junior courtiers are “in training,” as it were. They are generally retainers or relatives of higher-ranking members of the court.

Samurai courtiers of sufficient rank (ML 6 or higher) may travel in a kago (nobleman’s palanquin) or on horseback; seldom will they walk any significant distance, and never alone.

Any samurai courtier traveling in public will have an escort of 1d6 x 2 personal samurai retainers.

Daimyô

Whatever you do should be done for the sake of your master and parents, the people in general, and for posterity. This is great compassion. The wisdom and courage that come from compassion are real wisdom and courage.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Complications: Code of Honor: Bushidō, risk life & limb (Freq, Extr) (-25), Public Figure (6).

Skills: Riding +2, Diplomacy +1, Leadership +2, Strategy: (choice) +2.

Equipment: Court vest (kataginu), handkerchief (fukusa), purse (uchi-bukuro), complete upper-rank samurai armor, strongbox (for carrying armor during peacetime), horse.


Description: Daimyō are the heads of buke clans. The lives of everyone in his clan (and fief) rest in the hands of the daimyō. All daimyō are, by definition, samurai.

Daimyō in their own castle or estate will have 1d6 hatamoto (personal samurai retainers and bodyguards) with them at all times—they may be hidden behind a sliding wall or around a corner, but they are never more than a shout away from their master.

Daimyō travel either by kago or by horse. When traveling in public within his own fief, a daimyō procession includes 2d6 x 2 samurai retainers, 2d6 x 3 ashigaru, 1d6+2 attendants (including a doctor, priest, and possibly a shinto or three) and 2d6 porters (treat as Average Men). If outside their fief, double the number of samurai retainers and ashigaru.

Isha

When you are sick or in difficulties, many of those who were friendly or close to you in daily life will become cowards. When anyone is in unhappy circumstances, you should above all inquire after them by visiting or sending some gift. And you should never in your whole life be negligent toward someone from whom you have received a favor.

Entertainers are paid as often in clothes as in money. If an entertainer or troupe is hired to perform their services to the innkeeper for particular occasions. More wealthy entertainers ply the streets by taverns and inns, offering their services to the innkeeper for parties and other festive occasions. More wealthy entertainers may have their own establishments, permanent engagements, or better known entertainers may have their acting +3, choice of one entertainment skill +4. Choice of one additional entertainment skill +3, Oratory +2, Persuasion +3

Equipment: Kimono (of bright colors and bold patterns) or Nō costume (if an actor), stage nick-knack/props or an instrument, purse, umbrella (lacquered with bright colors and/or bold patterns), portable lantern, 10 sheets paper, seal stone with personal seal.

Allowed Castes: Hinin, bonge

Description: Kantaimono—singers, actors, dancers, puppeteers, and musicians—are all from the bonge caste. Often, itinerant entertainers ply the streets by taverns and inns, offering their services to the innkeeper for parties and other festive occasions. More wealthy or better known entertainers may have their own establishments, permanent engagements, or wealthy patrons. Most, however, wander the land. Some blind poet/musicians are famous for their bardic expertise, and can earn a comfortable living for a week or more with one evening’s recital of the Tale of the Heike, self-accompanied on a biwa.

Entertainers are paid as often in clothes as in money. If an entertainer or troupe is hired by a daimyō but travel is required, the daimyō may be behind a sliding wall or around a corner, but they are never more than a shout away from their master. Kantaimono

Kantaimono

When you are sick or in difficulties, many of those who were friendly or close to you in daily life will become cowards. When anyone is in unhappy circumstances, you should above all inquire after them by visiting or sending some gift. And you should never in your whole life be negligent toward someone from whom you have received a favor.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo

Entertainers are paid as often in clothes as in money. If an entertainer or troupe is hired by a daimyō but travel is required, the daimyō will typically provide special allowances (e.g., extra pay) and even a samurai escort.

Entertainers are paid as often in clothes as in money. If an entertainer or troupe is hired by a daimyō but travel is required, the daimyō will typically provide special allowances (e.g., extra pay) and even a samurai escort.
Nanbanjin (European)

Int 3 Will 4 Pre 3 Aes 2
Pie 3 Kao 2 Str 3 Con 4
Body 3 Tech 4 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 40 SD 8 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 7 Res 12 Hon 20

Perks: Contacts: Buddhist priest (3), Local shop owner (2).

Complications: Oppressed: outcast (const, min) (-6), Poverty: dirt broke (freq, min) (-4).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Although a class rather than an occupation, their identity and treatment warrant consideration as an occupation.

Eta are those who work with raw leather, skinning and tanning, or dispose of refuse. Even though they perform a vital service—they are treated with disdain. The irony is that there’s no way to tell an eta from any other member of society. The only way to tell someone is an eta is by knowing his family tree and knowing where he was born (eta lists are kept by his family). The only way to consider it worse than “The N-Word” in the US, or in Japan, to be called a nanbanin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Although a class rather than an occupation, their identity and treatment warrant consideration as an occupation.

Eta are those who work with raw leather, skinning and tanning, or dispose of refuse. Even though they perform a vital service—they are treated with disdain. The irony is that there’s no way to tell an eta from any other member of society. The only way to tell someone is an eta is by knowing his family tree and knowing where he was born (eta lists are kept by his family). The only way to consider it worse than “The N-Word” in the US, or in Japan, to be called a nanbanin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Although a class rather than an occupation, their identity and treatment warrant consideration as an occupation.

Eta are those who work with raw leather, skinning and tanning, or dispose of refuse. Even though they perform a vital service—they are treated with disdain. The irony is that there’s no way to tell an eta from any other member of society. The only way to tell someone is an eta is by knowing his family tree and knowing where he was born (eta lists are kept by his family). The only way to consider it worse than “The N-Word” in the US, or in Japan, to be called a nanbanin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Although a class rather than an occupation, their identity and treatment warrant consideration as an occupation.

Eta are those who work with raw leather, skinning and tanning, or dispose of refuse. Even though they perform a vital service—they are treated with disdain. The irony is that there’s no way to tell an eta from any other member of society. The only way to tell someone is an eta is by knowing his family tree and knowing where he was born (eta lists are kept by his family). The only way to consider it worse than “The N-Word” in the US, or in Japan, to be called a nanbanin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Although a class rather than an occupation, their identity and treatment warrant consideration as an occupation.

Eta are those who work with raw leather, skinning and tanning, or dispose of refuse. Even though they perform a vital service—they are treated with disdain. The irony is that there’s no way to tell an eta from any other member of society. The only way to tell someone is an eta is by knowing his family tree and knowing where he was born (eta lists are kept by his family). The only way to consider it worse than “The N-Word” in the US, or in Japan, to be called a nanbanin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Although a class rather than an occupation, their identity and treatment warrant consideration as an occupation.

Eta are those who work with raw leather, skinning and tanning, or dispose of refuse. Even though they perform a vital service—they are treated with disdain. The irony is that there’s no way to tell an eta from any other member of society. The only way to tell someone is an eta is by knowing his family tree and knowing where he was born (eta lists are kept by his family). The only way to consider it worse than “The N-Word” in the US, or in Japan, to be called a nanbanin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).

Skills: Choice of one Practical or Craft skill +4, two Practical Skills at +2, Animal Handling +1, Boating or Hunting +2, Cooking +1, Folklore +2, Survival +1.

Equipment: Tools (for craft or profession).

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Nanban-no-bateren

Int 4 Will 3 Pre 4 Aes 3
Pie 4 Kao 2 Str 3 Con 3
Body 3 Tech 3 Ref 2 Dex 2
Move 4 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 6 Res 9 Hon 20

Perks: ML 3 in European ship crew: includes access to firearms (4)

Complications: Distinctive Features: Beard/facial hair and bad odor (const, maj) (-5), Oppressed: nanbanjin (const, maj) (-5), Outsider: nanbanjin (const, extr) (-25).


Equipment: Shirt, trousers, leather belt, stockings, leather boots (treat as Loc: 17-18; Saffron priest’s robes (Jesuit) or sackcloth habit (Franciscan), crucifix, rosary, sandals.

Allowed Castes: N/A (nanbanjin only)

Description: Priests are called bateren (a corruption of padre). Jesuits are Portuguese, based in Macao; Franciscans are Spanish. Jesuits want to convert Japan from the top down and concentrate their efforts on the samurai and daimyō. The Franciscans work with the commoners to convert the nation from the bottom up. This conflicting methodology has lead to confrontations and open hostility.

There is some enmity between the orders. The Japanese don’t fully understand the nature of this rivalry, but are familiar with intersect strife between Buddhist sects, so they either ignore it or try to find a way to play the sides against each other for personal gain.

Executioner

Int 2 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 3

— Imagawa Sadayo
Expressions are difficult. If there is something to do, the younger sons take on the work. When there is wine and food, it is offered to the elders. Is this itself to be considered filial piety?

— Confucius
lages have fish merchants. Larger population centers will have several.

**Geisha**

int 3 will 3 pre 4 aes 4  
Pie 4 kao 3 str 2 con 3  
Body 2 tech 4 ref 2 dex 3  
Move 3 end 30 sd 6 stun 10  
Hits 10 rec 5 res 9 hon 30  
**Perks:** ML 2 in geisha house (4), Renown: Geisha (4).

**Complications:** Public Feature: Geisha (frequent, major) (-7).

**Skills:** Seduction +2, Fashion +1, High Society +2, Music (choose type) +3, Persuasion +1.

**Equipment:** 2 decorative over-kimono (Above-average quality), decorative umbrella (wagasa), decorative folding fan (obi; Above-average quality), one instrument (choice), makeup kit, lacquered wood comb, long hairpin (treat as a kozuka).

**Allowed Castes:** Bonge

**Description:** Geisha are not prostitutes. Many are mistresses of powerful patrons, but they are not available for just anyone who has a few koban. Geisha means “art person” and that’s what they are. (Note: Geisha did not actually appear as a profession until the Tokugawa era.)

Geisha are professional entertainers. They sing, dance, play musical instruments and are gifted conversationalists. Their function is to grease the social wheels of a party or to provide relaxing entertainment. They may work singly or in small groups.

An apprentice geisha, called a maiko, has skills that are less developed, so they cost less to hire. To hire a first-rate geisha for one evening in a city like Osaka could cost 5 ryô (20 bu-shohan) or more.

**Yadoya Shūjin**

Int 3 will 3 pre 3 aes 3  
Pie 3 kao 3 str 3 con 3  
Body 3 tech 3 ref 3 dex 3  
Move 3 end 30 sd 6 stun 15  
Hits 15 rec 6 res 9 hon 30  
**Perks:** Contact: shop owner or craftsman (2), License: to run a business (1), Delete Poverty complication (2), Wealth Lv 2 (2)

**Complications:** Coward: avoids danger whenever possible (frequent, minor) (-3), Vow: to perfect your skill and risk life and limb (frequent, major) (-12).

**Skills:** Focus Ki +3, Iai-jutsu +3, Meditation +2, Sword Polishing +2, Swords +3, choice of Two Swords or Arrow Cutting +3.

**Equipment:** Sword bag, sword cleaning kit, sleeve-tying cord (tasuke). 10 sheets paper (washi).

**Allowed Castes:** Buke

**Description:** Innkeepers run the gamut from cowards to brutes, but the stereotype that prevails is the one who will reject customers who “don’t look right” until he sees the color of their cash; then he’s all over them, trying to help them out, get them settled, make them comfortable.

The inn may be a family affair, in which the staff are the sons and daughters of the innkeeper. In this case, the staff can do no wrong. The hired staff, however, is a different subject. Innkeepers are convinced that their hired staff is no good, no matter how good the staff actually is. Wait staff and cleaning staff (usually the same people at different times of the day) are always too slow and are always trying to steal from and cheat the innkeeper. At least, this is what he believes. Innkeepers are also often pimps: they buy young daughters from impoverished farmers and turn them into scullery slaves and house prostitutes.

**Kensei (Sword-master)**

Int 2 will 4 pre 3 aes 3  
Pie 3 kao 3 str 3 con 3  
Body 3 tech 3 ref 4 dex 3  
Move 3 end 30 sd 6 stun 15  
Hits 15 rec 6 res 9 hon 30  
**Perks:** Renown: Expert swordsman (4)

**Complications:** Code of Honor: The Way of the Sword, risk life and limb (frequent, extreme) (-25), Public Figure: expert swordsman (frequent, minor) (-3), Vow: to perfect your skill, risk life and limb (frequent, major) (-12).

**Skills:** Focus Ki +3, Iai-jutsu +3, Meditation +2, Sword Polishing +2, Swords +3, choice of Two Swords or Arrow Cutting +3.

**Equipment:** Sword bag, sword cleaning kit, sleeve-tying cord (tasuke). 10 sheets paper (washi).

**Allowed Castes:** Buke

**Description:** Kensei (lit. “sword saint”) are masters of a single weapon or weapon form. Although they may be familiar with (and able to use) other weapons, they prefer and specialize in only one. Their craft is their life, and they define their worthiness by their skill.

Kensei will strive to perfect their craft daily, spending hours practicing moves and going through kata over and over. Kensei never shy away from a challenge that is worthy of honor, but will disdain those they feel are below them.

Some kensei wander the country, seeking worthy opponents and teachers, while others open schools to train a very select few their well-mastered skills. They may be rōnin or actually clansmen detached to be allowed to perfect their art so that they may come back.

---

*...if one invites many people and still they neglect him and he has no comrades, he should think of his own conduct as incorrect.*

— Imagawa Sadayo
and teach others in the clan.

Komusô

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Int</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Will</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>Pre</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Aes</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Str</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Con</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perks: ML 2 in Fuke sect (6).

Complications: Poverty: poor (const, min) (-4), Public Figure: Buddhist priest (infrequent, major) (-5), Vow: Buddhist priestly vows, risk life & limb (const, major) (-15).


Equipment: Straw “basket”-style hat, bamboo flute (shakuhachi).

Allowed Castes: All.

Description: Komusô, wandering mendicant clergy of the Fuke sect, wear the familiar black robes and basket headgear masks beloved by shinobi everywhere. Their masks were designed to impart unrecognizability, to destroy identity. In the process, they made wonderful disguises for shinobi. Because of this, some people react negatively upon seeing komusô, certain that they are shinobi instead of clergy.

Komusô playing the shakuhachi travel the land begging for alms and preaching the truth of the Fuke sect. They stop and stay in local temples (preferring a Fuke temple over other sect temples, of course) and resume their travels the next day. They will perform services as will any other member of the Buddhist clergy.

Korean Artist or Scholar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Int</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>Will</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Pre</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Aes</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Str</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Con</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perks: Contact: Minor daimyô (6), Renown: Korean artist/scholar (4).

Complications: Oppressed: Korean (frequent, major) (-7), Outsider: Korean (infrequent, minor) (-2).

Skills: One Classical Art or academic skill +3, Calligraphy +3, Language: Japanese +1, Research or High Society +2.

Equipment: One set of Chinese clothing, 10 sheets of paper (washi), calligraphy set, straw hat (kasa).

Allowed Castes: N/A.

Description: Most famous Korean artists are known for their pottery or their painting. There are few Koreans in Japan who are identified as Koreans (though there are many descendants from earlier immigrations). Those who are known as artists are the patrons of and are attached to buke or kuge clans, much in the same way that Italian renaissance artists were attached to the court of the de Medici. As foreigners, they are outside the caste system, but are considered the equivalent as native bonge artisans.

Kuge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Int</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>Will</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Pre</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>Aes</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Str</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Con</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perks: Contact: Major daimyô (7), ML 4 in Imperial Court (16), Renown: Imperial court official (8), Wealth Lv 4 (4).

Complications: Public Figure: Kuge (constant, extreme) (-25), Sense of Duty: to Emperor (frequent, major) (-7), Vow: Fealty to the Emperor, risk bodily harm (frequent, extreme) (-20).


Equipment: Tantô, sachet, kariginu (kuge over-robe), kanmuri (kuge cap).

Allowed Castes: Kuge.

Description: Using flattery, gifts, and their names as methods of court access, kuge can create policy, subvert policy, bring about sudden losses and raises of favor, and even the fall of whole houses. They usually need the help of a bushi or a clan to support them, but are powerful patrons in the capital. Some are wonderful scholars, academics, poets, artisans or gifted statesmen. Many kuge are devoutly religious and are also high-ranking members of a Buddhist sect.

Kuge are nearly powerless outside the environs of the capital, however. Few kuge desire to travel or wander about Japan and it is rare to encounter one who wishes to do so. If a kuge were seen in, say, Nagoya or Osaka, it

---

That I have practiced the art of calligraphy stems from the fact that I once noted with embarrassment how well a certain lady wrote her characters.

— Shiba Yoshimasa
would be a cause for much curiosity.

**Budôka**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Int</th>
<th>Will</th>
<th>Pre</th>
<th>Aes</th>
<th>Pie</th>
<th>Kao</th>
<th>Str</th>
<th>Con</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perks:</td>
<td>ML 3 in a martial ryû (6).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications:** Oppressed: Bonge (const, min) (-5), Vow: loyalty to ryû soke, risk bodily harm (freq, maj) (-7).

**Skills:** Atemi-waza or Ju-jutsu +4, Acrobatics +3, Focus Ki +3, Meditation +3, one weapon bugei +3.

**Equipment:** One weapon for each weapon bugei.

**Allowed Castes:** Buke, hinin, bonge

**Description:** There are no “professional” martial artists. If budôka are the masters of a particular style, they will have another job and teach on their side time.

It is not unknown for a member of the buke to learn a particular form (Atemi-waza or some such), but by and large only the bonge and hinin are particularly inclined to learn a “commoner’s” martial art, and that for self-defense. Budôka specialize in weaponless or “non-lethal” weapon forms (although we all know a table leg can be just as lethal as a sword).

Budôka are indistinguishable from their fellows, as there is no “belt system” or uniform common to students of budô.

**Ama**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Int</th>
<th>Will</th>
<th>Pre</th>
<th>Aes</th>
<th>Pie</th>
<th>Kao</th>
<th>Str</th>
<th>Con</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perks:</td>
<td>Contact: Shop owner or craftsman (2), License: to run a business (1).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Talents:** Acute Hearing +4 (6), Acute Smell +4 (6).

**Complications:** Impaired Vision: totally blind (constant, major) (-17), Oppressed: blind man (frequent, minor) (-3).

**Skills:** Conversation +2, Expert: Latest gossip +3, Gambling +2, Herbalism +2, Ju-jutsu +3, Massage +4, Physician +2, Seduction +2

**Equipment:** Purse (uchi-bukuro), staff (bô).

**Allowed Castes:** Hinin, bonge

**Description:** Masseurs (called ama—not the same thing as nuns) in Japan are traditionally blind, as it is one of the few ways they can make their living.

Some will travel from town to town looking for spot jobs, while others may be attached to the household of a single patron.

While it may or may not be true that the loss of one’s eyesight enhances other senses to the point of allowing one a “normal” life, there are legends of a wondering blind swordsman masseur…

The very popular Zato-ichi film series (and television series), followed the exploits of a blind masseur who is not only a master gambler but a master swordsman, as well!

**Itako**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Int</th>
<th>Will</th>
<th>Pre</th>
<th>Aes</th>
<th>Pie</th>
<th>Kao</th>
<th>Str</th>
<th>Con</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Res</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perks:</td>
<td>ML 3 in Shintô shrine (6), Renown: Local medium (4).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications:** Public Figure: local medium (infrequent, major) (-5), Vow: Shintô vows, risk harm (frequent, major) (-10).

**Skills:** Classical Literature: Japanese +3, Dance: Sacred dance +3, Divination +2, Meditation +3, Persuasion +1, Shintô +2.

**Equipment:** White kimono and red hakama (both Above-average quality).

**Allowed Castes:** Bonge, buke, kuge

**Description:** Shintô mediums are universally female; male mediums are invariably shugenja. Itako are actually specially gifted miko. When channeling the dead or a kami, her body becomes rigid and she loses control of herself, and the kami or dead person “takes over.” The trance may produce a gentle swaying of the body or violent spasms. Rarely will she be possessed against her will; usually she must pray and make an offering of sake or fruit to the shrine before anything will happen.

If there is an itako in a town or village people will know of it. She may be held in awe (and feared). Itako so gifted will seldom be found at a small shrine, however.

When she marries, takes a lover, or turns 25, her powers leave her and she must leave the service of the shrine. If she has a daughter, there is a 50% chance that the daughter will also be a gifted miko.

---

One should always take the attitude of standing above others in martial valor, always feel that he is inferior to no one and always cultivate his courage.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Akindo

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ref</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Res</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perks:** Contact: Town magistrate or samurai fief-holder (4), License: run a business (1), delete Poverty complication.

**Complications:** Bad Reputation: Always recognized (frequent, minor) (-4), Coward: avoids danger whenever possible (frequent, minor) (-3).

**Skills:** Bribery +2, Business +2, Persuasion +1, Trading +3, one Practical Skill +2.

**Equipment:** Abacus (soroban), purse (uchi bukuro), portable paper lantern (chôchin), pipe (kiseru), tobacco pouch (tobako-ire), wakizashi, personal seal stone (hanko), all clothing upgraded to Above-average quality.

**Allowed Castes:** Bonge

**Description:** Akindo (merchants) in all but the smallest villages specialize in one product or service. The concept of the department store or five-and-ten doesn’t exist in Sengoku Japan. The average merchant is well informed about his product. That doesn’t mean he’s honest; he just knows what he’s talking about. Merchants in small towns are less likely to cheat their customers than those in large ones.

A merchant might have a single supplier or several suppliers; the merchant who also makes his own wares is rare.

Merchants usually live on the second floor and have their shop space on the ground floor of their homes, or their shop space is in front and the living space is in the back if the home is a single floor.

Bôzu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ref</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Res</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perks:** ML 3 in Buddhist sect (9).

**Complications:** Poverty: poor (const, min) (-4), Vow: Buddhist priestly vows, risk life & limb (const, maj) (-15).

**Skills:** Buddhism +2, Classical Literature: Chinese +4, Diplomacy +3, Gardening +3, Meditation +2, Oratory +2, Rhetoric +2, Teaching +2.

**Equipment:** Buddhist robes and kesa (Average quality), Buddhist priest’s “seven-ring” staff (shakujô), Buddhist rosary.

**Allowed Castes:** All.

**Description:** Traditionally, bôzu (Buddhist monks, or bonze) were celibate and forbidden to eat flesh. Some sects have lifted that restriction, so now some bôzu are actually married. Still, they are usually called “monks” as their lifestyle and position seems more in keeping with the Western notion of monasticism rather than conventional priesthood.

Bôzu shave their heads regularly, and will often wear a cowl and carry a large rosary with them.

As members of the clergy, their original caste is not pertinent to their interaction with others.

Ama

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Str</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ref</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Res</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perks:** ML 3 in Buddhist sect (9), Renown: Local Buddhist nun (1)

**Complications:** Honest: Risk bodily harm (Const, Min) (-15), Poverty: Poor (Const, Min) (-4), Public Figure: Buddhist nun (Freq, Maj) (7), Vow: Buddhist nun’s vows, risk life & limb (Const, Maj) (15)

**Skills:** Buddhism* 4, Classical Lit: Chinese 3, Divination 3, Meditation 4, Rhetoric 3

**Equipment:** Buddhist robes and cowl (average quality), Buddhist rosary.

**Allowed Castes:** All.

**Description:** The ama or bikuni (nun; not the same as a masseur) is the female equivalent of a bôzu or bonze. As clergy, her caste is irrelevant (and unknown) to anyone interacting with her. Sworn to celibacy, they live in all-woman monasteries. Ama shave their heads, wear cowls and dark robes, and carry large rosaries. Some ama return to secular life after a few years in the monastery; this return was called bikuni-ochi (“nun-fall”).

Their person is supposedly sacrosanct. In theory, ama are safe on the road day or night; however, they are easy targets for bandits hoping for more than just money. Ama usually have but a few zeni on their person—just enough to survive—and live off charity by begging for food or money.

Some ama have been known to be gifted with foresight, and can see things occurring far away or in the future.

Just as the Buddha preached the various laws in order to save all living beings, one must rack one’s brains and never depart from the Ways of both the Warrior and Scholar.

— Imagawa Sadayo
Pilgrim

Description: A pilgrim (or, more commonly, a group of pilgrims) is likely to be encountered at or near a religious site. They may be Buddhist or Shintō, and within a group they may have a cleric of the appropriate faith escorting or leading them.

Allowed Castes: All.

Perks: None

Complications: Varies (As appropriate for caste and profession).

Skills: Buddhism or Shintō +1, Expert: Travel songs & stories +2, Fashion or Gambling +2, General Knowledge +1, Meditation +1, Polearms: Staves +1, Streetwise +2, plus other skills as appropriate for caste/profession.

Equipment: Staff (60), Buddhist rosary or good luck talisman (prayer written on small paper), religious name tape (senjafuda), +1, Polearms: Staves +1, Streetwise +2, plus other equipment as appropriate for caste/profession.

Wakō

Description: Wakō are brigands on the ocean. Many wakō are actually Korean or Chinese, and their captain and officers may be rōnin.

Complications: Enemies: most samurai clans (more powerful, province, marked for death) (-25).

Skills: Atemi Waza or Ju-jutsu +2, Boating +2, Climbing +2, Gambling +2, Knives +2, Navigation +3, Persuasion +2, Polearms: (choice) +2, Sailing +3, Stealth +1, Streetwise +3, Swords +2, Throwing +1, Trading +2.

Equipment: Yari (lance) or hoko (hooked lance), wakizashi or tantō, provision bag (katebukuro), ashigaru-style kote (full splint arm-guards; see page 160).

Allowed Castes: Hinin, bonge, buke

Description: Wakō are brigands on the ocean. Many wakō are actually Korean or Chinese, and their captain and officers may be rōnin.

They prey on merchant ships, but will attack any vessel they think might be worth their attention, including passenger ferries.

Wakō ships are small and fast. Sometimes a single ship is the hostile, but they may just as likely operate in small squadrons, driving their prey into the waiting clutches of their fellows.

Their pirating activities are so damaging to trade between Japan and China that daimyō give standing orders to capture and execute all wakō.

Dōshin/Yoriki

Description: Dōshin are bonge-style trousers (kobakama), sasumata or xodegarami; Yoriki—mail tunic/sleeves (Loc: 6–12; KD 10) and jingasa (Loc: 3–5; KD 7), jitte, riding horse

Complications: Vow: Fealty to magistrate or daimyō, risk life & limb (infreq, extr) (-20)


Equipment: Dōshin—bonge-style trousers (kobakama), sasumata or xodegarami; Yoriki—mail tunic/sleeves (Loc: 6–12; KD 10) and jingasa (Loc: 3–5; KD 7), jitte, riding horse.

Allowed Castes: Bonge, buke

Description: Dōshin arebonge or low-ranking buke. Yoriki (police officials and investigators) are buke (usually of the clan responsible for the city or town). Dōshin try to take prisoners without using deadly force. They carry a jitte, and may also use ladders to pin in their quarry. They try to avoid killing suspects, especially buke. Dōshin armed with swords may strike with the back of the blade for Stun damage. They excel in hô-jutsu (Binding). Dōshin usually don’t wear armor but uniform, recognizable clothing bearing the crest of the local lord. At night they carry paper lanterns marked “goyō” (official business). Dōshin aren’t above bribery, though some incorruptible dōshin (such as Hanzō of The Razor film series, or Zenigata Heiji, who tossed coins at foes with great force) are legendary.

Even though one associates with many people, one should never cause discord.

— Japanese proverb
Baishun

Int 3 Will 3 Pre 4 Aes 4
Pie 3 Kao 2 Str 2 Con 3
Body 2 Tech 4 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 10
Hits 10 Rec 5 Res 9 Hon 30

Perks: Contacts: as appropriate (4), ML 2

Complications: Oppressed: Enslaved, courtesan/prostitute (freq, min) (-6).

Skills: Flattery +2, Persuasion +3, Seduction +3, Streetwise or High Society +2

Equipment: Makeup kit, sachet, kimono

Allowed Castes: Hinin, bonge

Description: Baishan, mizu-ten (“sleep with anyone”), joro or yujo (“pleasure girl”) perform a social service that, though distasteful to some, is socially accepted. “Pillowing” is an important part of maintaining one’s health (for men, at least) and is a necessity, like eating, sleeping and bathing.

Depending on the “reed house” (and rank of the clientele), prostitutes may be hinin or bonge. Invariably it is a woman who runs the house. Some don’t work in a brothel, but are kept by the man or woman who “owns” them.

Courtesans, kept women of the nobility, have a marginally better life. They are freer than regular prostitutes in that they have a very small customer list, and may have their own house.

Note: Though much of modern Western society doesn’t condone prostitution, it is presented here in a historical context. It’s up to the GM as to whether or not “baishun” will be present in the campaign.

Rônin

Int 2 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 3
Pie 3 Kao 2 Str 3 Con 4
Body 3 Tech 3 Ref 4 Dex 4
Move 3 End 40 SD 8 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 7 Res 9 Hon 20

Perks: None.

Complications: Bad Reputation: rônin, always recognized (const, maj) (-12), Poverty: poor (freq, min) (-3).

Skills: Polearms: (Glaives or Lances) +2, Swords +2, Archery or Firearms +2, Riding +2, Survival +2.

Okuden: Any one 5-point okuden.

Equipment: None (other than that given in the caste package)

Allowed Castes: Buке (disenfranchised).

Description: Rônin are lordless samurai. Whether they were turned out of their clan for some reason, their lord was killed, or their clan was destroyed by war or governmental fiat, they no longer have a “home.”

Rônin often make a living by hiring their swords out for causes good or ill. Many become bandits or wondering souls, perfecting their arts or leading a dissolute life.

Rônin are of no recognized position—there is no such thing as a “high-” or “low-ranking” rônin. Even ashigaru are usually considered their social superiors, owing to the fact that the ashigaru at least has a clan, and therefore a group identity. For this reason, rônin may try to ingratiate themselves with local daimyō, doing favors for them, etc., in the hopes that the lord will take them into his clan and put his mark on them.

Samurai (buke in service)

Int 2 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 3
Pie 3 Kao 2 Str 4 Con 3
Body 3 Tech 2 Ref 4 Dex 4
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 7 Res 9 Hon 30

Perks: Contact: as appropriate (4), ML 2 in samurai clan (6).

Complications: Vow: Fealty to a daimyō, risk life & limb (freq, extr) (-25).

Skills: Archery or Firearms +2, two Classical Arts +2 each, Climbing +1, Expert: Clan history +2, Focus Ki +2, Ju-jutsu or Knives +2, Polearms: (Glaives or Lances) +2, Riding +2, Scouting or Strategy: (choice of specialty) +2, Swords +1.

Okuden: Any 5-point okuden (5).

Equipment: Yari (lance) or naginata (glave), yumi (bow), calligraphy set, riding horse (if ML 5+), complete mid-level samurai armor (see page 160).

Allowed Castes: Buке

Description: A samurai is a buke—usually a bushi—who is a retainer of a daimyō or other ranking samurai. The root of the word samurai is the word saburau (“to serve”). Samurai may be hatamoto, officers or kerai (see the Samurai Clan Membership Table, page 85).

Honor is all to the samurai. He generally prefers death to failure or defeat. Samurai ordered to fight will do so, even if it means death.Rare is the samurai who is able to grasp his own fate and control it. Wives and children have it no differently than the men. Wives might have to commit suicide if their husbands are shamed or forced to kill themselves; and if the mothers go, so will any young children. Whole families may be put to the sword for the transgressions of one member.

Except in cases of extreme difficulty, one should not allow rônin from other provinces to act as one’s personal scribe.

— Asakura Toshikage
Gakusha

Int 5 Will 4 Pre 3 Aes 4
Pie 3 Kao 3 Str 2 Con 2
Body 2 Tech 3 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 20 SD 4 Stun 10
Hits 10 Rec 4 Res 12 Hon 30

Perks: Renown: local scholar (5).
Complications: Poverty: poor (constant, minor) (-4), Public Figure: local sage/scholar (frequent, minor) (-3).
Skills: Calligraphy +2, Classical Literature: Chinese or Japanese +2, Research +3, one academic skill +3.
Equipment: One historical text (book/scroll), calligraphy set, ogi (folding fan), bô (staff).
Allowed Castes: Bonge, buke, kuge

Description: Gakusha are scholars who generally study the Chinese or Japanese classics, or Chinese history. To scholars, the quest for knowledge is all-important. A scholar is most likely to be encountered in a temple or at his home, but it is not unknown for one to undertake an arduous journey (say, to China or Korea) to gain more information and study with primary source materials. When traveling, a scholar will try to find companions to make the journey less tedious. The tools of his trade are books, scrolls, and the like, he will seldom travel light, and may employ people to function as coolies and bodyguards.

Scholars may be kuge or buke. He may be retired and have taken the Buddhist tonsure. If a non-retired buke, he may also be a samurai. If tonsured, he will be unarmed. If kuge or bushi, he will be armed (1-4 katana, 5-6 tantō) but not armored. While a samurai/scholar will have no qualms about it, only as a final solution will a kuge/scholar put on armor and fight.

Kagoya

Int 2 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 2
Pie 3 Kao 2 Str 2 Con 4
Body 4 Tech 3 Ref 3 Dex 4
Move 5 End 40 SD 6 Stun 20
Hits 20 Rec 6 Res 9 Hon 20

Perks: Contact: wealthy inkeeper or local gang leader (3).
Complications: Bad Reputation: ruffian, always recognized (frequent, major) (-10).
Skills: Expert: Travel routes +3, Forced March +3, Gambling +2, Knives or Swords +2, Persuasion +2, Streetwise +2, Sumai +2, Survival +1
Equipment: Cloth headband (hachimaki), pair of wooden dice, bamboo water bottle, towel.

Allowed Castes: Hinin, bonge

Description: Kagoya (kago-bearers) are typically encountered at way stations on the road and at inns and taverns in town. Kagoya are stout fellows with enormous calf muscles; carrying kago (sedan chairs) in which people ride takes a great deal of energy.

Kagoya always work in teams—one in front, one in back. Despite their load, a team can make the same speed as a normal man trotting, and for extended periods. Kagoya can go for an hour or more at a trot without needing to take a break.

The fare may only be a few zeni, but if they must move more quickly or for a longer distance, the price goes up. There is no set fee or organization; all kagoya are independent, and free to take or turn down any client they wish. Most are honest, offering a safe and easy “taxi service” in and between towns; however, in the hinterlands, one of the most popular disguises for bandits is as kagoya.

Sensui Kawaramono

Int 3 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 4
Pie 3 Kao 2 Str 2 Con 3
Body 3 Tech 5 Ref 3 Dex 3
Move 3 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 5 Res 9 Hon 20

Perks: Contact: Wealthy patron (5), Renown: Sensui kawaramono (2).
Complications: Oppressed: outcast (constant, minor) (-6), Poverty: poor (constant, minor) (-4).
Skills: Business +1, Focus Ki +2, Gardening +4, Miniature Landscaping +4, High Society or Streetwise +2.
Equipment: Bamboo rake, pruning shears.

Allowed Castes: Hinin

Description: Sensui kawaramono—landscape artists and gardeners who happen to be kawaramono—are, although members of the lowest social strata, respected for their great skill and artistry. The greatest lords in Japan seek and even vie for their services. Shrines and temples even sometimes encourage them to work in their precincts.

They represent the pinnacle of achievement for their “class,” for though they are accepted in certain circles, they are looked down upon and scorned by those less “enlightened” and less likely to be influenced by their work.

...scholars and their like are men with wit and speech hide their own true cowardice and greed.

—Yamamoto Tsunetomo
### Shinobi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Int</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pie</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kao</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Str</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Con</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tech</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ref</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dex</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End</td>
<td>30 SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hits</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rec</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Res</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hon</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perks:** Contact: Buddhist temple abbot (4), ML 3 in shinobi clan (6).

**Talents:** Talent: Night Vision (3), Ambidexterity (3).

**Complications:** Code of Honor: shinobi code, risk death (freq, extr) (-25), Secret Identity: living a normal life (freq, extr) (-15).

**Skills:** Acrobatics +3, Disguise +3, Language: shinobi clan dialect +3, Meditation +3, Ninjutsu +4, Ninpô Taijutsu +3, Scouting +3, Stealth +3, Survival +3, Swords +3, Tracking +3, two add’l bugei (martial skills) at +3 each.

**Equipment:** 9 shuriken, shinobigatana (ninja sword), nekodori or any one weapon, shinobi shojoku (shinobi garb).

**Allowed Castes:** Hinin, bonge

**Description:** Shinobi (or ninja, kusa, whatever) are indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right.

Even when disguised, shinobi carry an amazing array of tricks and multiple-use and concealed weapons. One famous weapon is the shinobigatana or ninjato; despite its usefulness, it is a dead giveaway and most shinobi wear or carry regular katana or wakizashi unless making a night-time raid on a target.

**Talent:** Living a normal life (freq, extr) (-15).

**Complications:** Risk death (freq, extr) (-25), Secret Identity: living a normal life (freq, extr) (-15).

**Skills:** Ninjutsu +4, Ninpô Taijutsu +3, Scouting +3, Stealth +3, Survival +3, Swords +3, Tracking +3, two add’l bugei (martial skills) at +3 each.

**Equipment:** 9 shuriken, shinobigatana (ninja sword), nekodori or any one weapon, shinobi shojoku (shinobi garb).

**Allowed Castes:** Hinin, bonge

**Description:** Shinobi (or ninja, kusa, whatever) are indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right. A shinobi traveling down a road may be indistinguishable from the people around them—if they’re doing their job right.

Even when disguised, shinobi carry an amazing array of tricks and multiple-use and concealed weapons. One famous weapon is the shinobigatana or ninjato; despite its usefulness, it is a dead giveaway and most shinobi wear or carry regular katana or wakizashi unless making a night-time raid on a target.

Even toward an outsider, if he is an intimate friend..., we feel very kindly disposed and do anything we can for him though it may be contrary to our own interests. How much deeper then must the bond of affection be where our parents are concerned?

— Daidoji Yuzan
When someone gives you their opinion, you should receive it with deep gratitude even if it is worthless. If you don’t, he will not tell you the things he has seen and heard about you again. It is best to both give and receive opinions in a friendly way.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Nusubito

Int 3 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 3
Pie 2 Kao 2 Str 3 Con 3
Body 3 Tech 4 Ref 3 Dex 4
Move 4 End 30 SD 6 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 6 Res 9 Hon 20

Perks: ML 2 in village/community (4)
Complications: Enemy: local authorities (more powerful, town, capture) (-7)
Skills: Climbing +2, Contortionist +2, Knives +2, Lockpicking +3, Stealth +2, Streetwise +2
Equipment: Dark kimono and bonge-style trousers (kobakama), dark handkerchief (fukusa), tantō, lockpick kit.
Allowed Castes: Hinin, bonge.
Description: Nusubito are thieves and burglars. It is typically a secondary profession, as very few people do this exclusively.
Nusubito specialize in gaining entry to tight, difficult places and getting out with money or goods.
They often work for syndicates (or even daimyō) who hire them to retrieve documents or money from rivals or enemies.
The “uniform” for the nusubito is dark, close-fitting clothing, and a black kerchief wrapped around the head and knotted under the nose.

Bushi

Int 2 Will 3 Pre 3 Aes 2
Pie 3 Kao 3 Str 4 Con 4
Body 3 Tech 2 Ref 4 Dex 4
Move 3 End 40 SD 8 Stun 15
Hits 15 Rec 8 Res 9 Hon 30

Perks: ML 2 in samurai clan (6)
Complications: Fealty to a daimyō (or employer), risk life and limb (const, major) (-25).
Skills: Archery +2, Armory or Bowyer +2, Expert: Samurai clan (or employer) +3, Focus Ki +2, Forced March +3, Heraldry +1, Ju-jutsu or Sumai +2, Polearms: (Glaives or Lances) +2, Riding or Scouting +2, Swords +2, Strategy: (choice) +2, Throwing +1.
Okuden: One 5-point okuden (5)
Equipment: Yumi (longbow), extra bowstring, yari (lance) or naginata, katana (non-buke characters only), bamboo water bottle, complete ashigaru or middle-level samurai armor (as appropriate; see page 160).
Allowed Castes: Buke, kuge
Description: A warrior, in service to a lord or not, is called a bushi. A peasant carrying a hoe and wearing a jingasa he found on a battlefield may consider himself a bushi (though without training he may quickly become an ex-bushi). A member of a kuge family who takes up the sword would be a bushi, as well, but he would likely be able to afford—or at least obtain through the return of favors—adequate instruction, and the best armor and weapons.
Since peasants who attach themselves to clans technically become ashigaru (page 123), the only castes whose members can be bushi in SENGOKU are buke and kuge.

...it is said that on the battlefield if one wills himself to outstrip warriors of accomplishment, and day and night hopes to strike down a powerful enemy, he will grow indefatigable and fierce of heart and will manifest courage. One should use this principle in everyday affairs, too.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
SKILLS
The various skills are listed alphabetically under their appropriate headings, namely: Forbidden Skills, Classical Arts, Practical Arts, Martial Arts, and Magical Arts. The governing characteristic(s) for the skill are listed in parenthesis. Forbidden skills are listed in italics. They are “improper” to use publicly, but can be very useful. Everyman skills are listed in bold type on the skill list (page 118) for easy identification.

**FORBIDDEN SKILLS**

*(KINDAN GI-JUTSU)*

**BARBARIAN CUSTOMS**

*Bangaku,* the knowledge of barbarian (i.e., European) customs. Characters with this unusual skill have a rudimentary understanding of how the barbarians behave and why. Understanding the ways of the barbarians makes them all the more reprehensible to most natives of Japan. As a result, GMs may require characters with this skill to take a -1 to -3 penalty on any social skills when interacting with them. (INT)

**BLOWGUN**

_Fukiburi-jutsu,* the skill of using the blowgun, or _fukiburi.* This skill was rarely, if ever, used by those of the _buke_ or _kuge _castes. It is a favorite method of delivering poison for assassins, however. Fukiburi can be disguised as a number of innocuous items, like a flute, staff, scroll tube, wind chime, and so forth. (REF)

**CHEMISTRY**

_Yogen,* the skill of combining chemical elements to achieve spectacular results. The character can create gun powder, poison and aphrodisiacs (see *Poisons,* page 220). The compounds required to create the substance may be difficult to obtain. (INT)

**DEMOLITIONS**

_Ha-jutsu,* the ability to properly use, handle, set, and defuse explosives. This skill is common among shinobi but rarely encountered otherwise. Characters with this skill know how to use explosives to best effect, and may add their Demolitions score to the damage caused by any explosive device. (TECH)

**DISGUISE**

_Henshu-jutsu,* the skill of changing a character’s appearance through makeup, costumes, body language and facial expression. While a perfectly proper skill for _nô_ actors, it is otherwise considered inappropriate for people to use. In fact, dressing as someone other than your caste is a crime in some regions. _Shinobi_ put this skill to special use, having developed a repertoire of disguises that they could use to move about unnoticed. Favorite shinobi disguises include the farmer, Buddhist priest or nun, _komuso,_ actor or entertainer, _yamabushi,_ merchant, _rônin,_ and others. (TECH)

**ESPIONAGE**

_Onmitsu,* the skill of infiltrating social groups or populated areas—such as towns or provinces—without attracting attention and gathering information. This skill is often used by female _buke_ when married into an enemy clan, government spies and _shinobi._ Note that to infiltrate an area unseen requires the Stealth skill. Acting is a complementary skill to Espionage. (PRE)

**FORGERY**

_Gishogin-jutsu,* the ability to create false documents, travel permits, letters and so on. Note that other complementary skills, such as Calligraphy, may also be needed to effectively forge similar documents. (TECH)

**HYPNOTISM**

_Saimin-jutsu,* the skill of subtly influencing another person’s thoughts and distracting them. Using hand motions and by concentrating, the character can effectively hypnotize—or render in-ert—any opponent who fails a contested WILL + Concentration roll. The hypnotist needs a free hand to perform the maneuver, and one full phase of freedom from combat; the opponent must be in line-of-sight. This is a popular skill among _shinobi,* who use it to great effect to escape from their enemies and to influence others during espionage missions. (WILL)

**LOCKPICKING**

_Kagiaké,* the skill of opening padlocks and other simple locking devices. This skill is illegal to everyone, with the possible exception of police officials and locksmiths. In actuality, very few locks are in use in Japan because of the overwhelming respect for privacy. The common exceptions include store houses, treasuries and the like. (TECH)

**NIN-JUTSU**

_Nin-jutsu_ (or _shinobi-jutsu_ is the secretive art practiced by _shinobi,* and is available only to shinobi characters. Historically, nin-jutsu encompassed a wide range of skills. In _Sengoku,* the Nin-jutsu skill acts as a complementary skill to any skill attempted by the shinobi, with the limitation that the other skill must be related to his _ninpo training_ (GM’s discretion). This reflects the extra training that shinobi receive in that area, above and beyond what is traditionally taught. The GM has the final say on whether Nin-jutsu may be used as a complementary skill.

For example, a _shinobi_ attempting to use Ventriloquist to distract a guard or Stealth to sneak by the guard could use Nin-jutsu as a complementary skill. He couldn’t use it as complementary to Trading if negotiating the price of a horse, however.

The following are a suggested list of skills that Nin-jutsu may complement: Acrobatics, Athletics, Binding, Climbing, Concealment, Contortionist, Espionage, Forced March, Hand To Hand Evade, Juggling, Lockpicking, Melee Evade, Swords, Navigation, Perception, Ranged Evade, Scouting, Sleight of Hand, Stealth, Strategy: Sieges, Streetwise, Survival, Throwing, Tracking, and Ventriloquist. (REF/DEX/INT/TECH)

---

*Practice in letter writing goes to the extent of taking care in even one-line letters. When one is writing a letter, he should think that the recipient will make it into a hanging scroll.*

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
CLASSICAL ARTS
(GEI-JUTSU)

CALLIGRAPHY

Shogaku, the skill of creating artful works by drawing Chinese ideographs (kanji) with a brush and ink. Calligraphy is considered a fine art. If the character is simply trying to convey a written message then TECH is used with this skill. If the intent is to create a beautiful image or one that invokes an emotion or conveys some hidden meaning, then AES should be used. (AES/TECH)

CLASSICAL LITERATURE

Kobun, the knowledge of classic texts, stories, legendary tales and poetry written by scholars, poets and philosophers. Examples include the chronicles of Japan (Nihongi and Kojiki), myth-history of Japan, and so forth. The character may specialize in Chinese Classics (Kangaku) or Japanese Classics (Koten Bungaku). Your skill is halved in the non-specialty unless the skill is bought twice. (INT)

FLOWER ARRANGEMENT

Ikebana, the artistic skill of creating beautiful flower arrangements from natural flora. Ikebana is an art favored by the aristocracy—the kuge and some high-ranking buke. (AES)

INCENSE CEREMONY

Kôdô, the Way of Incense. Characters with this skill are adept at preparing and participating in the incense ceremony. Characters with this skill can discern the exact type of incense and the best-tasting tea. In one variation, the participants must identify not only the particular type of tea, but also the province in which the leaves were grown and prepared. (AES)

MUSIC

This skill group covers a variety of skills, including playing musical instruments (gakki), singing (utaï) and more. Characters must purchase each skill group separately. Characters may use their Music skill to create compositions (sakkyoku; using INT or AES) as well as to perform them (TECH).

Drums (Taikô): Includes the double-headed folk drum (ôkedo), large stick drum (Ô-daikô) and medium stick drum (taikô).

Flutes (Fue): Includes the bamboo flute (shakuhachi), mouth organ (shô), Nô flute (ôkan) and small flute (shinobue).

Strings (Gengakki): Includes the biwa (a pear-shaped lute).

Koto: The skill of playing the large Japanese zither.

Singing (Utaï): Note, singing uses INT or AES, rather than TECH.

NÔ

This is the skill of dramatic Nô theater performances, popular among aristocrats and cultured persons in Japan. (Note: Kabuki doesn’t appear on the scene until the Edo Period.) There are four main schools, or traditions, of Nô in Japan. They are the Kanze, Hôshô, Konparu, and Kongô schools. Rivalries between Nô traditions can run as strong as those of any organized groups, though they tend to be more philosophical and intellectual, seldom (if ever) becoming violent. (DEX)

PAINTING

The skill of creating beautiful works of art using a brush and paint (sumi). There are several styles of painting, all of which are encompassed by this skill. The various styles include: Kinpeki, painting with gold and vivid colors; Yamato-e, the classical Heian style of painting (popular with kuge and traditionalists); Sumi-e, a naturalist style using only black ink, which typically depicts scenes of nature. (AES)

POETRY

Shiika, the skill of creating and reciting poems. This skill covers the myriad of poetic styles in Japan, including renga (popular linked verse, usually created by a group of people), waka (poetry used as a greeting among cultured people, particularly kage), the shorter haikai, and tanka (poems consisting of three-syllable lines). (Note: haiku, a segment of a slightly longer poem form, will appear in the Edo Period. Spontaneous poem recitation and creation is considered an art form, and buke who are preparing to commit seppuku often create a “death poem” on the eve of the event. (INT)

TEA CEREMONY

Cha-no-yû or Sadô, the art of preparing for and performing the famed tea ceremony. The tea ceremony is a refined art form in Japan, and symbolizes the best qualities of human grace and spiritual purity. Important criteria for a properly conducted ceremony include maintenance of inner and outer purity (sei), reverence for all life (kei), harmony (wa: contained in the word wabi), and tranquility (jaku). The ceremony brings much honor to both the guest and the host, if performed properly (3x the host’s Kao or ML, whichever is higher). Tea ceremonies are often performed to cement the bonds of friendship or to reaffirm a vow or promise. (TECH)

TEA CONNOISSEUR

Suki, the art of recognizing and appreciating the subtle nuances and beauty of tea. A popular pastime with many aristocrats is tocha, which involves gathering together in a serene and beautiful setting and sipping various teas; each person tries to identify the best-tasting tea. In one variation, the participants must identify not only the particular type of tea, but also the province in which the leaves were grown and prepared. (AES)
ACROBATICS

Karumi-jutsu, the ability to perform flips, jumps and rolls. You can also jump and flip over an obstacle, landing on your feet, ready to fight. GMs may permit characters making a successful Acrobatics roll (with an appropriate DN) to cross difficult terrain or run through (or over) obstacles with no movement penalty. Acrobatics might also be used to gain an advantage in combat, to regain one’s feet without spending an action, or to make spectacular leaps (into trees, onto rooftops, and so on) by adding the character’s Acrobatics score to his MOV for calculating his Leap distance (a classic chanbara skill). (DEX)

ACTING

This is the skill of the performer, known as monomane, used to assume a role or character. Someone who is skilled in this can fake moods or emotions, or hide his true identity. While Dance makes one adept at the motions required in theater performance, this skill is required to move an audience’s emotions. A typical use of Acting is to add a character’s PRE and Acting scores in an opposed roll against the viewer’s PRE + Perception scores. (PRE)

ANIMAL HANDLING

Bakuro-jutsu, the skill of animal handling, training and basic care. This skill can be helpful in calming an angered predator or frightened horse, as well as in hunting or trapping game. You must specialize in a class of animal—dogs, birds or horses. Your skill is halved when dealing with animals not covered by your specialty. This skill is ineffective when dealing with intelligent animals, such as kitsune, tengu, kappa and the like. (PRE)

ARMORING

Gosoku-tsukuri, the ability to create and repair various forms of armor, including samurai and ashigaru armor, chain mail, etc. If using the optional armor damage rules, characters may repair up to their Armoring score in KD of the armor in the field. Use of this skill requires an armorer’s kit (page 178, 182); any repairs attempted without such a kit are -3. Any damage beyond that point must be made with an armor’s workshop. (TECH)

ASTRONOMY

Tenmongaku, studying the stars and heavenly bodies to predict coming events, such as earthquakes and the quality of harvests, and determine the current date using the Chinese calendar. Predictions using this skill must be very general. Further, the predictions are the result of complex calculations; this is not a magical power. (INT)

ATHLETICS*

This Everyman skill group represents basic athletic skills and ability, and the overall athletic inclinations (or lack thereof) of a character. A high score in Athletics indicates the character has a natural gift or general experience with physical pursuits, including (but not limited to): climbing, throwing (non-combat), running, swimming, jumping and endurance. The GM may call for a skill roll using Athletics with the appropriate characteristic for the circumstance—CON to overcome fatigue, STR to make a jump, DEX to scale a wall, and so on. (DEX/STR/CON)

BADMINTON

The skill of playing hanetsuki, a game similar to European badminton. Using a decorative paddle, the object is to keep the shuttlecock from hitting the ground when it is hit to you. (REF)

BOATING

Fune, the ability to handle small boats without sails, including barges, rowboats, dinghies, and small river boats. This skill doesn’t allow one to pilot large ships, with or without sails. (DEX)

BOWYER

Yumi-shi, the skill of making and repairing bows and arrows. Characters with this skill can manufacture arrows from bamboo and affix the fletching and arrow head (note, however, that it requires the work of someone with the Smithing skill to actually forge the arrow heads). Given the appropriate equipment, a character can create a number of arrows equal to their skill roll -10 per hour (minimum 1). Thus, someone who rolled a total of 20 could make 10 arrows in an hour. (TECH)

BRIBERY

Baishū, the art of giving “gifts.” A character with this skill knows when to bribe someone, how to approach him, how much to offer and (most importantly) how to disguise the bribe so that the other party can accept it without losing face. This can be a risky skill to use, as a failed roll nearly always means the intended recipient has been dishonored or insulted. (PRE)

BUDDHISM

Bukkyō, the study of the teachings of Buddha. Characters with this skill are familiar with the concepts of Buddhism as well as basic Buddhist doctrine, including the three precepts: shun evil, do good works, and be kind to all beings (man and animal). Japan’s culture is very much influenced by both Buddhism and Shintō, making this an Everyman skill. Buddhism is also used with the PIE stat to invoke the Buddhist spirits and cause magical effects. Even laymen have the potential to call upon the Buddhas, although their chances of success are much less than that of a pious, studied priest (sō).

One sect must be chosen as a specialty (see Buddhist Sects below); half of the character’s Buddhism score may be applied to the non-specialty skills (i.e., basic knowledge of other sects). (INT/ PIE)
Buddhist Sects

There are 11 sects of Buddhism in Sengoku Japan, some of which have a number of “branches,” or sub-sets. The various sects are listed below. (For more detailed descriptions see Religion, pages 72-74).

**Hokke (or Nichiren):** The Lotus Sect. Its followers are often the most fanatic of all Buddhists. Their supreme scripture is the Lotus Sutra, containing the last instructions of the Buddha. There are nine branches: Ichi, Shôretsu, Honsei-ji, Myōman-ji, Hachihon, Honryû-ji, Fujiy-fuse, Fujiy-fuse-kômon, and Kômon.

**Hossô:** This sect emphasizes workings of consciousness and its interrelationship with the environment. The two branches are: Nanji-den, and Hokujî-den.

**Ikkô:** Later called Jôdô Shinshû, or “True Pure Land.” There are nine branches: Honzan-ji, Takada, Bukkô-ji, Kôshô-ji, Kibe, Senshô-ji, Chôsei-ji, Jôshô-ji, and Goshô-ji). One of the most prosperous and populous sects, a revising of the Pure Land Sect stressing the importance of repeating the Nenbutsu mantra.

**Ji:** a sect following a variation of the “Pure Land” doctrine (12 subsets: Honzan, Yûkô, Ikkô, Okudani, Taima, Shijô, Rokujo, Kait, Reizan, Kokua, Ichîya, Tendô, and Mikagedô.

**Jôdô:** “Pure Land” sect. There are five main branches: Chinzei, Seizan, Chôraku-ji, Kuhon-ji, and Ichinengi.

**Kegon:** Ancient sect, whose scholarship is highly regarded.

**Ritsu:** Stresses the ascetic disciplines.

**Shigon:** A major sect emphasizing esoteric doctrines, with two branches: Kogi and Shingi.

**Tendai:** Another sect emphasizing esoteric doctrines. Its three branches are: Sanmon, Jimon, and Shinjô.

**Yûzû Nenbutsu:** The first of the great Amida-worshipping sects.

**Zen:** A contemplative sect. The three branches are: Rinzai, Fuke, and Sôtô.

BUREAUCRACY

**Shinshi:** the skill of dealing with bureaucrats. You know how to cut out red tape, who to talk to, how to reach them and how to extract information from bureaucracies, be it the bakufu or village council. (PRE)

**BUSINESS**

**Jitsugyô:** the knowledge of basic business practices, laws of supply and demand, employee management, accounting and bookkeeping, procurement, sales, and marketing. Characters with this skill are able to run a business themselves. This is an essential skill merchants (akiindo) and shop owners. This skill does not confer the ability to haggle or negotiate prices; for that characters should buy Trading. (INT)

**CARPENTRY**

**Mokkô:** the skill of designing and constructing buildings, castles, and bridges of wood. Characters must select a specialty (e.g., buildings, castles or bridges). Characters may apply half of their skill score to the non-specialties. (TECH)

CARVING

**Chôgaku:** the skill of creating small sculptures and decorative items from wood, ivory and soft stone. **Netsuke** are small decorative carvings in the shape of animals or people which hold together wrapping cloths (furushiki) and belts (obi). **TECH** is used to create a simple, functional netsuke, while AES is used to create a more beautiful one. (AES/TECH)

CLIMBING

The Everyman skill of scaling walls, trees, and the like. Using climbing aids, such as ropes and ladders, provide a bonus to this roll. (DEX)

CONCEALMENT

**Meisai-jutsu:** the skill of secreting and finding items. You can hide things and find things that other people have hidden—like important papers, weapons, artifacts, drugs, and so forth. (INT)

CONCENTRATION*

**Haragei:** the Everyman skill representing a character’s ability to focus and maintain mental control. This includes feats of memory, recall, and physiological control. By focusing (and doing nothing else) a character might receive a +1 to +3 bonus based on a successful Concentration roll toward some feat of mental or physical exertion (GM’s discretion). (WILL)

CONFUCIANISM

**Jugaku:** the Everyman skill encompassing the knowledge of the philosophical teachings of Confucius, (Kong Fu Zi), who lived in China from 551 to 479 BC. This skill also confers an understanding of the social conscience and values of Japanese society, as well as its “common laws.” According to early Japanese writings, it was introduced to Japan from Korea in the year 285 AD. Some of the most important Confucian principles are humanity, loyalty, morality and consideration on both individual and political levels. (Historical note: Neo-Confucianism—especially Chu Hsi Confucianism—will become the most important philosophy of Tokugawa Japan, in both government and education. Its influence on Japanese society cannot be overstated.) This skill also allows characters to formulate legal arguments as well as philosophical debates; it is a complementary skill to Rhetoric when used in this manner. (INT)

Don’t worry about having no position. Worry about that whereby you may effectively become established. Don’t worry that no one recognizes you. Seek to be worthy of recognition.

— Confucius
**CONSORTIONIST**

*Nawanuke-jutsu*, the ability to manipulate your body to get out of ropes and similar bonds. Characters trying to free themselves from such bonds must make a contested skill roll using his DEX + Contortionist scores against the binder’s Binding + TECH. A character with this skill may also contort his body to fit into generally inaccessible places or spaces. (DEX)

**CONVERSATION**

*Danwa*, the Everyman skill of extracting information from people with careful conversation. The use of this skill takes time (GM’s discretion; usually 20 minutes or more). If the roll is missed the subject realizes he is being pumped for information. (PRE)

**COOKING**

*Suiji*, the skill required to prepare fanciful meals and culinary delights—not just your ordinary bowl of rice. Characters with this skill can put together a good meal seemingly “out of nothing,” make any food taste better, and present it in a visually appealing manner. A successful use of this skill is required to prepare *fugu* (blowfish), for example, without poisoning the meat (and the eater). (AES/TECH)

**COSMETICS**

*Keshô*, the skill of applying make-up and improving one’s looks. It also confers knowledge of popular cosmetic styles of the day, which typically originate in Miyako, the home of the Imperial Palace. It is used extensively by Imperial kuge, actors, and women of all castes. Note that this is not the same as Disguise, which is used to alter one’s appearance entirely. (TECH)

**CRAFT**

Craft is a catch-all skill governing the various practical arts of Japan not otherwise listed. There is no familiarity between any of these specialties; each must be purchased separately and knowledge in one does not convey a partial score in any other. Crafts include: Basket-making, Lantern-making, Pottery (*Togeï*), Sake Brewing, and Shipbuilding (*Zōsen*). The GM is free to add other crafts to this list. INT is used for designing items, and TECH is used for their actual creation. You will have to specify which craft you are buying; “Craft” can be bought several times. (TECH)

**CRYPTOGRAPHY**

*Angô Sakuseihô*, the ability to solve simple ciphers and encrypt or decode messages. Skill in another language (such as Chinese or a Secret Language) may be required also; the Language skill may be used as a complementary skill. (INT)

**DANCE**

*Odori or mai*, this Everyman skill represents the ability to perform formal dance movements. Everyone knows at least one form of dance, be it common folk dances performed by farmers and townsfolk at harvest celebrations and parties, or ritualized dances used by Japan’s priests to gain the attention and favor of the spirits. One form of dance must be chosen as a specialty. Half of the character’s skill may be applied to the other forms of dance. Specialties are: Comedic Dance (*Kyogen* and *Manzai*), Court Dance (*Buyô*), Popular Dance (*Dengaku*), Sacred Dance (*Kagura*) and Sword Dance (*Kenbu*). (DEX)

**DEDUCTION**

*Suirô*, the art of taking several facts and leaping to an inobvious conclusion. It is a common skill among competent police officials and gossips. This skill should be used sparingly, but can be an easy way for a GM to provide clues to the players when they are stumped. (INT)

**DIPLOMACY**

The skill of negotiations and resolving disputes. This is an important political skill, especially for buke with an eye toward gaining temporal power (or simply gaining favor). It is also used by go-betweens who find prospective spouses and arrange marriages. (PRE)

**EVADE**

The basic skill of getting out of the way of someone who is trying to hit, shove, kick or throw you, and avoiding blows from melee weapons, either through parrying, ducking or just side-stepping out of the way. This skill is added to the character’s DEX to determine his DV versus attacks (see *Combat*, pg. 209). Characters may use a weapon skill in lieu of Evade if the weapon is readied. (DEX)

**EXPERT**

This is a catch-all skill covering any one field of knowledge not already listed elsewhere: the Tokudate Clan, children’s songs, Clan history, etc. This can be a hobby or an in-depth knowledge of a field or area. It may be taken multiple times. (INT)

**FALCONRY**

*Tori-oi*, the skill of hunting with a trained falcon. Characters with this skill are trained in the social ritual of the hunt, popular among buke aristocrats. Falconry is accomplished on horseback with a falcon perched initially on a padded sleeve. This is a popular pastime among the wealthier buke courtiers and the kuge. (INT)

**FARMING**

*Kôsaku*, the knowledge of land and soil, irrigation techniques, as well as planting and harvesting various crops. You know the best time and place to sow seed, how to make best use of land, and how to estimate the yield of a crop before harvest. (INT)
FASHION

Shozoku, the skill of fashion, wardrobe and personal grooming. Characters with this skill stay abreast of the latest fashion trends from Miyako and Nagasaki, and know how to show off clothes and look their best. This skill is considered unseemly among male buke, but is quite common among the kuge and wealthy akindo (merchants). (PRE)

FISHING

Tsuri, the skill of catching fish by hook or by net. Characters with this skill know the best times to fish, as well as the best fishing spots in their area. The Nets skill may be used as a complementary skill when making Fishing skill rolls. (INT)

FLATTERY

Geigô, the social skill of making others feel good about themselves through carefully crafted compliments and flowery speech. Flattery is a very important aspect of society in Japan, where proper respect and courtesy are expected. To greet someone politely is basic manners; to compliment them at the same time is the mark of a civilized person. While flattery won’t necessarily change someone’s opinion about an issue, it can influence their reaction when dealing with you. Caution is advised, however, as insincere flattery can be as risky as insulting someone. Flattery is considered an art form among the kuge. (PRE)

FOCUS KI

Focusing one’s ki, or inner power, allows characters to use Ki Points (See Using Ki, page 223). (WILL)

FOLKLORE

Densetsu, the Everyman skill covering knowledge of the common myths and lore of Japan—some true and some not. You can identify all manner of mythical creatures (such as tengu, oni and kappa), and you are familiar with well-known people in Japan, including master artisans and swordsmen, famous entertainers, and samútori, as well as their legendary accomplishments. (INT)

GAMBLING

Bakuchi, the ability to win gambling games that require some skill, such as a version of oicho-kabu, a card game, and other more esoteric games. This skill can also be used to cheat at games of chance which require little or no skill, such as dice and sporting bets. Cheating can be spotted in a contested skill roll, using the cheater’s TECH + Gambling + 3d6 versus the observer’s INT + Perception + 3d6; if the observer wins, he spots the gambler cheating. (INT/PRE/TECH)

GARDENING

Niwa-zukuri, the skill of creating and maintaining beautiful displays of nature using rock, sand, water, plants, or a combination. Particularly beautiful and harmonious gardens are said to enhance the effects of contemplative meditation. (AES/TECH)

GENERAL KNOWLEDGE

Shûchi (or jôshiki) is an Everyman skill group which represents a character’s overall education, knowledge and experience. It’s a “catch-all” skill that anyone can roll to see if they know something about something. It covers customs and basic manners (gyôgi), clothing, who’s who in Japan, familiarization with popular games (such as hana-fuda, card games and children’s games), holidays, and so on. In most cases, especially where a more specific skill is better used, the General Knowledge skill should be required at a much higher DN. It is, however, a great way for GMs to get information to players that otherwise might go unrevealed. (INT)

GO

The skill of playing go, a board game involving a grid and small white and black stones, the object of which is to surround and “capture” all of your opponent’s stones. Go holds an important place in Japan’s society, being similar to that held by chess in medieval Europe. Go is a popular skill among buke, aristocrats, and the “upper class.” Go can be used as a complementary skill to Strategy, and vice-versa. (INT)

HERALDRY

Monshôgaku, the skill of recognizing the mon (family crests) of various samurai clans and (in later periods) of famous actors and artists. A successful use of this skill will identify not only the family to whom a mon belongs, but some general information about them as well, such as their home province and anything they are particularly noted for (like a particular style of ken-jutsu or a reputation for declaring blood feuds). (INT)

HERBALIST

Ten’yaku, the skill of creating herbal medicines and antidotes to various poisons. This skill also allows characters to recognize the medicinal value of various herbs and wild plants. (INT)

HIGH SOCIETY

The knowledge of upper-class culture—what clothes to wear, what are considered sophisticated foods, and how to mingle with royalty and other VIPs. This skill also covers buke and kuge court etiquette (reishiki). You know how to conduct yourself and how to make the best impression to honored guests and dignitaries, as well as how to present legitimate gifts and request favors in a formal court setting. A popular skill among affluent akindo (merchants); a necessary one among buke and kuge courtiers. Failure to present oneself properly in court can doom one’s political career before it begins or ruin any chance of a favor being granted before you can request it. (PRE)

HISTORY

The knowledge of historical events and people. You know the outcomes of crucial battles, and have knowledge of historically important leaders, generals, scholars, artisans and others. Char-

One should be wary about talking long about things like learning, morality or folklore in front of elders or people of rank. It is disagreeable to listen to.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
HUNTING

Kari, the skill of hunting and trapping wild game. This skill can also be used to participate in the “Dog Hunt” festivals which are popular among the buke in Japan. (TECH)

INTERROGATION

Gomon-jutsu, the skill of extracting information and confessions from people, either by coercion or just plain torture. The character knows how to avoid leaving marks (if necessary), can judge how close a victim is to death, unconsciousness or “breaking,” and how to manipulate subjects into revealing desired information. Common forms of torture include buri buri (dunking in water and beating with sticks while suspended), breaking fingers, and applying heavy stone slabs atop a kneeling person’s legs. In Japan no criminal is convicted without a “confession,” making this skill invaluable to police officials. (TECH)

JUGGLING

Daikagura, the skill of juggling objects and performing feats of incredible dexterity, such as balancing a spinning top on the blade edge of a sword. (DEX)

KEMARI

Kemari is an aristocratic game similar to a soccer exercise where the object is to keep a ball in the air by kicking it around among a group of players. It is popular among kuge and aristocratic buke. (DEX)

LACQUERER

Urushi nuri, the art of lacquering items, from hats and umbrellas to serving-ware and decorative chests. Lacquers are usually as active, their services are used extensively throughout the country, to enhance and protect a great many items, from those made of paper (hats, umbrellas, fans), wood (chopsticks, chests), leather (armor, saddles) and more. Lacquer is made from sap of the lacquer tree (Rhus verniciflua), found primarily in the northern parts of Japan, and mixed with pigments. It is also an irritant and mildly toxic, being a relative of the sap of poison ivy. When dry, lacquer is resistant to acids, heat and humidity. Lacquerware is made with one of three processes: flat, inlaid, and carved. (AES/TECH)

LANGUAGE*?

Gago, or knowledge of a language. Unlike most skills, there is no roll associated with the Languages skill. The score simply reflects the character’s overall knowledge and fluency in that language. The fluency levels are shown below.

Characters receive a minimum score of 2 in their native language (an Everyman skill). Skill in one language does not transfer to other languages; each must be bought separately.

The available languages include: Chinese (Chuugoku-go); Dutch (Run-go); Japanese (Nihon-go); Korean (Chosen-go); Latin (Raten-go); Portuguese (Potogur-go); Secret Language (In-go); Signing (Kuchi-kiri).

A secret language can be a secret shinobi clan dialect, yakuzza “slang,” samurai clan codes for sensitive messages, or even a “lost,” ancient language, such as Yamato kotoba. Some languages may be considered Forbidden Skills depending on the type of campaign you are playing, the era in which the game is set (if playing a historically-based game), and the attitude of the ruling government toward contact with the outside world (i.e., the nanbanjin).

**Language Fluency Levels**

1 - Basic—you can speak and understand very simple, short phrases; the typical tourist
2 - Conversational—you speak the language but have a thick accent or local dialect, or a limited vocabulary
3 - Fluent—your accent is noticeable or your dialect identifiable only with a Perception roll
4 - Expert—you are better than most natives
5 - Master—only Linguists may have this level, even for a native tongue.

LEADERSHIP

Shu-jutsu, the skill of leading others, especially in stressful situations or where management is desired over persuasion. Leadership is an important skill for troop commanders, businesses with a lot of employees, and the like. It is only practical when dealing with NPCs, however, as using it “against” PCs would be counterproductive to roleplaying. (PRE)

LIP READING

This skill enables the character to read someone’s lips in order to tell what he is saying. The character must be able to see his target’s mouth clearly and he must know the language being spoken by the target. The level of success on a roll should determine how much information is gleaned in any situation. Note that the use of this skill by anyone other than the deaf is considered very bad manners, indeed. (INT)

LOCAL EXPERT

This skill represents a character’s knowledge of an area, including geography, climate, who’s who, general customs and traditions, and so on. It also encompasses knowledge of the society, politics, belief systems and general demeanor of the people in the area. Characters with high scores know where the best places to eat are, which merchants offer the best prices, and so on. All characters have at least a score of 2 for where they come from (an Everyman skill), be it a village (mura), town (machi) or city. Local Expert must be bought for each area a character wants to have expertise in. (INT)

---

It is because a samurai has correct manners that he is admired. Speaking of other people in [a bad] way is no different from an exchange between low class spearmen. It is vulgar.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
MASSAGE

Tennōshi, the skill of therapeutic massage, a minor healing art. A successful use of the skill can completely restore all lost Stun. For every 10 minutes spent massaging, the masseur can “heal” 1d6 of the patient’s Stun points or 1 Hit due to fatigue or collateral damage from a Stun attack, up to a maximum number of dice of Stun or number of Hits equal to the masseur’s Massage skill score per day. The masseur can restore all lost Stun, up to the recipient’s normal maximum Stun.

For example, a masseur with a Massage skill of 5 can “heal” 5d6 Stun or 5 Hits over 50 minutes, per patient per day.

Many professional masseurs (oma) in Japan are blind, as there is little else they can do as productive citizens. (TECH)

MEDITATION

Meisō or Za-zen, the art of meditation. This skill allows characters to gain near to full rest with little time lost. Characters may reduce the time needed for “restful sleep” by one step on the time chart for every two levels in the skill.

For example, a character with a Meditation score of 2 can get the equivalent of six hours of rest in just one hour (one step up the time chart); a character with a Meditation score of 8 can achieve the benefits of six hours of sleep in just five Rounds, or one minute (four steps up the time chart).

With a high enough roll (GM’s discretion), the character may be treated as if he were in “Light Sleeper” mode, as per the Talent. Meditation may also be used as a complementary skill for rolls involving focus, concentration or resolve (GM’s discretion). (WILL)

MIMICRY

Kowairo-jutsu (or gion) is the specific talent of being able to imitate other voices. Skill in this area will greatly enhance a good Disguise, especially if used in conjunction with Acting. It can also be used by hidden shinobi to lure their prey into the open or to distract guards. (INT)

MINIATURE LANDSCAPING

Bonsen, the art of growing, creation and maintaining miniature trees (bonsai). Either TECH or AES may be used with this skill, depending on the effect the character desires with his creation. (AES/TECH)

NAVIGATION

Ko-jutsu, the skill of finding one’s way across land or sea. It includes knowing how to take sightings, use maps and charts, plot courses, work from wind, weather and the stars. (INT)

ORATORY

Shikijii, the ability to speak to an audience and to deliver a convincing presentation. (PRE)

PERCEPTION

Kan, the skill of observation, perception and spotting hidden things (like clues). Police and official inspectors often have good scores in this skill. It is used for all five of the senses. (INT)

PERSUASION

Zei, the ability to convince, persuade, or influence individuals. Persuasion can be used in a variety of ways, from simply trying to talk someone into something they aren’t inclined to do, to intimidating someone with your booming voice and animated—or threatening—movements. (PRE)

PHYSICIAN

Igoku, the skill of doctoring in Japan. It can be used to diagnose an illness or cause of death (using INT) as well as to treat and bind wounds and administer medical aid (TECH). Companion skills include Herbalist (ten ’yaku) and Buddhism. All three skills are prerequisites for any truly respectable doctor in Japan. (INT/TECH)

PUPPETEER

Tekuagutsu, the skill of manipulating marionettes and hand-puppets, and conducting theatrical performances with them. Puppet shows are enjoyed by people of all ages and castes. Performances range from children’s fables stories to recreated Nō plays. (Note: Bunraku, the art of puppeteering with large marionettes, is not developed until the later Tokugawa era.) (DEX)

RESEARCH

Kenkyū is the skill of using libraries and official records, as well as uncovering information from obscure or uncommon sources, such as classical, ancient or foreign texts. This is a vital skill for members of the mystic professions. (INT)

RHETORIC

Shūjigaku, the skill of written and verbal presentation in the Chinese literary tradition. This skill is used in framing official petitions, legal cases and religious preaching and debate. As it also encompasses the art of “formal debate,” skills associated with the subject will be complementary.

For example, in a religious debate between Buddhist priests, Buddhism (Bukkyō) would be a Complimentary skill. It may also be used as a complementary skill to High Society in formal settings, such as court.

This skill is commonly found among priests, but it is also found among the buke and kuge, and other people who wish to be perceived as “educated” and “highly cultured.” (PRE)

RIDING

Bo-jutsu, the skill of horsemanship. This skill enables a character to ride a horse under difficult circumstances. When fighting from horseback, characters use the lower of their Riding or combat skill scores. (DEX)
SAILING

Suiju-jutsu (or hanso-jutsu), the skill of piloting ships with sails, from small junks to large galleys and ocean-going vessels. Characters know how to trim the sails, navigate, steer, and so on. This is an uncommon skill in Japan, as there are few sailing vessels other than those owned by some daimyo, wealthy merchants, foreign diplomats, and nanbanjin. (INT/TECH)

SCOUTING

Teisatsu, the skill of moving through terrain and observing enemy positions, towns, castles, troop movements and the like, and reporting useful information. A character’s Scouting roll may be complementary to their leader’s Strategy or Tactics roll. A useful skill for samurai scouts, shinobi and other militant types. (INT)

SCULPTURE

Chógoku, the skill of creating items from slabs or blocks of stone or wood. A long and tedious process, sculpture is the skill used to create stone lanterns, grave markers, statuary, and the like. At the GM’s discretion, the player may have to specify stone or wood. A long and tedious process, sculpture is the skill used to create stone lanterns, grave markers, statuary, and the stone or wood. A long and tedious process, sculpture is the skill used to create stone lanterns, grave markers, statuary, and the like. At the GM’s discretion, the player may have to specify stone or wood for his skill, and work with the other at 0-level (just getting a characteristic + 3d6 roll). (AES/TECH)

SEDUCTION

Yôwaku is the ability to gain another’s trust by offering companionship or favors. This is an important skill for courtesans, female shinobi (kunoichi), and even buke females married into enemy clans. Flattery can be used as a complementary skill to Seduction. (PRE)

SHINTÔ

Shiten, the Way of the Kami. This is the knowledge of Japan’s indigenous religion. Characters with this skill are familiar with the concepts of Shintô and the myriad of spirits that make up its pantheon. Japan’s culture is very influenced by both Buddhism and Shintô, making this an Everyman skill.

Shintô is also one of the five forms of “magic” in Japan. Shintô + PIE is used to perform Shintô rites for mystical effects. (INT)

SHÔGI

This is the skill at playing shôgi, a chess-like game that is popular among all castes in Japan. (INT)

SILKWORM RAISING

Yôshun, the knowledge and skill of raising silkworms and collecting the silk created by them. (INT)

SLEIGHT OF HAND

Ki-jutsu, the skill representing a character’s overall hand-eye coordination. Characters with this skill can palm objects, cut purses and do illusory “magic” tricks. It is also a favorite skill of shinobi who use it to deceive their enemies in all manner of ways. Typical skill contests involve Sleight of Hand + REF against the viewer’s Perception + INT. (REF)

SMITHING

This skill group encompasses a character’s ability to design and craft simple tools (dôgo), equipment and weapons with metal, including firearms (teppô and sodeteppô) given access to the proper supplies and equipment, as well as an overall facility with metalworking tools. It does allow the character to create simple swords, but they cannot be of any quality greater than average. To create truly masterful swords, one must have the Swordsmith skill (see Swords, page 169, and Creating Items, page 196). (TECH)

STEALTH

Kakuremi, the Everyman skill of moving quietly and unseen, and surreptitiously following others unnoticed (bikô-jutsu). While it is a basic ability that all characters have some measure of ability in, it is considered suspicious behavior in all but the rarest of circumstances. It is common among samurai scouts, but more so among shinobi, bandits and thieves. Using stealth typically involves a contested skill roll with one character making a Stealth roll and comparing the total to the other character’s Perception roll; if the character’s Stealth roll is higher than the “observer’s” Perception roll, he has escaped notice. Note that this skill combines both Stealth and Shadowing, which appear in some Fuzion products, into a single skill. (DEX)

STREETWISE

Use of this skill aids a character in getting around the “under-side” of life, which includes dealing with the proverbial black market, getting information and finding places to hide from the authorities. Characters with Streetwise are at home in the “floating world” of Japan, and are familiar with all manner of subcultures, including gambling gangs, courtesans and tea houses, entertainers and criminal networks. This is an important skill for otokodate and gamblers. Most buke wouldn’t be caught dead exercising such knowledge, although some dôshin may have gained it in their dealings with criminals. (PRE)

SURVIVAL

The skill of surviving in the wilderness, in all types of terrain (including mountain, desert and snow). The character knows what wild plants are safe to eat, how to build a fire and simple shelter from the elements, and so on. (INT)

SWORDSMITHING

This is the honored art of crafting swords (katana) in Japan, and sharpening all bladed weapons to a razor-fine edge. It is considered a highly revered art with religious overtones and, in fact, a Shintô ceremony surrounds the crafting of such blades. Because swords are believed to be imbued with the spirit of their maker, it is important for swordsmiths to be pure of heart and mind. (TECH)

It will not do to think that one must have swords and clothing as fine as everyone else’s. It is sufficient to intend not to be unsightly. Borrowing and seeking after things one doesn’t have, and piling up debts, one will be scorned by others.

— Hojo Nagauji
**SWORD POLISHING**

Tôgi, the art of polishing. This skill is also considered an art form. Many buke believe that the quality of their sword’s polish is indicative of their status and their sword’s worth, so highly skilled polishers are much sought after by samurai. (TECH)

**TEACHING**

Jugyô, the skill of imparting knowledge to others. A character can teach almost anything they are skilled in; the nature of the skill and the student’s capacity to learn it will figure into the GM’s decision as to how difficult it is to teach and how long the process will take (see Experience, page 226). (PRE)

**TRACKING**

Tsuiôki, the ability to discover tracks, prints or other evidence of passage through an area and to follow them. Tracking can be used to follow game while hunting, follow a criminal on the run, or to find one’s own way out of the forest when lost. This skill is popular among bounty hunters and shinobi. (INT)

**TRADING**

Akinai, the skill of bartering, haggling and otherwise negotiating the price of things. This is a crucial skill for merchants of all types. Most buke feel that this level of emphasis on money is beneath them, but female buke have been known to be very thrifty managers of their household’s money. (PRE)

**VENTRIOLOQUIST**

This is the ability to “throw” your voice, a skill that can be used to no end of mischief. It is used with INT or TECH, whichever is higher. It is typically used as a contested skill roll against the listener’s Perception + INT. A popular shinobi trick involves distracting their pursuers by having false voices calling from nearby. The GM may allow characters with both Mimicry and Ventriloquist to use them together—hearing one’s own voice from nearby can be quite eerie, indeed! (INT/TECH)

**MARTIAL ARTS (BUGEI)**

**Weapon Similarity**

The buei (martial arts) of Japan are very specialized. Even so, in SENGOKU, characters may use their score in one weapon skill with another, similar weapon, at a penalty of -1 to -3. The GM is the final authority in determining whether a weapon is similar enough to allow the use of the skill with a weapon other than the weapon the skill specifically covers.

For example, Korando has a Swords (Ken-jutsu) score of 5, but his sword has just broken. He spots a short staff (jô) nearby and grabs it, intending to use his Swords skill with the staff. The GM decides that the staff, though different from a sword, is similar enough to allow the use of ken-jutsu techniques, so the GM allows Korando to use the staff with his Swords skill at -1.

Later, Korando encounters another combat situation. He has long since dropped the staff, and is looking for another weapon to use. He spots a naginata, wanting to use it with his Swords skill. The GM decides that the naginata is too different from a sword to allow Korando to use his Swords skill, even at a penalty. The GM advises Korando’s player, however, that if he breaks the naginata’s shaft in half he may then use his Swords skill at a penalty of -3. Korando is back in business!

**Using Martial Maneuvers with Melee Weapons**

All melee weapon skills in SENGOKU also allow characters to use the basic martial maneuvers outlined below. Characters using a weapon for which they do not have the appropriate skill, however, may not use these maneuvers.

For example, while Nobutada (in our examples above) may use the broken naginata as a makeshift sword at -3 to his Swords skill, he can only use the basic martial maneuvers listed below if he is using an actual sword (katana, wakizashi, nodachi, etc.) with his Swords skill.

Certain weapon skills also allow a trained user (i.e., someone with the appropriate buei) to perform special maneuvers. These include the jitte, which allows a trained user to perform a disarm maneuver, the sodegarami, which allows a Ju-jutsu throw “at range” (the length of the weapon), and the manrikigusari, which allows a character to “grab” another weapon or “entangle” an opponent at range.

Characters without the specific skill for these weapons may not use the special maneuvers. (For additional information and descriptions of all of the martial arts maneuvers, see the Basic and Advanced Action Summary tables, pages 204-205.)

### Basic Weapon Maneuvers

The following maneuvers are available to all characters using a melee weapon in conjunction with the appropriate weapon skill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>+5 DV; Dodge maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block</td>
<td>+2 AV, +2 DV; Block maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrusting Strike</td>
<td>-2 AV, +1 DV, +2d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defensive Strike</td>
<td>+1 AV, +3 DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move-by Strike</td>
<td>-1 AV, -1 DV, +1d6 damage; Full Move maneuver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Special Weapon Maneuvers

The following maneuvers are available only to characters using a melee weapon that allows that special maneuver (noted in the weapon description and weapon list) in conjunction with the appropriate weapon skill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>Grab and Throw maneuver; Target loses initiative to attacker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grab</td>
<td>+2 STR; Grab maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disarm</td>
<td>+2 STR; Disarm maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entangle</td>
<td>+2 STR; Grab and Entangle maneuver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When one buys something, he should say exactly what he wants at once. If it is too expensive, then he should not buy it. To waste so many words is vulgar, and to buy cheaply would be a crime, for the shopkeeper makes his living by trade.

— Hojo Shigetoki
ARCHERY

Kyū-jutsu, the skill of using the full-sized yumi or daikyū (longbow), as well as the hankyū (short bow). (REF)

ARROW CUTTING

Yadome-jutsu, the skill of intercepting muscle-powered projectiles (usually arrows, hence the name). You can intercept arrows and throw weapons (up to and including javelins) with a successful contested skill roll, using your REF + Arrow Cutting + 3D6 versus the attacker’s attack roll. You can elect to deflect, destroy, dodge, or catch the missile. May be used against multiple attacks in one phase, but each additional attempt is at a cumulative –1. Must be bought for each melee weapon skill it is to be used with. (REF)

ATEMI-WAZA

An unarmed combat style originating from a variant of Chinese Shao-lin kung fu (Sho-rin kenpo) on the Ryūkyū islands (now Okinawa). It incorporates various blocks and strikes. (Note: Atemi-waza is a precursor to modern day karate.) Characters with this skill automatically receive the basic Atemi-waza maneuvers listed below at no extra cost. Advanced maneuvers may be purchased separately, at the cost listed below, but only by students with a ML of 5+ in their ryū.

A character successfully using an atemi-waza block maneuver against a wooden weapon takes no damage; Atemi-waza blocks against metal weapons reduce damage by one half. Characters may use their Atemi-waza score in lieu of their Evade skill when defending in melee combat. (REF)

**Basic Atemi-waza Maneuvers**

The following maneuvers are available to all characters with the Atemi-waza skill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>+5 DV; Dodge maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block</td>
<td>+2 AV, +2 DV; Block maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrusting Strike</td>
<td>–2 AV, +1 DV, +2d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edge Strike</td>
<td>+2 DV, +1d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Strike</td>
<td>+1 AV, +3 DV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Advanced Atemi-waza Maneuvers**

The following maneuvers are available to characters with the Atemi-waza skill who also have a ML of 5+ in their ryū. The cost for these maneuvers in 2 OP each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disarm</td>
<td>+2 STR; Disarm maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Killing Strike</td>
<td>–2 AV, –2 STR; does Killing damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaping Strike</td>
<td>–1 AV, –1 DV, +1d6 damage; Full Move maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip/Sweep</td>
<td>Throw maneuver; Target loses initiative to attacker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roll</td>
<td>Breakfall; 1/2 damage from falls, roll out of Throws and Knockdowns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AXES

The bugei of using the fuetsu, masakari, and ôno in melee combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

BINDING

Hojo-jutsu, the skill of binding people with rope or cord, using elaborate methods and complex knots. This is a popular skill with police, samurai and shinobi alike. Characters trying to free themselves from such bonds must make a contested skill roll using his DEX + Contortionist scores against the binder’s Binding + TECH. (TECH)

CHAINS

Kusari-jutsu, the bugei of using the kawa-naga, kusari-fundo, kusari-gama (coupled with the Kama skill), kyogetsu-shōge, and manrikigusari in melee combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

FANS

Tessen-jutsu, the martial skill of using the gunbai (war fan) or tessen (steel fan) in combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

FIREFARMS

Hō-jutsu (or teppō-jutsu; kaki in Ryūkyū), the skill of firing matchlock rifles and pistols (teppō, hinawaju and kenjju), and small cannon (sodeteppō). While not unknown to samurai, this skill is typically used only by ashigaru (common foot soldiers) in battle. Also a common skill among shinobi. (REF)

FLAILS

Nunchaku-te, the bugei of using the nunchaku, sanbon nunchaku and related weapons in melee combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

FORCED MARCH

Hayagake-jutsu, the skill of extended movement on a strategic scale. Characters with this skill can get that extra ri out of a day’s walking. A successful roll (DN 18) allows the character to increase their movement in a day by a number of ri equal to their skill level. (CON/WILL)

IAI-JUTSU

Iai-jutsu is a series of techniques for rapidly drawing the sword and striking in one swift motion. It is a special skill, and is treated differently from conventional ken-jutsu.

The character is allowed to draw and strike in the same phase without the normal -3 penalty for quick-drawing and striking, and he may even gain the initiative of surprise (+1 to +3 AV if the attack is unexpected, at GM’s discretion). Iai techniques can be performed from a standing or seated position. (REF)
JITTE

Jitte-jutsu, the bugei of using the jitte and sai in combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). In addition, characters with this skill can use the jitte or sai to perform a disarm maneuver against opponents armed with swords. (REF)

JU-JUTSU

An unarmed combat style originating in Japan. It incorporates various rolls, throws and grappling maneuvers. (Note: Ju-jutsu is a precursor to modern day judo.) Characters with this skill automatically receive the basic Ju-jutsu maneuvers listed below at no extra cost. Advanced maneuvers may be purchased separately, at the cost listed below, but only by students with a ML of 5+ in their ryū.

A character using a successful Ju-jutsu block maneuver against a wooden or metal weapon takes no damage. Characters may use their Ju-jutsu skill in lieu of their Evade skill when defending in melee combat. (REF)

Basic Ju-jutsu Maneuvers

The following maneuvers are available to all characters with the Ju-jutsu skill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>+3 DV; Dodge maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>Grab and Throw maneuver; Target loses initiative to attacker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roll</td>
<td>Breakfall; 1/2 damage from falls, roll out of Throw and Knockdowns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block</td>
<td>+2 AV, +2 DV; Block maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grapple</td>
<td>+2 STR; Grab maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomoe-nage</td>
<td>(Takedown) +1 AV; Grab maneuver; both end up on ground</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced Ju-jutsu Maneuvers

The following maneuvers are available to characters with the Ju-jutsu skill who also have a ML of 5+ in their ryū. The cost for these maneuvers is 2 OP each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guarding Strike</td>
<td>+1 AV, +3 DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Strike</td>
<td>-2 AV, 2d6 damage vs. no Defense; 1 extra Round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escape</td>
<td>+3 STR; Escape maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disarm</td>
<td>+2 STR; Disarm maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bō/Jō Element</td>
<td>Character may use all Ju-jutsu maneuvers with the bō or jō.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

KAMA

Kama-jutsu, the skill of using the kama, ōgama and kusarigama (coupled with the Chains skill) in melee combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only).

The kama is commonly perceived as a farmer’s tool, though it is becoming increasingly popular as a weapon among the bonge, who are often prohibited from carrying “real” weapons. (REF)

KNIVES

Tantō-jutsu, the bugei of using the aiguchi, kaiken, kozuka, tantō, uchi-ne, umibari and yoroi-toshi in melee combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

NETS

Toami-jutsu, the skill of using nets (toami) of various types to entangle an opponent. The most common type of nets encountered are fishing nets: strong, circular-shaped nets made of durable silk with iron weights attached at various points along the outer edge of the net. Allows an entangle maneuver to be used at range. On a successful contested Nets skill roll, the target is entangled; treat the toami as having 4 KD and 6 Hits. When entangled, only short-ranged weapons may be used by the ensnared victim, and those at a -3 AV. (REF)

NINPÔ TAIJUTSU

The unarmed combat style used exclusively by shinobi. Ninpô Taijutsu stresses fluidity of movement and adaptability. The art incorporates quick, devastating punches and nerve strikes designed to quickly incapacitate an opponent, as well as leg sweeps and evasion techniques.

Characters with this skill automatically receive the Ninpô Taijutsu maneuvers listed below at no extra cost.

A character successfully using a Ninpô Taijutsu block maneuver against a wooden or metal weapon takes no damage. Shinobi characters may use Ninpô Taijutsu in lieu of their Evade skill when defending in melee combat. (REF)

Ninpô Taijutsu Maneuvers

The following maneuvers are available to all characters with the Ninpô Taijutsu skill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaiten (Avoid)</td>
<td>+5 DV; Dodge maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naya-shi (Block)</td>
<td>+2 AV, +2 DV; Block maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ukemi (Roll)</td>
<td>Breakfall; take _ damage from falls, roll out of Throws and Knockdowns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soku Yaku (Offensive Strike)</td>
<td>-2 AV, +1 DV, STR+2d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagare (Throw)</td>
<td>Grab and Throw maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomoe-nage (Takedown)</td>
<td>+1 AV, Grab maneuver; both end up on ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koshi-jutsu (Killing Strike)</td>
<td>-2 AV, -2 STR; does Killing damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fudo-ken (Strike)</td>
<td>+2 DV, +1d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuki-ken (Defensive Strike)</td>
<td>+1 AV, +3 DV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disarm</td>
<td>+2 STR; Disarm maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobi Keri (Flying Kick)</td>
<td>-1 AV, -1 DV, +1d6 damage; Full Move maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shito-ken (Stun Blow)</td>
<td>-2 AV, 2d6 damage vs. no Defense; 1 extra Phase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sagara Kyūma was completely at one with his master and served him as though his own body were already dead. He was one man in a thousand.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
PIPE

Kiseru-jutsu, the technique of using a smoking pipe (kiseru) in melee combat. This skill was popular with bonge, especially merchants and gamblers, who were often forbidden to carry “real” weapons, such as swords. Pipe + REF is combined to get an AV, while Pipe can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

POLEARMS

The skill group of using various long-shafted weapons in melee combat. Characters must choose a specialty from the following list. All others are at 1/2 of the score of the primary form (unless bought separately). It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

Glaives (Naginata-jutsu): The skill of wielding the bisentō, bō-naginata, nagamaki, and naginata.
Man-catchers (Sodegarami-jutsu): The skill of wielding the sasumata and sodegarami.
Lance (Sō-jutsu): The skill of wielding the fumata-yari, hoko, kama-yari, kuda-yari, tampo-yari, and yari.
Staff (bō-jutsu and jō-jutsu): The skill of wielding the bō, jō, and related weapons.
War Club (Tetsubō): The skill of wielding the tetsubō and any other large, heavy, club-like weapons.

RANGED EVADE

The basic skill of getting out of the way of someone who is trying to shoot you with any type of ranged weapon, be it a teppō (matchlock rifle), mystical energy blast, arrow, shuriken or whatever. This skill is added to the character’s DEX to gain a DV versus attacks (see Making Attack Rolls, pg. 215).

Characters may not use a melee weapon skill in lieu of Ranged Evade; the Ranged Evade skill must be purchased. Characters without the Ranged Evade skill have a base DV equal to their DEX + 10 against missile attacks, modified by distance. (DEX)

SUMAI

The unarmed combat style used by sumōtori (see Sumō, page 48). Sumai incorporates various slaps, trips throws and shoves designed to send the opponent out of the ring or to the ground. (Note: Sumai is the precursor to modern day sumō wrestling.)

Characters with this skill automatically receive the Sumai maneuvers listed in the next column at no extra cost.

A character using a Sumai block maneuver against a wooden or metal weapon takes no damage. Characters may use their Sumai score in lieu of their Evade skill when defending in melee combat. (REF)

Sumai Maneuvers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maneuver</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tachi-ai (Charge)</td>
<td>+1 AV, -2 DV, +2d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidestep</td>
<td>+5 DV; Dodge maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsuppari (Slap)</td>
<td>-2 AV, +1 DV, +2d6 damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morozashi (Grapple)</td>
<td>+2 STR; Grab maneuver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashi (Shove)</td>
<td>+1 DV, +2 STR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nage (Throw)</td>
<td>Grab and Throw maneuver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

STRATEGY

Sakusen, the skill of military strategy. Strategy is the crucial skill of commanding both large armies and small units, and coordinating campaigns. Characters with this skill are well versed in the Art of War, and know the most effective troop formations, how to supply their army, which travel routes are best, and so on. A specialty must be chosen. The character may apply half of their score to non-specialties of the skill (round up). Go may be used as a complementary skill to Strategy. (INT)

Specialties include:

Battles (Senjo-jutsu): The skill of commanding troops, the best way to maneuver units through difficult terrain, the best place to set up an ambush, what the enemy is likely to do or how they will react in a combat situation, pressing advantages of terrain, coordinating attacks and generally directing units on the field of battle. This is a crucial skill for generals and other troop commanders.
This skill may also be used to gain an initiative bonus in large-scale engagements. By taking a full turn before combat begins and making a successful Strategy roll (DN 18; though terrain and other conditions, such as visibility, can modify this), each number rolled above the difficulty number may be applied to the Initiative of all friendly forces that the character may effectively communicate with (i.e., those within earshot or line of sight). This bonus applies to the first turn (or phase, in detailed time) of combat only. A character may also spend a full turn evaluating an existing battle—and nothing else—and apply a successful roll as a similar bonus for the subsequent turn/phase.

If characters on both sides are using Strategy, a contested skill roll should be used instead, with the winner applying any points rolled above his opponent’s to his side’s initiative for the next turn/phase.

Note — For added realism, and to better represent the ability, the GM is encouraged to require that anyone wanting the INIT bonus must let the Strategist actually move their character (if miniatures are being used), though they would still determine all other actions.

Campaigning (Shusai): The skill of handling large scale military campaigns and handling the logistics of war, such as coordinating large scale troop movements, movement routes, supplies, communication, and so on. This is the primary skill (and role) of a daimyō or taishō (general) in war time.

Siege (Chikujō-jutsu): The skill of laying siege to enemy castles, undermining the castle’s defenses, cutting supply and communication lines, and the like. Defensively, this skill provides knowledge in defending a castle. This is an important skill for garrison commanders, and is a specialty of shinobi in war time. This skill may also be used to gain an initiative bonus in the engagement, as described for Battles (Senjo-jutsu).

SWIMMING

Suie-jutsu, the advanced skill of swimming as well as moving and fighting in water with no penalties to his Athletics or weapon skill rolls, nor his movement, due to encumbrance when wearing armor. Characters swimming normally (i.e., unencumbered) use Athletics. A successful Suie-jutsu skill roll allows the character to move through water and to use weapon bugei while wearing armor without suffering from any penalties for encumbrance. Characters must make a Suie-jutsu roll each phase, which counts as one action. (REF)

...a man who behaves in a rough manner has neither discrimination nor far-sightedness, speaks unreasonably and considers the terseness of the far-sighted and discriminating man as pusillanimity. When the time for battle has come, however, he thinks of his wife and children for the first time. And when his moment has come, his end will no doubt be wanting. Thus is rough behavior on the very verge of cowardice.

— Takeda Shingen
SWORDS

Ken-jutsu, the skill of wielding the bokken, katana, tachi, ninjatō or shinobigatana, wakizashi, nodachi and kodachi in combat. It is added to REF for AV and can be added to DEX for DV (in melee only). (REF)

THROWING

Shuriken-jutsu, the skill of throwing weapons, such as knives, shuriken (or shaken), and the uchi-ne. The character can also throw improvised weapons, such as rocks and even coins. Unlike most combat skills, there is no non-proficiency penalty associated with this skill. Shinobi are able to put this skill to particularly effective use, being able to throw small needles, darts and even o-hashigatana (chopsticks) at their foes (the range is equal to their CON in meters). Spitting darts at foes is covered by the Blowgun (fukiburi-jutsu) skill. (REF)

TWO SWORDS

Ni-ten, the skill of using both the katana and wakizashi (or two of either) in combat. The character gets a two attacks or one attack and one defensive action (such as a block) each phase. A character must have the Sword skill before he can purchase the Two Swords skill. The character’s Two Sword skill cannot exceed his Sword skill -1. The -3 AV modifier for using an “off hand” still applies. A variant of this skill can be purchased (e.g., Two Nunchaku or Kama & Chain). (REF)

MYSTICAL ARTS (MAHŌ-JUTSU)

BUDDHISM

Bukkyō, the study of the teachings of Buddha. Buddhism is the skill used by Buddhist priests for invoking prayers. For a description of this skill, see Buddhism under Practical Arts, on page 142. (INT/PIE)

ONMYŌDŌ

One of the four forms of magic in Japan, onmyōdō is the ancient Japanese form of magic, or sorcery. It involves the concepts of Chinese elemental magic (gogyo) and Taoist mystic principles of yin-yang, or “light and dark” (known in Japan as in-yo). The most famous practitioner of this art was Abe no Seimi, a powerful onmyōji who had at one time 12 familiars (called shiki). Onmyōdō is a required skill for practitioners of the sorcerous art, called onmyōji. Onmyōdō is used with the PIE stat for invoking various prayers and casting spells, while INT is used for skill rolls involving knowledge and lore of the art. (INT/PIE)

SHINTŌ

Shinten, the Way of the Kami. Shintō is the skill used by Shintō priests for invoking Shintō prayers. For a description of this skill, see Shintō under Practical Arts, on page 148. (INT/PIE)

SHUGENDŌ

One of the four forms of magic in Japan, shugendō is the mystical knowledge and theory of esoteric Buddhism practiced by priests of the yamabushi mountain cult of Shugendō, itself a derivation of the Shingon and Tendai sects of Buddhism.

The most famous practitioner of this art was En no Ozunu. Other famous practitioners purportedly included Kūkai (also known as Kōbō Daishi) and Shōtoku Taishi.

Shugendō is a mixture of Buddhist esoteric magic (mikkyō), Japanese sorcery (onmyōdō) and Shintō mystic principles. Shugendō is a required skill for yamabushi.

Shugendō is used with the PIE stat for casting various spells, while INT is used for skill rolls involving knowledge and lore of the art. (INT/PIE)

A person who does not want to be struck by the enemy’s arrows will receive no divine protection. For a man who does not wish to be hit by the arrows of a common soldier, but rather by those of a warrior of fame, there will be the protection for which he has asked.
—Yamamoto Tsunetomo
BRINGING THE CHARACTER TO LIFE
GETTING STARTED

We start by defining basic personality and position. With two six-sided dice, we make the first rolls to see who this person is. Go ahead and flip back to the Lifepath on page 96 to follow along, then come back here to continue reading.

The first roll is to determine Basic Personality. The roll comes out 6: the PC is “gentle and kindhearted.” Not a bad start. Still, since we know we want him to be a member of the court aristocracy, this might not help him much in the capital. People might like him, but he might not have the “go for the gut” instinct that is generally expected of the kuge and necessary for their success at court.

The second die roll is to answer the question, What Do You Value Most? The roll is a 7: the PC values “loyalty and fealty.” Hm. That seems appropriate for a member of the Imperial Court. We’ll have to keep these in mind as possible motives for future actions.

Now we have to determine the PC’s World View (page 97). The roll is a 9: “People are untrustworthy; be careful who you depend on.” Now this reflects growing up among the kuge caste. Our PC has probably seen more than his share of duplicity and deceit among those vying for position and influence, and it shows that he’s learned from it. Not bad. He won’t be an idiot, we’ve just decided. However we allocate his points, he will be bright.

Since we have decided that this is a court noble, we skip the Birth Caste roll. Let’s decide that this character is effectively “middle class” (for a kuge, at any rate), putting his family at about the fourth tier of the court aristocracy.

Before we do anything else, let’s give this PC a name. He’s kuge, so we consult the kuge surname list in the Names appendix (page 287). Since we have no preference for a surname, let’s let the dice decide for us. Using a handy set of percentile dice (or two 10-sided dice, using one die for “tens” and the other die for “ones”), we get a roll of 62: “Rokkaku.” We also need a given name. Since it’s unlikely that a member of a court clan would directly involve himself in battle at this point, we can assume that Kagetoki’s “good performance in battle” was actually a competition of some sort. Kagetoki put on a splendid performance. We’ll have to keep these in mind as possible motives for future actions.

Now we have to determine the PC’s World View (page 97). The roll is a 9: “People are untrustworthy; be careful who you depend on.” Now this reflects growing up among the kuge caste. Our PC has probably seen more than his share of duplicity and deceit among those vying for position and influence, and it shows that he’s learned from it. Not bad. He won’t be an idiot, we’ve just decided. However we allocate his points, he will be bright.

Since we have decided that this is a court noble, we skip the Birth Caste roll. Let’s decide that this character is effectively “middle class” (for a kuge, at any rate), putting his family at about the fourth tier of the court aristocracy.

Before we do anything else, let’s give this PC a name. He’s kuge, so we consult the kuge surname list in the Names appendix (page 287). Since we have no preference for a surname, let’s let the dice decide for us. Using a handy set of percentile dice (or two 10-sided dice, using one die for “tens” and the other die for “ones”), we get a roll of 62: “Rokkaku.” We also need a given name, so on the Nanori list we roll for a prothome and a deuterotome. The result we get is “Michizane.” Not bad, but it brings to mind the famed statesman Fujiwara no Michizane, so we decide to reroll. The second result yields “Kageto.” Nice. Our character’s name is Rokkaku Kagetoki.

Now let’s move back to the Lifepath. We left off at Home Province, but since he’s a kuge we’ll simply select Yamashiro as his home province (since that is where the capital is located) and say he grew up in Miyako.

Moving on to Kagetoki’s Childhood Events (page 98), we roll 1d6 twice. The first result is a 2 and the second result is a 3: one (or more) of Kagetoki’s family was murdered before his eyes. Well, court intrigues being what they were, that is not impossible. In fact, it could explain Kagetoki’s world view, especially if the murders were committed by those who had been trusted friends or retainers.

Moving on to Life Events, we roll 2d6+13 to determine Kagetoki’s age. We roll an 8 on the dice, so Kagetoki is 21 years of age. We then roll once on the Life Events table for each year over 15, so we have six rolls. We’ll just record the results below.

At the age of 16, nothing of note happened.
At the age of 17, Kagetoki was coerced into marriage against his will.
At the age of 18, his lover (we’ll say Kagetoki’s wife) was unfaithful.
At the age of 19, Kagetoki made a friend who had a common interest.
At the age of 20, he performed well in a battle.
At the age of 21, he was falsely accused.
Now, let’s work through these to develop our character’s backstory...

PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER FOR THE BACKGROUND

Kagetoki’s family was targeted by a rival house (going back to the appendix for a name, we get Senge) and when he was a child, his father and mother were poisoned during a banquet by servants whom the Senge had co-opted.

Kagetoki was entrusted to his father’s younger brother (going back to the appendix, we add -chika to the prothome Kager-), Kagechika. In order to keep the family interests alive, at the age of 17, Kagechika procures Kagetoki’s marriage to a daughter (Asahi-hime) of the Senge family.

Neither Kagetoki nor Asahi-hime were interested in the marriage, but both families insisted on it. The marriage has not been happy, and Kagetoki found out that Asahi-hime had taken a lover early in the second year of their marriage, another young man of the court. He was only the first, and Kagetoki soon stopped counting.

He met a famous master of the sword who had taken monastic vows and lived at a small temple in Miyako, and began taking his frustrations out by devoting his energies to learning the martial arts and studying Zen. Since it’s unlikely that a member of a court clan would directly involve himself in battle at this point, we can assume that Kagetoki’s “good performance in battle” was actually a competition of some sort. Kagetoki put on a splendid performance of yabusame in his 20th year, earning notice and appreciation from the court, and an audience on the Emperor’s behalf with the Sadatajin (Minister of the Left).

This draws the concern of the Senge, who are still not supportive of the young Rokkaku lord. Despite the marriage ties, they decide to eliminate the Rokkaku once and for all. The elderly head of the Senge, Sadakuni, orchestrates the murder of Kagechika and attempts to frame Kagetoki. Kagetoki is able to clear his name, defending himself against the charges, but vows that Asahi-hime will never see him again, nor be given a writ of divorce; he sends her off to a monastery where his few faithful retainers are able to imprison her.

In order to avoid further entanglements with the Senge, Kagetoki has decided to leave the capital and travel for a while, wondering the land as a free-lance sword (or bow), ready to take up causes for others who seem to be unfairly treated or cheated. Someday he plans to return to Miyako and take his revenge on the Senge, but for the time being, his life and destiny are his own.

By inconsistency and frivolity we stray from Bushidō and show ourselves to be beginners. In this we do much harm.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
BACK TO DEVELOPMENT

We need now to see where we are in this 21st year of Kagetoki’s life, as he plans to go out into the world, leaving the relative insecurity — albeit the familiarity — of Miyako.

The Current Situation (page 100) shows that he is in a “mundane occupation.” For a member of the court aristocracy, that means simply that he is a courtier. His Current Outlook is that he is a puppet of more powerful forces. This fits in well with his childhood and adolescence. He was controlled in his youth by his cold, calculating uncle, Kagechika, and in early adulthood his inlaws, the Senge, sought to control and later destroy him. How will he be on his own?

Now we have to allocate his Primary Characteristic Points (see page 103). Since we’ve determined that he’s perceptive, Kagetoki has to be above-average in Intelligence; and since he is kuge, we expect him to have a higher understanding of aesthetics. Since we must allocate 60 points among the 13 Primary Characteristics, we choose to do it this way:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>WILL</th>
<th>PRE</th>
<th>AES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>STR</td>
<td>CON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>REF</td>
<td>DEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>END</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>STUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HITS</td>
<td>REC</td>
<td>RES</td>
<td>HON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The derived characteristics have also been calculated. We’re ready to move on.

We now apply Complications (see page 105). We have determined that Kagetoki has enemies—the Senge. The Senge are As Powerful as Kagetoki, insofar as anything they may throw at him at any given time (worth 10 Option Points), and they are, for the most part, limited to the capital in their reach (+5 OP). The Senge are seeking to destroy Kagetoki, even if they have to kill him to do it (x1). This gives us a total value of 15 OP for Kagetoki’s Enemy, the Senge, to spend later.

We also give Kagetoki a Vow of Fealty to the Emperor (as a member of the court) as a further complication. The Vow is worth a base 10 OP, but because he is leaving the capital it will likely only affect him infrequently (+5 OP) and be of minor importance (divide by 5). The Vow gives us an additional 3 OP.

Total gained for complications is 18 OP.

SKILLS

Looking at the Caste Packages (page 111), we find that the “freebie” skills are Bureaucracy 3, Calligraphy 3 and High Society 3. For our purposes, these levels will suffice. We record the perks, complications, skills and equipment listed for the Kuge package on our character sheet.

Now we choose a profession template. Looking at the Kuge Courtier template (page 125), we see the following skill bonuses listed: Bureaucracy +2, Bribery +2, Diplomacy +2, Flattery +3, High Society +2, two Classical Arts +2 each. Those look good so we take them, selecting Incense Ceremony and Nô as our Classical Arts. Note that the Bureaucracy and High Society skills are raised by 2 to 5.

We record the new skill scores on the character sheet.

We have 50 OP to buy additional skill levels, perks and so on, to which we add 18 more OP from our Complications, bringing our total to 68. We have already spent 5 OP for our kuge caste package, so our total left to spend is now 63.

We spend an additional 38 Option Points boosting up some of his skills. That leaves us with 25 OP.

Some of Kagetoki’s skills require specialties, so we choose those now. For his Dance specialty the obvious choice is Court Dance (Buyô). For Local Expert we decide on Miyako, the capital city, since Kagetoki spent so much time there.

The following list represents Kagetoki’s skills and skill levels. They include all of the skills gained with the Kuge caste package, as well as the Everyman skills (shown in bold text). Following the skill level for each skill is Kagetoki’s AV (the total of his skill score + governing characteristic), in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SKILL</th>
<th>LEVEL</th>
<th>AV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Archery</td>
<td>6 (12)</td>
<td>Gen. Knowledge 2 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athletics</td>
<td>2 (6)</td>
<td>High Society 6 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism</td>
<td>3 (8)</td>
<td>Incense Ceremony 5 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bureaucracy</td>
<td>6 (11)</td>
<td>Lang: Japanese 2 (—)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bribery</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>Loc. Exp: Miyako 3 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calligraphy</td>
<td>4 (10)</td>
<td>Meditation 4 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>Nô 5 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concentration</td>
<td>3 (8)</td>
<td>Perception 4 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversation</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>Riding 4 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dance: Court</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>Shintô 4 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diplomacy</td>
<td>4 (9)</td>
<td>Stealth 2 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>2 (7)</td>
<td>Swords 4 (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flattery</td>
<td>5 (10)</td>
<td>Teaching 2 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folklore</td>
<td>4 (10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We add The Archer’s Path okuden, which costs 3 OP. Normally an okuden requires a ML 5+ in a ryû, but with the GM’s permission we say that Kagetaki had a ML 5, but he has since left the ryû.

To be at o50s with one’s companions, to be prone to miss even infrequent meetings, to speak only cantankerous words — all come from a shallow foolishness of mind.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
There is nothing so painful as regret. We would all like to be without it. However, when we are very happy and become elated, or when we habitually jump into something thoughtlessly, later we are distraught, and it is for the most part because we did not think ahead and are now regretful. Certainly we should try not to become dejected, and when very happy should calm our minds.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo

**PERKS**

*Membership* in a kuge clan costs 4 OP per level—even though he’s kuge, we have to pay to establish what level of membership he has within the Court.

He gets the first four levels with the Kuge caste package, plus two more levels with the Kuge Courtier template, for a total ML of 6.

Let’s make him a lower level kuge, with ML 4, which reflects his house’s falling fortunes and his own on-again-off-again status at court. This gives us 8 OP back (4 OP for each level below 6, which we already paid for in the caste package and profession template).

*Contacts:* His priest/teacher in Miyako (which costs 3 OP); Uncle Kagechika (free); The Minister of the Left (nominal; the minister knows him, so it’s low level — cost: 8 OP).

**CONVERTING OP TO MONEY**

So far we’ve spent 46 of our 68 OP. Let’s convert the rest into money (ah, filthy lucre!) and get our gear. The remaining 20 OP convert to 22 “coin.” Looking under *Wealth* (page 116), we see that kuge “coin” are ryō—our character has 22 ryō, or 88 *bu-shoban* (the equivalent of 88 *koku*! Because their lifestyle and requirements cost so much more, this is only fair.

**STARTING EQUIPMENT**

Now all we have to do is outfit Kagetoki. Looking over the Caste Package and Profession Template, we receive the following starting gear at no cost:

- Ceremonial court robe
- Courtly robes
- Obi (belt)
- 2 fundoshi (loincloths)
- Kuge-style *eboshi* (lacquered cap)
- *Ogi* (folding fan)
- *Kasa* (parasol)
- 2 pairs *tabi* (socks)
- 2 pairs *waraji* (sandals)
- *Geta* (clogs)
- *Tachi* (ceremonial sword)
- *Tantô* (knife)
- Sachet

He will need a fine suit of armor; he’s got 88 *bu-shoban* (equivalent to 1,056 *monme-ita*), more than enough for a good set of *daimyō* armor (which costs 872 *monme-ita*, or about 73 *bu-shoban*). After buying the armor he has 184 *monme-ita* (or 15 *bu-shoban*, 4 *monme-ita*) left.

He has a sword (*tachi* and a *tantô*). All he needs now is a bow, some arrows and a good horse. A man-rating 3 *yumi* (longbow) costs 2 *bu-shoban* (page 168), two dozen *yanagi-ha* (“willow leaf” arrows) costs 4 *bu-shoban* (page 169), and a riding horse costs 6 *bu-shoban* (page 178), for a total of 12 *bu-shoban*. Kagetoki now has all the equipment he needs and 3 *bu-shoban* and 4 *monme-ita* left over.

With everything purchased, he sets off—perhaps with a servant or two in tow (their costs are listed in the under Services in the Equipment section, page 193)—his adventure only now truly beginning.

---

"There is nothing so painful as regret. We would all like to be without it. However, when we are very happy and become elated, or when we habitually jump into something thoughtlessly, later we are distraught, and it is for the most part because we did not think ahead and are now regretful. Certainly we should try not to become dejected, and when very happy should calm our minds."

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
ARMS, ARMOR AND EQUIPMENT
A NOTE ABOUT PRICES

The items listed in this chapter are all assumed to be average quality versions. GMs are encouraged to adjust the listed cost of items based on the approximate availability of the item and the item’s quality. Availability reflects the number of similar items present in the general location versus the demand for those items.

GMs should take into consideration how many smiths, craftsmen or artisans capable of making or maintaining the item are located in the area in question, or whether any are located there at all.

For example, while there are ample woodworkers or mat-makers in a small town (thus making related items “Average” or “High” in availability), master-quality swordsmiths would be difficult to find, at best (thus, Master quality swords would be Low or Scarce availability).

Other things to consider is the legality of an item. Note that shinobi equipment should never be Scarce in a shinobi clan’s “base;” shinobi equipment should always be of Average quality in Historic and Chanbara-level games.

The table below is presented as suggested modifiers based on availability and quality. For example, an item of average quality that is common would be priced at 100% of the listed cost.

---

**Price Modifiers Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item Quality</th>
<th>Availability</th>
<th>Over-Stocked</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below Avg</td>
<td>x2</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>x5</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above Avg</td>
<td>x10</td>
<td>x5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master</td>
<td>x50</td>
<td>x10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legendary</td>
<td>x100</td>
<td>x50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

ARMOR

Japanese armor has undergone a process of simplification and improvement so that by the middle of the sixteenth century, it is both extremely functional and protective. Some armors are even bulletproof, and armors bearing the deep pox marks of actual test firing are quite expensive.

Due to the expense, most armors are not made en-suite except for lords and wealthier samurai. A full set of matched armor (with all the cloth pieces of the same pattern, the same lacquer and decorations, etc.) will cost twice the amount for the sum of the individual pieces, as they all need to be done about the same time.

Pieces made later to match other pieces which are missing, damaged, or lost will cost twice the listed value, as well.

**ARMOR WEIGHT**

Weight for armor is given in kilograms (kg). The listed weight represents the physical mass of the item as well as its effect on encumbrance. The true weight of a three-plate, shot-proof kabuto (helmet) is not 33 kg (73 lbs), but it is certainly heavy and encumbering, so we list it at the higher weight. GMs are free to modify the weight of items if they so desire.

**BASIC ARMOR RULE**

Use the “Basic DEF Value” listed for the armor (in parenthesis) against all attacks. Do not use the optional hit locations.

**ADVANCED ARMOR RULE**

Use the values for each piece of armor worn for each location. Use the hit location rules. All armor pieces are grouped according to the armor type; a “full” suit of armor is assumed to consist of all of the listed pieces for that type. Additional “miscellaneous” armors are also listed, and some may be substituted/mixed with other armor.

---

**Miscellaneous armor**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metal headband (happuri)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal face mask (sômen)</td>
<td>7m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal half mask (hanbô)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorget (erîwa)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gorget (nodowa)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal tabi (tetsutabi)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17–18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced headband (hachigane)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

—Daidôji Yûzan

...though he may be young and very strong, it is better to avoid heavy suits of thick iron armor and weighty banners and standards, for...though they may be tolerable while he is young, as he grows older they will be too much for him. ...even a young man may fall ill or be wounded, and then the lightest iron armor will be a heavy burden and a hindrance.
### ARMOR TABLE

**Dô (chestpieces): metal, with sode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Riveted clamshell</td>
<td>30m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riveted clamshell (shotproof)</td>
<td>60m</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riveted clamshell (munitions)</td>
<td>25m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid plate clamshell</td>
<td>40m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid 5-plate</td>
<td>40m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sparse-laced lame 5-plate</td>
<td>60m</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full-laced lame clamshell</td>
<td>75m</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European (modified)</td>
<td>500m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full laced dô (side- or back-opening)</td>
<td>120m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folding dô</td>
<td>18m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Removable kusazuri</td>
<td>+5m</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Leather construction,</td>
<td></td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>.8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail tunic (jûban-gote)</td>
<td></td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>9–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Breast only</td>
<td></td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>Var</td>
<td>Var</td>
<td>10–12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kote (armored sleeves)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full splint and mail</td>
<td>13m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plates and mail</td>
<td>15m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid forearm</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full splint, no mail</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brigandine</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All mail (kusari-gote)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half sleeve</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- with expanded “vest”</td>
<td>+50%</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7–9</td>
<td>Limits arm movement, attacks at –1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- with attached sode</td>
<td>+20%</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–9</td>
<td>Limits arm movement, attacks at –1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Haidate (thigh guards)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haidate, daimyo, decorative</td>
<td>40m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>Limits mobility on foot; -1 Move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haidate, samurai, splint and mail</td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>Limits mobility on foot; -1 Move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haidate, ashigaru, splint, no mail</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Suneate (greaves)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suneate, daimyo</td>
<td>35m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suneate, samurai: splint and mail</td>
<td>17m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suneate, ashigaru: splint, no mail</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kabuto (helmets)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Three-plate, munitions</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three-plate, shot-proof</td>
<td>18m</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helmet, grotesque (or shot-proof)</td>
<td>30–100m</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>GM must decide any effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-plate kabuto</td>
<td>14m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-plate kabuto</td>
<td>25m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-plate kabuto</td>
<td>50m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-plate kabuto</td>
<td>80m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72-plate kabuto</td>
<td>95m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120-plate kabuto</td>
<td>200m</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kabuto, special shape</td>
<td>20–50m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>GM must decide any effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crest, simple</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crest, elaborate</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crest, ostentatious</td>
<td>12–20m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>GM must decide any effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kusazuri: fully laced</td>
<td>+25m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingasa, steel, munition</td>
<td>9m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingasa, leather, munition</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingasa, leather, officers’</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingasa, steel, officers’</td>
<td>12m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingasa, steel, lords’</td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail cowl (kusari-zukin)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a low ranking retainer wishes to fit himself with armor and has but three pieces of gold to get a suit, the best thing he can do will be to spend two-thirds of it on the dô and kabuto, leaving the remainder to buy the other things he’ll need…

— Daidôji Yûzan
### Typical Armor Sets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Armor, complete</td>
<td>872m*</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>(12)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120-plate kabuto (crest, lacing)</td>
<td>200m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full laced dō (side- or back-opening)</td>
<td>120m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full splint and mail sleeves</td>
<td>25m†</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder guards (sode)</td>
<td>16m†</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thigh guard (haidate)</td>
<td>40m†</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>Limits arm movement; attacks –1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greaves (suneate)</td>
<td>35m†</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td>Limits mobility on foot; -1 Move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>† For daimyō or such men of rank, normal gear must cost at least twice normal cost.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Armor, complete</td>
<td>280m*</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>(12)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kabuto: special shape (court cap)</td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td>–1 Move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dō: clamshell, shotproof</td>
<td>60m</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kote: plates and mail</td>
<td>15m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sode: lames, sparse lacing</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Limits arm movement, attacks at –1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haidate: splint and mail</td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>Limits mobility on foot; -1 Move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suneate: splint and mail</td>
<td>17m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Armor, complete</td>
<td>204m*</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>(12)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-plate kabuto</td>
<td>14m</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dō: riveted clamshell</td>
<td>30m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kote: splint and mail</td>
<td>13m</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sode: lames, sparse lacing</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Limits arm movement, attacks at –1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haidate: splint and mail</td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td>Limits mobility on foot; -1 Move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suneate: splint and mail</td>
<td>17m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Armor, complete</td>
<td>98m*</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>(6)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Worn by ashigaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jingasa, steel, munition</td>
<td>9m</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dō: folding</td>
<td>18m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10–12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kote: full splint, no mail</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7–8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haidate: splint, no mail</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>13–14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suneate: splint, no mail</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>14–16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mail, complete</td>
<td>30m</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>(12)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Can be worn under clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowl (kusari-zukin)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td>1/2 DEF vs piercing/crushing attacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tunic (juban-gote)</td>
<td>20m</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>9–12</td>
<td>1/2 DEF vs piercing/crushing attacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleeves (kusari-gote)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6–8</td>
<td>1/2 DEF vs piercing/crushing attacks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>DEF</th>
<th>Locations</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Padded garb, complete</td>
<td>18m</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>(4/14)</td>
<td></td>
<td>DEF vs. weapons/vs. fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cowl (zukin)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3/12</td>
<td>3–5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacket (hanten)</td>
<td>15m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4/16</td>
<td>6–13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Armor purchased all together, made en suite, costs twice as much as the individual pieces bought piecemeal.

---

For soldiers other than officers, if they would test their armor, they should test only the front. Furthermore, while ornamentation on armor is unnecessary, one should be very careful about the appearance of his helmet. It is something that accompanies his head to the enemy’s camp.

— Anonymous general
PARTS OF ARMOR

A full suit of armor in the “modern” Sengoku-style is called a tosei gusoku, or “modern armor.” Makes sense, doesn’t it? Working from the head down, let us take a look at the typical items in a full gusoku.

Jingasa

Jingasa (camp-hats) are worn in camp and on the road by upper-class bushi, while they are the standard battle-wear of the average foot soldier and ashigaru. Most jingasas are simple low, broad cones, although the jingasa of the commanders can exhibit more personality and flair. Typically, a jingasa will be lacquered black (or to match the armor), with the mon of the lord or owner on the front. Half the jingasa are of metal, and half are hardened leather with dozens of layers of lacquer.

Ashigaru are known to use their jingasa to cook rice in, as well as to water horses.

Kabuto

The full helmet is called a kabuto. The most common form is a hemispherical bowl shape with a visor and a pendant lamellar nape-guard. The helmet bowl can be of as few as three and as many as 120 narrowly overlapping plates. They appear in 3-, 8-, 16-, 32-, 64-, 72-, and 120-plate varieties. Kabuto of 64, 72 and 120 plates are suitable only for generals and very wealthy samurai, as no one else can afford them, and they are no more protective than a good three-plate, and oftentimes less so.

The three-plate helmets are the most common in the field due to their ease of construction; they are also often made bullet proof, however, so there is no cost reduction from an eight-plate helmet. The cost of a typical kabuto is for a field-grade eight-plate helmet; for each increment in number of plates above that, double the cost. When worn by upper-class bushi, the three-plate kabuto is often disguised with an elaborate papièr-mâché sculpture to disguise its plebeian origins.

The shikoro (nape guard) is of three to five lames of metal or hardened, lacquered leather, held together by leather or silk braid that can be sparse-point or full lacing.

Helmets for samurai of any rank will usually have a crest of some sort. It might be as simple as a disc on the front at which is painted or carved the owner’s mon. It might be huge deer antlers or water buffalo horns worn on either side. The variety of crests is amazing.

There are a few main forms of shikoro, but kabuto are identified by their bowl-type. Some of the most common forms are:

- **Ebossi-nari kabuto:** kabuto designed to evoke the image of a court cap. It can be short or outrageously tall.
- **Hineno kabuto:** three-plate helmets made to fit the shape of the head.
- **Hoshi kabuto:** multi-plate helmet with raised rivets instead of ridges.
- **Ichinotani kabuto:** helmet of whatever form augmented by a sloping, curved vertical panel. The helmet on the cover of this book is an Ichinotani kabuto.
- **Kawari kabuto:** a virtually infinitely open category of elaborate designs, or “grotesques.” They are usually built onto the framework of a Hineno kabuto. They take the form of sea monsters, heads, religious implements, fists, etc.
- **Momo-nari kabuto:** “peach-shaped” kabuto. One of the more common “oddities.”

Suji kabuto: multi-plate helmet with the edge of each pie-section–shaped plate a raised ridge.

Dō

The torso is protected by a cuirass called a dō. All but the cheapest armors fully encircle the torso. The cheapest armors consist of just a breastplate, with no back. (Note: Many lords have elaborately designed and constructed breastplates that they wear “on parade” — these are functional armor, but should not be considered in the same category as the inexpensive, mass-produced breastplates worn by the ashigaru.)

As a rule, Japanese armor can be divided into clamshells (“two-plate”), five-plate, and wraparounds.

Clamshells and five-plate dō are fairly solid, hence the need for hinges. The wraparounds are usually made of scale and therefore less rigid, or they are made of dozens of small, card-sized metal plates attached to a fabric backing; they can open either up the center back or under the right arm.

Dō typically wrap around the body and fasten under the right arm (or, rarely, up the back). The solid metal shoulder straps fasten to the top of the breast plate by two frogs. The sides are held together by a cord loop on the front and two cords on the back which tie closed. The placement is slightly below the armpit; a waist sash holds the waist closed. There are no buckles in Japanese armor.

Hanging from the waist of the dō is a protective ring of tassels, called kusazuri, laced and lacquered en suite or in a complementary pattern to the dō and shoulder protectors. The usual number of lames is four or five, and there are seven to eleven sets. During the Sengoku Period, a new innovation was developed whereby kusazuri were not attached directly to the dō, but hung from a leather belt which itself was attached to the dō by ties in several locations. The removable kusazuri allowed for easy fording of a shallow river or stream without wetting the armor (regular kusazuri could be tied up, but usually no one bothered). They also allowed for packing the armor in a smaller space. This new feature would only appear on modern-style dō, not dō of scale construction. Any given dō is about five percent likely to have removable kusazuri.

A common feature of dō is an arrangement for the back to which the sashimono (armor banner) is attached. This is a required feature on munitions-grade armors, as the sashimono is a standard feature for the field troops. Munitions armors also often have the mon of the clan lord painted boldly on the front.

Some of the major types of dō are:

- **Dangae dō:** cuirass having a differently constructed bottom half from its top (e.g., sparse lacing at the top, fully laced bottom two lames).
- **Dō maru:** wraparound cuirass of scale construction opening up under the right arm.
- **Hara ate:** breast plate only (no back plate).
- **Haramaki dō:** wraparound of scale construction or five-plate opening up the back.
- **Hatomune dō:** cuirass with a central vertical ridge up the breast.
- **Hotoke dō:** clamshell cuirass of smooth (or solid plate) construction.
- **Maru dō:** clamshell cuirass of laced construction.
- **Mōgami dō:** five-plate, laced cuirass.

To place one’s armor splendidly on display is a fine discipline, but it is sufficient if it is simply all accounted for.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Nanban dō: cuirass adapted to Japanese tastes made from an imported European armor.
Niō dō: cuirass sculpted to resemble the naked torso of a starving man.
Nuinobe dō: clamshell cuirass with sparse point lacing.
Okegawa dō: clamshell cuirass of riveted construction.
Tatami dō: “folding” armor; cuirass of small plates on fabric.
Yukinoshita dō: five-plate, solid cuirass

Sode
The shoulders and upper arms are protected by sode. Each sode is very similar to one set of kusazuri. Sode are the only non-attached piece of armor that is invariably made en suite with any given dō. The sode attach to the shoulder straps via a pair of frogs. In order to allow more free movement, many samurai eschew sode in actual combat, preferring instead kohire, small “wings” of metal or brigantine which project slightly over the tip of the shoulder to defend against down-strokes. Samurai officers wearing jinbaori (camp coats) usually do not wear sode with the garment.

There are four basic types of sode:

Hiro sode: sode which are broader at the base than the top.
Ō sode: larger, old-style sode, approximately one shaku square.
Tōsei sode: Also called Mōgami sode; rectangular sode five lames, sparse laced, about 10” long by 8” wide.
Tsubo sode: deeply curved sode which fit more closely to the upper arm.

Kote
Bushi protect their arms with armored sleeves called kote. Although there are many different designs, the universal constant is that they involve metal plates on a fabric foundation, and a guard for the back of the hand. Typically, they take the form of a number of metal splints on the forearm, a small plate over the elbow, and a few rows of shorter splints on the upper arm. Mail is used to close up the open spaces on all but the cheapest kote. The hand guard is two or four plates, covering the back of the thumb and the top of the hand; cords secure it to the middle finger and thumb.

Variations include small plates floating in a sea of mail, a small number of close-fitting splints that enclose the forearm entirely in steel, or metal plates sewn into the cloth like brigantine armor (this latter is called an ubugote). Another variation has the sode permanently attached to the kote. This is called a Bishamon-gote.

Cords at the wrist tighten the kote in place, and a set of frogs or ties at the shoulder either attach the kote to the dō, or tie the kote to the body. (If the former style, the kote are donned after the dō; if the latter, before.)

Some wore half-kote (hangote), which only covered the forearm up to the elbow.

A more expensive form of kote called tomarina-gote (increase cost by 50 percent) is attached to a sort of half-vest which fastens either at the back and front (if two separate pieces) or up the front (if one piece). These are a bit more convenient to put on and use, but more complex to construct and less comfortable to wear. They are not very popular.

Typical types of kote are:

Bishamon-gote: kote (of whatever form) with sode (of whatever form) attached.
Kusari-gote: kote with nothing but mail as a defense. A more concealable variation of this is commonly worn by shinobi.
Oda-gote: kote with small metal plates “floating” in mail. (Characterized by the gourd-shaped plate on the forearm. Also called Kaga-gote.
Shino-gote: kote of any number of splints (with or without mail).
Tominaga-gote: kote (of whatever form) with extended sections forming a sort of “vest” under the armor.
Ubu-gote: kote made of brigantine.

Haidate
The thighs are protected by a sort of armored split apron called haidate. These were very useful for mounted bushi, but those on the ground find them cumbersome and often discard them. All but the cheapest models have a strap that runs behind the leg to at least keep them in place; those lacking this feature are soon modified by soldiers with the aid of scrap cloth and needle and thread. Haidate are either a type of scale construction, or small splints or metal plates connected by mail and sewn to the padded fabric backing.

Suneate
The final piece of armor is the suneate, or greave. These are more important to mounted bushi, whose shins would of course be exposed to unmounted warriors, but even the foot soldiers wear them. They are typically made en suite with the kote, as splints on fabric. Three standing portions made of brigantine rise to cover the knee. The inside of each suneate is only plated or splinted half-way down, as the bottom is covered with soft leather. This is to prevent the metal plates from rubbing and damaging stirrup straps. They are held to the shin by two long sets of ties, one at the top, under the knee, and one at the ankle.

Miscellaneous Armor

Feet: Some samurai wear a kind of articulate metal shoe called a tetsutabi. Like regular tabi, it has a split-toe design. The tetsutabi are not comfortable, and make walking difficult at times. They are of most use to mounted combatants, whose feet are at striking height. When wearing tetsutabi, one must also wear waraji (straw sandals which tie to the foot and ankle), as their bottoms are soft deerskin or canvas. The waraji are, of course, removed before going indoors. Shinobi have been known to wear tetsutabi as well. Generals may wear kegutsu, heavy slippers made of bear skin. They provide no armor benefits, but they do protect one’s toes from getting stepped on. The main benefit provided by kegutsu is an air of rank, for no one else wears them. Like waraji, they are removed before going indoors.

Common samurai, as with everyone else, wear only waraji.

Neck and Throat: One item of armor that is virtually ignored is the gorget. There are two forms. One, which lies lower on the throat and protect the upper chest as well is called a nodowa, or throat ring. The other form, the eriwa, is taller standing, and protects the neck and throat. If one chooses to wear one, it must be put on first, as it is worn under the armor. Some have been known to wear only this with their regular clothing.
Head and Face: Armorer selling armor will try to sell a matched armor mask—whose name varies depending on style—with the helmet. While some bushi like the masks, as they keep the cords which secure the helmet from digging into the chin, most do not use them as they are hot and constricting. Field grade armors do not come so equipped as a rule. The full face mask (sōmen) has fallen into disuse. Preferred now is the menpō, which covers the nose, chin, and cheeks. A more abbreviated version of the menpō is the hanbô or hōate, which leaves the nose exposed. Many menpō are made with the nose section removable. Face masks are decorated to represent a ferocious, grimacing face, complete with a mustache of applied horse hair.

The cheapest forms of head protection—even cheaper than jingasa—are the hanburi and the hachigane. The hanburi can only be compared to a half bowl which is worn on the forehead and held in place by a cord running behind the head. The hachigane is the cheapest of all, consisting as it does of only a small metal plate (or plates) sewn to a head cloth.

Those with no access to any kind of helmet have been known to take a spare kote and wrap it around the head like a head cloth. If doing this, treat it as head protection with the KD quality of the kote minus 2, owing to its use in a non-intended way (e.g., a splint and mail kote—a shino gote—is KD 11 on the arm, but worn wrapped around the head it provides KD 9).

Hands: The kote have guards for the back of their hands (tekkō); there are no separate gauntlets that can be worn.

ARMOR CONSTRUCTION

Japanese armor is made of steel or leather which has been lacquered to keep out moisture. Even mail is lacquered. Most armor is lacquered black (high gloss or matte), although deep red, russet, and bright red are also common colors. The most ostentatious finish is gold leaf applied over lacquer.

Solid parts of the armor—the dō in most cases—are riveted together, and the moving parts are held together by parallel rows of suspensory armor lacing. The lacing is either sparse point (most common in combat and field grade armors), or full lacing—typical for lords and so-called parade armor. Sparse point lacing is done on solid lames, while full lacing can be either on scale armor or solid lames which have been punched with dozens and dozens of holes. This latter weakens the lames, but makes for an impressive suit of armor.

All costs are for sparse-point lacing, unless otherwise indicated. If fully laced, and of scale construction, the armor costs more (see the charts below).

Kote, suneate, and haïdate are all constructed on fabric foundations. The facing fabric is different from the foundation and internal padding fabric. The various plates or mail are sewn to the surface, and can be removed to allow the fabric base to be cleaned.

Japanese brigantine (called kikkō) is made of tiny hexagonal plates sandwiched between layers of fabric and anchored by cross laces and outlined with bright thread. It is flexible and reasonably protective.

The armor is held together and on the body by a variety of frogs and ties. If one is alone, it takes approximately 20 minutes to arm oneself.

DECORATIONS AND MOTIFS

Armor lacing (odoshi), whether silk braid or tanned leather, comes in an bewildering array of colors and patterns. The most common (i.e., least expensive) color is dark blue, which is widely used in munitions grade and ashigaru armors. Other colors are orange, red, white, pale green, dark green, etc.

There are many who postulate that the color of the armor lacing is laden with meaning; white implies an expected death, red implies anger, and so on. This is pure fallacy. Few people can afford to own five or six different suits of armor, and it is impossible to remove the lacing and re-lace with a different color. Therefore, the color of the lacing is what they get. Those requesting armor to be made to their specifications can request specific lacing and lacquer, but one going to the shop of an armorer is at the mercy of his stock. While certain colors of lacquer and lacing run within certain clans (the Li clan, for example, outfitted their warriors with brightly lacquered red armor; only the styles varied), one can’t assume connections.

The mon of the owner (or the owner’s lord) can be worked into the armor in many places. Various large, ornamental rivets can bear the crest, as can metal decorative plaques applied in various places. Common locations are the back of the hand armor, the blowbacks on the kabuto, the helmet crest itself, and the front of the dō. One of the most common “customization” jobs done by the armorer (actually, he subcontracts a lacquerer for this) is lacquering the mon on the front of the dō.

BARDING

There is no horse armor, save for the occasional “mask” placed over the horse’s head. The masks are of lacquered leather or metal, and typically decorated to resemble a dragon’s head.

The rest of the horse’s tack for battle is the same as the horse’s tack for day-to-day use, only perhaps a bit more ornate.

...decorative armor and equipment can be seen as being weak and having no strength. By them one can see through the wearer’s heart.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
BUYING WEAPONS

Weapons should be purchased with money rather than spending Option Points. Characters get starting amounts of money by using Option Points to buy the Wealth perk (see page 117)—and during the course of the game can obtain money in many interesting ways—and then purchase weapons and equipment. Alternatively, the GM can give each character a certain amount of money to start the game instead of having the character buy the Wealth perk.

Above average and master quality weapons may be constructed using the rules for Creating Items (page 195).

WEAPON LIST

Following is a list of typical weapons found in Sengoku. For those using the Instant Fuzion rules, ignore everything except the weapon damage (DC). Everything else is optional.

**STR Minimum:** This is the minimum STR required to use the item without a penalty. For each 1 STR less than the minimum, take a -1 REF penalty for weapons and do -1 DC (i.e., one less d6) damage.

**Damage Class (DC):** DC is the damage class of the weapon, the number of six-sided dice to roll for damage. DC 1/2 means you roll 1d6, and a 1–2 means 1 Hit, 3–4 means 2 Hits, and 5–6 means 3 Hits. DC 0 means 1 Hit (no roll).

**Weapon Accuracy (WA):** Some weapons are inherently more difficult to control than others. Likewise, some weapons are inherently easier to wield or more accurate. To reflect these differences we use the Weapon Accuracy (WA) modifier. Add this number to your AV when making an attack roll with the weapon.

For example, a weapon with a WA of 1 allows the user to add +1 to his AV when rolling the dice to make an attack with that weapon. Likewise, a WA of -1 means you subtract 1 from your AV when rolling.

**Range:** Range refers to the melee weapon range or “reach,” of the weapon. S = Short: The weapon is short and can only be used in arm’s reach, to attack someone up to 1 meter away. M = Medium: The weapon allows you to strike someone up to 2 meters away. L = Long: The weapon is long and allows you to strike someone up to 4 meters away. For additional rules and melee combat modifiers for range, see The Game Rules (pg. 213).

**Cost:** This is the monetary cost of the weapon.

**Skill:** This is the primary skill required to use the weapon.

**Similarity:** These are skills which may be substituted for the primary skill (with GM’s permission) at the indicated penalty.

**Notes:** Several codes appear here. They stand for the following:

- 2H = Two-handed weapon
- AP = Armor piercing (divide armor KD by 2)
- D = Allows use of Martial Disarm action with the weapon (character must have the weapon skill)
- F = Flail action may be used, +1 fumble chance
- G = Allows use of Grab action with weapon (character must have the weapon skill)
- L = Long weapon
- O = One- or two-handed
- S = Short weapon
- T = Throwable (using Throwing skill)
- R = Range in meters
- P = Phases required to reload
- ( ) = Stun damage only
### Axes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Rng</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Skill</th>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuetsu</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Axe</td>
<td>Kama -2</td>
<td>Steel hand ax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masakari</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Axe</td>
<td>Kama -2</td>
<td>Hvy hand ax (allows AP, 2H attack for 2d6/3 STR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōno</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Axe</td>
<td>PA: Naginata -2</td>
<td>2H; Battle ax</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Flexible Weapons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Rng</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Skill</th>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kawanaga (2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Chains</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2H, G; Weighted rope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyōtetsu-shoge Var.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>S/L</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Chains/Knives</td>
<td>–/Kama -1</td>
<td>See Kawanaga or Tanto; for shinobi only</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manrikigusari (2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Chains</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2H, G; Weighted chain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Knives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Rng</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Skill</th>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aiguchi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Knives</td>
<td>Jitte -3</td>
<td>T, R = x5 m/y; Knife w/o tsuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kogai</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td></td>
<td>Knives, Throwing</td>
<td></td>
<td>T; Small knife kept in wakizashi saya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kozuka</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td></td>
<td>Knives, Throwing</td>
<td></td>
<td>T; Small steel knife kept in katana saya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kubi-ki</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Knives</td>
<td>Jitte -2, Fans -3</td>
<td>Large, curved knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tantō</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Knives</td>
<td>Jitte -2</td>
<td>T, R = x5 m/y; Large knife w/hand guard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoroi-toshi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Knives</td>
<td>Jitte -2</td>
<td>AP; Armor piercing dagger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Polearms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Rng</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Skill</th>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bisentō</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>PA: Glaive</td>
<td>PA: Any -2</td>
<td>2H; Hvy Chinese-style glaive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bō</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; 6 shaku hickory wood staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bō-naginata</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Glaive</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; 8 shaku wooden practice naginata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fumata-yari</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Forked lance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gusan Jō</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -2, Sword -1</td>
<td>O; 3 shaku wooden stick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hasshaku Bō</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; 8 shaku wooden staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoko</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; 6 shaku lance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jō</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -2, Sword -1</td>
<td>O; 4 shaku wooden staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kama-yari</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Spear w/added crescent blade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuda-yari</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Spear variant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyushakujō Bō</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; 9 shaku staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makura-yari</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>7m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagamaki</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>PA: Glaive</td>
<td>PA: Any -2, Sword -2</td>
<td>O; Naginata/nōdachi hybrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nage-yari</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Short spear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagitana</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>PA: Glaive</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Polearm with sword blade (glave)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rokushakujō Bō</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; 6 shaku bō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanjakujō Jō</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>PA: Staff</td>
<td>PA: Any -2, Sword -2</td>
<td>O; 4 shaku wooden staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasumata</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>PA: Man-catcher</td>
<td>PA: Any -2</td>
<td>2H, G; Forked yari with bars on shaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodegarami</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>PA: Man-catcher</td>
<td>PA: Any -2</td>
<td>2H, G; Staff with numerous metal bars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Su-yari</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanpo-yari</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Padded/wooden practice yari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetsubō</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>PA: War Club</td>
<td>PA: Staff -2</td>
<td>2H, +1ST; Hvy war club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ttaja</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Hunting spear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yari</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>PA: Lance</td>
<td>PA: Any -1</td>
<td>2H; Spear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Swords

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Rng</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Skill</th>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bokken</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td>PA: Staff -3</td>
<td>O; Wooden practice sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kamashinozashi</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>3b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td></td>
<td>O; Long sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Katana</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>8b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td></td>
<td>2H; Hvy battle sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodachi</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>4b</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td>PA: Naginata -3</td>
<td>O; double-edged straight sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryoba Katana</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td></td>
<td>2H; Shinobi sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinobigatana</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>4b</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td>Knives -2</td>
<td>O; Ancient long sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachi</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td>Knives -2</td>
<td>O; Short sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wakizashi</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>4b</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Swords</td>
<td>Knives -2</td>
<td>O; Broad-bladed single edge sword</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The samurai who does not keep his mind fixed on death, even though he wears a sword, is nothing but a farmer or tradesman in a warrior's skin.*

— Daidōji Yūzan
## Miscellaneous Weapons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon Name</th>
<th>Var.</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Range</th>
<th>PA</th>
<th>2H, G</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chijiriki Var. 4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>PA: Lance, Chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Club</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daijo</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>Chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feruzue Var. 4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>PA: Staff, Chains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furibo</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunbai (2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hachiwara (3)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>7m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jitte (2)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kii</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>1m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kama</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiseru (2)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S-M</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kusarigama Var. 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>M/L</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuwa</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manji-no-sai (2)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagegama</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nekode/Tekagi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>5m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nunchaku (3)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ogama</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kama</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>10m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sai (2)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanbon Nun-chaku (4)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinobi (3)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aiguchi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakudan</td>
<td>1–8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankū</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaiken</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kogai</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kozuka</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōdeppō</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōchi-ne</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yawara</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>3m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Missile Weapons (Uchimono)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon Name</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>ROF</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ōgama</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>200b</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tedan</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōchi-ne</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Missiles (Uchimono)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weapon Name</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>ROF</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aiguchi</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakudan</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>Fired from teppō; explosive, area effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hankū</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2H, -1 DEX, R=60 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaiken</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td></td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kogai</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td></td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kozuka</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td></td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōdeppō</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>200b</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters, no maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuriken</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tantō</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tedan</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>R = STRx5 meters; explosive, area effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōchi-ne</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td></td>
<td>2H, -2 DEX, R=90 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uchi-ne</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2H, -2 DEX, R=120 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2H, -2 DEX, R=120 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>4b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2H, -2 DEX, R=150 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>8b</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2H, -2 DEX, R=180 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>12b</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2H, -2 DEX, R=210 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

A master of men should be like Fudō-myo and Aizen-o-myo, because Fudō-myo carries the sword and Aizen-o-myo carries the bow and arrow — not to strike at man, but solely for the subjugation of evil, for they are both beings of deep inner compassion.

— Asakura Toshikage
ARROW TYPES

For GMs and players desiring more variety in their choice of arrows, we offer the following list of different arrow types, each with modifiers to the Damage Class, STR Minimum and Weapon Accuracy (WA) appropriate to that type of arrow.

Note that on this table, “-R” (where “n” is a number) indicates that the arrow effectively reduces the range of the bow by (STR or MR x 10) meters.

For example if firing a Flesh-tearer arrow from a MR 6 bow (within a range of 180 meters), the effective range would be reduced to 120 meters. Firing a Flesh-tearer arrow from a hankyû (range of 60 meters) would reduce the range to 30 meters (10 x STR). Firing a bamboo head arrow increases the range by a like amount.

Fire Arrows

Fire arrows are considered Mild fire, doing 1d6 Hits per Turn (4 Phases). Each Turn that the arrows are in contact with flammable material, the GM rolls another 1d6. If the fire damage rolled exceeds the second roll, then the item has caught fire and will begin taking damage from the flame (in Hits or SDP). When the item reaches 0 Hits/SDP, the fire dies out.

On any Phase that a 6 is rolled on the damage dice, the fire grows, adding another die to the damage it causes (i.e., +1D6). In essence, the more a fire grows, the faster it grows!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrow Type</th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>WA</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yanagi-ha</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Willow-leaf; “standard” arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karinata</td>
<td>+1H</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Forked arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hikime</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Whistling/signal arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Togari-ya</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>AP; Pointed head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watakushí</td>
<td>+1H</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>-R; flesh-tearer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki-hoko</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>-R; wood arrow used in dog hunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kari-ya</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>+R; bamboo head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makagoya</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hunting arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matoya</td>
<td>+0</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>-R; does Stun; blunt, wood-tipped arrow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABOUT SWORDS

The familiar shape of the **katana** is well known. It is virtually the same as the **tachi**, the **no-dachi**, the **wakizashi**, the **tantō**, and the **aiguchi**. In terms of blade, the only difference with any of them is the length; even the width and thickness of the blades are identical. The fittings are quite similar, as well. The aiguchi, being alone of the blades to have no guard (**tsuka**); the name “aiguchi” means “meet-mouth,” as the hilt butts up against the scabbard (**saya**) without the interruption of a guard is the only one that is really different.

**Katana and Tachi**

Swords fall into two categories; the **katana family** and the **tachi** family. In the katana family, which consists of the katana, wakizashi, and tantō, the blade is worn thrust through the waist sash, edge up. The tachi family includes the tachi, the **jindachi**, and the no-dachi. Tachi and jindachi are often construed to be the same things, and indeed there is little difference worth noting. Tachi are worn hanging from the waist sash by a set of cords or chains, with the edge down. The tachi and the katana are about the same size. No-dachi, on the other hand, are longer and heavier, and may have up to an extra **shaku** or more in blade length; they are the equivalent of the two-handed greatswords of medieval Europe, while the tachi (and katana) function more like bastard (hand-and-a-half) swords. Because of their size, the saya (scabbard) of nō-dachi are either carried on the back or simply discarded before combat begins. Tantō and aiguchi are both about 10-inches in blade length.

**Handles**

Handles are wooden, and the vast majority (95 percent or more) are sheathed in ray skin and then over-braided with silk cords, called *tsuka* ito, which provide a grip. Under these cords are inserted two small ornate metal sculptures, called *menuki*, which help the grip. These menuki can be simple or very ornate (and expensive). The exceptional hilts can be simple wood with metal brads, sculpted metal, etc. Most katana also have a silk cord tied around the upper portion of the saya, called a *sageo*. This cord can be used to hang the katana blade-down from armor (the only way to effectively wear a katana while wearing armor, especially while mounted), effectively converting it into a makeshift tachi.

**Daishō**

Katana and wakizashi make up the **daishō** (lit. “long-short”). The daishō are considered by many to be the badge of the samurai and, as such, are decorated the same—same color braid, same lacquer finish on the hilt, and—if possible—same motifs on the sword furniture (hilt cap, guard, hilt pieces, and hilt mouthpiece). The tantō, the unofficial third member of this pair, often matches as well.

**Accessories**

Katana and wakizashi come with a standard saya. Katana can also be bought with small knives (*kozuka* and *kogai*) that slide into a pocket built into the saya (simply add the cost of the kozuka to the cost of the katana). The stats given are for an average quality katana, although sword smiths in Japan are capable of creat-

---

If a person has his katana out all the time, he is habitually swinging a naked blade; people will not approach him and he will have no allies. If a katana is always sheathed, it will become rusty, the blade will dull, and people will think as much of its owner.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo

169
ing master-quality blades which give both increased damage capability and other bonuses (see Quality of Items, page 194), as well as costing more.

On tachi, the scabbards are braided as well, for up to a quarter of their length. The suspension cords are attached to the braided section. Alone of Japanese swords in the Sengoku Period, the tachi have chappes at the end of the scabbard.

Samurai of any rank wear tachi with armor, while only ashigaru and lower-class bushi wear a katana with their armor. These may use a device called a koshitate, which looks like a leather sleeve, into which the katana scabbard is fitted and then hung from the waist sash.

In many cases, a samurai will have several different sets of fittings for his sword to allow him to change with seasons or as occasion may demand. This will allow a set of combat furniture, and something more appropriate to wear at court when attending on his lord. The most common form this takes is to switch a blade from a tachi to a katana.

Kuge wear tachi exclusively; they do not wear katana. The tachi worn by kuge are often very expensively furnished, but the blades may be virtually useless. Kuge also are alone in having tachi they wear for court purposes that are straight, rather than curved. Other than the lack of the curve, they still resemble katana in that they have a single edge, a temper line, and a triangular pointed tip.

Blades

The gentle curve of Japanese swords make them perfect for cutting. There are two types of sword construction. The less expensive has a blade edge of hard, brittle steel encased top and sides by a softer steel folded over it almost to the edge. The more expensive are made by repeated foldings of metal onto itself dozens of times to produce a perfectly tempered blade. The blade is coated in a heat-resistant clay and heated red-hot, then quenched. The clay causes the blade to temper differently at different points, making for a more solid edge and more “flexibility” on the back. This clay is what causes the often ornate hamon (temper lines) on the blades.

While the blade of a tachi and katana may be nearly identical, there is a sure-fire way to tell which the blade was designed for. If the blade was signed by the smith (and many were), the signature on the tang appears on the side that would be worn away from the body. Holding a blade out from one, edge down, the signature on a tachi will be on the right side of the tang; on a katana, it will appear on the left. (A small pin called a mekugi can be pushed out of the hilt, and the sword can be dismantled and the hilt examined.)

Ancient Swords

In ancient Japan, swords were shorter, straight, and double-edged. Called tsurugi, these swords can sometimes be found in shrine and temple storehouses. Many of them were gifts from powerful warriors seeking favors from the gods.

Ninja Swords

The shinobigatana (also known as a ninja-tô, using a different reading of the same kanji characters) is considered the badge of the shinobi, which is why it is hardly ever seen outside of twentieth-century films. A shinobi’s job is deception and stealth; it would do him no good to look like a common bushi walking down the street and carrying the unique weapon of the shinobi. The shinobigatana, if used at all, would only be used at night when the shinobi is in “uniform” and would need the gimmick-laden weapon. Needless to say, carrying it with intent to use would necessitate some method of concealment.

The short, straight shinobigatana has been called a “Swiss Army Sword”—and not without justification. The usual array of gimmicks include:

• a pointed end cap on the scabbard to allow it to be set into the ground and not move;
• the end-cap comes off, making the scabbard a snorkel or blow-pipe;
• the broad, square guard is used as a step to climb (and the sword is then pulled up by a cord);
• two or three shuriken (throwing stars) are incorporated into the guard, which can be released and thrown; and
• the hilt cap comes off, allowing the hollow hilt to be used as a container for poisons or lockpicks.

Note that straight katana blades can be made for concealment within walking staves, etc. Bokken are wooden practice swords which approximate the size and weight of katana or wakizashi.

A person who serves when treated kindly is not a retainer. But one who serves when the master is being heartless and unreasonable is a retainer. You should understand this principle well.

— Nakano Jin’emon
SWORDS AND KNIVES

Aiguchi
The aiguchi is the cousin of the tantô. The handle is typically made of wood (instead of wrapped in ray skin and cord, like the tanto) and the weapon has no hand guard (tsuba). It is otherwise identical to the tanto. Aiguchi are popular among women. Requires the Knives (tantô-jutsu) skill (or Jitte at -3). This weapon may also be thrown using the Throwing (shuriken-jutsu) skill.

Bokken
The bokken is a wooden practice sword. The bokken is made of hard cherry wood, and replicates the weight and balance of a true blade. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill (or Polearms: Staves at -3).

Kamashino-zashi
Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill to use.

Katana
The traditional sword of Sengoku Japan. It consists of a 3-shaku blade with a one and one-half-shaku handle. Katana vary in quality, from poor to master (and on rare occasions even legendary. Even average quality blades are razor sharp and can cut through bamboo in a single strike—if properly performed, that is. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill to us.

Kubi-kiri
A large, curved knife. Requires the Knives (tantô-jutsu) skill.

Nôdachi
The great, two-handed sword. The nôdachi has a 5-shaku-long blade with a 2-shaku-long handle. The saya (scabbard) is generally worn strung across the back or discarded before combat. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill (or Polearms: Glaives at -3).

Ryoba Katana
A double-edged sword with a straight (not curved) blade, of Ryûkyû origin. It’s roots are in the ancient Japanese swords (tsugari). These swords are never of better than average quality. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill.

Tantô
A knife with a 1-shaku-long blade and a small tsuba (handguard). The handle and scabbard are designed as are those for the katana and wakizashi. Requires Knives (tantô-jutsu) skill (or Jitte or Fans at -3). This weapon may also be thrown using the Throwing (shuriken-jutsu) skill.

Shinobigatana
The infamous sword of the shinobi or ninja. These blades are never of other than average quality, though they do feature a number of “gadgets” at no extra cost (see Ninja Swords, above), with the exception of shuriken, which must be purchased separately but can be incorporated into the hand-guard (tsuba). Requires the

Swords (ken-jutsu) skill (or Knives at -2).

Tachi
The tachi is the traditional sword of the kuge and high-ranking buke. The tachi is typically more decorative and elaborate than the katana, and is worn suspended (instead of tucked into the belt). It is otherwise identical in function to the katana. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill.

Wakizashi
The Japanese short sword, and one half of the dai-shô, the mark of the samurai. The wakizashi features a 2-shaku-long blade with a one shaku handle. The saya (scabbard) and handle are designed the same as the katana, and swords making up a dai-shô will be identical in design. Wakizashi are popular among bonge (commoners), especially travelers on the nation’s highways. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill (or Knives at -2). This weapon may also be thrown using the Throwing (shuriken-jutsu) skill.

Yamagatana
Literally “mountain sword,” the yamagatana is a broad-bladed, single edged sword of Ryûkyû origin. This weapon is never of better than average quality and is seldom found outside of the Ryûkyû islands. No self-respecting samurai would carry one, let alone use it. Requires the Swords (ken-jutsu) skill.

...it is the custom in buke families for even the very least of the servants of the samurai never to be without a short sword for a moment. Much more must the higher samurai always wear their dai-shô. And some very punctilious ones wear a blunt sword or a wooden one even when they go to the bath.

— Daidoji Yûzan
POLE ARMS

**Bisentô**

The *bisentô* is a large, glaive-like weapon of Chinese origin. The shaft alone is six *shaku* long, with a two-*shaku*-long blade. It is similar to the *naginata*, but larger and heavier. Requires the Polearms: Glaives skill to use (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

**Bô**

The *bô* is little more than a six-*shaku*-long quarterstaff. It is a commonly used by priests and pilgrims. It resembles a priest’s walking staff, called a *shakujô* or “seven ring staff,” which is tipped with a brass ring, from which hang six other rings, hence the name (treat the *shakujô* as having the same stats as the standard *bô*). The clanging sound the rings make when walking is believed to ward off evil. Requires the Polearms: Staves skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

**Bô-naginata**

The *bô-naginata* is the practice version of the *naginata*. It is made of hardwood and usually encountered only in the *dôjô*.

**Fumata-yari**

A variant of the *yari* (lance). The *fumata-yari* has a forked head, which can deliver a devastating attacks to limbs and necks. It is often used by foot soldiers to dismount cavalry. Requires the Polearms: Lances skill (or any Polearms skill at -1).

**Gusan Jô**

A three-and-one-half-*shaku* wooden stick of Ryûkyû origin. Requires the Polearms: Staves skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

**Hasshaku Bô**

An eight-*shaku*-long wooden staff of Ryûkyû origin. Identical in function to the *bô*. Requires the Polearms: Staves skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

**Hoko**

A variant of the *yari* (lance). The *hoko* is a six-*shaku*-long spear with a hooked blade at the base of the main blade. The *hoko* is primarily used by *ashigaru* as an effective weapon to dismount samurai cavalry. Requires the Polearms: Lances skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

**Jô**

A short, four-*shaku*-long staff. The *jô* was developed in response to the need for a non-bladed defensive art for use against *samurai*. Requires the Polearms: Staves skill (or Swords or any other Polearms skill at -2).

**Kai**

The *kai* is a long, paddle-like wooden oar used primarily for boating in the Ryûkyû islands, but readily adapted for use as a weapon. Requires the Polearms: War Club skill to use (or Swords at -2).

**Kama-yari**

A form of *yari* in which a curving, sickle-like attachment, similar to the blade of the *kama* (see below), is part of the blade. This weapon is the trademark of the Hôzôin ryû and is also popular with *sôhei* (militant Buddhist monks). The *kama-yari* was created by Inei, a monk of the Hôzô temple of the Kegon sect. One night Inei saw a reflection of a crescent moon behind crossing a *yari* in the water of a pond, and the kama-yari was born. Requires Polearms: Lances (or other Polearms skill at -1).

**Kyushaku Bô**

A nine-*shaku*-long wooden staff of Ryûkyû origin. Requires the Polearms: Staves skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

**Makura-yari**

The *makura-yari* is a shorter, lighter variant of the *yari*. The length averages six *shaku* (two *shaku* shorter than the traditional *yari*). Requires the Polearms: Lances skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

**Nagegama**

The *nagegama* is a four- or six-*shaku*-long staff with a *kama* blade on one end, and a *kusari* (chain) on the other. The chain can be concealed within the bottom portion of the semi-hollow staff, and the kama blade is hinged, allowing it to be folded down and into the staff, making the nagegama an inconspicuous but deadly weapon. Unless one knows what he is looking for, it can easily pass for a simple staff. It is popular among *sôhei* and shinobi. Requires both the Kama and Chains skills.

For as the duties of the samurai are practically all fixed, they should consider them when they have nothing to do, and when they meet officers of rank and experience they should cease idle talk and make a point of inquiring from them about matters which they anticipate needing advice.

— Daidôji Yûzan
Nage-yari

Essentially a shortened spear or lance. Requires the Polearms: Lance skill (or any Polearms skill at -1).

Naginata

The naginata, or halberd, consists of a four- or five-shaku-long shaft of wood to which is mounted a blade about the length of a wakizashi blade, but slightly broader and heavier. Unlike the yari, which has a round shaft, the naginata shaft is oval, shaped more like a sword hilt, to enable the user to keep better control over the blade. It is a favored weapon of the sōhei, and the sole weapon taught to most buke women. Many daimyō have roving patrols of women in their estates and castles who wear normal kimono (with the sleeves tied back by cords), who carry naginata to defend the lord. Requires the Polearms: Glaive skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

Rokushaku Bō

A four-shaku-long wooden staff of Ryūkyū (Okinawan) origin. Similar in all respects to the jō. Requires the Polearms: Staff skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2, or Swords at -2).

Sanjaku Jō

A three-shaku-long staff of Ryūkyū origin. Similar in all respects to the jō. Requires the Polearms: Staff skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

Sasumata (Sasumata-yari)

A weapon used primarily by dōshin (police). It features a six-shaku-long (or longer) shaft with a large, forked or “U”-shaped blade on one end and several rows of sharp metal bars around shaft near the blade that could be used to cut and pierce. The weapon is used to control an opponent’s movement more so than to inflict damage. Requires the Polearms: Man-catcher skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

Sodegarami

The sodegarami (“sleeve tangler”) is a device for unhorsing opponents. It takes the form of a long pole with several short spikes or barbs facing in all different directions. The idea is to catch the opponent’s sleeves or dangling cords and drag him from a horse. It can only cause minor damage to unarmored opponents with the bars, but is impressive in subdual (i.e., Stun) damage owing to its size. To use it, one must make two successful rolls: an attack roll, which if successful catches the opponent; a second attack roll to unhorse the opponent (using the Throw maneuver). A failed second roll will pull the man with the sodegarami off balance and he might loose the weapon as well. Requires Polearms: Man-catcher (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

Su-yari

A variant of the yari (lance). The su-yari requires the Polearms: Lance skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

Tan’kon

A short, two-shaku-long wooden stick of Ryūkyū origin. Requires the Atemi-waza skill (or any Polearms skill at -2).

Tanpo-yari

The tanpo-yari is a practice spear with a round wooden or padded head. It is seldom found outside sō-jutsu dōjō (schools of spearmanship). Use of the tanpo-yari requires the Polearms: Lance skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

Tetsubō

A four- or five-shaku-long club, slightly tapered to one end. The tetsubō is octagonal in section rather than round like the smaller bo, and the broad end is often clad in metal splints and large metal studs. It is a slow weapon, but causes severe damage. One can also find much smaller (thinner) versions made entirely of metal, which weigh only slightly more than the wooden one due to their size. Requires the Polearms: War Club skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

Tuja

The tuja is a hunting spear of Ryūkyū (Okinawan) origin. Its use requires the Polearms: Lance skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1).

Yari

The yari, or lance, is the primary weapon of the foot soldier, although many samurai of rank are also proficient in its use. The typical yari has a shaft of eight shaku, to which is attached a blade another shaku in length. Yari intended for battle use are even longer, and different clans actually had specific shaft-lengths that they preferred. The Oda clan use yari that were actually 22-shaku-long. Although the blade is triangular, the concavities allow for the edges to be made quite sharp. The yari is often called a spear, but as spears can be thrown and the yari never is, the word lance is actually a better translation.

In addition to the familiar straight model, there is a variety of blade shapes. There are cruciform blades, L-shaped blades, crescent-shaped blades, etc.

...he who is born brave will think it nothing to go into battle and come under fire from arrows and bullets. Devoted to loyalty and duty, he will make his body a target and press on, presenting by his splendid valor and indescribably fine example to all witnesses.

—Daidōji Yūzan

173
MISSILE WEAPONS

Hankyū
There is a second form of bow, called a hankyū (half-bow), which is about three shaku in length. The hankyū is often carried in the palanquin of a lord as a defensive weapon. Shinobi also make frequent use of the hankyū. Since the advent of the teppō (matchlock), the yumi has become a bit of an anachronism on the battlefield. Hundreds still use them, but the training to make them effective is nothing compared to the simplicity with which ranks of peasants can be trained to use the matchlock.

The hankyū requires the Archery (kyū-jutsu) skill.

Ôdeppō
Ôdeppō (also called hinawa ozutsu) are large matchlock hand-cannon, resembling a mortar. It is made of strong but light wood, and the barrel is wound with iron rings to add strength. They are more effective as wall guns than conventional infantry pieces. Ôdeppō can fire shot, explosive charges (tedan) of varying size, incendiary rockets or arrows. Ôdeppō are even less common than teppō, and are seldom if ever used in sieges against castles (where, ironically, they would do the most good).

Teppō
The teppō (matchlock) is a recent arrival on the military scene in Japan. The first one was introduced in 1542, and they were soon in domestic production. The teppō is also called tanegashima, after the island where the Portuguese first brought them ashore to Japan.

Unlike the bow, the matchlock is weather-sensitive. For this reason, gunsmiths created a box-like device which covers the lock area to keep out precipitation. The actual match may be several notes small, hand held “javelin.” It is not a common weapon, but it can be used at short and medium range. It may be used with the Knife or Throwing skills.

Uchine
A small, hand held “javelin.” It is not a common weapon, but it can be used at short and medium range. It may be used with the Knife or Throwing skills.

During archery practice, the arrows must never fall toward the place where his lord is. When he puts down his yari or naginata their points must never be in that direction either.

— Daidoji Yūzan
MISCELLANEOUS WEAPONS

**Chijiriki**

A *chijiriki* is a variant of the *yari* (lance), having a weighted chain attached to the butt end of the weapon. It may be used with the Polearms: Lances skill, for the bladed end, while the chain end requires the Chains (*kusari-jutsu*) skill. The chijiriki is a Long-range weapon; it allows the use of the Entangle and Grab maneuvers with the chain, as per the Chain skill. Requires the Polearms: Lance skill to use the bladed end (or any Polearms skill, at -1), and the Chains skill to use the other.

**Daijo**

The *daijo* is a flail weapon developed in Ryūkyū. It features two two-shaku-long wooden connected by a long, three shaku length of rope. It is similar to the nunchaku but with a longer connecting cord. Requires the Flails (*nunchaku-te*) skill.

**Feruzue**

A weapon of Ryūkyū origin, similar to the *chijiriki*. A *feruzue* is a five-shaku-long staff with a length of chain (usually four shaku) attached to one end. Requires the Polearms: Staff and Chain (*kusari-jutsu*) skills. Any other Polearms skill may be used at -1 for the staff portion; characters without the Chains skill are unable to use the chain end.

**Fuetsu**

A *fuetsu* is a simple hand ax, also known among commoners as a *yamagatana* (“mountain blade”; not the same as the sword of Ryūkyū origin) because of its use by woodcutters to chop down trees. While not intended as a combat weapon, it is effective against armored and unarmored foes. It is lighter and quicker than a *masakari*, due to its smaller size. Requires the Axes (*ōno-jutsu*) skill (or Kama at -1).

**Furibō**

A *furibō* is a large, heavy club. It is sometimes used as a training weapon by *ken-jutsu* schools, but is an effective weapon in its own right, delivering bashing Stun damage. Requires the Polearms: War Clubs skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

**Gunbai**

Most gunbai (flat/war fans) are just signaling tools for generals, but some are made of metal and can pack quite a wallop. These are usually defensive, but can cause Stun damage. Requires the Fans (*tessenjutsu*) skill.

**Hachiwara**

The *hachiwara*, or “helmet splitter,” is a variant of the jitte, with a slightly longer, curved baton and a sharpened hook in place of the rounded tine near the handle. The hachiwara is used with the Jitte skill (or Knives at -2).

**Jitte**

The *jitte* is a steel truncheon as big around as a man’s thumb and about one and a half shaku in length. A length of braid wrapped about the base forms a handgrip, and immediately above the grip a single, short blade-catching extension juts out. This is the principle weapon of the *dōshin*, who use it to defend themselves against sword blows and to knock their opponents senseless. Users with the Jitte skill may perform a Disarm maneuver against opponents wielding a bladed weapon. Although it is intended to be a disabling weapon, as with any blunt object its use can be fatal. Some users are also skilled in breaking sword blades with the jitte (may be bought as an *okuden*).

**Kama**

The *kama* is a weapon based on an agricultural implement. It consists of a one-shaku-long haft with a scythe-shaped blade emerging from its head. The kama is a typical weapon of the peasantry, while a *kusarigama* is more likely the weapon of a shinobi.

**Kawa-naga**

A rope (usually made of hemp, silk or hair) weighted on one end by a piece of iron. The *kawa-naga* is often used by shinobi to aid them in climbing trees and walls (+2 to Climbing rolls, when appropriate). The weighted end can also be used to strike an opponent or to grab objects (by hurling the weighted end around it, like a whip). Requires the Chains (*kusari-jutsu*) skill.

**Kiseru**

Although this looks like a smoking pipe, its two-shaku-length makes it more obviously a weapon. Well, that and the fact that it is nice and heavy. Like other kiseru, the central stem is bamboo or other wood and the mouthpiece and smoke chamber are a different material; In this case, heavy metal. Some kiseru can be found which are entirely made of metal. It is designed as a disabling weapon. It has the advantage that it can be construed to be a real pipe (and is functional), allowing it to be concealed. It is particularly popular with *bonge*, and a new martial art—*kiseru-jutsu*—has come into being. Requires the Pipe (*kiseru-jutsu*) skill to use (or Swords at -2, or Axes or Kama at -1).

**Kogai**

The *kogai* is a small decorative steel blade or pin, which is kept in the *wakizashi saya* (short sword sheath). The kogai is not an effective weapon. The kogai may be used by *samurai* to mark their slain foes on the battlefield, as the kogai typically bears the samurai’s clan *mon* (crest), thus indicating who is responsible for the kill. It can also be used to announce a blood feud in a like manner. It can also be thrown using the Throwing (*shuriken-jutsu*) skill. Some kogai are actually split, enabling the owner to use them as chopsticks. These metal chopsticks are called *waribashi*; they cost the same as kogai, but may not be thrown as weapons.

**Kozuka**

The *kozuka* is a small steel knife (similar to but slightly larger than the *kogai*) which is kept in the *katana saya*. The kozuka has many uses as a utility knife. It is typically used by *samurai* to carry the heads of a slain foe after a battle, thrust through the victim’s top-knot so as to allow the samurai to carry the trophy without themselves being soiled. It may also be thrown.

---

A samurai in service may well have among his acquaintances or comrades one with whom, for some reason, he does not wish to associate. But if he is ordered by his lord to serve with such a one...they are to agree to work together cordially in their official duties.

— Daidōji Yūzan
Kubikiri

A kubikiri is a 1-shaku (16") curved knife. Its primary use is by samurai to cut the head off of a slain enemy in battle. Requires use of the Knives skill (or Swords skill at -1).

Kusarigama

The kusarigama is a kama joined to a length of thin chain that is attached to the butt of the handle. The chain is 9 to 12 feet (3 to 4 ken) long, with a small weight attached to the end. Users with the Chains (kusari-jutsu) skill can perform Grab and Entangle maneuvers with the chain portion of this weapon. The user attempts to bind his opponent’s weapon or arms by whirling the chain and flinging it, thereby enabling him to draw the opponent into range and finish him off with the blade. Some versions store the chain inside the handle (add 50 percent to the cost), which can be drawn out of the bottom, often to the opponent’s surprise. No self-respecting samurai would be caught dead with one. Requires both the Kama (kama-jutsu) skill (or Axes at -1), to use the bladed portion, and Chains (kusari-jutsu) to use the chain portion.

Kuwa

The kuwa is a broad-bladed, agricultural hoe, usually found in the hands of farmers. It can be used as a weapon of adequate capability, however. Requires the Kama skill (or Axe at -1).

Kyōtetsu-shoge

No one but shinobi use these strange weapons. It is a short dagger blade fused to a downward-curving hook, the hilt of which is attached to a long (12 foot, or four ken) thin rope or cord made of hair, ending in a four-inch-diameter ring. It can be used similar to the kusarigama, and the ring may be used to aid a shinobi in climbing (+2 to Climbing skill, when appropriate; GM’s discretion).

It should be noted that the mere possession of one of these weapons is very suspect, indeed, as the weapon is used exclusively by shinobi. Requires the Chains (kusari-jutsu) and Knives (tanto-jutsu) skills to use. The bladed portion may also be used with the Kama skill at -1.

Manji-no-sai

A weapon of Ryūkyū origin, the manji-no-sai is similar to the sai, except that one of the two shorter tines curves downward (i.e., back toward the user’s hand). The manji-no-sai allows a Disarm maneuver against bladed weapons. Requires the Jitte (jitte-jutsu) skill (or Knives at -2).

Manrikigusari

This simple weapon is a chain of indeterminate length (commonly 3 shaku) with a weight at either end. It is quite easily concealed. Requires the Chains (kusari-jutsu) skill.

Masakari

A battle-ax with a short, narrow blade on a two-shaku-long haft; occasionally augmented with a head spike. Requires the Axes (masakari-jutsu) skill (or Kama at -2).

Nagamaki

The nagamaki is a rare weapon, which, for all intents and purposes, is a three-shaku-long katana blade mounted to a three-shaku-long, braided hilt; it is neither a pole arm nor a sword, but something in between. Requires the Polearms: Glaives (naginata-jutsu) skill (or Swords or any other Polearms skill at -2).

Nekode/Tekagi

The nekode is a used as both a weapon and a tool by shinobi. It consists of a strap around the palm of the hands and the wrists. On the palm strap are several iron spikes curved slightly downward. The word nekode means “tiger-claws” and the appellation is apt. The wounds they inflict are fierce. Few, if any, samurai would think of using them. Metal nekode can even be used to parry blows from bladed weapons. Ashika are a form of nekode made to be worn on the feet to aid in climbing (+1 to Climbing skill). Requires Atemi-waza (or any unarmed bugei at -1).

Nunchaku

A weapon of Ryūkyū origin, the nunchaku is two one to one-and-one-half-shaku-long pieces of wood connected by a short rope or length of chain. In the hands of a skilled user, nunchaku can be
spun at incredible speeds and cause serious damage to an opponent. Nunchaku can also be used to block attacks from bladed weapons. Requires the Flails (nunchaku-te) skill.

**Ôgama**

The ôgama is a huge, two-handed battle version of the kama. The weapon consists of a large 2-shaku blade affixed the the end of a six-shaku shaft. Requires the Kama (kama-jutsu) skill (or Polearms: Glaives at -2).

**Ôno**

The ôno is a large-, heavy-bladed ax with a long handle. It is much heavier than the masakari. It can only be used for blade strikes (no butt-strikes) but because of its mass causes impressive damage. Due to its size, it is a slow weapon. The ôno is sometimes seen in use by samurai on the battlefield. It is also a favored weapon of many yamabushi (shugenja). Requires the Axes (ôno-jutsu) skill (or Polearms: Glaives at -2).

**Rokushaku Kama**

This Ryûkyû weapon is similar to the kama, except that the blade is affixed to a six-shaku shaft. It is similar to the nagegama, but lacks the chain found on the nagegama. Requires the Kama (kama-jutsu) skill (or any other Polearms skill at -2).

**Sai**

The sai is similar in design and function to the jitte, except that it has two curved tines. The sai originated in Ryûkyû. Allows characters with the Jitte skill to perform the Disarm maneuver against bladed weapons. Requires the Jitte (jitte-jutsu) skill (or Knives at -3).

**Sanbon Nunchaku**

A three-section staff of Ryûkyû origin, consisting of three separate two-shaku-long staves connected with rope or chain. This weapon was originally introduced to Ryûkyû from China. Requires the Flails (nunchaku-te) skill.

**Shinobizue**

The shinobizue is a five or six-shaku bô (staff) with one end hollowed out to conceal a short yari blade. The blade can be extended out of the end of the staff with a turn of the wrist, turning the seemingly innocent walking staff into a deadly yari in the blink of an eye. Requires the Polearms: Lances skill when the blade is extended (or any other Polearms skill, at -1), and the Polearms: Staves skill (or any other Polearms skill at -1) when the blade is concealed.

**Tedan**

An explosive charge fired from a teppô. Requires the Firearms skill.

**Tekko**

This weapon is a metal (or sometimes wooden) knuckle-duster, consisting of a semi-sircular grip, from which several metal studs protrude. Like the nekode, this weapon allows the user to perform block maneuvers against bladed weapons. One of the three Masters of Death in the Lone Wolf and Cub films uses tekko. Requires the Atemi-waza skill (or any unarmed bugei, at -1).

**Tessen**

The tessen (fighting fan) is made of stiff, painted paper like all other Japanese fans, but instead of wood, the spines are metal. It is primarily a defensive weapon, but it can cause bludgeoning damage. Requires the Fans (tessen-jutsu) skill (or Knives at -3).

**Tinbei**

The tinbei is a short, javelin-like weapon with a one-shaku-long shaft to which is attached a short blade. This weapon was developed in Ryûkyû, and is very similar in function and design to the Japanese uchi-ke. Requires the Knives (tantô-jutsu) skill.

**Toami**

A toami is essentially a weighted fishing net. It does no damage, but can be used to ensnare an enemy (Entangle maneuver) as well as objects (with the Grab maneuver). It is a Long-ranged weapon when used in melee combat, but may also be thrown. Unlike most hurled weapons, the thrower uses the Nets (toami-jutsu) skill, rather than the Throwing skill, which is for balanced, usually bladed weapons. When an opponent is entangled, treat the toami as having 4 KD and 6 Hits. When entangled, only short-ranged weapons may be used, and are at a -3 AV. Requires the Net (toami-jutsu) skill.

**Uchibo**

This Ryûkyû weapon consists of two staves, one longer than the other, connected by a short length of rope or chain. One staff is generally one shaku in length, with the other being two and sometimes three shaku long. Requires the Flails (nunchaku-te) skill.

**Uchine**

A small, hand held “javelin.” It is not a common weapon, but it can be used at short and medium range. It may be used with the Knife (tantô-jutsu) or Throwing (shuriken-jutsu) skills.

---

A person’s character and depth of mind may be seen by his behavior. Thus, one should understand that even the fences and walls have eyes, and not become negligent even when alone.

— Shiba Yoshimasa

177
**EQUIPMENT LIST**

The following is a comprehensive list of items available in Sengoku Japan. GMs have the final say over whether or not items are available in their campaign or in a given area.

### Animals & Livestock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birds:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falcon (taka), trained</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>songbird</td>
<td>40z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carp (koi)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dog (inu):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>standard domestic dog</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guard dog, trained (banken)</td>
<td>4b</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse (uma):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riding</td>
<td>6b</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work (ten-ma)</td>
<td>4b</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feed, horse or ox:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 day’s worth</td>
<td>8z</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 week’s worth (10 days)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 month’s worth</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insects:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beetle, large</td>
<td>2z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fireflies</td>
<td>1z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cricket, fighting or “lucky”</td>
<td>1z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Livestock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow (ushi)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riding gear:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saddle</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tack and bridle (tazuna)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Arms & Armor Care

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Armorer:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armorer’s kit (required for skill use)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armorer’s workshop (+3 to skill roll)</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bows &amp; Arrows:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrow stand (yadate)</td>
<td>8m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowstring (tsuru)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowstring holder (tsuru-maki)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowyer’s kit (required for skill use)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowyer’s workshop (+3 to skill roll)</td>
<td>5b</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiver, decorative (heikoroku)</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiver, 12 arrow (yadate)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clove oil, for blades (chôji)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guard (tsuba)</td>
<td>100z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hilt-wrapping cord (tsuka ito)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper (10 sheets)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polishing chalk (nagura toshi)</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polishing stone (awase toshi)</td>
<td>8z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scabbard (saya)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scabbard cord (sageo)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword bag (katana-bukuro)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sword case (katana-zutsu)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword cleaning kit, complete</td>
<td>50z</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword rack (katana-kake)</td>
<td>18m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Targets:

- Archery target, round (mato) | 1m | 4 |
- Deer target (kusajishi) | 5m | 6 |

### Artistic, Medical & Religious Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Books</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-10b</td>
<td>.1-.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brushes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush case (fudemaki)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush rest (fudeoki)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush stand</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing (fude)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painting (fude)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calligraphy set</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charcoal (tadon), 30 pieces</td>
<td>2z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diviner’s scrolls (I-Ching)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gongs (shō) and bells:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bell, large bronze (dōtaku)</td>
<td>5b</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meditation</td>
<td>12m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incense:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense, ceremonial (1 oz.)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense, kneaded (1 oz.)</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense powder (1 oz)</td>
<td>3z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense sticks (joss), bundle of 37</td>
<td>3z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incense ceremony:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ash powder, white</td>
<td>1z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense ceremony (kōdō) bowl</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense ceremony (kōdō) utensils</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense pot (kōro)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ink:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ink pot</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ink stick (enough for 50 sheets)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ink stone (suzuri)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Make-up kit (+3 Disguise)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medicine &amp; Drugs (yakuzai):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandages (inrô tenugui)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drugs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herds, per unit</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first aid pouch (inrô)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physician’s kit</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paint (sumi-e) set</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paper (waishi):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plain, 15 cm x 25 cm</td>
<td>1z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poem paper, 6 cm x 36 cm (tanzaku)</td>
<td>2z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinō paper, folded (kami-shide), ea</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious name tape (senja-fuda)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff, Buddhist priest’s (shakajō)</td>
<td>100z</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea ceremony (Cha-no-yū):</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea powder</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea ceremony utensils</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching scroll (norimono)</td>
<td>Var</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Votive plaque (ema)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water dropper</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood block print (ukiyo-e; Edo era)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**In this uncertain world, ours should be the path of discipline.**

— Shiba Yoshimasa
## Clothing (Irui)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Belt/sash (obi):</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>men’s</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>women’s, plain</td>
<td>40z</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>women’s, fancy/dec</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buke garb:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court vest, samurai (kataginu)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falconry attire, buke (kari-shôzoku)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officer’s vest (jinbaori)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Firefighter’s garb:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hood (zukin)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket (hanten)</td>
<td>15m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Footwear:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boots, fur (kegetsu)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clogs (geta)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandals (waraji)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow shoes (kanjiki)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socks, slippers (tabi)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Headgear:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat, paper (eboshi)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat, straw (kasa)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headband (hachi-maki)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuge court cap (kanmuri)</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jacket (haori):</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloth</td>
<td>40z</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silk</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kimono:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normal</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer kimono (yukata)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under-kimono (hadajuban)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over-kimono, woman’s (uchikake)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kuge garb:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court over-robe, semi-formal (kariginu)</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court over-robe, formal (sokutai)</td>
<td>6b</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robe, informal (suikan)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miscellaneous:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apron, cloth (deonburi)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves, tanned skin (yuugake)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loincloth (fundoshi)</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeve-tying cord (tasuke)</td>
<td>12z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No costume:</strong></td>
<td>40b+</td>
<td>5+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Overgarments:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raincoat, paper (mino)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raincoat, straw (mino)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Priest’s garb:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhist</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinō</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamabushi / shugenja</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shinobi garb (shinobi shojoku):</strong></td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trousers:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonge-style (kobakama)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buke, cloth (hakama)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buke, silk (hakama)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Umbrella (waqasu):</strong></td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Cooking & Kitchen Instruments (Chori daidoroko yohin)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bowls, Plates and Utensils:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowl, noodle, large (donburi)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Cooking & Food Preparation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bowl, rice (meshiwan)</td>
<td>4z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowl, soup (shiruwan)</td>
<td>6z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chopsticks, wood (hashi)</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup, sake (sakazuki or choki)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup, tea (chawan)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sake flask (tokkuri), holds .18 liters</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sake set: 2 cups and flask (sakamasu)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small plate (nozoku)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tub, rice-serving, cedar (ohitsu)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Cooking ware

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grater (oroshi)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kettle (tetsu-bin)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortar, clay, w/wood pestle (suribachi)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pickling jar, ceramic (kame)</td>
<td>40z</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pickling tub, wood (tsukedaru)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pot, cast-iron (tetsu-nabe)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pot, rice-cooking (kama)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pot, sake (shuki)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rolling pin, 3 shaku (nobebo)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spatula, wood (meshibera)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steaming basket (seiro)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>washing basket, vegetable (zaru)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Foodstuffs (Shokumotsu)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>European wine, flask (.18l/6oz.)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European wine, barrel (1 to/9.5 gal.)</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit liqour (kajitsushu), flask (.18l/6oz.)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit liqour, barrel (1 to/9.5 gal.)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plum brandy, flask (.18l/6oz.)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

...a samurai who dislikes battle and who has not put his heart in the right place, even though he has not been born into a samurai clan, should not be reckoned among one’s retainers.

— Imagawa Sadayo
plum brandy, barrel (1 to/9.5 gal.) | 5m | 25
sake, flask (.18l/6oz.) | 10z | .2
sake, barrel (1 to/9.5 gal.) | 2m | 25
sake, shrimp (omiki), flask (.18l/6oz.) | 15m | .2

Fruit (kadamonoo):
grapes, bunch | 10z | .2
mountain grapes (yamabudo), bunch | 8z | .2
orange, Mandarin | 3z | .1
pear | 5z | .1
plum (ume) | 3z | .1
plum, pickled, dried (umeboshi) | 5z | .1
plum, pickled, in juice (umezuke) | 4z | .1
watermelon (suika) | 10z | 2

Grains:
barley/millet (ōmugi), bowl | 1z | .1
corn (kibi), basket | 1m | 10
dumpling w/bread paste (dango) | 3z | .2
gruel, multi-grain (gokoku) | 1z | .1
rice bale, 5 bushels (koku) | 1b | 45
rice, seaweed wrapped (makizushi), 3 | 2z | —
rice, bowl | 2z | .1
rice, bowl, with toppings (donburi) | 2z | .2
rice, bowl, with bamboo & fish (tosanii) | 4z | .2
rice cake (mochi) | 1z | .1
rice ball (onagiri) | 1z | .1
rice ball, wrapped in leaf (sasamaki) | 2z | .1
rice-flour dumpling (dango) | 1z | .1
rice husks (nuka) | 1z | .2
sweet rice-flour pastry (wagashi) | 4z | .1
white/hulled rice (gohan), bowl | 3z | .1

Seafood (gyokai rui):
abalone (avabi) | 5z | .2
dried fish (kanbutsu), 4 servings | 3z | .2
eel (unagi) | 5z | .2
fish, raw (sashimi), each | 1z | .1
jellyfish (kurage) | 25z | .5
kelp (kombu), dried | 3z | .1
lobster (ise-ebi) | 20z | 4
seaweed, dried sheet (norì) | 1z | —
sea urchin (tako), small | 10z | 2
shrimp (ebi), 15 | 15z | .2
squid, small (ika) | 10z | 1

Soups & Noodles:
boiled vegetables/stew (nimono), bowl | 3z | .3
soybean paste soup (miso-shiru) | 1z | .1
noodles, thick buckwheat (soba), bowl | 2z | .1
noodles, thick wheat, in broth (udon) | 3z | .3
noodles, thin wheat (somen), bowl | 1z | .2
seafood soup (suimono) | 1z | .1

Spices (chomōrō) & Miscellaneous:
chestnuts (kuri) | 5z | .5
green horseradish paste (wasabi-oroshi) | 4z | .1
herbs, various | 2z | .1
honey, wild (hachimitsu), flak ( .18l) | 15z | .2
maple syrup, flak ( .18l) | 20z | .2
miso ball, dried (mizodama) | 2z | .1
mustard, Chinese hot (karashi) | 20z | .1
oil, nutmeg (kaya abura), flak ( .18l) | 25z | .3
oil, peanut (rakkasai abura), flak ( .18l) | 20z | .3
oil, sesame (goma abura), flak ( .18l) | 30z | .3

music & entertainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pepper, Chinese (kosho)</td>
<td>15z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perilla (shiso)</td>
<td>4z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pickled fish juice (shottsu), .18l</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soybean curd (tofu)</td>
<td>10z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soy sauce (shoya), flak (.18l/6oz.)</td>
<td>5z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soy sauce (shoya), barrel (1 to/9.5 gal.)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar rock candy, European</td>
<td>25z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet bean paste (anko)</td>
<td>2z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

tea (cha):
green tea (o-cha), cup | 1z | .1
tea leaves (for 20 cups) | 5z | .1
tea powder, for Cha-no-yu (matcha) | 10z | .1

vegetables (wayasai):
bamboo shoots (takenoko) | 2z | .1 |
beans, dried (mame) | 5z | .5 |
butterbulbs (fuki) | 2z | .2 |
cabbage, head | 5z | .2 |
cucumber (kyuri) | 2z | .1 |
eggplant (nasu) | 2z | .1 |
mushrooms (kinoko) | 5z | .2 |
onion (negi) | 2z | .1 |
pickled vegetables (tsukemono) | 1z | .1 |
potato (imo rui) | 2z | .1 |
pumpkin (kabocha) | 5z | 1 |
radish, large (daikon) | 1z | .2 |
radish leaves, dried (hoshina) | 2z | .2 |
snow peas (kinusaya), bunch | 5z | .2 |
sweet potato (satsuma) | 4z | .2 |
sweet potato, mashed (kinton), bowl | 2z | .1

furniture (kağû) & household items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sword stand (chado-kake)</td>
<td>5m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword stand (katana-kake)</td>
<td>3m</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

music & entertainment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small (sho-daikô)</td>
<td>4k</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium (taidô)</td>
<td>20k</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large (ô-daikô)</td>
<td>50k</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If one thinks that because he has the resources he can dress in fancy attire, the lower ranks of samurai will feel it difficult to appear in a place where such showy costumes are congregated, will feel illness and put in no appearance for a year; and if they will not come for two years, the number of men serving the [clan] will decline.

— Asakura Toshikage
Flutes:
- bamboo (shakuhachi) 3m .1
- flute bag 12z .1
- small (fue) 2m .2

Games:
- Go set (board, pieces & cups) 4m 1
- game paddle (hagoita) 1m .2
- Shogi set (board, pieces & cups) 2m 1
- shuttlecock (hane) 10z —

Stringed Instruments:
- biwa 20m 2
- koto 40m 1
- Hichiriki 10m .1
- Shô 10m .5

Personal Effects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fans:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat fan (uchiwa)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folding fan (ogi)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signaling baton (saihai)</td>
<td>15z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signalling fan (gunbai)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Handkerchief:
- plain (yo-bukuro)          | 2z   | —  |
- fancy/decorative (fukusa)  | 10z  | —  |

Money purse (uchi-bukuro)   | 10z  | —  |

Netsuke (decorative pin/bauble) | 20z | .1 |

Pipes (kiseru):
- bamboo, large               | 1m   | .2 |
- bamboo, small               | 20z  | .1 |
- metal, large                | 2m   | 1  |
- metal, small                | 50z  | .5 |

Sachet, perfumed (tagasode) | 10z  | —  |

Seal stone (hanko)          | 2m   | —  |

Tobacco (tobako), 5 smokes’ worth | 1m | .1 |

Tobacco pouch (tobako-ire)  | 1m   | .1 |

Towel (tenugui)             | 10z  | .1 |

Wood chip heater            | 20z  | 1  |

Wooden clappers (hyōshigi)  | 10z  | .5 |

Wrapping cloth (furōshiki)  | 6z   | .1 |

Tools (Dōgū)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abacus (soroban)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer’s kit (required for skill use)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer’s workshop (+3 Armorer)</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer’s kit (req’d for skill use)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer’s shop (+3 to skill roll)</td>
<td>5b</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket, wood (oke)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digging/garden tools:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoe (kuwa)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rake (manno)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spade (suki)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lockpick kit (illegal; +2 Lockpicking)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saws:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small saw (nokogiri)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-man (oga)</td>
<td>6m</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Craft tools (required for skill use) | 2b  | 2  |

Transportation (Yu)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abacus (soroban)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer’s kit (required for skill use)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer’s workshop (+3 Armorer)</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer’s kit (req’d for skill use)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer’s shop (+3 to skill roll)</td>
<td>5b</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket, wood (oke)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fans:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat fan (uchiwa)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folding fan (ogi)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signaling baton (saihai)</td>
<td>15z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signalling fan (gunbai)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Handkerchief:
- plain (yo-bukuro)          | 2z   | —  |
- fancy/decorative (fukusa)  | 10z  | —  |

Money purse (uchi-bukuro)   | 10z  | —  |

Netsuke (decorative pin/bauble) | 20z | .1 |

Pipes (kiseru):
- bamboo, large               | 1m   | .2 |
- bamboo, small               | 20z  | .1 |
- metal, large                | 2m   | 1  |
- metal, small                | 50z  | .5 |

Sachet, perfumed (tagasode) | 10z  | —  |

Seal stone (hanko)          | 2m   | —  |

Tobacco (tobako), 5 smokes’ worth | 1m | .1 |

Tobacco pouch (tobako-ire)  | 1m   | .1 |

Towel (tenugui)             | 10z  | .1 |

Wood chip heater            | 20z  | 1  |

Wooden clappers (hyōshigi)  | 10z  | .5 |

Wrapping cloth (furōshiki)  | 6z   | .1 |

Traveling (Ryokō) & Survival (Ryoshoku) Items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abacus (soroban)</td>
<td>4m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer’s kit (required for skill use)</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer’s workshop (+3 Armorer)</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer’s kit (req’d for skill use)</td>
<td>10m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowyer’s shop (+3 to skill roll)</td>
<td>5b</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket, wood (oke)</td>
<td>2m</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Wt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fans:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat fan (uchiwa)</td>
<td>20z</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folding fan (ogi)</td>
<td>1m</td>
<td>.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signaling baton (saihai)</td>
<td>15z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signalling fan (gunbai)</td>
<td>30z</td>
<td>.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Handkerchief:
- plain (yo-bukuro)          | 2z   | —  |
- fancy/decorative (fukusa)  | 10z  | —  |

Money purse (uchi-bukuro)   | 10z  | —  |

Netsuke (decorative pin/bauble) | 20z | .1 |

Pipes (kiseru):
- bamboo, large               | 1m   | .2 |
- bamboo, small               | 20z  | .1 |
- metal, large                | 2m   | 1  |
- metal, small                | 50z  | .5 |

Sachet, perfumed (tagasode) | 10z  | —  |

Seal stone (hanko)          | 2m   | —  |

Tobacco (tobako), 5 smokes’ worth | 1m | .1 |

Tobacco pouch (tobako-ire)  | 1m   | .1 |

Towel (tenugui)             | 10z  | .1 |

Wood chip heater            | 20z  | 1  |

Wooden clappers (hyōshigi)  | 10z  | .5 |

Wrapping cloth (furōshiki)  | 6z   | .1 |

In the morning, rise as early as possible. Rising late, one will be negligent as a servant and a hindrance to both the master’s and one’s own business, and in the end one will be forsaken by the master.

— Hojo Nagauji
Livestock:

Animals and Livestock

Birds: Birds are a favorite pet among cultured people of Japan. The two most common types of birds owned are falcons (taka) and songbirds. Falcons are trained for hunting and popular among buke, who use them in a ritualistic hunting pastime, called tori-oi. It takes about six months to properly train a falcon, and requires the Animal Handler skill, with the specialty Falcons. Songbirds are kept in small cages and valued for their beautiful songs and the luck they are believed to bring to their owners. Songbirds can be found in homes of affluent bonge, especially scholars and merchants.

Carp: Carp (koi) come in a variety of sizes, and can grow as large as one shaku in length. Some varieties of carp (those of a golden orange in color or mixture of orange and silver or black) are kept in decorative ponds. Koi are the subject of many pieces of art, as well as tattoos (among lower-class gamblers, that is).

Dog: The Japanese dogs (inu) comes in several varieties. The two most common are the domestic Akita and the Shizu. Akitas are most often found as pets among the bonge, due to their excellent temperament and loyalty to their masters. Akitas are more common in the North, and are quite common on the northern island of Hokkaido. Shizu are commonly trained as guard dogs (banken). They are also extremely loyal to their masters, and have been known to pine for their masters when they die. Trained guard dogs will obey a limited number of commands, including “attack,” “watch,” “seek,” “sit,” “down,” and so on. It takes four to six months to adequately train a guard dog, and requires the Animal Handler skill with the specialty Dogs.

Horse: The Japanese horse (uma) differs from its European cousin in that it is shorter and stockier. Japanese horses are very hearty and valued for their hard-working nature. Farmers and merchants may own or use work horses (ten-ma), but only as pack or draft animals; they may not be ridden. Riding horses are used by the buke (warrior) class as mounts for cavalry, scouts and officers (including daimyō). Horses are trained for basic riding and use; highly-trained horses, which can attack, are rare.

Feed: Feed for horses and other livestock consists primarily of straw and grasses, and may include various grains. Feed is very expensive for the average person, making it next to impossible for someone to maintain a horse or ox even if they could afford to buy one. Most bonge owners of livestock grow their own feed. Buke may purchase feed from the farmers or, during wartime, simply take what they need from the commoners in whatever area they happen to be passing through or encamped in.

Insects: Insects are a curiosity and plaything to many. They may be kept as pets, used in fighting contests in which people wager on the outcome, or for other, more creative uses. Beetles, fireflies, crickets and even praying mantises can be purchased or found in the wild.

Livestock: Livestock, including cows (ushi), are used as draft animals in Japan. They are seldom, if ever, raised for slaughter, because of the Buddhist teachings against eating meat which are prevalent in Japanese society. Livestock are expensive to maintain, and are therefore owned mainly by farmers who can grow their own feed or allow the animals to graze in their fields.

Arms & Armor Care

Armorier’s kit: A small set of tools required for effective use of the Armoring skill (gosoku-tsukuri) to make repairs; does not allow the user to create armor. Use of the skill without this kit is at -3. Allows minor repairs of armor in the field, up to the user’s SL in DEF. More extensive repairs require the Armorer’s shop (below).

Armorier’s workshop: Allows for extensive repairs of armor, at +3 to skill roll.

Arrow stand: A wooden stand for holding arrows (yadate). Can also be used to hold a full quiver. It is most often found in military camps.

Bowstring: The bowstring (tsuru) for the yumi or hankyū. Strings for the two types of bows are not interchangeable.

Bowstring holder: Tsuru-maki, a circular device, about 4 sun in diameter, made of lacquered wood or ceramic, to hold an extra bow string (tsuru) in case the one in use breaks or frays.

Bowyer’s kit: A small set of tools required for effective use of the Bowyer skill (yumi-shi) to make repairs to bows and to create arrows (ya); does not allow one to create new bows. Use of the...
skill without this kit is at -3. Allows minor repairs of bows in the field, repairing up to the user’s SL in Hits/SDP. More extensive repairs or the creation of new bows requires the bowyer’s workshop (see below).

**Bowyer’s workshop:** Allows extensive repairs of bows (yumi and hanki), and creation of new bows, at +3 to the skill roll.

**Clove oil:** Chōji, a special oil used for the maintenance of blades, primarily swords. The oil prevents the blade from rusting. Chōji is also included in the sword cleaning kit (below).

**Hand guard:** A hand-guard (tsuba) for a katana, wakizashi or tantō. Tsuba can be of simple, Spartan design or intricate works of art. A tsuba for a certain type of weapon is interchangeable with all other like weapons (i.e., katana tsuba can be used on any katana or wakizashi, but not on tantō).

**Hilt-wrapping cord:** Tsuka ito, a silk cord used to wrap the outside of a weapon’s handle (typically swords and tantō).

**Paper:** Rice paper used to wipe away grime and dirt from blades, and to wipe off excess powder after cleaning and oiling the blade. Each sheet is 15 cm x 25 cm (6” x 10”). Several sheets are included in the sword cleaning kit (below).

**Polishing chalk:** Nagura toishi, a special chalk powder used to absorb excess oil (chōji) from and polish blades. It is applied with an applicator (uchiko), a small stick to which is attached a cloth sack containing the chalk, which is included. Polishing chalk and an uchiko are included in the sword cleaning kit.

**Polishing stone:** Awase toshi, a smooth block of stone used with polishing chalk to polish sword and knife blades. Sword polishing, a refined art form, can be accomplished by anyone, but the results are mediocre, at best. For a highly polished blade, one must go to a professional sword polisher.

**Quivers:** Japanese quivers are open-type, unlike the enclosed, European style. Decorative quivers (heikoroku), used primarily by buke, look like small chairs. Standard quivers (yadate), are used by bushi, and hold 12 arrows. Yadate are worn low on the back and at a slight angle.

**Scabbard cord:** Sageo, a silk cord tied around the scabbard (saya) of katana. The sageo can be used to hang the katana, tachi-style, from armor. It has other uses, as well, to the cunning bushi (or shinobi).

**Sword bag:** Katana-bukuro, a long silk bag with tassled cord (fusahimo), for storing a katana when not in use (i.e., being worn). May also be used to store a bokken, wakizashi or tantō.

**Sword case:** Katana-zutsu, a lacquered wood box for storing a katana, wakizashi or both.

**Sword cleaning kit:** Care and maintenance of swords is critical if they are to retain their condition. The sword kit includes a small container of clove oil (chōji), five sheets of paper, polishing chalk (nagura toishi) and applicator (uchiko), and a small iron hammer (mekugi, used to disassemble a sword), stored in a small wooden box.

**Sword rack:** Katana-kake, a wooden display and storage rack for a dai-shō (katana and wakizashi). The weapons rest horizontally in the rack. Some versions also provide space for a matching tantō. A variant, designed to hold a tachi (called a tachi-kake) vertically, on end (resting on the pommel), may also be purchased for the same price.

**Targets:** Targets are used for archery (kōji-jutsu) practice. They are made of bound straw, with circles painted on one side. Types include round targets (mato) and deer targets (kusajishi).

---

**Artistic, Medical & Religious Items**

**Books:** Books are uncommon and very valuable in Sengoku Japan, as there is yet no moveable type press. Books are created from wood block printing plates or, more commonly, hand written. The most common books available are the Chinese and Japanese classics. Japanese books consist of paper pages sewn into a leather or stiff, lacquered paper binding or simply one large, accordion-style sheet of paper between leather or wood covers. Books are seldom seen in Japan, and rarely (if ever) in the hands of bōngō or hinin. Some daimyō, and many temples and scholars maintain impressive libraries, which contain religious, historical or esoteric texts, possibly including some written by the owner himself. A book can function in place of a teacher, up to a skill level of 3 in the appropriate skill.

**Brushes:** Japanese brushes are made of wood or bamboo, with bristles made from wolf, sheep and/or horse hair. Brushes come in a variety of sizes for different uses. Brushes are used most often for painting and calligraphy (sho-dō). Brushes are called fude.

**Brush case:** Fudemaki, a small lacquered wooden case or flexible roll-up bamboo mat, designed to hold one to three brushes. It keeps brushes in good condition when traveling or otherwise not in use.

**Brush rest:** Fudeoki, a decorative wood, ceramic or metal stand. The small rest is placed on a table or other surface, and the brush is then laid on the same surface, with the bristle end of the stick resting directly on the brush rest. This keeps the brush bristles from contacting any surface, thus prolonging their useful life and keeping their original shape.

**Brush stand:** A larger stand, upon which the entire brush may be set. This keeps the brush completely off of the writing surface, protecting the brush from being accidentally knocked off of the smaller brush rest.

**Buddhist priest’s staff:** Called a shakujō, this staff looks like a standard bō, except for a brass end-cap at the top, to which is fastened a large brass ring. Looped within this central ring are six smaller brass rings. Thus, it is sometimes called a “seven ring staff.” It is believed that the sound made by the rings when carrying the staff while walking helps ward off evil or mischievous spirits. While some pious laymen will carry one on pilgrimage, it is usually carried by Buddhist priests.

**Calligraphy set:** The calligraphy set (suzuri bako) is a complete, portable set of sumi painting and drawing materials ready for use, contained in a small lacquered wooden case about one shaku long by three sun wide (3” x 12”). The calligraphy set contains: two brushes, an ink stone (suzuri), one ink stick (block), a small water dropper, signature stone (hanko), and a small ink pot containing red ink. These items may also be purchased separately.

**Charcoal:** Small pieces of charcoal (tadon) that is used in the wood chip heater. It comes in small wood boxes or in paper-wrapped bundles containing 30 pieces. Each pieces burns for 1 toki (120 minutes).

**Diviner’s scrolls:** The Chinese book, I Ching, in complete form; commonly written on rice-paper scrolls, though it may also be found in book form (though rarely). The I Ching are used by diviners, mystics and lay people alike to predict the future and predetermine the outcome of events.

---

_Nakano Kazuma_
**Gongs (shō) and bells:** Gongs are an important part of many religious rituals and meditative exercises. All gongs come with a wooden mallet for striking.

The dōtaku is a large (two-ken-tall) bronze bell, commonly found at Buddhist temples. It is suspended vertically from a cross beam, and struck with a large suspended wooden striker that looks like a pole. The round gong is a two or three shaku (2-3") in diameter flat, brass gong (similar in shape to a cymbal). It is generally suspended. When struck it provides the classic “gong” tone.

The meditation gong is a hammered brass, bowl-shaped gong about 4 sun (5") in diameter. It generally rests on a small pillow. When struck, the meditation gong issues a long, pure mellow tone which facilitates the calming of mind and spirit (+1 to Meditation skill rolls).

**Temple gongs (hanshō)** are found in many of the numerous Shintō shrines throughout Japan. The 6 sun (7") tall iron gong is generally hung from a beam within a shrine. When struck, it has a shorter, higher-pitched sound than the round, brass gong. All gongs come with a wooden mallet for striking.

**Incense:** Incense has many uses in Japan. It is used in sachets or burned under clothing as a perfume, kept in drawers or a chest for repelling insects, and used in the ancient kōdō ceremony. Incense sticks, or joss, come in paper-wrapped bundles of 37. Incense sticks, used primarily in the kōdō ceremony or burned in wood chip heaters by those practicing professional makeup, such as used by No actors. The colors may be skillfully mixed to recreate flesh tones. Use of this kit provides +3 to the use of the Disguise skill. Note that mere possession of a makeup kit by anyone other than a kuge invokes the presumption that one is an actor or other entertainer.

**Makeup kit:** A one shaku by one half shaku (6” x 12") lacquered wooden box containing several colors of makeup (white, red, black, green, blue, etc.), a short, fat brush, a pencil for accent lines, several small hair pins and other miscellaneous items for preparing professional makeup, such as used by No actors. An ink stone is also included in the calligraphy set (above). An ink stone is also included in the calligraphy set (above).

**Ink stone:** Sizuri are flat, smooth, granular stones used to grind ink sticks. The ground ink powder is mixed with water, using a water dropper, to create the ink. Some ink stones are contained in small decorative stone or ceramic cases, which contain a small separate space into which an amount of ink is stored once made. An ink stone is also included in the calligraphy set (above).

**Ink pot:** Made of shosan stone, this small one sun by two sun (roughly 1” x 3”) stone box contains dragon’s blood, or an ink-soaked fibrous material, which is used with signature stones (hanko) to create the unique stamp. Red is the traditional color of ink used in these pots. An ink pot is also included in the calligraphy set (above).

**Ink stick:** To make Japanese ink, soot from pine or vegetable oils is mixed with animal or fish glue, then dried into blocks or sticks. The sticks are then rubbed onto an ink stone and mixed with water, a little at a time, to achieve the right shade and consistency of ink. Ink sticks are packaged in small, decorative paper-wrapped bundles containing a half dozen small sticks or a single block, which supplies enough ink for 50 large sheets of paper. Ink sticks are usually black. Red ink sticks may be purchased for double the listed price. An ink stick (block) is also included in the Calligraphy set (above).

**Ink pot:** Made of shosan stone, this small one sun by two sun (roughly 1” x 3”) stone box contains dragon’s blood, or an ink-soaked fibrous material, which is used with signature stones (hanko) to create the unique stamp. Red is the traditional color of ink used in these pots. An ink pot is also included in the calligraphy set (above).

**Incense ceremony (kōdō) utensils:** The incense ceremony, or kōdō, is an artistic expression of beauty enjoyed by many among the aristocracy. The ceremony entails the burning of various types of ceremonial granular or kneaded incense by lighting it in the incense pot (kōro) and then setting the lighted incense on a ceramic plate. Attendees not only enjoy the perfumed aroma of the incense, but they often engage in contests to guess the type and, indeed, the geographical origin of the incense. The answers are written on small slips of paper and then compared to find the winner (the person with the most correct answers at the end of the ceremony).

White ash powder is used in the kōdō ceremony. It is placed in the incense pot (kōro) as a non-burning medium, into which the incense is placed. A complete utensil set includes a small iron ash press, feather broom, iron incense chopsticks for handing small pieces of charcoal and incense, an answer sheet holder, incense spoon, and metal tweezers for the ceramic plates.

**First aid pouch:** Inrô are small metal, ceramic or lacquered wood containers, about 2 sun by 2 sun (2” x 2”). An inrô is usually worn about the neck or suspended from a belt (obi), and can be used to carry first aid supplies. It is good to carry some powdered rouge in one’s sleeve. When one is sobering up or waking from sleep, his complexion may be poor. At such time it is good to take out and apply some powdered rouge.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
If one would seek good companions, he will find them among those with whom he studies Learning and Calligraphy. Harmful companions I avoid will be found among those who play go, shogi and the flute. There is no shame in not knowing these latter amusements. Indeed, they are matters to be taken up only in the stead of wasting one’s time completely.

— Hojo Nagauji
Boots: Boots are not a common form of footwear in Japan. Fur boots (kegetsu) are generally worn only by those living in the northernmost regions of Japan, including Hokkaido, where snow is plentiful and deep, and the temperatures sometimes dip below freezing.

Clogs: Geta are a type of wooden “platform” shoe, consisting of a wooden sole, with two two-sun (2”) high horizontal wooden blocks attached to the bottom, and a straw thong to secure the foot. Geta are typically worn only by kuge, buke and more affluent bonge, although they are becoming more fashionable and popular of late. Geta are worn with socks (tabi), and only during inclimate weather, as a rule; they are never worn indoors. Men and women have distinctive styles of geta, and they are not interchangeable.

Court vest: The kataginu is a silk or cloth vest with tall, heavily starched shoulders, worn tucked into the waistband of the trousers (hakama). It is part of the traditional court garb of the samurai, and functions as their “formal dress” (like modern-day tuxedos). As a general rule, only samurai of ML 3 or higher may wear a kataginu. They may be worn in public while attending to official business or social gatherings with one’s peers. One does not wear a kataginu to visit a “reed house” or to go gambling.

Falconry attire: The kari-shōzoku is a special set of clothing worn by buke during the formal falcon hunt, or tori-oi, or other hunts, including those involving deer and wild boar. It consists of a special kimono and hakama, and a formal lacquered paper cap (eboshi) completes the outfit. There is a scene early in the film Heaven and Earth in which Lord Kagetora and some of his samurai can be seen wearing this attire during a deer hunt.

Firefighter’s garb: Firefighters are groups of volunteers trained in the skills of fighting fires, namely throwing buckets of water on a fire to control or douse it or simply tearing down the surrounding buildings to prevent the fire from spreading. The firefighter’s garb consists of a padded or quilted cowl (zukin) and long jacket (hanten). These items are fairly effective against flames (providing KD against fire and heat attacks), but less so against weapons.

Gloves: Yugake, or mitsugake, are three-fingered, tanned skin gloves. They are uncommon, worn primarily by professional arcers to prevent injuries to the hands when firing the massive Japanese great bow (yumi or dai kyū).

Hats: Hats are commonly worn by all castes. They provide shade from the sun, cover from rain and snow. Like all forms of clothing, a hat can denote rank or social standing. Headgear comes in a variety of shapes and sizes, including the following: paper hats (eboshi), straw hats (kasa), and headbands (hachi-maki). Eboishi are worn by the aristocracy (i.e., kuge and buke), as well as by Shintō priests. Eboishi are made from black lacquered paper and secured to the head with white cord.

Straw hats (kasa) are worn by all castes. The most common style of straw hat is the wide, bowl-shaped hat. This is style is worn by farmers, Buddhist priests, commoners (bonge) and samurai alike; only the kuge are unlikely to be seen wearing one. Kasa may be worn tipped forward or with a cloth suspended from the brim of the hat to prevent the wearer’s face from being seen. Visitors to a reed house (house of ill repute), especially samurai, often wear a kasa to prevent embarrassment to themselves or their clan.

The second style of kasa is the “basket” hat, worn most often by wandering priests of the Fuke sect, called komusō. These hats are tall, cylindrical hats which cover the entire head, with small spaces between the weaves in the front allowing the wearer to see out but preventing others from seeing the wearer’s face.

Headband: The headband (hachimaki) is a simple cloth worn tied around the forehead. It is worn by anyone performing strenuous work, including palanquin-bearers (kagoya), soldiers (bushi and ashi garu), farmers, and other laborers. It is not unusual to see common laborers wearing nothing but a loin cloth (fundoshi) and a headband (hachimaki) in public while they work.

Jacket: A loose-fitting jacket or coat (haori), with a small pair of tassled cords to secure the front. The haori is worn over the kimono, but not over armor (see Officer’s vest, below). Haori are worn by people of every station, although the quality of the item usually belies the wearer’s caste. Bonge wear simple haori, made of cloth or silk of a single color, while samurai wear a silk haori of brighter colors and bearing the crest (mon) of their clan. Haori come in several styles: short, waist-length, or longer, knee-length; short, elbow-length sleeves, and longer, wrist-length sleeves.

Kimono: The kimono is the traditional garb of Japan. Japanese women wear the kimono almost exclusively as their daily attire, with the exception of females working in the fields and female bushi when in armor. Men also wear the kimono, although commoners (bonge) and hinin tend to wear short kimono, with or without trousers, and male samurai typically wear the long ki-
mono with *hakama* (see Trousers). In addition, samurai (both male and female) may wear their clan’s crest (*mon*) on the kimono, over each breast, on both sleeves, and the upper center of the back of the kimono. There are several variations of kimono, including: normal kimono, summer kimono (*yukata*), under-kimono (*hadajuban*), and over-kimono (*uchikake*).

Normal kimono may be long, reaching to the top of the feet, or short, thigh- or knee-length. Normal kimono may be made of cloth, but most are made of fine silks. The normal kimono is the typical attire for all Japanese people. The summer kimono (*yukata*) is a thinner material with larger sleeves to allow better air circulation during the hot and humid summer months. The under-kimono (*hadajuban*) is a long kimono—almost invariably white in color for men, and red for women—worn indoors, as a sort of pajama. It may be worn under a normal kimono during the colder winter months. The over-kimono (*uchikake*) is a large, heavy flowing kimono that covers the feet entirely. It is worn by women of the aristocracy, and by brides during weddings. The over-kimono also includes a sheer white veil, or shawl, which is usually held over the woman’s head with both hands.

Washing a kimono involved taking it apart, into its composite pieces of cloth or silk. Each piece was washed and starched on racks and then reassembled, with the pieces rotated to extend the wear and life of the garment.

**Loincloth:** *Fundoshi* are long white cloths wrapped around the groin and waist and worn as a loincloth.

**Sleeve-tying cord:** The *tassuke* is a long silk cord used by *bushi* to tie back the long sleeves of the *kimono* before entering battle. This keeps the sleeves from getting in the way and gives the bushi greater freedom of movement of his arms. A skilled warrior can tie back his sleeves in one full Phase (with a DEX + 3d6 roll, DN 14); Most others require two Phases.

**Nô costume:** *Nô* costumes vary in appearance, but all of them are made with several layers of expensive silk *kimono* with bright patterns and expensive, decorative motifs. The costume also include props, such as a *tachi*, *ogi* (folding fan) and the like. These props are decorative and, though often quite expensive, are ineffective and should be considered below-average in quality for purposes of practical use. *Nô* costumes are heavy and take some time to don. Professional actors often use one or more assistants to don their garb before a performance.

**Officer’s vest:** The *jinbaori* is a long silk vest with starched shoulders, similar to the *kataginu*, but is not tucked into the *obi*; it is worn over other clothing, like a coat. The *jinbaori* is a mark of rank for *samurai* of middle rank or higher. It is made of silk and can be worn over armor, with the *katana* (or *tachi*) protruding from under the jinbaori behind the wearer. As a general rule, only samurai with a ML of 3 or higher may wear a jinbaori. It is not worn for formal occasions, like the kataginu, unless the samurai is already in armor—i.e., during war time.

**Priest’s garb:** Priests wear garb unique to their profession. The types of priest garb include: Buddhist, Kirishitan, Shintō, and *yamabushi* (or *shugenja*). Buddhist garb consists of a simple white kimono with an additional overgarment. Priests of some sects wear a saffron *kesa* or cloth hung over one shoulder. Others, like the *sōhei*, wear a sheer, almost gauze-like, black overgarment; this garment can even be worn over armor. Kirishitan (Jesuit) priests wear saffron, European-style clerical robes. Shintō priests wear a large ceremonial *kimono*, similar to the Heian-style robes worn by the *kuge*, and a peaked cap made of lacquered paper and secured by white cord (*eboshi*). *Yamabushi* wear a white kimono, white trousers, and a yellow overgarment, similar in design to a samurai court vest (*kataginu*), a small black peak cap worn on the forehead and secured by simple twine, and a long string with white “pom poms” worn around the neck.

**Raincoat:** Two varieties of raincoat (*mine*) exist in Japan. The most common is the straw over-coat, which is made of oiled straw. The straw coats are commonly worn by the lower classes (*hinin* and *bonge*), and low-ranking *buke*. The more expensive version is made of oiled or lacquered paper. The latter is much more durable than it sounds, often outlasting the straw coats. These coats are most commonly worn by buke of rank and *kuge*. Raincoats are usually worn with a straw hat (*kaza*) or with an umbrella.

**Sandals:** Straw thong sandals (*waraji*) are the most common form of outdoor footwear in Japan, bar none. They consist of a straw mat-like sole with a straw cord that ties around the heel and ankle. They are usually worn with socks (*tabi*), and always removed before entering a building or home, except in the most dire of emergencies. (Wearing sandals into a home has the same psychological effect as someone kicking down the front door of your home.)

**Shinobi garb:** The traditional garb of the *shinobi* (*ninja*) is called *shinobi shojoku*. It consists of a wrap-around hood, a tunic with several secret inner pockets, cloth *kote* (sleeves) that protect the forearms and back of the hands, loose-fitting trousers, and cloth pull-over boots (*tabi*). All of the clothing is relatively loose, with ties around the waist, wrists and ankles.

The clothing is traditionally died one of several colors, depending on the environment in which the shinobi is working: black for night and utter blackness, brown for fields and forests, gray for stone and urban settings, and white for snow. True black is not available, the closest being a nearly black dark red or dark indigo, due to the available dyes. Wearing garb of a color appropriate to the terrain allows a +1 to Stealth skill for rolls involving moving unseen. GMs running a *chanbara* game might allow shinobi characters to purchase camouflage pattern garb, though historically none existed.

Reversible forms of shinobi shojoku may be made (or bought), with a second color or even a complete set of faux garb that can be used as a disguise (such as common *bonge* garb, priests’ garb, etc.) when the garb is turned inside out. A second color on the reverse of the garb adds 50 percent to the listed cost; having a set of faux garb on the reverse doubles the cost.

**Snow shoes:** *Kanjiki* are special over-shoes made of leather straps or metal bands, to which are attached metal studs or small spikes. Snow shoes are only worn in the mountains and northernmost regions of Japan. They cannot be used as weapons. Movement in the snow, while wearing snow shoes, is reduced only to instead of .

**Socks:** *Tabi* are cotton socks that cover the foot. They have a separate “big toes,” with the rest of the sock being a single piece. *Tabi* are common to all castes, though those worn by buke and *kuge* tend to be of brighter colors and generally better quality.

**Trousers:** Trousers in Japan are made of cloth or silk. They are pulled up and secured by a belt (*obi*). *Buke* wear a loose-fitting form of split-skirt-style trouser, called a *hakama*. The hakama is pulled up over the bottom of the *kimono* and the front and back of the hakama are secured with a belt (*obi*) wrapped several times around the waist. Large, deep openings on both sides of the hakama, at the waist, reveal the kimono beneath. Commoners

---

*A straw hat or helmet should be worn tilted toward the front.*  
— Yamamoto Jin’emon

187
Cooking & Kitchen Instruments (Chori Daidoroko yohin)

In the Sengoku period, iron casting has become more prevalent, and many items of everyday use—cauldrons, pots, vases, and the like—are produced by the cire perdue method (rogata).

Bowls and Plates: Bowls and plates are made of lacquered wood or glazed ceramic. There are a variety of shapes and sizes, each having its own name. Just a few are presented here, for variety: large noodle bowl (donburi), rice bowl (meshiwan), and soup bowl (shiruwan). Many bowls are imported from China (Chugoku) and Korea (Chosen).

Chopsticks: Japanese chopsticks (hashi) are made of wood. They are round (unlike Chinese chopsticks, which are squared) and tapered, being thinnest at the “eating” end. It is considered extremely bad manners to stick chopsticks into a bowl of rice, pick at food from bowl to bowl, or to stab food with them. Bushi often carried a form of metal chopsticks in their wakizashi scabbard, called waribashi (see Kogai, above), as it is considered very bad luck to break one’s chopsticks during a meal just before battle (at the GM’s discretion, characters who break their chopsticks may suffer a -2 to all skill rolls for the duration of combat or until their next meal).

Cooking & food preparation items: A variety of utensils and pots are available for preparing food. Most cooking pots are suspended over the kitchen fire, being hung from a beam or frame. Each has one purpose, and only in the poorest of homes are items designed for one use used for another. The items available are numerous; refer to the equipment list above for specific items.

Cups: Like bowls, cups are made from either lacquered wood or glazed ceramic. There are a variety of shapes and sizes, each having its own name. Just a few are presented here, for variety. Sake cups (sakazuki) are short, wide cups. Tea cups (chawan) are slightly taller and not as wide as sake cups. Many cups are imported from China (Chugoku) and Korea (Chosen).

Sake flask: Tokkuri are ceramic flasks, about 6 sun (6”) tall, with a tapered neck for easier pouring. A tokkuri holds about .18 liters. A tokkuri is included in the sake set (below).

Sake set: a set of ceramic ware for serving sake. The set includes one sake flask (tokkuri) and two ceramic sake cups (sakazuki), which come in a small lacquered wood box (sakemasu) for storage.

Lacquerware: Lacquered wood boxes are used for storing dishes and plates. Lacquer serving trays are commonly used to serve meals, especially at commercial eating places and inns.

Foodstuffs (Shokubutsu)

Alcohol: There are several varieties of alcohol available in the Empire. The most common, of course, is sake. Sake is made from white rice. It is drunk socially, to warm oneself on cold nights, and also used in religious ceremonies. Brandies and wines are also made from fermented fruit, the most common of which is plum wine or plum brandy. Plum wine has a higher alcohol content than sake and is more expensive than sake, as well. European wines and brandies are available sporadically—depending which way the political winds are blowing any given month—and are always very expensive to procure. (This is one place where a contact with a nanbanjin trader comes in handy!) Alcohol may be purchased by the flask or by the barrel. If purchasing liquor by the cup, use half of the price listed for a flask.

Fruit: Much of the fruit (kudamono) in Japan is imported from China, although some—such as plums, peaches and cherries—are grown locally. The types of fruit available at most markets include grapes, mountain grapes (yamabudo), oranges, pears, peaches, plums, and watermelon. Fruit is eaten fresh or pickled.

Grains: Grains are the most common food throughout Japan. While rice is the staple crop, it is not the most consumed food. Barley, millet and wheat are the most eaten foods in Sengoku Japan. This is because the farmers pay half (or more) of their rice harvest to the buke in taxes. What is left over is often not enough to sustain a family, so the farmers grow other grains to supplement their diets.

Seafood: Japanese eat a lot of seafood (gyokai rui). Everything from abalone to squid, and even seaweed and kelp, makes it to the dinner plate. Most seafood is cooked right away, or salted or dried to preserve it. Some, like some types of fish, are eaten raw, or barely cooked in soups.

Soups & Noodles: There is an extensive variety of soups, noodles and the like. For a list of common varieties, see page 180.

Spices (Chomiryo) & Miscellaneous: Spices and other flavorings for food are used sparingly, with most being imported from the continent (Chugoku). Nuts, maple syrup, honey and oil are made locally by special craftsmen. Soy sauce (shoyu) is made from soy beans, and is the most common flavoring for food in Japan. Sugar rock candy can be obtained from European traders at high prices, and is considered a luxury treat. Another, more common sweet treat is anko, a sweet paste made from red beans. Anko is used as a filling in some kinds of rice-flour dumplings and enjoyed by people of all walks of life.

Tea: Tea (cha) is the most popular beverage in Japan, edging out even sake. There are numerous varieties, including tea grown in Japan and those imported from China, Korea and even more distant lands. The more common varieties include: green tea (o-cha), once imported but now grown locally, black tea, and brown rice hull tea (genmai cha).

Vegetables: There is an extensive variety of vegetables (wayasai) available. For a list of common vegetables, see the equipment list (page 180)
Furniture (Kagû) & Household Items

Armrest: Kyosoku, armrests for use when sitting in the traditional seiza position on the floor. Kyosoku are made of wood, with a padded cushion on top, appearing like a very small table or a long, thin stool. In the film Kagemusha, the man impersonating the daimyô Takeda Shingen is often seen using one.

Bamboo blinds: Sudare are window blinds made from cord and thin, horizontal bamboo slats or strips. They are more common in bonge homes.

Bedroll: Bedrolls (futon) are padded, silk- or cloth-covered mats upon which people sleep. Futon can be found in all but the poorest homes and inns. A quilt or blanket is generally used to cover oneself while sleeping on a futon, and a “pillow” or head-rest is also used.

Blanket: A quilted silk or cloth comforter, used primarily while sleeping.

Candle: Candles (rōsoku) are uncommon in Sengoku Japan. Wax is scarce because the wax tree is not being cultivated and beeswax is virtually unused. Most candles are made of pine resin with a paper wick. One candle lasts for 2 toki (4 hours). Candles are sometimes placed in candle sticks and sometimes within paper lanterns. Historical note: During the Edo period (after 1603), wax candles became much more popular and common, replacing oil lamps as the primary source of lighting.

Dining table: A short, wooden table (handai) around which people sit for meals. The Japanese sit on the floor, so the table is only about two shaku (two feet) high. Men and women do not eat at the same table; women eat in the kitchen or after the men have finished.

Door curtain: Noren are cloth or silk curtains suspended from the top of windows or, more commonly, doorways. Noren are a common sight, especially at shops. The noren may be decorated with a painted artwork, symbol, message, or crest (mon) of a clan or the merchant house. Noren hang low enough in a doorway that those entering must bow to avoid walking into the noren, thus serving a dual purpose—decoration and promoting courtesy.

Mat: Straw floor mats (tatami) are thick (about six sun, or six inches) straw mats covered with a fine cloth or silk. Tatami invariably one ken (six feet) long and three shaku (three feet) wide. Rooms in all Japanese buildings are measured in tatami; that is, by how many tatami it takes to cover the floor.

Mosquito netting: Kaya is a nearly invisible netting made of silk, cloth or hemp used to keep mosquitoes and other tiny pests away. The price listed is for a net large enough to cover a bed, being an open-bottom, rectangular prism suspended over the user from the ceiling or rafters. Larger versions are also available, some large enough to cover an entire room. Mosquito netting is primarily used while sleeping during the summer months, when the pests are the most abundant.

Oil lamp: Oil lamps consist of a shallow metal basin of oil with a rush wick floating in the oil and hanging over the side.

Pillow/headrest: The Japanese pillow looks like a small wooden box with a padded silk cushion on top, or a padded silken roll. Head-rest are more common among the buke and affluent bonge. Naturally, no self-respecting kage would sleep with his head touching the floor.

Privacy screen: Privacy screens (fusuma shoji) are folding, self-standing screens of varying sizes. The average fusuma shoji is one ken (6 feet) tall and two ken wide. Fusuma are constructed of a three-section wooden frame with either paper, lacquered wood, or a combination making up the sides. Most fusuma are decorated with beautiful paintings of scenery, animals or religious symbols. Privacy screens with inlaid gold designs, which cost two or more times the listed price, are also available.

Stone lantern: Stone lanterns (tôrô) look like miniature stone pagodas, with a space into which a candle or lamp is placed (see also page 192).

Strongbox: The sen-ryô (“thousand ryô”) is a large lacquered wooden box, measuring two shaku by one shaku by one shaku. A strong box is just the right size to store 1,000 ryô in gold coin, thus its name.

Weapon racks: There are two primary types of weapon racks of concern: bow stands (chado-kake) and sword stands (katana-kake). Bow stands are tall wooden stands designed to hold the yumi (or dai-kyû), the Japanese great bow. The bow rests upright against the stand. Sword racks are designed to hold the weapons horizontally. Sword stands are available for a single katana, for paired swords (the dai-sho). There are even some stands designed to hold a dai-sho plus a matching tanto. Vertical stands (tachi-kake) are available for holding a lone tachi.

Wind chimes: Furin are short, hollow bamboo tubes strung together and hung from a ceiling, veranda or other overhang. When a breeze blows, the chimes create an almost musical sound.

Music & Entertainment

Biwa: The biwa is a stringed instrument similar to a lute. It consists of a large, oval-shaped portion, flat on one side, with a short neck. The biwa is a popular instrument and many ensembles include one. It creates a rich, pleasing sound, and is a favorite instrument among many women. The great Lake Biwa is so named because its shape is reminiscent of this instrument.

Drums: Drums are made by stretching a skin (usually deer-skin) across a wooden drum. There are several varieties of drums in Sengoku Japan, including small and medium sized drums (taikô), being one shaku to one ken in diameter, to the huge drum

For a samurai in service it’s quite fitting that his outer gate and guardhouse, porch and entrance, and his reception room be as fine as may be consistent with his income. But the inner parts of the house where his wife and family live are should be considered adequate however unsightly, provided they keep out the rain, for it’s important that one spend as little as possible on repairs or renovations.

— Daidōji Yûzan
(ō-daiko), which is three ken in diameter. The ō-daiko rests horizontally on a large raised platform, allowing a standing drummer to play it with fat, two shaku long sticks.

Flutes: Flutes are commonly made from bamboo. Some are played with a mouthpiece mounted on the side of one end of the flute, while others have a mouthpiece on the end of the flute. One-shaku-long bamboo flutes are called shakuhachi. They are popular among all castes, and especially with the komuso, the wandering priests of the Fuke sect of Buddhism. Smaller flutes, called fue, are also available.

Flute bag: A long, thin silk bag to carry a flute. The bag has a cord to tie off the open end.

Game paddle: A hagoita is a square, lacquered wood paddle for use in playing hanetsuki, a badminton-style game popular among the kuge. The hagoita are often decorated with very bright colors and designs. Brightly decorated hagoita are also a popular accessory at many religious festivals.

Go set: This set consists of two wooden containers, each containing a set of ceramic “stones” (one white set, one black set), and a Go board. The go board looks like a wooden block, measuring 2 shaku on a side and one shaku tall, on short wooden legs. On the surface are lines forming a grid. The stones are placed at the intersecting points during play.

Hichiriki: A high-pitched flute similar to a piccolo.

Koto: The koto looks like a three-stringed “banjo,” of sorts, with a small round body and long neck. The koto is played using a large triangular spatula. Though not as popular as the biwa, the koto is nonetheless a common instrument throughout Japan.

Shi: A mouth organ with several tubes of varying heights. It is played in court music, and produces a haunting sound.

Shogi set: A shogi set consists of a wooden board (often lacquered, for durability) with a grid of squares, and a number of wooden playing pieces. The playing pieces look like miniature ema (votive plaques), and each has kanji characters written on one side, indicating each type of piece.

Shuttlecock: Hane are the shuttlecocks used in the game hanetsuke, popular among kuge. The shuttlecock is made with a small cloth-wrapped ball or large nut. Sometimes the “tail” is made from the excess cloth and sometimes with feathers.

Personal Effects
Fans: Fans are everywhere. Anyone with a moderate income or better has one. Fans provide some relief from the humid heat of summertime. Even more so they are a fashion statement, especially to city dwellers. There are several varieties of fans.

The flat fan (uchiwa) is not often seen any more, having been replaced in popularity by the folding fan. Flat fans are made of lacquered paper stretched over a wooden frame. They are usually round in shape, though square and oval varieties exist. Most are decorated with painted scenes of nature.

The folding fan (ogi) was introduced from China and has become the defacto fan of choice among the Japanese. Folding fans can be found tucked into nearly every obi, from the average bonge townsman to the most powerful daimyō. Only farmers and hinin are likely to be seen without one.

Signalling fans (gunbai) are sturdier version of uchiwa. They usually are of metal frame construction and some models are made completely of metal. They are invariably brightly painted, often with the crest (mon) of the owner. They can be used as makeshift weapons, but their primary use is as a signaling device by samurai lords and generals on the battlefield.

Handkerchief: Handkerchiefs are not in widespread use, though they do exist, mainly among affluent bonge and buke who desire to emulate the newly discovered nanbanjin fashions. They may be of plain, cloth design (yo-bukuro) or fancy, decorative silk (fukusa).

Money purse: Uchi-bukuro are lacquered paper, cloth or thin leather “wallets,” used to hold large coins (paper currency doesn’t exist in Sengoku Japan). Monme-ita and bu-shoban are stored in money purses but zeni are not, as a rule. Money purses are kept in a pocket in a kimono sleeve.

Netsuke: Netsuke are small, palm-sized toggles carved in the form of human figures, plants, animals and a number of other objects. The motifs available are limited only by one’s imagination: religion, mythology, legend or even poetry are common inspirations. Netsuke have one or two holes for cords from which purses or pockets for holding everyday items (such as money,
writing materials, medicinal herbs or tobacco) were suspended from the belt (obi); the netsuke was inserted under the obi, thus preventing the suspended item from slipping down. Netsuke were originally made of root-wood, but now may be made of wood, ivory, jade, bamboo, nutshells, semi-precious stones, metal or ceramic. Some varieties are hollow, for carrying very small items (available at double the listed price).

**Pipe:** Kiseru, a bamboo pipe with an iron or brass bowl. Kiseru vary in size and construction, with some models made entirely of metal. The latter are favored as makeshift weapons by some bonge, including gangsters and gamblers, which has led to the development of a bugei—kiseru-jutsu (Pipes).

**Sachet:** Tagasode, a small silk drawstring bag containing various herbs, incense or perfumes. It can be stored in a chest or other container to keep clothes smelling fresh. Another popular use among buke and affluent bonge is to keep the sachet in a kimono sleeve, adding a subtle fragrance and helping to repel pesky insects.

**Seal stone:** Seal stones (hanko) are signature stones, roughly one sun across and three sun high (1” x 3”). Into the bottom is carved the stylized kanji characters of the owner’s name. The hanko is pressed into “dragon’s blood” (an ink- or dye-filled fibrous pad) and then pressed onto documents. A hanko seal is used in the same manner as a signature; using someone else’s hanko is a crime.

**Signaling baton:** A signaling baton (sailai) consists of a lacquered wood baton with paper streamers on one end. It is used by military commanders to guide their troops in battle. When deployed, the streamers make a loud snapping or clacking sound.

**Tobacco:** Tobako was originally introduced by nanbanjin (Europeans), but is beginning to be cultivated by some Japanese farmers on a limited scale. Tobacco smoking is considered somewhat inferior, the streamers make a loud snapping or clacking sound.

**Wood chip heater:** A small earthenware container, roughly 3 shaku tall frame with cross rods holding a number of wooden beads. The soroban can be used to perform mathematical calculations up to and including algebraic ones. Use of a soroban adds +2 to any skill involving mathematics.

**Armorer’s kit:** See Arms and Armor Care (above).

**Armorer’s workshop:** See Arms and Armor Care (above).

**Bowyer’s kit:** See Arms and Armor Care (above).

**Bowyer’s workshop:** See Arms and Armor Care (above).

**Bucket:** The oke is a typical Japanese wooden bucket with a cross bar forming a handle for carrying. The bucket can hold about two gallons’ worth of a liquid (or grain, dirt, etc.).

**Craft tools:** A set of common tools for use with a particular craft. A set of these tools is required for use of the Craft skill. The particular skill (i.e., specialty) must be indicated when the set is purchased. Tools for one craft may not be used for another, different craft.

**Hoe:** The kuwa is a six-shaku-long bamboo pole with a small, square blade attached. It is used by gardeners and farmers.

**Rake:** The manno is a bamboo rake, made up of strips of sturdy bamboo or a carved wooden comb-like attachment at one end. It is used by bonge gardeners, farmers, and the like.

**Spade:** A suki is a short bamboo rod with a metal shovel blade attached to one end.

**Lockpick kit:** A lockpick kit consists of several small metal or wire devices for use in picking locks. Lockpicking itself is a crime, as is the mere possession of a lock pick kit. Though not required in order to use the Lockpicking skill, this set does provide a +2 to Lockpicking skill checks.

**Saws:** Saws are generally made of bamboo, for cutting through soft items, and metal teeth for those tough jobs. A small saw (nokogiri) is useful for cutting through pieces of wood, treelimbs, and the like. Large saws worked by two men (called oga) are used for felling trees and large beams of wood.

**People who have an intelligent appearance will not be outstanding even if they do something good, and if they do something normal people will think them lacking. But if a person who is thought of as having a gentle disposition does even a slightly good thing, he will be praised by people.**

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**Transportation (Yu)**

**Fishing boat:** Fishing boats are used by coastal fishermen. It has no sail. The boat comfortably seats two, though four people can fit into a fishing boat.

**Galley:** A large galley capable of carrying 100 men—mostly in the rowing seats. The galley also has a sail, which may be raised when needed.

**Junk:** A Japanese junk is based on the Chinese design. It is a flat-bottom boat with a single, large sail which can be deployed. The boat may also be sculled. A junk can carry up to 25 people, including crew.

**Merchant ship:** Large merchant ships carry trade goods up and down the coast of Japan, and to river towns. A merchant ship can carry up to 200 men (including a crew of 20), up to 10 metric tons of goods or a combination thereof (assume each passenger weighs 100 kg; minimum crew of 10). Merchant ships are patterned after European sailing ships, which were introduced to Japan in 1542.

**Oar:** Ro, a large wooden oar for use with a rowboat or galley.

**Palanquin:** The palanquin (kago) is a hanging wooden compartment, suspended from a wooden beam and carried by two or more people. Kago can be simple, black lacquered devices, or ornately decorated. A sliding door on the left side allows the passenger to enter and exit, and a sliding window on each side allows the passenger to look out. Curtains hanging inside the kago to cover the windows are common. The mountain palanquin (yamakago) is a hanging wicker basket-like compartment, suspended from a wooden pole, and carried like the kago. Historically, only those of samurai status were allowed to ride in kago; this included doctors and honored individuals (such as champion sumōtori), as well.

**Riverboat:** A wooden, flat-bottom boat, roughly four ken (12 feet) long for use in navigating the shallow rivers of Japan. The riverboat is sculled, using a long rudder-oar mounted to the back of the boat. Some riverboats have an enclosed compartment built in the center of the boat, functioning as a small room for passengers. This compartment protects passengers from the elements and obscures them from public view, as well.

**Rowboat:** A small, flat-bottom, wooden boat. Rowboats are two to three ken (six to nine feet) long and are rowed using wooden oars (ro) or a sculling oar. They are used primarily to transport personnel from larger ships (galleys, etc.) to and from shore.

**Snowsled:** The sori is a wood carriage on skis. It is used to transport goods (or children) across snow.

**Traveling (Ryokō) & Survival (RYoshoku) Items**

**Backpack:** The Japanese backpack (yaseuma) is an open wooden frame which is worn on the back and strapped to the carrier. Items may be stacked on the pack and secured with rope or cord.

**Basket:** A straw or bamboo grass basket used to transport food-stuffs or other goods. It may be carried by hand, on one’s back or atop one’s head (balanced with one hand).

**Flint and steel:** Used for starting fires. These items are uncommon, but available at a price, nonetheless.

**Lantern oil:** Oil for maps and lanterns (chōchin abura) comes primarily from vegetables and rape seed. The listed price supplies enough oil for 1 toki (120 minutes).

**Lifebelt:** An uki-bukuro consists of a cord tied around the waist, from which are suspended four airtight skin bladders. The bladders may be filled with air and tied off, providing added buoyancy to heavily-laden people (such as armored bushi) fording rivers and such. A lifebelt negates the need for a Swimming (suie-jutsu) roll to stay above water.

**Portable lantern:** Chōchin are lanterns made of paper glued to a bamboo frame. Candles or a small oil lap may be placed inside, and the lantern may be suspended from a pole or itself carried by a wooden handle. It is considered suspicious for anyone to walk about in darkness without one. People on government or other important business commonly carry a chōchin with "goyō" ("official business") painted on the lantern in kanji.

**Porter’s trunk:** A lacquered wooden box, approximately two to two shaku by one ken long (2’ × 2’ × 3’). It is large enough to hold one full set of samurai armor or two strong-boxes.

**Provision bag:** A cloth bag (kate-bukuro) designed for carrying provisions, such as food, tools, and the like. It is most often used by bushi on campaign.

**Rations:** Rations can include any food prepared for easy storage and transporting, such as rice balls wrapped in leaves, nuts, tofu, etc. (See Food, above)

**Rice bag:** Uchige, a cloth or rice-straw sack for hauling rice. Holds the equivalent of one-fifth koku (about 1 bushel) of rice. These bags are used to deliver rice used as tax payments, and by anyone needing to haul a large quantity of rice.

**Rope:** Ropes (nawa) are made of a variety of materials, including hair (human or horse being the most common), hemp or silk. Ropes are priced by the shaku (foot), except for hojo cords and sleeve-tying cords, which are sold in fixed lengths.

**Shoulder bag:** A straw or woven bamboo grass sack and cord (shoiko) worn over one’s shoulder. The shoiko can store a modest amount of goods (about 5 liters in volume.)

**Stone lantern:** Stone lanterns consist of a one to two shaku (one to two feet) tall stone pedestal, a hollow stone box, and a stone lid. A candle or oil lamp is placed inside for light. Stone lanterns are typically found in gardens and at the entrances of gates, temples and other buildings.

**Torch:** Taimatsu are made from bamboo poles wrapped on one end with cloth, moss or other natural, flammable material. A torch will burn for one-half toki (60 minutes).

**Water bottle:** Sections of bamboo trunks and dried gourds are used as water containers.

---

_Yamamoto Tsunetomo_
SERVICES

Note: If no denomination is listed, assume prices are in zeni for hinin and bonge, and in monme-ita for buke and kuge, unless otherwise noted. (ML = Membership Level, SL = Skill Level)

ROOM & BOARD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tea, cup</td>
<td>1 zeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meals:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rice, with tea</td>
<td>3 zeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full meal, with tea</td>
<td>8 zeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rent:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upper level of shop</td>
<td>2 monme-ita per month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avg, 2-story building (900² ft.)</td>
<td>5m/month (5 bu/year)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stay at inn (vado), per night:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with 2 meals</td>
<td>10z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with no meals</td>
<td>5z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private room</td>
<td>2x cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weekly rate (incl. meals)</td>
<td>1m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of bathhouse (furo)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ENTERTAINMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buy contract of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesan, child</td>
<td>10b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesan, adult</td>
<td>ML x 25 bu (100b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geisha</td>
<td>ML x 100 bu (400b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geisha’s services</td>
<td>Geisha’s ML in bu-shoban per night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostitution:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post-station girl (shukuba-joro)</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit to a brothel</td>
<td>Geisha’s ML + 1 in monme-ita (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theater:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend No performance</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contract private No performance</td>
<td>Host’s ML x 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw a party for peers</td>
<td>Host’s ML</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HEALING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Doctor’s attention</td>
<td>10 per day (plus cost of medicine/drugs, if any)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massage</td>
<td>10 (or 1 per 2 locations on Hit Location table)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HIRED HELP

Cost is given per time period (week, month, etc.) The cost in parenthesis represents the wage for an average person of that profession (i.e., stat and/or skill level of 4).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Artisan:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week (10 days)</td>
<td>SL x 60 zeni (240z)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>SL x 2 monme-ita (8m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashigaru:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>5 monme-ita (5m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retain per year</td>
<td>5 koku/5 bu-shoban (5b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samurai retainer:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per year</td>
<td>5 monme-ita (20m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retain per year</td>
<td>5 koku or 5 bu-shoban (20b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courtesan:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per year</td>
<td>ML x 10 monme-ita (5m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laborer, per:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>SL x 3 monme-ita (4m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week (10 days)</td>
<td>5 koku or 5 bu-shoban (5b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>5 koku or 5 bu-shoban (5b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinobi:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hire for one mission</td>
<td>5x shinobi’s ML in bu-shoban (20b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retain genin, per month</td>
<td>25x shinobi’s ML in bu-shoban (100b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retain clan, per week</td>
<td>1,000b (if the clan is even willing to be bought; GM’s discretion)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Even if your lord does not hear of it or the councilors and superior officers despise you for it, it is an unspeakable thing that a samurai should be thought to make complaints about the reduction of his stipend.

— Daidoji Yûzan
QUALITY OF ITEMS

The cost and function of the arms, armor and equipment described in this chapter are given for average specimens. Extremely well-made (and poorly made) examples also exist. In fact, items may be graded as being one of several “levels” of quality.

LEVELS OF QUALITY

In Sengoku, there are six levels of quality used to describe items of all kinds, from weapons to works of art. The levels of quality correspond to the Difficulty Value table (see Chapter 13, The Rules). These levels are given below.

### Level of Quality Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Quality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extremely Poor</td>
<td>4-9</td>
<td>Extremely Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor</td>
<td>10-13</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>14-17</td>
<td>Average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above-average</td>
<td>18-25</td>
<td>Above-average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master</td>
<td>26-29</td>
<td>Master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legendary</td>
<td>30+</td>
<td>Legendary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXTREMELY POOR QUALITY ITEMS

Extremely poor weapons and armor function at a –1, but for each combat they are used in, there is a one-in-six chance of the weapon breaking or the armor suffering a catastrophic failure which could force the PC to have to withdraw. Roll 1d6 at the beginning of combat. If the result is a 1, at some point in the fight—GM’s discretion as to when—the item will fail.

For example: A thief, Michinaga, has found a sword hidden in a treasure room. It is richly mounted, and he thinks it is therefore a good weapon. Unbeknownst to him, it is actually an extremely poor tachi in expensive furniture — a dress piece. On his way out, he is challenged by two guards. He chooses to fight with the tachi, so the GM secretly rolls 1d6 and it comes out 2. The GM decides that the third time Michinaga strikes armor or parries with the weapon, it will snap at the guard. Michinaga scores a hit on the first guard’s torso, protected by a hara ate, then parries a yari thrust. His third strike is parried by the guard, and the sword snaps. Michinaga is now unarmed and facing two armed opponents.

### POOR QUALITY ITEMS

For poorly made ones, there is a –1 penalty to the primary function. In the case of damage, the minimum DC of a weapon is 1/2, or 1d3 damage. Further, no damage result can be less than 1.

### ABOVE AVERAGE QUALITY ITEMS

For above average items, the bonus is +1. Thus, Above-average armor would be +1 KD, +1 AV for above average quality tools, +1 DC or +1 AV for above average weapons, and so on.
MASTER QUALITY ITEMS

Master quality items are those of the highest man-made quality. They are individual specimens of master quality workmanship. Master quality items fetch incredible prices on the open market, if they can be found for sale at all. In most cases, master quality items are handed down as heirlooms or given as gifts of incredible value. Such gifts are sometimes given to ensure the loyalty of the recipient to the giver (such as when Toranaga gives the priceless tachi to Kasigi Yabu in Shōgun.)

Master quality items provide a bonus of +2 to one of the following: The skill roll with which the item is used (i.e., +2 AV when the item is used); The KD (for armor); The DC (for weapons). In the case of weapons, the +2 bonus can be split between both the AV and the DC of the weapon.

For example, a master quality sword could have +2 AV, +2 DC, or both +1 AV and +1 DC.

In addition, every master quality item has a name and a personality, and is unique. No two master quality items may be identical—each master quality item in a given campaign must be unique.

**Item Name**

Most samurai choose names for their swords, though this is not a hardfast rule. Master quality items, on the other hand, must have names. The name may be chosen by the creator or the first owner. Until a name is selected for a Master quality item, it will function only as Above-average in quality.

**Personality**

All master quality items must have a personality. The personality of a master quality item is often based on the personality of its creator (GM’s discretion), and may be an exaggeration of some aspect of the creator’s personality. This can be a manifestation of a Mental Complication or an intense desire on the part of the creator, or a “purpose” for which the item is created, as defined by the maker.

The personality of an item is described as a personality or emotional trait. For a list of examples of “negative” personalities, see the section on Mental Complications (Chapter 8). An item’s personality can also be a “positive” one, as well. Some examples of acceptable personalities include “impatient,” “bloodthirsty,” “serene,” “jealous,” “loyal,” and so on.

The personality of the item must be determined at the time it is created, and is subject to approval by the GM. The personality may be chosen at any point in the creation process, from the beginning of the process to mere moments before completion. If a personality is not chosen for the item by the time it is completed, however, then the item is “reduced” to Above Average quality and may never be improved.

Roleplaying situations in which the item’s personality could come into play may seem to be very difficult. In fact, all it requires is for the GM to provide for “things” to happen in the vicinity of the item which could be attributed to the item’s personality. While it does not directly affect the mechanics of the game, necessarily, it should be used as an opportunity for great roleplaying encounters.

For example, a samurai is at a tea house having a cup of green tea and relaxing before a scheduled duel. The samurai is in possession of a master quality katana with an “impatient” personality. After a short time in the tea house, the GM tells the samurai’s player that his sword has fallen over onto the floor. Embarrassed (and no doubt a little angry), the samurai picks up the sword and puts it back into the rack. Again, a short time later, the GM decides that the sword falls over again. Exasperated, the players ask the GM why the sword keeps falling over.

“Must be impatient,” the GM replies.

Another brief example would be a master quality katana with an “aggressive” personality, which has a tendency to strike other samurai’s scabbards when the owner walks by them.

While these examples are slightly exaggerated, it demonstrates how an item’s personality can be brought into play.

LEGENDARY ITEMS

Sengoku does not have “magic items” per se. Items of incredible quality and or enchanted items are called Legendary items. Legendary items have the same benefit (i.e., bonuses) as Master quality items, with the additional benefit of a single “enchantment” of some kind.

Legendary items may only be created by supernatural forces (kami, bosatsu, and so on). Each Legendary item has a “personality,” like master quality items. In addition, like Master quality items, every Legendary item must have a name, though the name is chosen by the being (kami, bosatsu, whatever) that creates it.

**Restrictions**

Each legendary item is unique. There can never be two Legendary items with the same description or effects in one campaign.

Any type of item can be Legendary—a katana, helmet, or even a tea cup. The types of legendary items is limited only by the imagination of the kami and Buddhas (or the GM).

**Enchantments**

Legendary quality items each have a special ability, called an enchantment. Special abilities are based on spells, although they need not be magical in nature, per se. The enchantment can be of almost any kind of effect the GM chooses. As a rule of thumb, a Legendary item should have effects with a value of no more than 50 OP (or 10 Power Points). GMs desiring to create Legendary items are free to simply select a prayer from the Magic chapter and declare the prayer as the item’s special ability, if they so choose.

**Appraising Quality of Items**

Unless the PCs have studied arms or armor, they will not know the quality of the items merely by looking at them. They will need to consult with a professional—a maker or a scholar of such things—to determine this. Characters with the skill required to create a similar item or the appropriate Expert skill may attempt to appraise an item’s quality. The character makes a skill roll using his INT + SKILL (DN 18). On a successful roll, the character determines the true quality of the item. For example, to appraise a sword, a character would need to make a skill check using his INT + Swordsmith.

It is a wretched thing for that the young men of today are so contriving and so proud of his material possessions. Men with contriving hearts are lacking in duty. Lacking in duty they will have no self-respect.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
CREATING ITEMS

In SENGOKU, characters with the appropriate craft, artistic or smithing skill can create items. These include works of art, tools, ceramics, clothing, or any of a number of different kinds of items, including weapons.

WHAT’S NEEDED

Creating an item requires the appropriate skill, time, and raw materials.

Skill
Characters with the appropriate skill may create items, equipment, or artistic creations.

For example, characters with the Smithing skill can create tools and simple metal items; those with Calligraphy can create fine artistic written works; those with Swordsmith can create katana, wakizashi and no-dachi, and so on.

Time
The time it takes to create an item varies, depending on the type of item being created. As a general rule of thumb, the GM may assume that it takes one full day to create simple items (small artistic works, small articles of clothing or furniture, tools, most weapons, and the like), one week for items of moderate complexity (pottery, man-sized furniture or artistic works, large items of clothing, swords, and so on). Ultimately the time it takes to create an item is determined by the GM.

Raw Materials

Raw materials must also be acquired by the artisan or craftsman. The cost of the raw materials is one-tenth the listed cost for the item being created. The cost of the materials is based on the listed cost of an average quality item.

For example, a simple wooden bucket has a listed cost of 2 monme-ite. The cost of the raw materials required to create a bucket equals one tenth of a monme-ita, or about 17 zeni.

A character may spend two-and-one-half times this amount (or one quarter the listed cost of the item to be created) to receive a +2 to his skill roll when creating the item (or to the Effect Number, if using the Routine Quality rules, below).

ROUTINE QUALITY RULE

Artisans and craftsmen can create items of a given quality without requiring a skill check. It isn’t realistic to assume that a craftsman with a skill level of 5 has an equal chance of creating an item of Poor, Average or Master quality. In other words, characters shouldn’t have to rely on a random roll of the dice to create something which, for their character, should be a routine task. An artisan or craftsman of a given skill level should be able to count on creating items of a quality reflecting their skill level. This section addresses that issue.

The quality of item that a character can routinely create is based on the artist or craftsman’s skill level. Use the following formula to determine the quality of item that the character can routinely create, without the need of a skill roll: (2x skill level) + 10. Then compare the total, called the Effect Number, with the Level of Quality Table, above.

For example, Toshi has a Lacquer skill of 6. To determine the quality of item he can routinely create without requiring a die roll, he uses the formula above. Two times his skill level is 12, plus 10 gives a total of 22. Checking the Routine Quality Table, we see that Toshi can routinely create items of Above Average quality without requiring a skill check to do so.

Creating Items of Higher Than Routine Quality

Characters attempting to create items of a quality higher than their indicated “routine quality” must take extra time and then make a die roll. By moving down the Time Chart one step, the character may make a skill check using their Stat + Skill + 3d6 as normal, using the low number from the range of numbers for the desired quality of item from the Levels of Quality Table.

For example, if Toshi, who can routinely create items of Above Average quality, wished to try to create a Master quality item he will need to spend additional time (i.e., move one step down the Time Chart) and make a skill check with a DN of 26.

Success: If the skill check is successful then the item is created and of the higher quality.

Failure: A failed roll indicates that the item is created, but is only of the character’s routine quality; the quality of the item is not enhanced.

Critical Failure: On a critical failure the item is created, but of one step lower quality.

...for retainers to possess valuable articles is the same as if the master himself possessed them. Should the master still desire something of his retainers’, he should offer double its appropriate price. Otherwise, those retainers who learn of such acts will lose their desire to have such things and, in the end, famous heirlooms will be sent off to other provinces.

— Asakura Soteki
GAME RULES
TIME, INITIATIVE AND ACTIONS

Now that you’ve created a character, its time to use him in the gaming environment. This means learning how things work in the Fuzion system.

Fuzion uses two ways of measuring time. The first, Roleplaying Time, or “game time,” works just like it does in real life. It is divided into seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, etc. (or the Japanese equivalents).

The second way, Combat Time, is far more exacting. In combat or other situations calling for precise tracking of time, time is divided into three-second combat Phases. Four phases makes up one Round. Anything that takes longer than a phase is considered to be a long action, and will take at least 12 seconds (one Round) to complete. In extreme cases, you may even want to use minutes or hours to describe especially long actions.

INITIATIVE

Each Phase, every player (who isn’t unconscious or otherwise out of the fight) gets to do something during that phase. But who goes first? This is decided by determining initiative. There are two optional methods for determining initiative.

Simple Method

The character with the highest REF always acts first in a phase. They may also be allowed to hold their action (see Wait under Advanced Actions, page 205) and act later in the phase. The character with the next highest REF score acts next and so on. If the characters are still tied, then roll a die to break ties at the start of combat; the highest number goes first. This method is better for a group of characters vs. GM-run melees.

Optional Method

At the beginning of each phase, each character rolls three dice (3d6) and adds his Reflex characteristic + his skill score. The character with the highest total acts first for that phase (he is also allowed to wait, holding his action and act later in the phase.) The character with the next highest total acts next and so on. Roll an additional die to break ties; again, high number goes first.

Once the phase order has been determined, each character takes his action. Then the next character gets a chance to do their action, until all characters have had their chance to act. Then the sequence begins again with a new phase. This option is best for character vs. character melees.

IT’S MY TURN. NOW WHAT?

Once your turn to act comes up in the phase, you can start taking actions. Actions are basically things you can do within the span of a few seconds, like use a weapon, dodge, or even start an Action that may stretch over several phases (like picking a lock or writing a poem).

What Can I Do During My Turn?

You can do one thing each phase. This could include:

- Attack
- Move
- Dodge
- Non-combat action

Each one of these things would be considered an action.

Free Actions

These are things you can do automatically, without spending any of your actions. An example would be standing up, continuing any action already engaged or any “power” that doesn’t require a roll. To be sure, ask your Game Master (GM) which actions are free in his game.

DISTANCE AND MOVEMENT

Movement in Sengoku follows the basic rules outlined in Fuzion. However, there are specific rules that add a level of detail to the game. GMs are free to incorporate these rules or simply ignore them.

Distance is measured in either meters (1/2 ken) or feet (one shaku). You may, however, see some distances given in “inches.” One inch indicates one inch of distance on a map marked with squares or hexes. Thus, if you are using 25mm miniatures or figures on a map that has one-inch-wide hexes, one “inch” equals roughly two meters of game distance.

Movement is the distance a character can move in a single phase, which value is determined by the MOVE characteristic.

There are two movement scales: Figurative Movement and Literal Movement. Figurative Movement uses the raw MOVE score compared to another MOVE score to see which is faster. This is good for quick decisions regarding speed and distance. Literal Movement is a measurement of actual distance, and is best for realistic distances. As a general rule:

- Run: Multiply the character’s MOVE score by 2 meters (1 ken) per phase to determine his running or “combat” distance.
- Sprint: Multiply the character’s MOVE score by 3 meters (1.5 ken or 9 shaku) per phase for his noncombat or sprinting distance.
- Ri per Day: To calculate the distance a character can walk in one day, multiply the character’s MOVE by 2 ri (about 5 miles). Characters may increase this distance by buying the Forced March skill (see page 150).
- MPH: If you feel you need miles-per-hour ground speeds, multiply the Sprint, Run or basic Move score (whichever is being used) of the object by 2 mph. For example, with a Non-Combat (Sprint) Move of 15, Yoshio runs at 30 mph.
A few basic rules govern how you move during a phase:
• Objects accelerate or decelerate at a rate of 10 meters per Phase. Objects may decelerate at a rate equal to two times their Move score in meters per phase.
• Characters must spend one phase at a Run before they can move at a Sprint. (Characters need not spend one Phase at their base MOVE before accelerating to a Run, however.)
• Not surprisingly, you may not move through any solid person or object.

FACING
Facing is the direction your character is looking or, well, facing. Since some Fuzion-based games are played without maps, the rule is that you can face anything positioned forward of your shoulders (see the illustration on page 208).
When using a standard gaming hex map, characters can normally “face” through any three adjacent sides (not corners) of the hex they are standing in.

Line of Sight and Firing Arc
Facing is only part of the story. The other part is whether or not you can actually see and attack your intended target. This is called line of sight.

Shooting Blind
When something is between you and your target, it blocks your line of sight. You may still shoot at it (assuming your weapon can penetrate the obstacle) but will have to attack blind, making a Perception roll with a difficulty number determined by the GM. A successful roll allows you to shoot at a –2 to your REF; an unsuccessful roll increases this to –4.

Partial Cover
An obstacle may also only partially block your line of sight, allowing you to try and shoot around it. (see Line of Sight, below)

TErrAIN
Your movement will be slowed by the type of terrain you cross over. Terrain is rated as Easy, Rough and Very Rough and reduces your overall MOVE characteristic in the following manner:

### Basic Terrain Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terrain</th>
<th>Move Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Easy</td>
<td>No reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rough</td>
<td>Halves Move (x1/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very Rough</td>
<td>Quarters Move (x1/4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of terrain is decided by the GM based on the majority of the terrain you cross over during a Phase. For example, if you cross four meters (two ken) of Easy terrain and six meters (three ken) of Rough terrain, the GM may rule that it is Rough Terrain.

There are eight basic categories of terrain in SENGOKU: Mountain, Rough, Plain, Marsh, Sand, and Wooded, Water, and Shallows. The effect each type of terrain has the following effect on long distance travel:

### Sengoku Terrain Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terrain Type</th>
<th>Opt. 1 Move Modifier</th>
<th>Opt. 2 Move Cost per Hex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mountain</td>
<td>x 1/4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rough</td>
<td>x 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plains</td>
<td>x 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marsh</td>
<td>x 1/4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>x 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wooded</td>
<td>x 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>x 1/2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shallows</td>
<td>x 1/4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Modifiers**

- **Good road** x 2 -2
- **Poor road, path** x 1 +0

- **Mountain** land is typically forested, and includes steep, wooded hills, and all terrain above 1,000 shaku (about 300 meters) in elevation.
- **Rough** includes flatland that is strewn with small plants, rocky ground, hilly areas, sand dunes, and mountains to 1,000 shaku (about 300 meters).
- **Plains** include streets, roads, flatlands, valleys, mountain passes, and dry rice fields.
- **Marsh** includes muddy land after a rainstorm, swamps, or flooded paddies during planting season.
- **Sand** includes beaches or deserts.
- **Wooded** areas are generally hilly, but might also be undeveloped flatland.
- **Water** includes lakes, rivers, streams, etc., which must be crossed by swimming.

---

Rigid self-control is the beginning of valor.

— Japanese proverb
Shallows includes creeks, rivers, moats, and streams which may reach the armpits, and can be forded but with difficulty. Riding a horse through deep streams or rivers (i.e., water above the horse’s shoulder) requires a Riding (ba-jutsu) roll, DN 18. A failed roll indicates that the rider has lost control of his mount. The horse will refuse to move ahead and may in fact turn around and attempt to go back the way he came. A critical failure indicates the horse tries to throw its rider. A second Riding roll (DN 18) is then required to bring the horse under control and for the rider to stay mounted. Failing this second roll means the rider has been thrown into the water— you’d better hope you have Swimming (suiei-jutsu) if you’re wearing armor! If the horse must actually swim across, the rider must dismount and hold on to the saddle and paddle his way across with the horse. This will require a Swimming (suie-i-jutsu) roll, DN 14, and a Riding (ba-jutsu) roll, DN 18, to control the horse.

Weather Effects on Terrain

Japan is a country in which erratic weather is no major surprise. There are two impressive rainy seasons a year (the entire fourth and tenth months) during which more often than not there will be rainfall, and in the north the snowfall during winter can be prodigious. During inclement weather, people try to avoid travel if possible, but alas, sometimes there is no choice.

Weather Modifiers on Movement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weather</th>
<th>Move Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Light rain, snow flurries</td>
<td>No reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steady, driving rain or heavy snow</td>
<td>Halves Move (x1/2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typhoon, blizzard</td>
<td>Quarters Move (x1/4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rain: Rain typically will have little effect on travelers. Still, a steady, driving rain will cause problems. A bad rain will halve the Move rate, and typhoon (taifun) rains will quarter them. Thus, a traveler trying to reach a shrine on a mountainside during a typhoon will find himself moving a mere 1/16 of his normal Move score; if the traveler has a Move of 4, they will move 1 (whatever unit of measurement is being used) every 4 phases or 1 unit of measurement every round.

For example, Yasumaro is trying to get to get to the village of Hirota, and a storm is coming. His normal Move is 4. Trying to avoid the storm, he decides that cutting across the freshly planted (and sodden) rice paddies will be faster than taking the circuitous road, even if it means slogging through the paddies. Entering the paddies, which are Marsh, quarters his Move to 1. The storm hits suddenly, winds and rain pelt him, reducing his vision and his momentum by 1/2 again (to a Move of .5). If he decides to run, he will be moving at a Move of 1.

Snow: Snow that has fallen and is settled will have the same effect as steady, heavy rainfall, viz., it will halve the MOVE rate. Snow that is still falling, if light, will make no appreciable difference. A full-bore blizzard, however, will have the effect of typhoon rains and winds, and will quarter the MOVE rate.

Sea Travel

There are several types and conditions of water for boat travel, as well.

When there is a battle that can be won or a castle that can be taken, to concern oneself with the fortuitous day or direction and let time pass is extremely regrettable. There will be little value in sending a ship out in a storm or having a single man face great numbers even if the day is propitious.

— Asakura Toshikage
**TAKING ACTION**

Whenever your character tries to do something (called taking an Action), there’s always the question of whether he’ll succeed or fail. Sometimes the task is so easy that it’s obvious; for instance, taking a step forward without falling down. In those cases you’ll just tell the GM what you’re doing; no die roll is needed.

But if you’re trying to take a step on the deck of a ship pitching wildly in a driving rainstorm, walking might be very difficult indeed. That’s where Task Resolution comes in. All tasks in Fuzion games are resolved with the same formula: take the relevant characteristic and add to it the relevant skill, resulting in an Action Value (AV). Then add a die roll to your AV to create an Action Total (AT). Compare the resulting action total to a Difficulty Number ( DN). If you equal or exceed the difficulty number, you succeed.

The formula is:

Your AV (Characteristic + Skill) + a Die Roll vs. the DN (Difficulty Number) + 10 (or a Die Roll)

**WHICH CHARACTERISTIC?**

Usually common sense will tell you which characteristic to use. Below are guidelines to help you determine the appropriate characteristic to use in a given situation or with a given skill (or the GM can decide if it’s in dispute).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat</th>
<th>Used for...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intelligence (INT)</td>
<td>Memory, problem solving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willpower (WILL)</td>
<td>Ability to face danger, fear, and stress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence (PRE)</td>
<td>Interactions with others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aesthetics (AES)</td>
<td>Appreciation of art, beauty and nature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piety (PIE)</td>
<td>Strength of one’s faith, religious conviction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kao (KAO)</td>
<td>Social situations involving status, honor or rank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexes (REF)</td>
<td>Fighting and animal control skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexterity (DEX)</td>
<td>Physical Abilities, dodging, athletics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technique (TECH)</td>
<td>Manipulating tools, instruments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constitution (CON)</td>
<td>Resistance to pain, disease, and shock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength (STR)</td>
<td>Muscle mass and physical power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body (BODY)</td>
<td>Overall size, mass or weight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement (MOVE)</td>
<td>Running, swimming feats.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WHICH SKILL?**

The GM will usually decide which skill fits the task best.

For example, when attacking with a weapon, use the appropriate weapon skill for that weapon, or if you’re using an unarmed martial art, use the appropriate unarmed combat skill. If riding a horse, use your Riding (ba-jutsu) skill instead, and so on.

**DICE**

SENGOKU uses three six-sided dice (abbreviated as 3d6) to determine the Action Total of any task. Standard six-sided dice (d6) are used for damage, as well.

**What’s The Difficulty Number?**

The difficulty number (DN) is a number you must roll equal or higher than with your combined characteristic + skill + a die roll.

**Opposed Vs. Unopposed Skill Rolls**

Skill rolls are either Opposed and Unopposed:

Opposed: When attempting a task against another character, such as attacking someone, the difficulty number (DN) is determined by the characteristic + skill of the character opposing you, plus 10.

For example, Torajirô swings his katana at an opponent, who has a Dexterity of 4 and an Evade score of 2. Torajima’s Difficulty Number is $4 + 2 + 10 = 16$.

Unopposed: When attempting a task involving non-living objects or an ability, the difficulty number is given to you by the GM, based on how tough he thinks the task is. These DNs do not add die rolls or a value of 10. They are determined by using the Universal Difficulty Numbers Table below, with the equivalent power levels for various SENGOKU campaigns noted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Universal Difficulty Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Task is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremely difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legendary (near impossible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never been done before &amp; never will again!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GMs should use these values as guidelines; feel free to use modifiers (pg. 202 and 219) to make it more or less difficult.

---

To talk about other people’s affairs is a great mistake. To praise them, too, is unfitting. In any event, it is best to know your own ability well, to put forth effort in your endeavors and to be discreet in speech.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**DNs—The easy way**

If the GM doesn’t have the Universal Difficulty Numbers Table handy, there’s an easy way to get the right difficulty number: Ask the player for his Action Total, then assign a difficulty number in relation to that total: A very simple easy task adds +6 the DN, an easy task adds +8, a difficult task adds +12, and a really tough task adds +14.

**Automatic Successes**

The GM can also choose to automatically count as a success any task where the player’s Characteristic + Skill total already meets or beats the difficulty number.

**USING YOUR SKILLS**

Using your skills is the most common kind of action outside of combat. The first step in using a skill is determining what characteristic you’re going to use and which skill to pair it up with when you do something.

**Which Characteristic Do I Use?**

In general, common sense should tell you which characteristic to use for a particular task, or the GM can decide if there’s a dispute; however, the following guidelines will usually apply in almost any case:

The most important thing is to look at the type of task you’re trying to perform. This will determine the most applicable characteristic upon which to base your skill. One side-effect of this method is that you may often find the same skill being combined with different characteristics, depending on circumstances and the way in which you want to use that skill.

For example, if you’re playing a piece of music and trying to make it technically perfect, you might use your Technique characteristic in combination with your Music skill. But if you were trying to sway an audience to tears with the beauty of your playing, you could use your Aesthetic characteristic in combination with your Music skill instead. Each uses the same skill, but each choice stresses very different aspects of using that skill!

**Which Skill Do I Use?**

The overriding rule here is that the GM will always be the final arbiter of which skill should be used to make an attempt at a task. Beyond that, common sense is the best guideline. If you’re using a weapon, your skill choice may be pretty simple—use the skill that requires he honor your request. The ability to bend skills to add to character and even call upon a little known gambler’s Ki you’ve been hoarding.

**When You Don’t Have a Skill**

Sometimes, you just don’t have a skill to use—that is, you don’t have any score at all in the necessary skill. In these cases, there are two options the GM can use.

The first is the “Outta Luck” option—you just don’t get a skill to add to your characteristic. Your character doesn’t know anything about what he is trying to do, and is totally relying on a characteristic and dumb luck (a good time to use that Karma or Ki you’ve been hoarding).

The second route is the Cultural Familiarity option. In most societies, there are very few things that can be done that aren’t described in some manner or other; people shoot guns in movies; legends describe how the hero used his sword, Tom Clancy novels tell all about how submarines work. Cultural familiarity assumes the more widely educated you are, the more chance you may have run across something relating to what you’re about to attempt. Therefore, whenever you don’t have a skill that will apply, you can gain one point for every three points your character has in his General Knowledge skill. Because characters start with 2 points of General Knowledge as an Everyman skill, one additional point of General Knowledge will be enough to get you a start. Use of the above rule is, of course, subject to the decision of the GM.

**Improving Skill Rolls**

Besides the basic ways of using skills, there are a few other variations that can improve your chances:

**Trying Again:** If you fail a skill check, you can’t try again until your check has improved for some reason; e.g., you took longer, used a better tool, or made a complementary skill check.

**Complementary Skills:** A complementary skill check is one in which the use of one skill directly affects the use of a subsequent skill.

For example, if you are a singer and need to sway a crowd, a very good Music skill check would make the swaying (Persuasion) a lot easier.

As a rule of thumb:

At the GM’s discretion, a good roll in one skill may have a bonus effect on the subsequent use of a related skill. This bonus will be in a ratio of +1 bonus point for every 5 points rolled above 14 (where 14 is the DN for the complementary skill).

Example: Yasunobu wants to convince a popular court lady to spend the night with him (Persuasion). By making a really good Poetry roll, he could increase his Persuasion by dazzling her with his class and erudition. Yasunobu has a DN of 18 for his Poetry roll. He rolls a total of 29, giving him a +2 to his Persuasion roll due to the moving poem recital.

This bonus will usually only affect a subsequent attempt once. One really high Poetry and Calligraphy roll won’t allow Yasunobu to convince the lady to marry him; it just helps get him some of her time. The rest is up to fate.

This bonus should only involve the interaction of one skill attempt on one other skill attempt.
Taking Extra Time
Taking extra time can also give you a bonus to your skill roll. For every level on the Time Table used beyond the amount of time the GM assigns to the task, add +1 to the Skill Roll. Example: The GM says a task will take 1 minute. If the character takes 5 minutes to perform the task, he gets a +1 bonus to the Skill Roll.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Time Table</th>
<th>Japanese Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuzion Time</td>
<td>Byô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Phase (= 3 seconds)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Round (= 12 seconds)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Rounds (= 1 minute)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Minutes</td>
<td>2/3 Koku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Minutes</td>
<td>~3 Koku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>1/2 Toki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Hours</td>
<td>3 Toki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day</td>
<td>12 Toki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Days</td>
<td>1/2 Shu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Month</td>
<td>1 Toshi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Season (3 Months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CRITICAL SUCCESS
A critical success is when you get lucky and manage to succeed at something you normally would have a snowball’s chance in Jigoku to accomplish. In game play, this is simulated by allowing you to roll additional dice which are then added to the original roll to enhance it’s effects.

This optional rule provides a chance for an extreme result in combat, which can increase the drama of the situation.

A critical success occurs whenever the attacker succeeds by 7 or more points on the skill roll or whenever the attacker rolls a natural 18 on 3d6. The result of a critical success in combat is that the attacker may choose to do the maximum damage possible for the weapon used.

Maximum Weapon Damage
The maximum damage that can be done by a weapon is twice its base damage.

For example, a tantō rated at 1 DC (or 1d6) can do a maximum of 2 DC (2d6), no matter what the wielder’s STR may be.

CRITICAL FAILURE
Sometimes even the best of the best have a bad day. A critical failure is the result with any roll of 3, 4 or 5 on 3d6.

On a critical failure, when striking at something solid (armor or an opponent’s weapon count), a 3 means the attacker’s weapon breaks. A 4 or 5 is treated as a fumble: a 4 is a complete drop of the weapon, requiring the PC to pause to regain it or to acquire another weapon; a 5 is a fumble that is regainable, but the PC loses any opportunity to attack in the next round. It is up to the player whether their character regains the fumble (no die roll required). Otherwise, the result of a fumble depends on the weapon in use and the GM’s idea of what might be plausible or dramatic. Commonly, fumbles may involve tripping, dropping a weapon, striking the wrong target, or the weapon breaking or becoming stuck.

Critical Failure Table
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>If striking solid object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Weapon/item used to strike with breaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Weapon/item dropped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Regainable fumble (lose attack next Round if regained)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6+</td>
<td>GM’s discretion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFORMING ACTIONS
In Fuzion, each player can perform one action per Phase. But what kind of actions can you perform when your chance comes up? And how do they all work together?

In general, there are two kinds of Actions in Fuzion: Basic Actions, which are simple descriptions of tasks you’ll want to

It is spiritless to think that you cannot attain to that which you have seen and heard the masters attain. The masters are men. You are also a man. If you think that you will be inferior in doing something, you will be on that road very soon.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
perform during your phase, and Advanced Actions, which represent more sophisticated maneuvers that add strategy and tactics to your game play. Both have advantages—Basic in speed, Advanced in subtlety.

The following section discusses Basic Actions a character can perform, each explained. Advanced Actions are described on the following pages in their own section. Both also have useful summary pages to recap what each action means.

### Basic Action Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attack</td>
<td>Make Attack (optionally, add modifiers); autofire attacks count as one Action. Kicks do +1d6 at –1 to hit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block</td>
<td>Stops any one attack with a successful Defensive Roll vs the Attacker’s Attack roll. You attack first next Phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dodge</td>
<td>Makes you harder to hit against all attacks this Phase — adds +3 DV, but you cannot attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get Up</td>
<td>Get up from being prone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grab</td>
<td>–2 to perform; grab target or gadget; –3 Defense for both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move</td>
<td>Move up to your full Move score and perform one other action, except Run or Sprint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Move up to your full Non Combat Move (a Run).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprint</td>
<td>Move up to your full Combat Move (a Sprint).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Action</td>
<td>Any single action not otherwise specified, such as reloading a bow, mounting a horse, changing weapons, using a skill, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>Throw one object (–4 if object not made for throwing).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Basic Action Descriptions

**Attack:** Use a weapon, power, or physical combat skill to harm an opponent. There are many modifiers that can affect your chance to do this (see Combat Modifiers, page 209). Specific weapons may have other modifiers to take into account as well.

**Block:** Use this action to deflect attacks. In general, this means stopping a specific melee or hand-to-hand attack in addition to your normal defense value. When blocking an attack, make an unarmed combat or melee weapon skill roll against the roll which your attacker already got past your defense roll. If the roll is successful, the attack is blocked. After being blocked, the attacker is put off balance, and must act after the target next Phase regardless of normal Phase order.

This is a good time to introduce the Rock, Paper, Scissors Rule explained. Advanced Actions are described on the following pages in their own section. Both also have useful summary pages to recap what each action means.

As a rule of thumb, always remember:
- Wood damages Flesh
- Metal damages Wood
- Energy damages Metal

**Dodge:** Use this Action to make yourself harder to hit. Instead of attacking, you may declare that you are actively dodging and gain +3 to your Defense Value against all attacks that phase.

**Get Up:** Use this action to stand up after being knocked down.

**Grab:** Use this action to get a grip on an opponent, a weapon, a gadget, or something else. A successful grab allows the attacker to hold, pin, choke or throw his opponent; he may also attempt to grab a weapon from his opponent’s grasp. Use an opposed skill check to see if you can break out of a grab (use STR Characteristic plus Athletics or appropriate martial arts skill (whichever is higher); the attacker suffers –2 to his roll. When Grabbed, both grabber and grabbee are –3 DEX to all other attacks. The grabber can choose to do his full STR in damage (STR d6) to the grabbee each phase.

**Half Move:** Allows a character to move up to their full Move characteristic in meters that phase, plus perform one other action, except Run or Sprint.

**Run (Combat Move):** Allows character to move up to their full Running characteristic that phase.

**Sprint (Non-Combat Move):** Use this action to move faster each phase—up to your full Sprint speed, but at 1/2 DEX and 0 REF while doing so (your character is easier to hit).

**Other Action:** Use this action for anything not covered by other Actions, like reloading, taking off your shirt, opening a door, or anything else you can think of. How long an action takes is up to the GM; they may well decide that what you describe takes several Phases to perform, or it may have modifiers on your DEX. Some common “other” actions: drawing a weapon, mounting or dismounting a horse, preparing a bow to be fired, and so on. All of these actions take up your full phase.

**Throw:** This allows the attacker to use a thrown weapon (stone, grenade, cup). The character must be able to lift the object, and the object may be thrown using the character’s Throwing skill or Athletics skill (at -2 AV). Improvised, non-aerodynamic objects can be thrown at +4 DN.

### Round Sequence Summary

Each Phase, roll one die and add your REF. During this three-second segment, do the following:

1. **Choose Your Action:** You have one action each phase. These actions can be attacks or involve other types of activity. If attacking go to 2.; if not, skip down to 4.

2. **Check Line of Sight:** You can attack anything positioned forwards of your shoulders, as long as nothing else is in the way.

3. **Check Range:** Each attack has a range, listed in meters. If using figures, assume one figure is approximately equal to roughly two meters (one ken) of range from top to base. If you are in range, you can attack.

4. **Resolve Action:** See Taking Action (p. 201). In general, roll 3d6 and add to your Characteristic + Skill. If the action was an Attack, go to [5]. If not, go on to NEXT PHASE [6].

5. **Resolve Damage:** If you hit, roll a number of six-sided dice equal to the Damage Class (pg. 210) of the Attack.

6. **Go to Next Phase:** Start again with the process.

---

Even if it seems certain that you will lose, retaliate. Neither wisdom nor technique has a place in this.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
### Advanced Actions

These are other Actions you can take besides the Basic ones. Remember that even this list is only a fraction of the possible maneuvers you may want to invent or add to your campaigns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abort</td>
<td>Interrupt opponent’s action to use a defense (dodge, block, dive for cover), at cost of your upcoming action this phase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aim</td>
<td>Each phase spent aiming adds +1 to AV, up to +3; no other action possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choke Hold</td>
<td>A grab at –4 REF, 2d6 killing attack. You can’t talk while being choked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disarm</td>
<td>Knock opponent’s weapon from hand. A critical success breaks the weapon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dive for Cover</td>
<td>Avoid an area attack. Defender makes REF + Athletics (or combat) skill roll vs. DN 8, +1 Difficulty per each extra meter (three shakuh distance dived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draw &amp; Attack</td>
<td>Draw weapon and attack in one Action. +3 DN to attack. This penalty can be negated with the Iai-jutsu skill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entangle</td>
<td>Immobilize opponent until he can make an escape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escape</td>
<td>Escape from Grabs or Entangles, using STR + Athletics (or combat) skill vs opponent’s STR + Athletics (or combat) skill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haymaker</td>
<td>+3d6 damage, with –3 to REF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move By</td>
<td>Full Move and HTH attack during movement with a –2 penalty to REF &amp; DEX. Damage = half of STR + 1 die for every 10 meters (five ken) moved. You will also take one third (1/3) of that damage yourself (rounding down).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move Through</td>
<td>Full move (up to Run) and melee attack at end of move, +1 DN for every 10 meters moved and -3 DEX until next action. Damage = STR + 1d6 for every 30 meters (15 ken) moved; you will also take one half of that damage yourself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recover</td>
<td>–5 to Defense Value, get Recovery score in Stun points back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweep/Trip</td>
<td>Opponent falls; takes –2 penalty to his REF next phase, must spend an action to get back up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wait</td>
<td>Wait for a chance to take your action or hold an action until later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Advanced Action Descriptions

The following Actions are also available to characters using a melee weapon. In addition to these, some weapons allow a special martial arts maneuver if the user possesses the appropriate bugei (martial skill) for that weapon.

**Abort:** Characters who are being attacked, and who have yet to take their Round, may “abort” to a defensive maneuver (Block, Dodge, or Dive For Cover) using their upcoming action. Characters continue to do this defensive action until they can act again in the next Phase.

**Aim:** This action allows you to improve your chances to hit with a ranged weapon (only). Each action spent aiming adds +1 to your attack, up to three actions total. Aiming assumes a steady, braced position, no movement, and a clear chance to track your target.

**Choke Hold:** A two-hand or one arm Grab maneuver (unless you’re really big and your GM allows you to use one hand or arm). Once a successful choke hold is established, the choker will do 2d6 in killing damage unless the choke is broken by the victim.

**Disarm:** On a successful Attack roll, you have a chance to knock something from the opponent’s hand at no penalty. The attacker gets a STR + unarmed combat versus the defender’s STR + Unarmed combat skill score. Unarmed Combat roll; if the attacker wins, the defender drops the weapon. Use the Missed Missile Weapon table (pg. 215) to determine where the weapon falls, with your opponent in the center.

**Dive For Cover:** This action allows you to get out of the way of explosions and area effect attacks. You make a Defense roll (using an appropriate Hand-to-Hand or Athletics roll if allowed by the GM), against a Difficulty Number based on the distance (base DN of 8 for one meter, or three shaku, +1 difficulty for every extra meter). If the roll is failed, you didn’t dodge fast enough and/or far enough and were caught by the attack effects.

Diving for cover can be performed by holding an action (just in case) or by aborting to your next action if you have not yet taken your Round.

**Draw & Attack:** By declaring this action at the start of the round, you are effectively trying to “fast draw” on your opponents. This allows you to draw and use a weapon in one action, instead of the normal two, but imposes a –3 penalty on your attack. If you have taken the skill Iai-jutsu (or Fast Draw) this penalty is negated when fast-drawing.

**Entangle:** This allows the character to use any entangling type of attack (manrikigusari, kawanaga, etc.) to immobilize an opponent, ensnare a limb or object (such as that dangerous sword sticking out of the ronin’s belt). The attack is made using the skill for that weapon against the target’s defense roll (DV). An entangled character must act as though a Grab has been made; he may not be able to move or attack until he escapes (GM’s discretion), based on the circumstances. For example, Hideo flings his manrikigusari (chain) at an opponent, and is attempting a Grab maneuver around the opponent’s throat (-6 AV for a called shot to the throat). Chunai is successful, and the GM decides to treat the attack as a Choke Hold, although the choking opponent can still move his arms and take an action.

**Escape:** This is the action of freeing yourself from physical holds, chokes, entanglements or simple traps (like snares or nets). This requires a separate roll using your STR + Athletics (or Hand to Hand skills) against the holder’s Athletics (or Hand to Hand) skills plus their Strength. Example: Although Genpachi’s Athletics is 7, his STR is only 3. Shinbei’s Athletics is only 3, but his STR is 10. The extra 3-point edge easily allows Shinbei to hold Genpachi immobilized.

If pitted against a trap, you will use your STR + Athletics against a difficulty number set by the GM. On a successful roll, you are free of the hold and may move again. Hand to Hand or Tech-based Skills may also be used in default of Athletics if the GM agrees.

---

*A real man does not think of victory or defeat. He plunges recklessly towards an irrational death. By doing this, you will awaken from your dreams.*

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**Haymaker:** You throw caution to the wind and put everything into a single full-out physical move (a swing, punch, or blow). This gives you a damage bonus of +3 dice, but imposes a +3 DN to the roll because you’re not worrying about keeping your balance, aiming, and so on. This maneuver is seldom used by disciplined warriors.

**Move By:** This action lets you use up to your full Move and make a hand-to-hand or melee attack (only) at any point along that movement, at a penalty of −2 to your REF and DEX. You do your half STR damage plus 1 die for every 10 meters (five ken) moved during that phase. You will also take one third of that damage yourself if striking with a part of your body (a punch, kick, etc); if attacking with a weapon, the weapon takes one third of the damage.

**Move Through:** This action lets you use up to your full Move and make a hand-to-hand or melee attack (only) at the end of that movement, at a REF penalty of −1 for every 10 meters (five ken) moved and −3 to DEX. You do your STR damage plus 1 die for every 5m moved. You also take half that damage yourself if striking with a body part (a punch, kick, etc); if attacking with a weapon, the weapon takes one half the damage.

** Recover:** Recovering gives you back Stun (and Endurance, if using that derived characteristic) equal to your Recovery score. If you choose to Recover for your action, you can do nothing else that phase. If you suffer damage while recovering, you may not recover Stun points that Phase. You are at −5 DEX while Recovering.

**Sweep/Trip:** You put out a foot and send him sprawling. On a success, you need not roll. On a failure, you roll because you're not worrying about maintaining your balance, aiming, and so on. If you have a +2 DC to your AV due to the Turned weapon, you can roll with the blow. This gives you a damage bonus of +3 dice, but imposes a −2 DN to the roll because you’re not worrying about keeping your balance, aiming, and so on. This is a common maneuver in many chanbara films; many a swordsman has found himself in a contest of strength over who got to move his blade first after locking blades with an opponent.

**Move By:** This action lets you use up to your full Move and make a hand-to-hand or melee attack (only) at any point along that movement, at a penalty of −2 to your REF and DEX. You do your half STR damage plus 1 die for every 10 meters (five ken) moved during that phase. You will also take one third of that damage yourself if striking with a part of your body (a punch, kick, etc); if attacking with a weapon, the weapon takes one third of the damage.

**Move Through:** This action lets you use up to your full Move and make a hand-to-hand or melee attack (only) at the end of that movement, at a REF penalty of −1 for every 10 meters (five ken) moved and −3 to DEX. You do your STR damage plus 1 die for every 5m moved. You also take half that damage yourself if striking with a body part (a punch, kick, etc); if attacking with a weapon, the weapon takes one half the damage.

**Recover:** Recovering gives you back Stun (and Endurance, if using that derived characteristic) equal to your Recovery score. If you choose to Recover for your action, you can do nothing else that phase. If you suffer damage while recovering, you may not recover Stun points that Phase. You are at −5 DEX while Recovering.

**Sweep/Trip:** You put out a foot and send him sprawling. On a success, you need not roll. On a failure, you roll because you're not worrying about maintaining your balance, aiming, and so on. If you have a +2 DC to your AV due to the Turned weapon, you can roll with the blow. This gives you a damage bonus of +3 dice, but imposes a −2 DN to the roll because you’re not worrying about keeping your balance, aiming, and so on. This is a common maneuver in many chanbara films; many a swordsman has found himself in a contest of strength over who got to move his blade first after locking blades with an opponent.

**Roll With The Blow:** This action allows you to take less damage from an attack, if successful. You can abort to this action after the opponent has successfully struck you, but before damage is rolled, assuming you’ve not yet taken an action that Phase. To roll with the blow, use your DEX + Evade (or DEX + unarmed combat skill) as the Action Value against the attacker’s REF + Weapon Skill as the DV. This Action is −1 to your AV, and −2 to your DV. If successful, the attacker rolls the damage normally, and your defense (your armor) is applied normally. Then you halve the resulting Stun and Hits, before subtracting them from your totals.

**Use Bow:** This action lets you fire an arrow. The archer takes a DEX penalty of -1 or -2 when doing so, as listed in the Missile Weapon Table (pg. 168).

**Yari Charge:** (Mounted combat only.) This action thrusts the yari deeply into the target, and thus can only be used once, as the lance breaks or cannot be withdrawn. +1 DC (+1d6) if the horse does a Move; +2 DC (+2d6) if the horse does a Run. The yari damage is treated as armor piercing for this attack (halves the effect of any armor).

## Lifting and Throwing

One type of action that doesn’t fall into the realm of the everyday in Fuzion-based games are feats of strength. This is one place where reality must compromise with fiction, since many settings...
deal with superheroes or super-powered characters as well as more realistic types.

For most characters you can simply use one Strength scale to determine one's might. But how do you explain the abilities of special heroes? How can a well built (but not exceptionally so) hero—or a small courtesan layered in court robes and having no visible muscles at all—lift a palanquin and throw it? Even if a human could lift a mountain, the distribution of weight around him would either (a) drive him into the ground like a nail; (b) punch a man-sized hole through the bottom of the mountain, or (c) break the mountain in half. After all, what's holding up the parts of the ship where our hero's hands aren't?

It's pretty obvious that “entertainment” physics isn't like regular physics. That's why the Strength Table (below) can be “dialed” to suit the reality level of your campaign. That way, characters with incredible Strength can lift the amazing weights that they do in manga (comic books); even though reality doesn't support this concept (or them).

### STR Mods by Campaign Level

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Campaign Style</th>
<th>Modify current STR by:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Historic (Competent)</td>
<td>−2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chanbara (Incredible)</td>
<td>+0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anime (Superheroic)</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Strength Table below is for deadlifting the weight to waist (or dragging it). Pressing it overhead would be half of your Lift, carrying (at 1/2 normal Move), pushing or lifting it for throwing would be reduced to one fourth of the listed weight. This is also the column used for determining how much armor a character can effectively wear.

### Pushing

In a campaign where Endurance (see page 104) is used, the GM may allow characters to exert extra effort in emergencies; this pushing allows the characters to increase their STR up to a maximum of two additional levels (i.e., +2 STR). Pushing costs 5 points of END per phase for every extra level of STR (i.e., 5 END per +1 STR) your character calls upon. When you run out of END, you burn STUN points instead, until you pass out. The GM may even allow greater pushes (beyond 2 extra STR) in extraordinary circumstances, by requiring a successful WILL + Concentration or WILL + Meditation (meiso) roll at DN 18 be made at the time.

GMs are cautioned against allowing characters to use Ki at the same time as pushing. While appropriate for Anime-level games, and possibly even Chanbara level games, such a combination does allow a character to achieve a STR of more than 10, which is not advised for Historic level games. Ultimately it is up to the GM as to whether or not to allow these occasional feats of super strength.

### Throwing Things

Compare the weight of the object to the closest approximate weight on the Throw Modifier table. Important: You must be able to lift the object in order to throw it (no cheating). Then subtract the throw modifier value from your current Throw (STR+4). Add +1 if the object is aerodynamic; also add +1 if it’s balanced for throwing. Find your new Throw on the Distance Table (below) to determine how far you can throw the object. If the Throw is below .5, you can’t throw it.

### Strength Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STR</th>
<th>Dead Lift Kg / Lbs</th>
<th>Press Overhead Kg / Lbs</th>
<th>Carry*/Push Throw Kg / Lbs</th>
<th>Dead Lift Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>36 / 72</td>
<td>18 / 36</td>
<td>9 / 18</td>
<td>Child, armor chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>50 / 110</td>
<td>25 / 55</td>
<td>12 / 27</td>
<td>Adult female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>72 / 158</td>
<td>36 / 79</td>
<td>18 / 40</td>
<td>Adult male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>100 / 220</td>
<td>50 / 110</td>
<td>25 / 55</td>
<td>Adult in armor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>144 / 317</td>
<td>72 / 158</td>
<td>36 / 79</td>
<td>Kago &amp; passenger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>200 / 440</td>
<td>100 / 220</td>
<td>50 / 110</td>
<td>Sumōtōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>288 / 634</td>
<td>144 / 317</td>
<td>72 / 158</td>
<td>Man-sized statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>400 / 880</td>
<td>200 / 440</td>
<td>100 / 220</td>
<td>Imperial Oxcart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>575 / 1,265</td>
<td>288 / 634</td>
<td>144 / 317</td>
<td>Horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.1t / 1.2t</td>
<td>400 / 880</td>
<td>200 / 440</td>
<td>Buffalo, sm boulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2.5t / 2.7t</td>
<td>575 / 1.3t</td>
<td>288 / 634</td>
<td>Galley, lg boulder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* (Includes the wearing of armor and carrying of weapons and equipment.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wt (Kg)</th>
<th>Wt (Lbs)</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Modify Throw</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 2 kg</td>
<td>&lt; 4 lbs</td>
<td>Rock</td>
<td>−0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 kg</td>
<td>4 lbs</td>
<td>Yari</td>
<td>−1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 kg</td>
<td>9 lbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>−2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 kg</td>
<td>20 lbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>−3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 kg</td>
<td>40 lbs</td>
<td>Small Child</td>
<td>−4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 kg</td>
<td>72 lbs</td>
<td>Child</td>
<td>−5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72 kg</td>
<td>158 lbs</td>
<td>Adult Male</td>
<td>−6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143 kg</td>
<td>317 lbs</td>
<td>Kago &amp; passenger</td>
<td>−7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>287 kg</td>
<td>634 lbs</td>
<td>Small horse</td>
<td>−8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>575 kg</td>
<td>1,265 lbs</td>
<td>Cow, water buffal</td>
<td>−9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MELEE

This is where we cover the actual rules for sword-slashing, shuriken-tossing, arrow-throwing combat. It sounds complex, but it’s not, really. Once you get the hang of it, these mechanics will just vanish into the background as you play.

STRIKE

This basic attack action includes punches and kicks, as well as attacks using swords, clubs, knives and other melee weapons. In general, a strike can be defined as any attack made with a body part or something which is powered by the strength of the body. The simplest Attack, it involves only four steps: Facing, Range, Line of Sight and Modifiers.

A NOTE ABOUT USING FIGURES AND HEX MATS

Fuzion games use the “one meter = one yard” rule. Since Sengoku takes place in feudal Japan, we also sometimes annotate measurements in shaku (approximately one foot) and ken (three shaku) as Japanese standards of measure. Players familiar with the Fuzion game system or who otherwise don’t desire to use the Japanese measurements are free to ignore them. They can, however, help add flavor to the game, especially if they are used by the characters when talking about distances (i.e., when roleplaying or speaking “in character”).

Using Figures

The two meter or one ken length corresponds approximately to the height of a tall Japanese (especially one wearing a helmet), so this allows you to use almost any size of figure in play—the actual figure becomes a useful two meter or one-ken “yardstick” to measure distances. Army men, action figures, cardboard figures, even fashion dolls—anything can work with this simple scale system.

Several companies produce lines of metal (usually pewter) 25mm and 15mm figures, which make great play aids for Sengoku.

Using Hex Mats

Using a hex mat or photocopied hex paper could prove very useful. Commercial vinyl mats marked with hexes can be drawn on with water-based colored markers, and they prove excellent for keeping track of which character is where during combat.

If you are using standard, 25mm figures, you will want a mat with one inch (25mm) or half-inch (15mm) hexes. If using the larger 25mm hexes, each hex equals two meters (two ken or six shaku) in distance. This is the same scale used in Hero System games. Mats with 15mm or one-half inch hexes can also be used; just remember that each of these smaller hexes will represent one meter (three shaku). This is the same scale used in GURPS.

FACING AND RANGE

Facing is the direction you are pointing. Since many Fuzion-based games are played “in head” (without maps), the standing rule is that you can clearly face anything that is positioned forward of your shoulders. When using a standard gaming hex map, characters “face” through any three adjacent sides of the hex they are standing in (see illustration).

Range: Can I Reach Out and Hit it?

As a rule, melee attacks can hit any target within 2 meters of you; this defined as Melee Range. This applies to unarmed combat attacks (using feet or hands) as well as weapons identified as having a Short range. Some weapons are considered Medium range, and can hit any target within 4 meters. Polearms and other Long range melee weapons can hit anything within 6 meters of you; this is Extended Melee Range and is applicable only to these weapons.

Line of Sight

Line of sight deals with whether anything’s between you and your target. Line of sight can be:

- **Clear**: There’s nothing in the way; go ahead and swing.
- **Obscured**: There’s something that may block a clear view, but won’t block a swing, such as smoke or darkness. You can’t see who you’re fighting (the enemy is invisible, in darkness, in ambush, or because you’re dazzled), each phase you must make a Perception Roll (GM sets the difficulty number). If the roll is successful, the penalty is –2 to all subsequent Attack and Defense Values that phase. If the Perception roll is unsuccessful, the penalty increases to –4.
- **Blocked**: There’s something in the way that you can’t get through. Or, if the target is only partially blocked, swing at what you can reach. Determine how much is exposed, then modify your roll.

Being short-tempered is inappropriate, but it cannot be said that two men who face each other in combat are cowards.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
MODIFIERS: WHAT ARE MY CHANCES TO HIT?

Combat modifiers take into account the conditions of the battle. Modifiers are always applied to offensive rolls. You may use some, none, or all of these rules:

### Melee Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moving target</td>
<td>−1 per 10 meters the target moves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aimed body shot:</td>
<td>−1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>−2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arms, shoulders, thighs</td>
<td>−3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legs, hands, feet</td>
<td>−4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>−5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitals, head</td>
<td>−6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blinded by light, dust, metsubishi</td>
<td>−4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiny Target (bullseye, 1–3&quot;)</td>
<td>−3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Target (1 foot or smaller)</td>
<td>−2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Improvised weapon (rock, stick)</td>
<td>−2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Surprise!**

An attack that surprises the target, such as an ambush or a backstab, gives the attacker a +5 offensive bonus to their AV for that attack (but no initiative bonus). To lay an ambush requires both of the following conditions:

- The opponent is unaware of your location and intention to attack. He may only detect you with a successful Perception roll.
- The opponent’s attention is distracted or focused on another situation, such as another attack or a difficult task.

**MAKING THE ATTACK**

In combat, the attacker combines his skill in his chosen weapon (or unarmed combat skill) with his REF plus a die roll to create an Attack Total. He may also have to add or subtract certain modifiers from this Attack Total to determine the final outcome.

**Example:** an attacking character with a REF Characteristic of 5, an Atemi-waza skill of 6 and a die roll of 6 has an Attack Total of 17. A −2 modifier for an aimed shot in this Round brings this down to 15.

The defender combines his DEX + Evade (or another skill like Swords or Ju-jutsu, if GM permits), plus 10.

**Example:** a character with DEX of 4, an Evade skill of +3 plus a flat value of 10 (we’ll assume he’s using the 3d6 method of Task Resolution) has a DV of 17. The two rolls are then compared; if the Attack Total is equal or greater than the DV (i.e., if the total roll is 17 or higher), you hit.

**Weapon Accuracy**

Weapon accuracy (WA) reflects the difference in quality between weapons, and their effect on their user’s abilities. The better and easier to use the weapon is, the better you use it. Likewise, the worse the weapon’s WA... To use them, just apply the WA (listed on the melee weapon chart) to your Attack roll as with any other modifier.

**WHO GOES FIRST?**

Characters roll Reflex + Combat Skill + 3d6 to determine who goes first. This rewards characters with greater Reflex and weapon/skill training.

In the case of Iaijutsu fast-draws: Characters using *Iai-jutsu* automatically gain initiative over anyone who must first ready a weapon (as long as the character using *Iai-jutsu* is not surprised); thereafter, for the remainder of the combat, they use the regular method of determining initiative.

**MELEE COMBAT MODIFIERS**

The following modifiers are used with melee weapons.

**Weapon Length**

Weapons are rated as either *Short* (fists, knives, etc.), *Medium* (most weapons), or *Long* (such as pole arms or spears). If attacking a target with a weapon 1 rank longer, the attacker is −1 REF (i.e., Short vs. Medium, or Medium vs. Long); 2 ranks longer, −2 REF (Short vs. Long). Short weapons roll 2d6+1 on the Hit Location Table rather than 3d6.

**Option:** The REF penalty is −2 per rank, until you hit, then it’s reversed, as you’re inside the longer weapon’s reach. The longer weapon can resume the standard distance either by successfully attacking or by a Retreat action.

**Stun Attacks vs. Armor**

Armor is more effective against Stun attacks, because Stun attacks spread their damage over a wider area. Armor that is 6 KD or higher can subtract an additional −1 point of Stun per DC for stun attacks.

For instance, a target in armor is attacked by a man using a club for 4 DC: the target would subtract 4 Stun from the total done by the attack, then subtract the armor’s KD from the Stun.

**Iai-jutsu**

*Iai-jutsu* is a specialized bugei in which the user, from nearly any position—standing, seated, kneeling—quickly draws a katana or wakizashi and delivers a devastating cut, all in one swift motion. In game terms, readying a weapon and using it in the same action incurs a −3 penalty. When using Iai-jutsu, however, the penalty is ignored. Coupled with the +3 attack modifier for attacking from surprise (which an Iai-jutsu attack often qualifies for), this is a particularly effective attack, indeed.

For example: Jinnosuke is seated in a teahouse with Yaemon, a rival for the affections of a certain courtesan. Yaemon has invited Jinnosuke to the Tea Ceremony to normalize his relations...
Damage is an abstract measure of how much something can be harmed before it is either killed, destroyed, or bludgeoned into unconsciousness. (Obviously, one cannot bludgeon a boat into unconsciousness, but one can damage it.) In *Sengoku*, all damage is measured in six-sided dice, with each “d6” representing a unit called a Damage Class (or DC). Example: 1d6 is Damage Class 1 (or DC1).

Each point of DC represents 1d6 damage when rolling against a target. You roll the specified number of dice, add the results together, and the total is the amount of damage done to your target.

For example, Yasuchika has a DC4 katana. His player rolls four dice and gets a 5, a 6, a 2, and a 3. He therefore does 16 points of damage against an opponent.

With the exception of bows, ranged weapons always do damage based on the DC of the weapon. Damage caused by any part of the body, however, is determined by the Strength (STR) of the attacker. For every DC remaining, the character is knocked back one knockback “unit” (the unit of measurement is determined by the level of the campaign; see below). The character is then moved that far away, in a straight line, from the point of impact.

**Damage**

Damage is an abstract measure of how much something can be harmed before it is either killed, destroyed, or bludgeoned into unconsciousness. (Obviously, one cannot bludgeon a boat into unconsciousness, but one can damage it.)

In *Sengoku*, all damage is measured in six-sided dice, with each “d6” representing a unit called a Damage Class (or DC). Example: 1d6 is Damage Class 1 (or DC1).

Each point of DC represents 1d6 damage when rolling for damage. You roll the specified number of dice, add the results together, and the total is the amount of damage done to your target.

For example, Yasuchika has a DC4 katana. His player rolls four dice and gets a 5, a 6, a 2, and a 3. He therefore does 16 points of damage against an opponent.

With the exception of bows, ranged weapons always do damage based on the DC of the weapon. Damage caused by any part of the body, however, is determined by the Strength (STR) of the attacker. For every DC remaining, the character is knocked back one knockback “unit” (the unit of measurement is determined by the level of the campaign; see below). The character is then moved that far away, in a straight line, from the point of impact.

**Minimum Strength**

This is the minimum STR at which you can use a melee weapon with no penalty. Below this level, you take a –1 Reflex penalty for every –1 STR and a –1 die damage penalty as well. For example, Kaede, STR 2, tries to use an ôno with a 5 STR Minimum. She’ll only do 2d6 Killing damage when she hits, and takes a –3 Reflex penalty, because the weapon is too heavy and unwieldy for her to use it effectively.

**Extra Damage**

Strength-based attacks using weapons have a damage each weapon can do. This value is equal to the weapon’s listed Damage Class (DC). For every point of STR you have above the minimum STR required to wield the weapon, you will do one additional die of damage, up to twice the weapon’s listed DC.

Example: Kojirô, STR 3, wields a tanta (STR Minimum of 1). He had 4 more STR than he needs, so he expects to gain 4 extra dice on his attack. But since the dagger’s maximum damage is only twice its listed DC (1x2=2), he only gains 1 extra DC. On the other hand, Sōrin, STR 8, wields an ôno (STR Min. 5). He gains three extra dice, and since twice the Ôno’s listed DC (6) is 12, he gets to use all of his extra dice.

**Knockback**

When you strike someone you may push them back from the force of your blow, even if no damage gets through their defenses. We call this Knockback. To calculate knockback, add the BODY of the targeted character plus 1d6. Subtract this number from the DC of the attack. For every DC remaining, the character is knocked back one knockback “unit” (the unit of measurement is determined by the level of the campaign; see below). The character is then moved that far away, in a straight line, from the point of impact.

**Damaging People**

But what is the damage subtracted from? That’s where Hits and Stun come into play.

In Fuzion-powered games, all living things have Hits—points which represent how much damage they can take. A character generally has a number of Hits equal to five times his BODY characteristic. One point of damage from a weapon or attack will remove one Hit.

Living things also have Stun points; a measure of how much damage they can take before they pass out from pain and shock.

**Stun Damage**

One point of damage from a body blow or stunning weapon will remove one point of Stun. Stun Damage creates pain and shock, but not serious injury. It is “fist-fighting” damage, impacts done with the parts of the body, such as hands, feet, or even the head.

As a general rule, if it’s part of the body and isn’t sharp, it does Stun damage. Some weapons, like wooden practice swords and spears, do Stun damage (although they can kill if the damage is excessive). These weapons are easy to spot on the weapon table (see *Arms*, page 166) because their DC is listed in parenthesis. Stun damage is always subtracted from your character’s pool of STUN points, after being reduced by the higher of either your character’s SD or his Armor. When his STUN points are at zero, his body will react by shutting off the pain—he passes out.

When you have lost all of your Stun points, any subsequent Stun damage you take will continue to convert into killing damage at the 1/5th rate, reducing your remaining Hits—if beaten senseless and the beating continues, you could be beaten to death! If you take more than 1/2 of your total Stun in one attack, you are Stunned. A Stunned character cannot act in the next Phase and is –5 to all Primary Characteristics. He can’t move, and he may take no other actions. He will remain stunned for 1 Phase, becoming “unstunned” next phase.

Your character is knocked out whenever your Stun is reduced to zero or below; you are automatically unconscious. You are effectively knocked out, but will regain consciousness once you have recovered enough Stun to put you back over zero again (see the Stun Recovery Table for how long this takes).
Killing Damage

Killing Damage, on the other hand, is serious injury that can maim or kill. Anytime you are hit by a bladed or pointed weapon, even if it’s just a sharpened stick, you will take Killing damage. In addition, any sharpened part of the body (fangs, claws, horns, etc.), can also do killing damage. Killing damage is always subtracted from your character’s pool of Hits. When this is reduced to zero, your character is dying.

Since killing damage also causes a fair amount of pain and shock, you’ll take 1 point of Stun for every 1 Hit you lose, until you run out of Stun points; you don’t get to subtract your Stun Defense from this loss of Stun. Sometimes a stunning blow is powerful enough that a small amount of serious damage is also done. For each 5 points of Stun that gets past a target’s defenses, they also lose 1 Hit of Killing damage.

Impairing Wounds

Whenever your Hits have been reduced enough, you will become impaired. At half of your total Hits, all of your Primary Characteristics will be reduced by 2; at 1/4 of total, they will be reduced by 4 points. A characteristic cannot, however, be reduced to less than 1.

Dismemberment

It just wouldn’t be a chanbara roleplaying game if there weren’t a rule for cutting off limbs and heads. So here it is.

Any time a character suffers more than their total Hits in a single blow from a bladed weapon (before or after the damage modifier for Hit Location) to a limb, that limb is completely severed. Any such blow to the neck decapitates the target immediately, killing them.

Optionally, GMs may allow bashing weapons (i.e., weapons that do Stun damage) to crush a limb when the damage exceeds half the target’s total Hits. A crushed limb takes twice as long to heal, and is immobile and useless for the duration of the healing process. At the end of the healing period, the character makes a CON + 3d6 roll (DN 18). If the roll fails, the limb is permanently immobile. A crushing blow to the head can be quite gory, and kills the target instantly.

Note that characters using ki to “avoid” damage may also do so to prevent a limb from being dismembered or crushed.


When you reach zero Hits, you are dying. You will be able to keep moving if you’ve still got Stun left, but you’ll be at –6 (GM’s Option) to all Primary Characteristics. This penalty can be temporarily overcome by expending ki (see Ki, page 223). You will also lose 1 additional Hit, due to shock and blood loss, per Round (4 phases). When you reach a negative score equal to 2x your BODY characteristic, you are dead (i.e., if your BODY is 5, you are dead when your reach -10 Hits).

High Variance Hits/Stun

This optional rule is for those who like the lotto, and replaces the normal methods of determining Hits or Stun damage. To find Hits, roll 1d6 and multiply it by the DC of the attack. To determine the Stun damage of the attack, roll 1d6 and multiply the number rolled by the DC of the attack, with a minimum amount equal to the Hits done by the attack. These can be used independently or together. These methods result in higher Stun damage for killing attacks.

Hit Locations

Where you hit can often be as important as whether you hit. While Fusion usually uses a single pool of points to determine how much damage or stun your character can absorb, individualized hit locations do play a part in determining the severity of that damage (getting hit in the head, for example, is far more lethal than being hit in the arm). Hit locations also help determine if armor is being worn over a particular area or not; useful if you neglected to wear your helmet this morning! They are also used to determine the Hit Modifiers for attacking a specific area (or you can choose a location by using the Modifiers on the right).

Warning: This rule makes dying a lot easier! Then again, it makes lopping off your opponent’s limbs easier, too. Needless to say, we recommend using it for truly chanbara-inspired games. Your tastes may vary.

When using the Hit Location Table below, roll 3d6 and modify damage as appropriate. For attacks from above or with short weapons, the GM can allow a 2d6+1 roll for Hit Location; for attacks from below, 2d6+6.

Note that damage is multiplied after penetrating armor.

DEFENSES

So how do you avoid getting knocked out or killed? The first way is to just stay out of the way; use your Skills and Characteristics to ward off the attack (p. 209). But if that doesn’t work, you’ve still got another option: armor.

Armor is intended to get between you and the Damage first, and has a value which is subtracted on a point-for-point basis from damage before it is taken from your Hits or Stun. Armor is the best line of defense, so use it whenever possible. Armor will...
stop both Stun and Killing damage. Your natural physical toughness (the Stun Defense on your character sheet) is your next defense, but will only stop Stunning Damage. You’ll use this as a last resort, and mostly in fistfights and other non-lethal engagements. Example: My CON is 5, giving me a SD of 10. If 15 points of Stun hit me, only 5 (15–10) would get through.

- If stopping Stun damage, always take the higher of either the armor’s KD or the character’s SD.
- If stopping Killing damage, use only the highest armor KD.

The defensive qualities of the various types of armor are in the Arms, Armor, and Equipment (page ).

**DAMAGING OBJECTS**

“Soft targets” like living things take damage differently than “hard targets” (structures, etc.). So in Fuzion, inanimate structures, vehicles and other non organic objects (commonly called “hard targets”) have Structural Damage Points (SDP) instead of Hits or Stun. SDP is different from Hits, but works the same way—one point of damage will remove one SDP.

You can’t stun an inanimate object. Therefore, objects will always take both Stunning and Killing damage the same way, subtracting it from their SDP.

**Critical Effects**

An object need not be totally destroyed to make it non-functional (e.g., you don’t have to actually destroy an entire warship to stop it; you only have to put a big enough hole in the bottom). The value in parenthesis (X%) is the percentage of overall SDP that must be destroyed to incapacitate the vehicle.

---

**Vessel Hit Location Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Effect (after armor)</th>
<th>Hit/AV Mod</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3d6</td>
<td>Hit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>bridge</td>
<td>1–3 Pilot hit, 4–6 rudder hit (10%)</td>
<td>–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>mast</td>
<td>Renders sail useless (10%)</td>
<td>–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–7</td>
<td>sail</td>
<td>Renders sail useless (10%; 40% from arrows)</td>
<td>–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>cabin</td>
<td>Officer’s cabin (50%)</td>
<td>–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9–10</td>
<td>deck</td>
<td>1–2 hits random item/person on deck; 3–6 hits deck (50%)</td>
<td>–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11–12</td>
<td>hull</td>
<td>Hits the side of ship; may sink ship (20%)</td>
<td>–1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>lower hull</td>
<td>Strong blow sinks vessel (10%)</td>
<td>–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14–15</td>
<td>cargo</td>
<td>Random cargo takes 1/2 damage (40%)</td>
<td>–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>passengers</td>
<td>Random passenger takes 1/2 damage (40%)</td>
<td>–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>rudder</td>
<td>Renders rudder useless (10%)</td>
<td>–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>oar</td>
<td>Renders one or more oars useless, slows vessel (10%)</td>
<td>–4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Bridge/Pilot:* The bridge is typically unprotected on Japanese vessels. On any hit to the bridge, roll 1d6. On a 1–3 the pilot of the vessel is struck, and on a 4–6 the rudder handle is hit. On vessels without a bridge, proper, the pilot or person controlling the vessel is automatically struck. Damage to the pilot does not damage the vessel itself, but if the pilot is incapacitated the vessel will be uncontrolled until such time that someone else takes over the helm. If the rudder is struck, delivering more than 10% of the total SDP of the vessel in Hits destroys the rudder, making the ship unmaneuverable.

*Mast:* Doing more than 10% of the vessel’s SDP in Hits to the mast destroys it and renders the sail useless. If the target has no mast, ignore these results and reroll.

*Sail:* Doing more than 10% of the vessel’s SDP in Hits to the sail destroys it, rendering the sail useless. Damage caused by arrows or other piercing weapons (teppô shot, for instance) requires 20% of the SDP in damage to render the sail unusable. If

---

In approaching for the attack a warrior does not forget to wait for the right moment. In waiting for the right moment he never forgets the attack.

— Notes on Martial Laws
the target has no sail (or no sail raised), ignore these results and reroll.

**Cabin:** The cabin includes the officer’s or pilot’s cabin. It includes the small cabin on riverboats as well. Damage equal to 50% of the vessel’s SDP will render the vessel inoperable. If the target has no cabin, ignore these results and reroll.

**Deck:** Any hit to the deck may strike an item or person on the deck. Roll 1d6: 1–2 the shot hits a random item, person or piece of equipment; on a 3–6 the shot hits the deck itself. Damage exceeding 50% of the vessel’s SDP in Hits will sink a vessel.

**Hull:** The blow strikes the side of the vessel. Damage in excess of 20% of the vessel’s SDP will cause the vessel to start taking on water, and the vessel will flounder and lose an additional 5 SDP per Round. When the vessel reaches zero SDP, the vessel completely sinks below water and is lost. A hit below the waterline causing more than 10% of the vessel’s SDP in Hits will cause it to take on water. Any passengers without the ability to swim may drown (see Drowning, pg. 220).

**Cargo:** The attack strikes a random piece of cargo, either below deck or on the deck of the vessel (GM’s discretion), taking 1/4 of the damage rolled for the attack. Damage in excess of 40% of the vessel’s SDP causes the ship to take on water (see Hull, above).

**Passengers:** The attack strikes a random passenger, either below deck or on the deck of the vessel (GM’s discretion), taking 1/2 of the damage rolled for the attack. Damage in excess of 40% of the vessel’s SDP causes the ship to take on water (see Hull, above).

**Rudder:** The rudder is struck. Damage in excess of 10% of the vessel’s SDP destroys the rudder, leaving the vessel unmaneuverable.

**Oar:** One or more oars are struck. Damage in excess of 10% of the vessel’s SDP destroys the rudder(s), reducing the vessel’s maximum Movement when using oars. Each 10% of the vessel’s SDP in Hits reduced the vessel’s maximum Move by 1/4, unless, of course, sails are used instead. (I.e., if damage is in excess of 10% of the SDP the vessel has a maximum of 3/4 of it’s Move; if damage is in excess of 20% the vessel it at 1/2 Move; if damage exceeds 30% SDP the vessel is at 1/4 Move; and if damage exceeds 40% SDP the vessel is immobile.)

---

**RANGED COMBAT**

Ranged Combat occurs whenever you shoot at something. Any ranged weapon or ranged attack can be “shot”—arrows can be fired from a bow, bullets can be shot from a teppô, shuriken can be thrown, and so on. In general, if a weapon is used to strike a target from a distance, it’s ranged combat.

**LINE OF SIGHT**

You must be concerned over line of sight (LOS), which deals with whether anything’s between you and your target. Line of sight can be:

**Clear:** There’s nothing in the way; go ahead and shoot.

**Obscured:** There’s something that may block a clear view, but won’t block a shot, such as shrubbery, smoke, or darkness. If a character can’t see who they are fighting (e.g., the target is invisible, in darkness, behind cover, in ambush or the shooter is dazzled), each phase they must make a Perception roll (Difficulty number determined by the GM). On a successful roll, the penalty is –2 to all Attack and Defense Values that Phase. This increases to –4 with an unsuccessful roll.

**Blocked:** There’s something in the way that you can’t shoot through. If the target’s only partially blocked, you can try to hit whatever is exposed. Determine how much is exposed, then modify the difficulty number appropriately.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blocked LOS Modifiers</th>
<th>Difficulty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half Body</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head and Shoulders Only</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head only</td>
<td>+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behind someone else</td>
<td>+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target prone</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target crouched or kneeling</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*For a warrior, there is nothing distressing about hearing of something and fleeing. To see something and flee, however, is a great evil. To hear of certain conditions and retreat is one sort of strategem, and thus not really a matter of fleeing. For this reason it has been said that it is fundamental to ‘let one’s ear be a coward and his eyes a hero.’*

— Asakura Soteki
RANGE

Shooting ranges aren’t based on how far the weapon can shoot, but on how easy it is for a marksman to clearly see a target. If you can’t see it, you’re firing blind no matter how far your bow’s arrow reaches.

This means that weapon ranges tend to overlap until they reach their Extreme ranges, as reflected in the table below. The base DN for each range are listed in parenthesis.

Range Modifiers

Melee (DN 14): Within 4 meters (2 ken) or less of the target. This is also basic melee and hand-to-hand range.

Close (DN 16): Within 10 meters (5 ken) of the target.

Medium (DN 18): Within 50 meters (25 ken) of the target.

Long (DN 20): From 50 meters (25 ken) up to the listed range of the weapon.

Extreme (DN 20, +1 for every full 50 meters past listed range): If the listed range is less than 50 meters, +4 DN applies to distances between close range and listed range. This can be “bought down” by aiming, bracing, and other things. Example: a certain bow has a listed Range of 100 meters (50 ken). If Shônosuke shoots at something that is 150 meters away, that additional 50 meters beyond the weapon’s normal range increases the range modifier from –6 to –7).

NUMBER OF SHOTS AND RATES OF FIRE

Unlike melee weapons, most ranged attacks have a limited number of shots (arrows, bullets, charges, etc.). This is usually listed in the weapon’s description (see Arms, page 166).

Rate of Fire (ROF) is how many times the weapon or attack can be “shot” in a 3-second phase. Most ranged weapons have an ROF of 1 or 2, but some weapons (and some offensive spells) may have the capacity for rapid fire with a ROF of 10 or more. Like Shots, a ranged weapon’s ROF will be listed in the weapon’s description or on the weapon table.

MODIFIERS

Combat modifiers take into account the conditions of the battle. Modifiers are applied to the difficulty number (DN). You may use some, none, or all applicable modifiers to make the combat in Sengoku more exciting and realistic.

Ranged Attack Modifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>DN Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moving target</td>
<td>+1 per 10m target moves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target silhouetted</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target Prone</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firing from deck of a ship in calm water</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firing from deck of a ship in rough water</td>
<td>+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aimed body shot:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>+1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arms, shoulders, thighs</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legs, hands, feet</td>
<td>+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>+5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitals, head</td>
<td>+6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firing teppô from hip</td>
<td>+2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aiming</td>
<td>-1/phase, up to -3 max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Braced</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiny target (bullseye, eye, vital area)</td>
<td>+6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small target (less than 1m; head, limb)</td>
<td>+4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large target (tree, cart, large animal)</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very large target (galley, wall)</td>
<td>-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surprise attack (see Surprise, above)</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AUTOFIRE

When making an autofire attack (such as when using dogakare-jutsu to hurl multiple shuriken in one phase), make the attack roll as normal. If successful, one missile has struck the target. In addition, for every 4 points the roll exceeded the difficulty number, the target is hit by one additional missile.

For example; Jubei hurls four shuriken at an opponent, with a DN of 14. Jubei makes a Throwing (shuriken-jutsu) roll and gets a total of 21. He hits with one shuriken (for beating the DN 14) and hits with another because his roll exceeded 18. His roll was less than 22, however, so he did not hit a third time. Jubei hit his target with two of his four shuriken.

BOWS

Bows are a special category of ranged attack because they’re Strength-based ranged attacks. Bows in Japan are rated by “Man-rating” (MR). Man-rating is a measure of how many men it takes to string the bow.

Calculating a Bow’s Damage Class

Yumi or daikyû (longbows) do 1d6 of damage and have 20 meters (or 10 ken) of range for each point of Man-rating (MR) of the yumi.

For example; Yamagishi Sanzô, STR 7, is shooting a MR6 yumi (bow with a man-rating of six). The yumi has a STR Minimum of 6, so Yamagishi has the MR required to use the bow; his extra STR does not help him do more damage, however. The damage is...
6d6, and the range is (6x30) 180 meters.

Hankyū, being smaller and of less durable construction than the yumi, have a maximum MR of 3.

**Making Attack Rolls**

In combat, the attacker combines his skill in his chosen weapon with his REF and a die roll (REF + weapon skill + 3d6). He may also have to add or subtract certain modifiers (such as range, cover, etc.) from this number to determine the final Attack Total (AT).

The Defender combines his DEX + Ranged Evade skill (if any) + 10 to produce a comparable Defense Value (DV). The two—AT and DV—are compared. If the Attack Total is equal to or greater than the Defense Value, the attack succeeds and the arrow finds its mark.

For example: Zaemon, the attacking character, has a REF Characteristic 5, a Kyūjutsu Skill of 4, and a die roll of 10: he has a Attack Total of 19. –2 modifier for range brings this down to 17. Akimitsu has a DEX of 5, a Ranged Evade skill of 4, and we add a flat value of 10, for total a Defense Value of 19. Since Akimitsu’s DV is higher, he has avoided being hit by the incoming arrow fired by Zaemon.

**TEPPÔ ATTACKS**

Teppô are also ranged weapons (no surprise there) but they aren’t reliant on the strength of the user; they rely merely on the user’s eyes and skill, and the amount of powder he drops down the barrel. The wonderful thing about teppô is that they allow a daimyô to make an army of people who have only STR 2 if necessary, as no great strength is needed to lift and fire a teppô.

In the rain, there is a five-in-six (roll 1d6) chance that the match might not ignite. This is another range penalty for teppô—draconic as it may appear.

In addition to hand-thrown grenades, daimyô and weapon masters will have access to exploding missiles, called tedan, that can be fired from the muzzles of large-bore teppô (called 5-çeppô), which can be purchased for twice the cost of a regular model.

These missiles can be acquired through stealth or less-than-legal markets, and are rare. They look like large, elongated, pointed eggs with fins and a one-shaku-long wooden tail. The “tail” is inserted into the barrel, the teppô is aimed and fired, and the missile explodes on contact. They can also be fused to explode in the air, scattering shrapnel over their damage area. Although they are area-effect rather than individual-injury weapons, targets must be specified (a wall, a door, barricade, or even a person) unless they are intended to explode in the air (say, over a handful of enemy bushi). Due to the way they function, their range is 1 level less than a normal teppô (see Missile Weapons, page 168).

If they are used with a fuse, the person firing the teppô must estimate the range and timing, lighting the fuse and firing when he thinks the fuse has burned sufficiently to allow it to explode somewhere near where he wants it. He must have the Firearms (teppô-jutsu) skill for this, of course, and since it is a guess and luck, we have a special mechanism for this one; To score an “air hit” the shooter must combine TECH + Firearms (teppô-jutsu), plus any range modifications, and a roll of 1d6. This score must meet or beat a 3d6 roll by the GM. If it succeeds, the blast goes where the shooter intended. If not, the blast center is two meters off per point of difference. Use the Missed Missile Weapon table, below, for the direction the missile.

**EXPLOSIVE ATTACKS**

For these, the attacker rolls against a difficulty number assigned by the GM (a base DN of 10 plus range penalties is appropriate). Characters take the damage in the ratio of 2 less points for every meter (three shaka) they are away from the center of the attack.

*For example, if an explosive attack does 28 Hits of damage at the point it explodes, it will do 26 Hits within one meter (3 shaka) from the center of the explosion, 24 Hits within two meters (six shaka), 22 within three meters (nine shaka), 20 within four meters (12 shaka), and so on.*

If the character fails the attack roll, the center of the attack shifts one meter for every one point the attack roll was missed by, up to a maximum of 1/2 the total range to the target. Roll 1d6 to see which direction the center of the attack scatters and consult the table below.

The person without previous resolution to inevitable death makes certain that his death will be in bad form. But if one is resolved to death beforehand, in what way can he be despicable?

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
WEAPONS

WEAPON BREAKAGE

Weapons can break in use, though this is rare with good quality weapons. Consider the average metal weapon to have a KD equal to the maximum damage listed plus (2x STR Min), and a number of Hits equal to (STR Min/2). Better quality weapons might have a higher KD or more Hits (see Quality of Items, page 194). You should only worry about weapon breakage when striking hard targets (those having KD 10 or higher) or blocking a metal weapon. Clubs have a KD of only (max damage listed), and therefore break more frequently.

ENDURANCE COST

Weapons cost END to use; 1 END per 2 points of STR used, rounded down. So using a weapon at STR 3 costs 1 END each phase of use.

END cost for weapons can be reduced if you have more STR than the amount you’re using for the weapon at the moment. Reduce the END cost by 1 for every 2 STR over what you are using. Example: Tameyoshi is STR 7, and he’s using an ono. Using his full STR, he does 6 DC with the ono, at a cost of 3 END. He can use the axe at STR 6 and elect to either do 5 DC with it (at an END cost of 3), or do only 3 DC with it at an END cost of 1.

Armor also costs END to use, based on the STR required to “carry” the armor’s total weight. For every 2 STR over the minimum needed, reduce the END cost of armor by 1. The END cost of armor is doubled in hot temperatures (over 80°F); in hot weather armor costs 1 END per 1 STR to use.

The minimum END cost for a weapon is always 1. END cost for armor can be 0.

MOUNTED COMBAT

A common maneuver among samurai is to fight from horseback. Samurai may wield a polearm (usually a yari), sword (katana or tachi) or the awesome Japanese longbow (yumi). Much of the samurai’s time was spent training both in the weapon arts as well as their employment from horseback.

In Sengoku, to be able to fight from horseback, one must possess the Riding (ba-jutsu) skill. Whatever his chosen weapon, he must also have the appropriate skill to wield it.

For example, if one has Riding (ba-jutsu) and Swords (kenjutsu) but not Polearms: Lances (sōjutsu), he can fight with sword from horseback, but not with a yari. If he also has Polearms: Lances (sōjutsu), he can use a yari as well.

Anyone fighting from horseback uses the lower of the two pertinent Skills: his weapon skill, or Riding (ba-jutsu). Being a poor rider greatly impairs one’s fighting ability and, conversely, being a masterful rider does not improve one’s chances to land a blow.

MARTIAL ARTS

There are four unarmed martial arts forms available to characters in Sengoku: Atemi-waza, Jujutsu, Sumai and Ninpo Taijutsu. These art forms are described under Skills (pages 150-152). In most Fuzion games, martial art maneuvers cost 2 OP, times a multiplier based on how common martial arts are in the campaign setting. In Sengoku, however, the basic martial art maneuvers for each martial arts style are provided at no extra cost and may be used by all characters possessing the appropriate skill. Advanced maneuvers may also be purchased by characters with the appropriate skill. These advanced maneuvers must be purchased individually, at a cost of 2 OP each.

MANEUVER DESCRIPTIONS

Each of the martial arts forms have a number of maneuvers which can be performed by practitioners of each art. A shorthand table describing the effects of those maneuvers is given under each art. Below is a description of all of the martial art maneuvers available in Sengoku.

Basic Strike: The character has been trained in how to deliver an attack with greater force than a normal punch. They add 1d6 to their normal STR-based damage, +2 to DEX.

Breakfall: The character has been trained how to fall without hurting himself, and can roll to his feet from most falls.

Defensive Strike: This attack is more of a probe than a full-out attack. It can represent a jab, a quick strike, or any other attack where the attacker is more concerned about defending himself than really damaging his opponent. Adds +1 to REF, +3 to DEX.

Killing Strike: This attacks allows the character to perform attacks which inflict Killing damage without using a weapon. A Killing Strike can be striking a limb to break it, a throat or kidney punch, the classic “karate chop,” or any other appropriate type of blow.

Martial Block: This is a trained block. A character with this maneuver is very good at blocking melee attacks. Adds +2 to DEX, REF.

Martial Disarm: The character has been trained to knock weapons (and other objects) out of his foes’ hands. A disarm will only
affect items that are held with one hand; two-handed objects must be grabbed away. +2 to STR during the maneuver.

Martial Dodge: You’ve practiced getting out of the way of attacks. This dodge will work against ranged as well as melee attacks. Adds +5 to DEX for dodging purposes that Phase

Martial Escape: You’ve been taught how to get out of even the strongest grab or hold, adding +3 to your STR for escape purposes.

Martial Grab: The character has been trained on how to grab and hold his foes.

Martial Throw: Instead of striking, a character with the Martial Artist Talent may declare he is throwing his opponent. The attacker makes a normal attack. If it is successful, he throws the target to the ground and does his normal Strength Damage. After being thrown, the defender is prone, and must act after the attacker next round regardless of their Initiative rolls. A thrown target may not use his Athletics skill to automatically roll to his feet; he must spend one action instead.

Nerve Strike: This is a strike targeted at the vulnerable nerve clusters of the human body. As such, the target does not get his SD versus this attack. Since a good deal of accuracy is needed to land these blows, the attacker must spend at least one round aiming at his target before using this attack. Does 2d6 damage, at -2REF

Offensive Strike: This is an all-out attempt to mangle your target. An Offensive Strike covers a flying kick, a full-out haymaker punch, or any other full out style attack. Adds +2d6 to basic strike, at -2 REF, +1 DEX.

Sacrifice Throw: This maneuver represents any move where the attacker falls to take down his opponent. It can be a ju-jutsu throw, a sliding takedown, a tackle, or any other move where both the attacker and his target end up on the ground. Martial Throw, with +2 to REF, target and attacker both knocked prone. If this attack missed, the attacker is on the ground at the feet of his opponent anyway. Not a good place to be.

**POLLUTION (SHINTÔ)**

Violations of Shintô “rules” cause the character to gain pollution. Examples of minor and major pollution are listed below for easy reference.

In order to regain PIE lost due to pollution, the character must be purified by a Shintô priest (kannushi). If the character is himself a priest, he may regain PIE lost due to minor pollution by performing an atonement (i.e., successfully invoking the Shintô prayer of Atonement). Anyone who incurs major pollution may only have their PIE restored by being purified by another priest, since the polluted character’s PIE is reduced to 0 and they are, thus, unable to perform an Atonement on their own behalf.

**Pollution**

Minor Pollution (-1 PIE each)
- Attend a funeral
- Eating meat
- Speaking ill of or otherwise offending any kami
- Being present at any birth
- Close proximity to death (i.e., a corpse), blood or disease
- Any interference with agriculture/crops

Major Pollution (PIE to 0)
- Defiling a shrine
- Contact with death (i.e., any corpse), blood or disease
- Menstruation
- Contracting a disease
- Critically failing a spell (prayer)-casting skill check

**POLLUTION, TRANSGRESSIONS, AND SIN**

**VIOLATING RELIGIOUS TENETS**

All characters in Sengoku must choose one primary faith, whether it be Shintô, Buddhism, Ryôbu-Shintô, Shugen-dô or Kirishitandô. Each faith has certain religious tenets that must be adhered to by its followers (called shin'ja) in order for them to maintain their Piety (PIE) characteristic.

Any violations of the religion’s rules or laws results in a loss of PIE. Minor violations cause the character’s PIE to go down by 1 point for each violation. Major violations result in a total loss of PIE; The character’s effective PIE is immediately reduced to 0. Such reductions in PIE remain until the character satisfies his religion’s requirements.

The only other way to regain one’s original PIE is to change faiths. All that is required is for a character to have the appropriate skill at level one and for them to take the new religion as their faith of choice. The character is from that point on subject to the tenets of his new faith, and no longer must adhere to the tenets of his previous faith.

Any uses of the PIE stat are at the reduced number, including use of faith-based magic. So any mystic character with a PIE of 0 is unable to invoke prayers of their faith until their PIE has been restored.

Minor and major violations are described for each faith, below.

*Seen from the eye of compassion, there is no one to be disliked. One who has sinned is to be pitied all the more.*
— Shin’ei (ancient text)
TRANSGRESSIONS (BUDDHISM)

Violations of Buddhist law are called transgressions. Examples of minor and major transgressions are listed below.

In order to regain PIE lost due to transgressions, the character must be blessed by a Buddhist priest (sō) or a yamabushi (shugenja). If the character is himself a priest, he may regain PIE lost due to minor transgressions by successfully performing the Buddhist Atonement prayer. Anyone who commits a major transgression may only have their PIE restored by being blessed by another priest, since the transgressor’s PIE is reduced to 0 and they are, thus, unable to perform the Atonement prayer on their own behalf.

Transgressions

Minor Transgression (-1 PIE each)
• Causing harm to any life
• Stealing
• Committing adultery
• Lying or exaggerating
• Speaking abusively
• Equivocating (speaking evasively or vaguely)
• Succumbing to greed
• To be hateful
• Wasting food
• Eating meat (this is a Major Transgression for yamabushi)

Major Transgression (PIE to 0)
• To kill a living thing
• Refusing charity
• Curse or otherwise dishonor the Buddhas
• Critically failing a prayer-casting skill check

SINS (KIRISHITANDÔ)

Violations of Kirishitan law are called sins. Both the Catholics and Protestant sects recognize the same sins. The only exception is that the Catholics consider the Pope’s word as the word of God, so that anyone defying or disrespecting the Pope commits a major sin. Examples of minor and major sins are listed below.

Jesuits and Catholics

In order to regain PIE lost due to sin, whether minor or major, Jesuit and Catholic characters must confess their sins to a Catholic or Jesuit priest, be forgiven by the priest (in the name of God) and receiving absolution. There is no self-atonement for Catholic or Jesuit characters.

Protestants

Protestant characters regain PIE lost due to sin, whether minor or major, far easier than their Catholic counterparts. Protestant characters automatically regain PIE lost due to minor sins by praying for forgiveness and making a successful WILL + PIE roll (DN 18). This roll may be attempted once per week. Upon a successful roll, the character regains all of his lost PIE points.

Protestant characters committing a major sin, however, must attend a Protestant religious service (no matter how simple) and receive the Word of God. Only then may they attempt a WILL + PIE roll. This roll may be attempted no more than once per week. Upon a successful roll, the character regains all of his lost PIE points. If the service is held on a Sunday or any holy day (like Christmas, Good Friday, and so on) the DN is 18. If the service is held on any other day of the week, the DN is 22.

Sins

Minor Sins (-1 PIE each)
• Stealing
• Committing adultery
• Coveting (desiring) other people’s property
• Dishonoring or disrespecting one’s parents
• Succumbing to greed
• Bear false witness against someone

Major Sins (PIE to 0)
• Murder
• Praying to other gods or their images/idols
• Blaspheming (taking the Lord’s name in vain)
• Heresy (speak against the Church; Catholic/Jesuit only)
THE ENVIRONMENT

Teppō and swords aren’t the only thing that can hurt you. The world is full of potential dangers; falls, illness, drowning, even being hit by lightning. All of this falls under the heading of the environment:

ENVIRONMENTAL EFFECTS

Each of these are effects of the environment that harm you through accumulation; shock and poison by accumulated damage to your body or will, asphyxiation through continual lack of air.

Electricity and Fire

Electricity and fire are always ranked by intensity of the effect (GM’s discretion), with damage occurring each phase that you are exposed to the source.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Mild</th>
<th>Intense</th>
<th>Deadly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>1–4</td>
<td>5–10</td>
<td>11–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electricity</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Lightning Bolt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire</td>
<td>Small Fire</td>
<td>Huge Fire</td>
<td>Conflagration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COLD WEATHER

Cold weather can be deadly, and it gets very cold in parts of Japan.

Determining Damage

When determining the DC value of cold weather conditions, the GM first determines the appropriate level. Then the GM must decide on a DC value for those conditions, within the range of DC listed for that level. This is the DC of the cold, done per hour of exposure.

There are three basic levels of cold weather effects: Mild, Intense and Deadly.

Mild: Exposure to cold, snowy conditions without adequate clothing (cold weather garb; mino, etc.) or shelter.

Intense: Mountaintop winter conditions.

Deadly: Harsh, blizzard conditions.

Damage from cold is subtracted from Stun first. Additional damage once Stun is reduced to zero is taken off of the character’s Hits at a rate of 1:5, or 1 Hit for every 5 Stun. For every 5 full points of damage rolled that gets through a character’s defenses, the character subtracts 1 point from his Hits. Stun Defense (SD) is subtracted from all cold damage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cold Weather Intensity Table</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC 1–4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, Kenji and Tarô are traveling over a mountain pass during the middle of winter. The GM decides that this constitutes Intense Cold, and decides that the current conditions are worth DC 6, or 6d6 Hits of damage per hour that the pair is exposed to the cold. Kenji and Tarô are not too sure they want to continue to travel, as it is too cold and they may well not make it.

Protection from the Elements

Wearing inclimate weather gear will reduce the category by one step (e.g., Deadly to Intense, Intense to Mild, and Mild to No Effect). Likewise, other protection, such as a crude shelter, will reduce the effective category by one step. A strong shelter, like a cave or farmer’s hut, will reduce the category by two steps. Prayers can reduce the category by up to three steps, depending on the prayer’s power and effectiveness.

For example, our pair of travelers, Kenji and Tarô, are wearing heavy cold weather clothes. So the GM reduces the effect of the cold weather from Intense to Mild. The GM decides that the new DC for exposure will be only DC 2, or 2d6 damage per hour. Given that they are somewhat protected from the cold, the pair agree to trek over the pass after all. The GM rolls the damage for each hour of travel. After three hours of walking our travelers each take 3 points of damage, after deducting their Stun Defense from each roll.

Suddenly a storm moves in (the workings of a mischievous kami, perhaps?) and the GM upgrades the condition to Deadly, doing 12d6 damage per hour! Even their cold weather gear only brings the effective conditions down to Intense, doing 6d6 per hour. Under these conditions Kenji and Tarô won’t last long, so they quickly decide to set up camp, constructing a lean-to for more protection from the cold. This downgrades the conditions to Mild, doing only 2d6 per hour. Under these conditions Kenji and Tarô may still take some damage, but they’ll be much better off than if they stayed out in the storm. If they are actually lucky enough to find a cave in which they can build a fire, or even better, an abandoned hut in which they can seek shelter, they will be perfectly fine.

There are few people who make mistakes with fire after having once been burned. Of people who regard water lightly, many have been drowned.

— Tzu Ch’an
POISON & DRUG ATTRIBUTES

Poisons are described by their Mode of delivery, Speed, DC, and Duration.

Mode

The mode is the manner in which a poison or drug is introduced to the victim. Whenever a poison is introduced to a person, the victim must make a CON + 3d6 roll, using a difficulty number based on the substance’s mode (the DN for each mode is listed in parenthesis). This roll is made immediately upon successful introduction of the poison. If the roll is successful, then the poison’s effects are halved. A failed roll means the poison is at full effect. This roll is made for poisons and drugs alike, including beneficial drugs; some substances just don’t “take.”

Topical (18): Topical poisons and drugs are introduced by contact with the victim’s skin. They usually take the form of a cream or ointment. The poison is then absorbed into the victim’s skin. Topical poisons are near useless in combat. Topical poisons can be mixed with makeup, perfume and even medicinal herbs. Topical poisons are generally the slowest type of poison.

Ingested (22): Ingested poisons must be eaten or drunk. They usually are in powder or liquid form. Ingested substances are usually mixed with food or drink, but may be introduced directly to the victim’s mouth via water dropper, spit, blowpipe or any of a number of ingenious means. Ingested drugs and poisons are generally slow, though faster acting than topical ointments as a rule.

Inhaled (20): Inhaled poisons and drugs must be introduced to the lungs of the victim. This can be accomplished by use of a powder, vapors or smoke. Inhaled substances are generally faster acting than ingested ones, though not as fast as those introduced directly to the bloodstream.

Blood (16): Blood poisons and drugs must be introduced directly to the victim’s bloodstream, through a cut or abrasion. Blood poisons may be put on a blade or needle, but such applications are only effective for one strike and the strike must penetrate any armor and deliver damage (i.e., Hits) to the victim. Whether or not the strike delivers the poison, the dose of poison is “used up.” Blood poisons are the fastest type of poison, as a rule.

Speed of Poisons and Drugs

Speed measures how often the poison or drug’s effects are applied. When a poison is introduced, it first takes affect as soon as an amount of time has passed, based on the poison’s Speed. The poison’s effect occurs again after each passing of this time. For example; a poison with a Speed rating of 10 minutes is introduced to a victim. After 10 minutes the victim will suffer the effects of the poison, and again after another 10 minutes have passed, and so on.

As a general rule of thumb, ingested poisons are faster than topical poisons, inhaled poisons are faster than ingested ones, and blood poisons are faster than inhaled poisons.

Falling Damage Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>0-10</th>
<th>11-30</th>
<th>31-60</th>
<th>61-100</th>
<th>101-150</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;22 kg (50 lbs)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 kg (50 lbs)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 kg (100 lbs)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 kg (200 lbs)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180 kg (400 lbs)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360 (800 lbs)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720 kg (1600 lbs)</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 ton (1 ton)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Terminal Velocity

- 0-10
- 11-30
- 31-60
- 61-100
- 101-150

Mitani Dôken

Even if a man be sick to death, he can bear up for two or three days.
**DC of Poisons and Drugs**

The DC is the number of dice of “damage” or effect, per dose, that is rolled each time the substance affects the victim. Roll 1d6 for each DC of the drug or poison. All die rolls are cumulative. The number of points rolled are subtracted from (or, in the case of beneficial drugs, added to) the characteristics indicated for that drug or poison. For every 5 points rolled the character loses 1 point from any indicated primary characteristics (remember, these rolls are cumulative).

For harmful substances, this damage may be subtracted from a character’s Hits or from a characteristic, depending on the type of poison. A drug or poison need not be fatal; knock-out drugs also work by accumulation, with “damage” subtracted from different point pools depending on the type of effect.

For example: a sleeping drug rated at DC3 will cause 3d6 of “damage,” but this damage is subtracted from the victim’s Stun total. Once the victim’s Stun reaches zero, they are asleep.

Beneficial and medicinal drugs work by adding to a characteristic, Stun or Hits.

For example, a stimulant rated at DC2 will add 2d6 to REF and Stun.

### Duration of Poisons and Drugs

This is the total amount of time that a poison can affect someone after it is introduced to the victim. The effect is applied to the victim (or patient, as the case may be) once each time period listed under Speed, until the poison has either dissipated or “run its course,” or until the affected person dies (in extreme cases).

For example, Chin-doku has DC2, a Speed of one minute and a Duration of 10 minutes. This means that the poison will cause DC2 (or 2d6) of effect every minute, for 10 consecutive minutes.

### Healing and Medicinal Drugs

**Healing Ointment:** A salve or ointment made from healing herbs. The healing salve is effective against burns, cuts, scrapes and rashes. The number rolled is added to Hits. Only one dose may be used per Recovery period; any extra doses have no effect. This salve only aids in healing up to the victim’s original Hits score; excess “healed” Hits are lost. Can only be used to heal external injuries; i.e., the salve is ineffective against broken bones, deep punctures, and other internal injuries. May be used in conjunction with healing herbs, when appropriate. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 recovery period; DC1; Duration: 1 Tokyo)

**Healing Herbs:** Healing herbs are added to food or made into a medicinal tea to aid in healing and recovery. The number rolled is added to Hits. Only one dose may be used per Recovery period; any extra doses have no effect. This salve only aids in healing up to the victim’s original Hits score; excess “healed” Hits are lost. Can only be used to heal internal injuries and illnesses (except plague). Healing herbs are not effective against poisons. May be used in conjunction with healing herbs, when appropriate. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 recovery period; DC1; Duration: 1 Recovery period)

**Poison Antidote:** Poison antidotes nullify a specific poison. The victim will not suffer any further effects from the poison, although existing damage must be healed normally. An antidote must be bought for a specific type of poison and is ineffective against other types. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 minute; DC special; Duration: instant)

**Stimulant:** A plant-based drug, usually found in herb or powder form. It is mixed with food or drink, and may also be mixed with animal fat or vegetable oil to make a topical ointment. The number rolled is added to Stun, and one-fifth of the number rolled (cumulative) is added to DEX. More than one dose may be taken, up to three doses; the effects are cumulative. The effects last for one hour per dose. After the effects expire, the character loses 2d6 Stun per dose taken, with 1/5 of those points subtracted from...
the character’s Hits. (Mode: Ingested or topical; Speed: 1 Round; DC1; Duration: Instant)

**Poisons**

**Fugu-no-doku:** A fatal paralytic poison extracted from the ovaries and liver of the blowfish (*fugu*). One-fifth of the number rolled (cumulative) is subtracted from both REF and DEX. When both REF and DEX reach zero the character is paralyzed; any additional damage is subtracted from Hits. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 toki; DC2; Duration: 10 Min.)

**Horse Dung:** Usually used on arrows and *teppō* shot. Causes severe infection, tetanus and ultimately death if not treated. Damage is subtracted from Hits. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 minute; DC2; Duration: 10 Min.)

**Han-myō:** Poison extracted from the toxic Tiger Beetle, which lives in the mountainous forests of Japan. The poison causes convulsions, stomach cramping and ultimately death. Damage is subtracted from Hits. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 toki; DC1; Duration: 1 toki)

**Iwami-ginzan:** Mercury produced in silver mines, such as those in Iwami province (thus giving the poison its name). Damage is subtracted from Hits. Note: Iwami-ginzan is very rare prior to the Tokugawa era (17th–19th century). (Mode: Blood; Speed: 1 minute; DC3; Duration: 10 Min.)

**Mukade-no-doku:** The poison of the giant centipede (*mukade*). It causes severe weakness and eventually death. Damage is subtracted from Hits, and one-fifth of the number rolled (cumulative) is subtracted from STR and CON. (Mode: Blood; Speed: 1 minute; DC2; Duration: 10 Min.)

**Mushrooms:** Any one of several poisonous types of mushrooms that grow wild in Japan. To determine if a mushroom is poisonous requires a successful skill check using Survival (DN 10), Local Expert (DN 14) or Cooking (DN 18). Damage rolled is subtracted from Hits. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 10 minutes; DC1; Duration: 10 Min.)

**Nuri-no-doku:** A poison derived from the sap or bark of the lac tree. Damage is subtracted from Hits. (Mode: Blood; Speed: 5 minutes; DC2; Duration: 60 Min.)

**Sea-salt venom:** A very deadly nerve poison from the venom of the sea snake. The damage rolled is subtracted from Hits, and one-fifth of the number rolled (cumulative) is subtracted from REF and DEX. When both REF and DEX reach zero, the victim is paralyzed. Excess damage continues to subtract from Hits. (Mode: Blood; Speed: 1 Round; DC3; Duration: 1 minute)

**Wolfsbane:** Wolfsbane is a very poisonous plant; it grows wild in Japan. Damage is subtracted from Hits. (Mode: Ingested; Speed: 1 minute; DC2; Duration: 10 Min.)

**Treating Poison Victims**

Characters suffering the effects of any poison may not heal, nor recover any lost Hits or characteristic points, until the poison has run its course. They may recover Stun, unless the poison itself affects Stun, in which case the character does not recover Stun, either.

Once the poison has exceeded its duration, the character may begin to heal normally. Characters “heal” primary characteristics at a rate equal to their Recovery per week (i.e., for every 5 full points of accumulated Recovery “points” each week, the character regains 1 point to each characteristic). Stun and Hits are healed normally, per the Recovery rules, below.

For example, Torando was bitten by a sea snake and failed his CON roll. Torando lost 18 Hits and 3 points each from REF and DEX. Luckily, Torando was quickly treated by a physician and survived the bite. Torando has a Recovery of 7, and begins the healing process.

Torando is in a Chanbara level campaign, so the Recovery period is one week. The first week Torando recovers 7 Hits. He also recovers 1 point to REF and DEX (His REC of 7 / 5 = 1.4, which rounds down to 1).

At the end of the second week Torando heals another 7 Hits. His accumulated Recovery points so far equal 14. Because 14 divided by 5 = 2.8, which rounds down to 2, Torando has so far recovered 2 points to his REF and DEX.

At the end of the third week Torando heals the remaining 4 Hits. His accumulated Recovery points equal 21, so he recovers another 2 characteristic points (21 / 5 = 4, but Torando only lost 3 points from REF and DEX, so all of his lost characteristic points have been recovered now).

Characters making a successful Physician skill roll (at DN 22), Herbalist (DN 18) or Chemistry (yogen) (14), can determine that a person has been poisoned. If the person treating the victim makes a second successful roll, using either skill, they will know which specific poison was used and how to counter it.

To stop a poison’s progress, the victim must be given one dose of healing herbs or medicine, as prescribed by the attending doctor. This dose will immediately halt the progress of the poison; the person will suffer no additional damage. Any damage already suffered remains, but it may be healed normally, as the victim will now begin the healing (i.e., Recovery) process.

**Making Poisons**

Characters with the Herbalist (*ten’yaku*) skill may concoct healing and medicinal drugs. While some poisons occur naturally, the Herbalist skill does not allow one to “create” poisons. To create poisons requires the Chemistry (yogen) skill.

To create a poison the character must first obtain one unit of the necessary raw materials. The materials and their weight will vary depending on the type of poison, but GMS can assume a basic weight of .1 kg of raw materials is needed to create one dose of poison. Some raw materials may be purchased in a market, while others will require the character to go to some effort to locate them. This could involve a trek into the mountains (possibly requiring a local guide), a quest or some other circumstances which can serve as the basis of an adventure itself.

Once the material components are gathered, the character must spend time preparing the materials, extracting the toxins and creating the final lethal product. The time it takes for this process is up to the GM, but should be no less than 1 toki (120 minutes) for each dose of poison being created.

The final step is for the character to make a Chemistry skill roll, with a difficulty number of 14. Success means that one dose of the desired poison is created. A critical success provides two doses or increases the Speed by one step up the time table (player’s choice). A failed roll indicates that some mistake was made during the creation process, rendering the poison ineffective. A Critical failure indicates the character has poisoned himself.
**RECOVERY**

Assuming you aren’t reduced to mincemeat in an unfortunate attack, the next step is to get better. That’s where Recovery (REC) comes into play.

**STUN DAMAGE RECOVERY**

Your Recovery characteristic determines how fast your character recovers Stun points. He will get back this many Stun points each Phase he rests.

Once you’re knocked out, you may stay unconscious for just a few moments or for a long time. You will regain your REC in Stun points based on how far below zero you are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stun level</th>
<th>Character Recovers Stun...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 to –10</td>
<td>Every Phase (3 seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–11 to –20</td>
<td>Every Round (12 seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>–21 to –30</td>
<td>Every Minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;30</td>
<td>Up to GM (a long time)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A simpler option is to make a CON + Concentration roll equal to the number of Stun you’ve taken beyond your total: if successful, you will wake up with one Stun.

**KILLING DAMAGE RECOVERY**

This section might be called “wounds.” Your Recovery characteristic also determines how fast you regain Hits. For every recovery period (see below) you spend resting and with medical care, you will recover as many Hits as your REC score.

**Example:** I take 30 hits. My Recovery is 10. I will be back to my full hit level in 3 recovery periods.

The recovery period is determined by the campaign level. Historic campaigns have a Recovery Period of one week. Chanbara campaigns have a Recovery Period of 5 days. Anime-level campaigns have a Recovery Period of one day. GMs are free to change the Recovery Period for their campaign.

Some conditions will improve or hinder a character’s ability to heal well. These conditions are listed on the Healing Modifiers Table, below.

**KI**

Ki is a character’s inner reserve of power or life energy. Ki is stored in the hara, that point in the abdomen just above the navel. A character has a number of Ki points equal to their Focus Ki skill.

This is the number of total Ki points a character may use during a single game session or per adventure, if the adventure spans more than one game session.

**For example, a character with a Focus Ki score of 5 has 5 Ki points.**

Player characters and major NPCs may have and spend Ki points in any level of campaign. It is recommended that minor NPCs (rabble ashigaru, those hordes of bandits, etc.) not be allowed to have ki. Ki is generally reserved for the main heroes and villains of a chanbara story.

**USING KI**

To use ki, a player must declare that his character is focusing Ki. In Historic level campaigns, the character must make a Focus Ki roll skill roll. The difficulty number is 14 if the character tries to Focus Ki out of combat. If using Focus Ki in combat, the DN becomes 18. Using the Focus Ki skill takes an action.

Characters in Chanbara and Anime-level campaigns do not need to make a Focus Ki roll; the attempt is automatically successful. Focusing Ki in Chanbara and Anime-level games is a free action.

Characters may use one or as many Ki points at one time as they have Ki points available. Thus, a character with 4 Ki points may use one one, two, three or all four of their Ki in one shot.

**BENEFITS OF KI**

One point of Ki can be “burned” to increase...

- A die roll (i.e., Skill or Damage rolls) by 2
- Any one Primary Stat by 1 (Derived Stats are not affected)
- your Hits by 5; These points can only be used to restore lost Hits, not to increase your Hits beyond their normal level
- your Endurance (END) by 10; These points can only be used to restore lost END (as per Hits)
- Stun Defense (SD) by 2

The special effect gained by burning the Ki lasts for one phase, or for one application of the skill.

**For example; Using Stealth to sneak across a courtyard takes longer than one Phase (3 seconds), so the bonus lasts for one complete “action” covered by a single die roll—in this case, long enough to sneak across the courtyard.**

Characters may burn additional ki, however, to “keep an effect going” without requiring them to make a Focus Ki roll again.

**For example, a samurai with 3 Ki points decides to Focus Ki to obtain a bonus to hit in combat. The samurai focuses his Ki and spends one Ki point to obtain a bonus of +2 to his AV. After the first Phase he still has 2 Ki remaining, so on his next action on the following Phase, he spends another point of Ki to maintain the skill bonus effect without requiring him to re-focus his Ki.**

---

**Just as contrivance and meditation are different, so are discrimination and quick-wittedness. Discrimination is performed by the mind, while quick-wittedness is a function of ki. Oversights are rare with people who have discrimination, but those who lack this quality and are only quick-witted will make many mistakes.**

— Takeda Shingen
RECOVERING SPENT KI

Ki is automatically regained at the beginning of each adventure or game session, as long as the expenditure of ki was for an action which is deemed “acceptable” for heroes of the genre. Ki may be burned for other actions, but in such instances the Ki is permanently lost and cannot be recovered (which partially explains why low-class bandits don’t have a lot of ki to burn). The character’s Focus Ki score is permanently reduced by a similar amount (though it may be improved normally, like other skills).

Examples of actions which are acceptable include:

- **Benefiting the group**: Completing a mission, rescuing a comrade, etc.
- **Demonstrating loyalty**: Preserving a lord’s Kao (face), saving your lord’s life, etc.
- **Demonstrating heroism**: Risking life and limb to save an orphan, a priest or one’s lord, etc.
- **Preserving one’s honor**: Answering a challenge or duel, avenging a wrong, etc.
- **Bringing enlightenment**: Achieving a new skill level, succeed at a Perception roll, perceive danger, etc.
- **Pleasing the gods**: Performing an act suggested or directed by the gods, fulfilling a dream or vision, etc.

The GM is the final arbiter about whether or not the action for which the ki was spent is an “acceptable” one.

KARMA

Karma is a concept borrowed from the continent, not something that was a part of the earlier pure Japanese/Shintô philosophy. Ultimately, it refers to one’s spiritual bank account. Good deeds build good karma, and bad deeds build bad karma (or neutralize stores of good karma). Although it is often said that a person who suffers in this life must be enduring some bad karma earned in a previous life, this oversimplifies the concept somewhat.

GOOD KARMA

One of the PC’s goals is to get and have a store of good karma (or “Karma points”). Each new character starts with 0 Karma Points. Exception: Players may buy Good Karma points (a perk) during character creation. (See Characters)

Good Karma can be gained by spectacular events, such as extreme suffering (such as nearly dying in combat, being tortured, losing of his family, losing samurai status, etc.) or particularly notable good deeds.

Anything that qualifies as a “serious loss” in the story qualifies one for a point of karma. Note that characters may voluntarily submit to suffering and still gain karma (e.g., jumping in front of a comrade to take an arrow meant for him). This does not mean a player can willingly submit his PC to senseless torture just to gain karma, however; there must be discretion on the part of the player and the GM. The Karma Point is awarded by the GM at his discretion.

The maximum number of Karma Points that can be achieved is 10.

Some examples of acts which would cause good karma are shown below:

- Taking an arrow or other wound to save a friend
- Undertaking an arduous or dangerous quest for one’s faith.
- Dying in great pain.
- Committing voluntary seppuku, or doing so with honor while under duress.
- Avenging the betrayal or murder of a lord by one of his own retainers.
- Avenging a patricide.
- Taking vows and entering a monastery. (Note: one need not stay in the monastery, although the vows and the adherence to the sect’s teachings should be sincere, or there is no benefit.)
- Single-handedly saving your lord’s life (e.g., in battle, during an earthquake, etc.).
- Suffering a debilitating wound in battle, or the effects of a long illness.
- Enduring unfair persecution with grace and honor.
- Fighting a knowingly lost cause that is nevertheless just.

BAD KARMA

In a like manner to gaining a store of good karma, characters can accumulate “bad” or “negative karma” by inflicting needless suffering on another. The key word is “needless.” Any suffering which is considered justified (GM’s discretion) does not cause a loss of karma. Cutting off a friend’s badly mangled limb, for example, doesn’t inflict bad karma.
A general who has committed his soldiers to war doesn’t suffer bad karma from the deaths of his men. If you choose, however, a general callously throwing his army into the face of certain death with no thought to their wasted lives may suffer bad karma. A general marching his army into a small town, slaughtering everyone and burning it to the ground would definitely be visited with bad Karma, for causing so much suffering to innocent people.

It is important to weigh an act not by Western standards, however, but by the standards of Sengoku’s Japan and Buddhist philosophy.

Some examples of acts which would cause bad karma include:

- Betraying one’s lord to the enemy.
- Killing one’s lord.
- Killing one’s parent. (Note: exiling one’s parent is perfectly acceptable.)
- Slaying an innocent for no reason. (If the “innocent” is socially lower than one and has been insulting or otherwise obstreperous, there’s usually no onus in slaying him.)
- Robbing, looting, or burning a temple or shrine. (Note: doing the same to a nanban church would likely not bring about bad karma.)
- Killing the emperor or any member of his immediate family.
- Interfering with the proper exercise of a Japanese cleric’s role.
- Cursing one of the kami, bodhisattva, or other deities.

Bad karma has the effect of not only negating good karma, but also of bringing about unfortunate circumstances upon the “holder” of the bad karma.

**USING KARMA IN THE GAME**

It’s up to the GM whether or not the PCs shall reap any benefits for their goodly and heroic deeds during “this lifetime” or have to wait until the next one; in other words, it’s up to the GM whether or not to use this optional rule.

Karma points may be spent during the game. Only one point may be spent at a time, and any karma spent during a game is gone; it does not “recharge” like ki. Positive karma can be obtained again, to be sure, but this would be the addition of a new point for a new action or suffering, not the replacement of one “temporarily exercised.” *Note that one can’t voluntarily take on a Bad Karma point to do this; if there is no positive karma (i.e., if the PC’s Karma Points are at zero) then he can’t burn anything.*

**Benefits of Karma**

How does one “use” karma? A single point of karma can be spent during a game session to allow the PC to either maximize or minimize one die roll of the player’s choosing. This can be one of his own die rolls or someone else’s. If the player is affecting his own die roll, then no die roll is need actually be made; it automatically counts as the highest or lowest natural roll possible (player’s choice), though without the added bonus of a critical success (see page 203).

*For example, a player may spend a point of his PC’s Karma to maximize the character’s own damage roll in combat, or to minimize an opponent’s “to hit” roll. In this instance, critical successes or Failures do not count; the die roll is just “naturally” the highest or lowest, with no secondary results taking effect.*

Players may also spend a point of Good Karma to remove a point of Bad Karma, but this requires the GMs permission.

One must remember that the character does not actually know he is “spending karma”; this is solely a decision by the player.

The spending of karma in this manner, and the manner in which it is accumulated, represents the great cosmic balance that characters are subject to; kind deeds beget good things, and evil deeds beget bad things for the character.

**Suffering From Bad Karma**

Characters start with 0 bad Karma; players may take some bad Karma as a Complication during character creation (see Creating PCs).

Any bad karma accumulated by the character should be recorded on the character sheet. At any time during the game, the GM may invoke the character’s bad karma. Likewise, a player may invoke his character’s bad karma (with the GM’s permission). In either case, the Bad Karma point is gone—it is “used up.”

Negative karma that characters accumulate are controlled by the GM. The GM is free to “invoke” a character’s negative Karma point, using it in the same manner described above, but in this case modifying some die roll against the character. Players may not use a point of Good Karma to offset a point of bad Karma being so used by the GM. Characters must deal with the “fruits” of their despicable deeds. Karma is karma, neh?

Negative Karma should only be used to enhance a dramatic point of an adventure, however, and ideally in a way that relates to the reason for the gaining of the negative karma. Negative karma should never be used by the GM to “get back at” players; it is a story-telling aid revolving around the characters.

*For example: Shirato, a bandit, robbed an elderly woman on the highway, gaining a Bad Karma point. A short time later he runs into a local samurai. Shirato nods to the samurai as they pass each other, but the samurai feels he has not been paid proper respect, and a fight breaks out. As Shirato swings against his opponent, the GM decides to invoke the Bad Karma that Shirato gained for robbing the woman, and automatically makes Shirato’s attack roll a 3 — the lowest he could roll.*
EXPERIENCE

Sooner or later, each player will want to improve their character’s skills, characteristics, or buy new perks (or buy off complications). There are several ways in which to do this. The preferred method of increasing one’s skills is listed below, under Finding a Teacher, and reflects a more realistic rate of time to learn new skills and to improve. Characters must consider which skill they will devote study time to, and how much time they will devote to improving that skill—time that cannot be spent on other tasks, such as adventuring, working, guard duty, and so on.

If you prefer, the GM may simply allow players to improve their characters’ skills by spending experience points (EP), without the need for spending time in training or study. While not as “realistic” as the detailed rules for using teachers, it makes for a faster-paced, more cinematic game.

IMPROVING SKILL LEVELS

To improve a skill, one must actually be using that skill. It stands to reason, neh? If one is not using it often enough to warrant actual progression (say, at least once per gaming session) one will have a difficult time improving unless he can find a teacher.

The rules that follow provide for a more realistic approach to improving skills.

Study & Practice

Study and practice requires no teacher. You have to find a book or manual of some sort, and just start reading and practicing on your own. This is the most difficult method of improving yourself; you might have no idea where to start or where you should start, and worst of all there is no one to tell you when you are making mistakes.

It typically requires a full month of study for each 1 experience point the character spends improving the skill. With this method, however, you cannot increase your skill above 3. To increase a skill above 3, the character must undertake more formalized training with a teacher.

Practical Experience

Doing is still the best teacher. Whenever you do something really well, the GM may award you 1 experience point on the spot. These points are applied to the skill you were using to get the award, so if you want to get better in a skill you should use it often. Maybe you’ll do something good with it and get those bonus points. When enough EP are accumulated to pay for the next skill level, it automatically increases by 1.

These rewards should be given only for use of the skill in particularly dramatic events or when the player rolls a Critical Success. Only one such award per skill is allowed each game session.

Finding a Teacher

This is the easiest way to learn. The teacher must be at least two levels higher than the character in the desired skill. In other words, a PC with a SL of 5 in Swords (ken-jutsu) must find a teacher with a Swords skill of at least 7.

There comes a point in studying where no more education will suffice, and one must simply practice, practice, and do, do, do. This is why the level difference is required; at extremely high levels of skill (9 or higher) one cannot find more skilled teachers; one must become one’s own master. In game terms, the character continues to study as normal, but he uses his INT alone to determine the length of study/training time required to improve a level or uses the Practical Experience method.

A teacher must also have the time to teach and the student the time to learn, and even the most knowledgeable teachers may not be any good at transferring their knowledge. That’s where the Teaching skill comes in. The teacher averages his score of the skill to be taught with his Teaching skill (skill being taught + Teaching, divided by 2); he may then teach the student up to that level of skill.

Study Problems: The simple gaining of ability (indicated by an increased Skill Level) is not automatic upon study. There are several things that may make studying more difficult and may hinder the PC’s ability to advance. Some of the hindrances are listed here, but the GM and players will have to decide what other matters might affect study. The problems are cumulative.

- Student undertakes other duties or activities, including studying other skills, in the period of study: required training time is multiplied by 1 plus 1 point per other activity (e.g., studying two skills takes three times as long to advance in each)
- Student is recovering from injuries or ill: study of any physical skill is either totally impossible or his required training time is doubled (or even tripled; GM’s discretion, based on the nature of the wounds or illness)
- Student is forced to interrupt his study (e.g., to perform some duty for his lord or undertake a mission): student resumes study from the point he left off with an effective loss of (10 - INT) weeks of study due to the interruption.
- Student has the Slow Learner complication: student’s effective INT is halved (round up).

Study Benefits: There are a few issues that may bring benefits to study. Like potential hindrances, they are cumulative. The student gains the indicated bonus for that circumstance when calculating the required training time:

- Teacher has a score of 10 or greater in skill being taught
- Student studies at an institution devoted to teaching that skill (e.g., a dōjō or temple): +1 to student’s effective INT
- Skill being studied is one in the profession template for that character (e.g., Swords for a samurai, or Buddhism for a Buddhist priest): +1 to student’s effective INT
- Student is the only one for the teacher for the duration of study: +5 to teacher’s effective TL
- Student has the Scholastically Gifted talent, add +2 to his effective INT for calculating training time;
- If the student has the Natural talent for the skill being taught: double student’s effective INT for calculating the required training time.

Study Time: Consult the chart below to determine the number of weeks of study needed to increase the character’s Skill Level. Cross reference the desired Skill Level (the horizontal, bold numbers) and the student’s INT + the teacher’s Teaching Level (TL;
the vertical numbers). The resulting number is the number of weeks required for the student to gain 1 level in the skill. The teacher’s TL is equal to the average of his Teaching skill score and the score in the task being taught.

The required time must be spent by the student or no increase in the skill is gained. In other words, time must be spent as well as Experience Points in order for characters to improve a skill. The formula for determining how long a student must study in order to achieve a new skill level is:

\[ T = ((2 \times DL) + 10) - (INT + TL) \]

In other words, the time in weeks (T) it takes to achieve a new level equals two times the desired skill level (DL) plus 10, minus the sum of the student’s INT plus the teacher’s TL.

For example, a student with an INT of 5 desiring to achieve a skill level of 6 in Kenjutsu by studying with a sensei who has a Teaching Level of 8 would be: \((12 + 10) – (5 + 8) = 9\) weeks.

If there is no teacher available, then use 0 for TL in the formula.

### Required Time to Improve SL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Student’s INT + TL</th>
<th>Desired Skill Level</th>
<th>Time Req’d</th>
<th>Max Bonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Alternative Method to Increase Skills

Increasing Skills and Stats may only be accomplished if all three of the following conditions are met: the PC must spend the appropriate amount of time (indicated below), the appropriate number of CPs must be spent by the character, and the GM must approve the increase.

### Optional Training Time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Time Req’d</th>
<th>Max Bonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Study &amp; Practice</td>
<td>1 Pt/Month</td>
<td>+3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taught by Sensei</td>
<td>1–2 Pts/Month</td>
<td>(Teach + Skill)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experience</td>
<td>1–2 Pts (Instant)</td>
<td>Only for skill used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role-playing</td>
<td>Varies</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SPENDING YOUR POINTS

Congratulations—your GM has just dumped a whopping load of experience points on you. Now what do you do? How can you make use of them? Like chits, experience points need to be “cashed in” to buy or improve skills, talents, okuden, characteristics (or even to buy off old complications).

Buying and Improving Skills

One experience point is needed for each level of the new skill. For example: Hamada has an SL of 3 in Polearms: Lances (sôjutsu). To buy an SL of 4, he will need 4 experience points. To then advance to SL5, he will need five more experience points.

Improving Characteristics

To improve a primary characteristic costs 5 experience points times the new level. For example: Katsuhiko’s player wants to raise his REF from 5 to 6. This will cost 6 x 5 = 30 experience points (and his GM’s permission).

Buying New Talents

Experience points are required to “buy” a new talent (or to increase an existing one, if allowed), plus the permission of the GM. The cost for each talent is listed with its description (see Talents, page 112).

Generating Cash

One experience point equals one “coin” of cash. The type of coin depends on the caste of the character: Hinin get zeni; bonge get monme-ita, buke get bu-shoban; kuge get ryô. You must first get your GM’s permission to exchange EP for cash. For example, Akane, a samurai (buke), trades in 4 EP for 4 “coins.” Akane is a buke so he gets 4 bu-shoban.

A Little Present

One of the greatest problems with running a campaign is the allocation of experience. The GM has to be careful with how much—or how little—he gives out. If he gives too little, the players become frustrated with their lack of accomplishment. If he gives too much... well, everything just gets too easy.

For this reason, we recommend being conservative with the rewards, keeping them small from game to game, but providing a larger award at the end of the campaign or to close an adventure arc. The award should be something like special training (where Skill points must go to a specific area), a particularly nice weapon or piece of armor, or even the afore-mentioned “munificent kami.”

THE RULE OF X

The Rule of X is a useful option for GMs who want or need more control over their campaign’s growth. It is a simple way to set and maintain the power level of the campaign.

\[X = DC + REF + Skill\]

Simply put, it puts a limit the power characters can have to start off at in a campaign. (Of course, NPCs are not restricted to this rule, but PCs are.) The Rule of X varies depending on the genre or “level” of game you are running. It may be increased as the campaign progresses, or as the GM sees fit. We recommend increasing the number by 1 for every three to four game sessions or adventures.

The value of X depends on the power level you want for the campaign. For instance, a Chanbara-level campaign might start with the Rule of 20. A character with a STR of 7 and a Reflex of 6 could have a Swords (ken-jutsu) skill of no higher than 7, because \(7 + 6 + 7 = 20\). Suggested values for the Rule of X are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Base X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Historic (Competent)</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chanbara (Incredible)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anime (Legendary)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Rule of X is primarily for setting a campaign’s initial power level, not for limiting characters after they’ve been created. The GM should use it as a guide for awarding experience. If the GM wishes, he can change the Rule of X during a campaign to allow characters to become more powerful. Any new characters entering the campaign should do so with this new, current Rule of X applied to them, rather than the original level.

Samurai in service, both great and small, must always practice thrift and have the discrimination to do it so that they don’t have a deficit in their household expenditure. ...for it is financial difficulty that induces even those with high reputation to do dishonest things that are alien to them. [A samurai] must make a firm resolve to live only according to one’s means.

— Daidôji Yûzan
MAGIC
Magic, like nothing else, has the potential to totally unbalance your game. If everyone has a latent capability for such simple cantrips as starting fire, why couldn’t the simple skill that is intended to light candles and cooking fires negate the need for fire arrows, incendiary devices, and the like? To use another idiom, in a land where flying carpets and teleportation spells are plentiful, why bother with animals and provisions and the difficulties of a long trip?

Regardless of the level at which you play (Historical, Chanbara, or Anime), you still have to decide how much magic is available to the PCs (and NPCs). Does everyone have some tendency or gift for latent magic use, or is magic a skill that can only be mastered after years of study and devotion?

We can assume that clerics have a traditional ability with mysticism, as deities can be appealed to for miracles or other intervention; but who beyond “ordained” clergy has such gifts is up to you. You can allow the laity to study the schools of magic as well, without having the PCs or NPCs become priests.

**MAGIC USE**

If your game takes a more structured approach to magic—that is, only those who have actually studied magic can use it—then there are a few schools you can select for your PC: Shintô, Bukkyô, Onmyôdô, and Shugendô (and possibly Shinobi Mikkyô, if you choose to have a more impressive “black magic” element added to your shinobi). Each of these is also a religious philosophy, you will note. In *Sengoku*, magic does not exist in a vacuum, it must be tied to something. There is nothing corresponding to the magician or wizard who studies magic for its own sake.

**PREREQUISITES FOR MYSTICS**

All characters in the game have a skill level (SL) in one faith or another, as both Shintô (Shinten) and Buddhism (Bukkyô) are Everyman skills (see page 117); everyone knows how to pray and bow at the local shrine or temple, and who the primary entities are in each pantheon. This same skill serves as the “Use Magic” skill for the mystic character.

There is another prerequisite to using magic from a given way of mysticism: the Mystic talent (see Talents, Chapter 8). PCs and NPCs able to use magic must purchase the Mystic talent in order to use any of the “prayers” listed for their chosen belief system, whether it be Shugendô, Shintô, Bukkyô or Onmyôdô. The Mystic talent has its own built-in limitations, in that those possessing the talent must adhere to the tenets of their faith. If the character commits any major transgressions (or sins, pollution, etc.), their Mystic talent is immediately rendered “inoperable” and they are unable to perform any prayers. (Transgressions for each belief system are listed in the Religion chapter.)

Not everyone who is an adherent to a religion or a devotee of a particular sect is able to use magic. In the same way that one must study to gain skill, no one with a skill level lower than 5 in their religion skills may buy the Mystic talent. This simulates the amount of effort put into learning the doctrines and dogmas, as well as the deeper elements of the faith and thereupon the beginnings of the deeper aspects—the magical aspects—of the religion.

**TERMS AND CONVENTIONS**

**Mystics**

One convention we will follow in the game is the use of the term “mystic” to refer to anyone who has the Mystic talent, regardless of occupation, caste, or any other element of identity. The term is not to denote a specific profession per se, as in other games; we use term only as a shorthand for “magic-using PC/NPC.”

Reflecting the rarity of such a concept in Japanese history and tradition, there is no specific profession here for a mahôtsukai (wizard), who is a practitioner of pure magic. A separate magical supplement for the *Sengoku* game will provide more information on magic, more prayers and spells, and a few new professions focusing on the use of magic.

**Interfaith Effects of Magic**

Because the people of Japan have embraced Rêôbu-Shintô, the belief that Shintô and Buddhist spirits are in fact one and the same, the effects of prayers are able to cross over between faiths. Specifically, the effects of a prayer from one faith will affect the spirits of all other faiths; A Shintô Exorcism will affect Shintô spirits and Buddhist spirits all the same. In one sense all religions have their own, distinct pantheon. In another, a kami is a bosatsu is a deity by any other name.

Likewise, the effects of spells on mortals—PCs and NPCs—are the same, regardless of their chosen primary religion, or lack of religion. Yamabushi (i.e., Shugendô) Blessings will affect a Shintô character the same as a Buddhist character (with the exception of removing transgressions; see the Blessing and Purify prayer descriptions for more information).
Endurance and Power

Japanese mysticism does not cost the caster Endurance, power, mana or any other similar European concept of personal energy. All spells are manifestations of the intervention of supernatural beings on our world. “Magic” belongs to the Kami and the Bosatsu; mortals can only call on the beings to perform the magic for them. The higher a character’s Piety and knowledge and understanding of the faith, the greater the likelihood of this call being answered.

Note To HERO System™ Players

The spells in SENGOKU were created from a combination of the Hero System rules for creating powers, the spell creation rules from Shards of the Stone: Core™ rule book, and some in-house genre rules. The spells roughly equal 10 to 15 Active Points per Level of Prayer (in Fuzion this equates to about 2 to 3 Power Points per Level of Prayer, or LoP). This takes into account the various Limitations for each type or “school” of magic, as well as the various Advantages used in each prayer.

For example, all mystics in SENGOKU must follow a code of conduct in order to maintain their prayer-casting ability, they must use Extra Time, Gestures and Incantations, all spells are considered 0 Endurance Cost, and so on.

Campaigns using the Magic is Uncommon option (see below)—whereby characters pay for spells just as they would for skills—provide the closest approximation of point costs to the Hero System and Champions: New Millennium™, in regards to the cost of spells versus the cost of powers. Note, however, that the SENGOKU magic system and the Power-building rules presented in the Hero System and Champions: New Millennium are not exactly matched or “balanced,” nor were they intended to be. SENGOKU reflects Japanese magic of the chanbara genre, so certain liberties were taken with the costing of the various spells.

CASTING PRAYERS

As noted above, mystics do not manipulate arcane power as with traditional Western magic. Instead, most Japanese mystics perform rituals and chant prayers which gain the attention of the gods, who themselves cause the “magic” to occur. All magic in Japan is thus theologically- or deity-based (with the possible exception of Onmyôdô).

Skill Checks

To cast a prayer, the mystic must spend the requisite time performing the rituals, chanting the prayer, and/or making the proper gestures and movements. The base time needed is listed for each prayer. At the end of this time the character makes a skill check, using PIE + Religion Skill (e.g., Shintô, Buddhism, etc.), with a base difficulty number of 18.

Level of Prayer (LoP)

Prayers, like skills, have levels, ranging from 1 to 10. Some prayers have varying effects, dependent upon what level of prayer the caster knows and what level of effect the caster is using. In no case may a prayer be bought at a level higher than their religious skill score.

A mystic can cast a prayer that has varying levels of effect at any level up to the score of his religious skill.

For example, if Yujô has a score of 7 in the skill Shugendô, and the Blessing prayer at Level 5, then Yujô can cast the Blessing at Level 1 or as much as Level 5. If Yujô eventually improves his Blessing score to 7, he will be able to cast Blessings of up to level 7.

Some prayers have a set level of effect. This level is indicated in the description for the prayer. In order to be able to cast the prayer, the mystic must learn the prayer to the indicated Level.

For example, if Yujô wanted to learn a prayer with a set level of 4, he’d have to learn the prayer to level 4 before he could use it.

Mystics must “learn” each lower level, working their way up to the desired level of the prayer. Prayers with a set level cannot be cast at a lower Level; their effects are predetermined and cannot be adjusted unless otherwise indicated.

Range

All prayers, unless otherwise noted, are “line of sight,” meaning the mystic incurs no penalty for range as long as the caster can visually see his target. A few prayers (most notably Curse and Full Curse) have very far-reaching effects, indeed, being able to target a person or thing hundreds or even thousands of rì away, without the target being seen, although the mystic must be able to identify the target in his prayer; that is, he must know who the intended target is. Simply stating the target’s name or “the one who stole my tea cup,” or “Lord Torinaga’s longbow” is sufficient, as long as the mystic and the spirits know who or what is the intended target of the prayer.

Those prayers having an area of effect are targeted against a specific spot, called the center of effect. The center of effect may be any point within the caster’s range. The prayer’s area of effect is then determined from this point.

For example, Omi the onmyoji is standing upon a hill overlooking a rice field. He casts Rains from Heaven at Level 4. The spell’s area of effect is a 128 meter radius from the center of effect. Omi casts the prayer directly over the center of the field. The spell’s center of effect is the middle of the field; the affected area is thus a 128 meter radius around the center of the field. Omi is taking the requisite time to cast the prayer, so his base DN is 18.

Taking More or Less Time

Characters may invoke for a shorter or longer amount of time than that listed for the prayer. The difficulty number goes up if the character takes less than the listed time to cast the prayer, and goes down if the caster takes longer than the listed time. For each step up the time chart, the difficulty increases by four (+4 DN).

For example, Chôshi is an onmyoji trapped in a burning building. He has a PIE of 6 and an Onmyôdô score of 7, and he wants to cast the Fire Armor prayer to protect himself from the fire so he can try to make good his escape. If Chôshi spends the base 5 minutes casting the prayer, his DN is 18. But Chôshi doesn’t have that long, as the building is beginning to cave in around him. Chôshi needs to cast the prayer as soon as possible, so he opts to attempt to cast it in one Phase. Because “1 Phase” is three steps increased by four (+4 DN), Chôshi’s DN for the attempt is now 70. Chôshi needs to roll 17 or better on 3d6 to successfully cast the prayer or he may burn to death. Chôshi had better consider us-

Singlenessmindedness is all-powerful.

— Yamamoto Jin’emon

231
For each step down the Time Table, the difficulty goes down by one (-1 DN). Taking more time to perform a ritual allows the mystic to focus on the details and provides less of a chance for the caster to make a mistake. Taking less time, on the other hand, increases the chances of the caster making a mistake and offending the spirits.

A successful roll has its obvious advantages. The Time Chart is reprinted below for convenience.

### The Time Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuzion Time</th>
<th>Japanese Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Phase (3 seconds)</td>
<td>6 Byô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Round (12 seconds)</td>
<td>24 Byô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Rounds (1 minute)</td>
<td>2 Fun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Minutes</td>
<td>2/3 Koku*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Minutes</td>
<td>~3 Koku*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Toki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Hours</td>
<td>3 Toki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Day</td>
<td>12 Toki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Days</td>
<td>Shu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Month</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Season (3 Months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Year</td>
<td>1 Toshi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This is a measurement of time, not rice (different kanji)*

### Other Bonuses

Some schools, or religions, have certain benefits that the priest can use to increase his chance of success when casting a prayer. These special bonuses are listed under each school’s description.

### Critical Success and Failure

A critical success on the skill check to cast a prayer allows the mystic to invoke the maximum possible effect for the prayer being cast.

For example, a Shintō priest is casting a level 5 Purification prayer with a 5d6 effect and rolls an 18—a critical success. The prayer automatically does the maximum effect, or 30 points! A critical failure indicates that the mystic has offended the spirits, and suffers a major transgression, sin, or pollution. The prayer being attempted fails, and the mystic cannot attempt any more prayers until the spirits are appeased. The mystic must have the transgression, pollution, or sin removed—Shintō priests and onmyōji must be purified, Buddhists and yamabushi must be blessed—and the Atonement prayer cast on them.

If the Atonement ritual skill check fails, the mystic is in a very bad way and has but two choices. The mystic must either undertake a great task, such as a pilgrimage to a major temple or center of his faith (e.g., Mt. Hieizan for shugenja, Ise Shrine for kannushi, etc.), or leave the priesthood. The task should be a difficult endeavor, and could lead to a whole series of adventures in itself.

### Leaving the Priesthood

Leaving the priesthood is a serious decision. Characters leaving the priesthood after a failed Atonement ritual automatically lose the Mystic talent and their ability to cast prayers of the religion they left. They still have the knowledge, and can even teach the prayers to others, but can’t themselves use them. Former priests traditionally change their name to reflect their leaving the priesthood behind.

Priests who leave the service of their religion can, however, reenter their former faith or enter the tonsure of a different faith. The Mystic talent must be bought again in order to be able to use prayers in either case. If returning to a previous faith which demanded a great task because of a failed Atonement, the returning priest must still complete that task before re-buying the Mystic talent.

For example, Daiko Sō, a Buddhist priest, rolls a Critical Failure when casting a Blessing prayer, then fails his Atonement ritual skill check. Daiko Sō decides to leave the Buddhist priesthood, and takes a new name—Tadahira. He loses the Mystic talent and his ability to cast Buddhist prayers. Tadahira then becomes an onmyōji. He studies the ways of Onmyōdō (i.e., raises his level in that skill), and once his Onmyōdō score is 3 he buys the Mystic talent again, this time for Onmyōdō. Tadahira may now cast any Onmyōdō spells he learns.

Tadahira could have returned to the Buddhist priesthood, instead, in which case he would have to undertake a great task. Once he completed the task, he would then be able to buy the Mystic talent again. Only then would he regain the ability to cast
**FAITHS**

There is an exclusivity about magic use. While PCs can study and learn about many religions and have a skill level as high as they want in any (or even all) of them, he can only follow ordination in one, and can only develop mystic skills in one. What this means is that a Shintō kannushi cannot also learn or use Bukkyō prayers. Each faith has its own taboos and specialties, and this is something the player must keep in mind when choosing which faith or “school” his character will follow. (See Religion for more detailed information about each of the schools.)

**BUKKYŌ**

Not all sects of Buddhism are mystic-friendly. For game purposes, the only ones that truly emphasize magic traditions are Tendai and Shingon (whose magic is called Mikkyō). Relatively few Buddhist clergy will have mystic abilities; most are simply clergy. Even so, all Buddhist priests may purchase and perform the various Blessing and Exorcism spells; Blessings and exorcisms are not limited to the Tendai and Shingon sects. (GMs are free to ignore this historically-based rule and allow all Buddhist priests to purchase any of the Bukkyō spells.)

Clergy wishing to learn how to use Mikkyō must travel to one of the major temples of their sect and be accepted as a student by the head abbot or chief priest of the sect.

As with Shintō, prayers cast by Buddhist clergy are more properly prayers—recitations of the sutras (sacred writings). Buddhist mystics need not be in ceremomal garb (although they must be wearing their kesa, at least) and they may either chant memorized spells or use scroll books. Unlike Shintō, however, there is no need to be in a particularly sacred space as “the Buddha is everywhere.” Even so, prayers cast in a temple of the mystic’s sect receive a bonus to the priest’s skill roll and increase the effective level of the prayer.

**Special Bonuses**

Buddhist priests receive the following bonuses to their prayer-casting skill rolls. These bonuses are cumulative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity or Item</th>
<th>Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using seven-ring priest’s staff or rosary</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performing ritual in a temple belonging to your sect</td>
<td>+2 AV, +1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Level of effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acting on behalf of Buddhist adherent with PIE of 5+</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SHINTŌ**

Shintō is a religion deeply concerned with questions of purity and pollution. Due to the large number of taboos, there are several things the Shintō mystic is incapable of. The Shintō mystic is forbidden to learn healing skills (blood and disease represent pollution). He also has no ability to raise the dead (an extremely taboo act) or preserve bodies as corpses are also pollutants.

Shintō spells are actually more akin to specially created prayers, called norito. The Shintō mystic must be in ceremonial garb—robes, hat, various accouterments, and so on—and must use a small branch of the sacred sakaki tree, or a tared, wooden Shintō prayer stick (shaku). When performing any of the various Purification prayers, the mystic must use a sakaki branch or, more commonly, a purification wand (haragiushi), which looks like a thin wooden rod with a number of paper and flax streamers or strips attached to one end.

The prayers are not cast on the fly or on the spur of the moment. Every tone, every voice inflection, every utterance of a syllable must be performed in strict accordance with ritual. Even the ritualized gestures of Shintō ceremonies play an important role in the casting of Shintō prayers. Because of their nature, all prayers increase in effectiveness when cast either in a shrine precinct or in the presence of a kami (or similarly sacred-to-Shintō space).

One of their specialties is their ability to function as a medium. Although he can’t come near a dead body, he can still function as its voice. Note that he doesn’t speak to the dead person: he becomes the dead person, and speaks as if he were the deceased. He is no rule with the onmyōji. No rule can be set for them.

Onmyōji often sport beards and wild, disheveled hair. They may wear any kind of clothing; this onmyōji may be a total flop, that one may look like a refugee from some ancient cataclysm. Some live in caves, some in isolated farm houses, some in abandoned shrines. From appearance to ways of living, no one can really get a grasp on what onmyōji are, what they want, and what their agenda may be.

An onmyōji may appear out of nowhere to help someone who doesn’t even know he needs help. He may also staunchly refuse to get involved in even life-or-death issues.

Despite its clouded origins and practices, Onmyōdō seems to derive from some ancient Chinese magic practice. There are Taoist aspects focusing on dark-light, or positive-negative (in-yō) as well as traces of elemental magic (gogyo) in Onmyōdō.

**Special Bonuses**

Onmyōji receive the following bonuses to their prayer-casting skill checks. These bonuses are cumulative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity or Item</th>
<th>Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prayer cast at night, under an open sky</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acting on behalf of Onmyōdō adherent with PIE 5+</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using a Taoist charm or talisman to channel the prayer</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Among both priests and commoners, if there is a man with some talent or ability, he should not be allowed to leave to some other clan.

A man who depends solely on his own ability and serves indolently, however, is worthless.

— Asakura Toshikage
can also speak the voice of a deity, or greater kami. Shintō mystics also may have an ability to predict the future, but this is more like “determining an outcome” rather than actually seeing the future and being able to analyze all the ramifications of an action. Purification and blessing places and things are also Shintō strong points.

Special Bonuses
Shintō priests receive the following bonuses to their prayer-casting skill checks. These bonuses are cumulative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity or Item</th>
<th>Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using sakaki branch, shaku (prayer stick) or haraigushi (purification wand)</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performing ritual at shrine or sacred place</td>
<td>+2 AV, +1 Level of effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acting on behalf of Shintō adherent with PIE of 5+</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SHUGENDŌ
Adherents of Shugendō are mountain ascetics called yamabushi. Practitioners of yamabushi mysticism are called shugenja. Historically the terms shugenja and yamabushi are nearly synonymous. In SENGOKU, however, we use the term shugenja to mean specifically those yamabushi capable of casting Shugendō mystical prayers.

Shugendō is more or less a Buddhist school, but it has ancient ties to Shintō. Shugenja are known as skilled healers, and the may specialize in such magic. They are also sought after as mediums and seers, and as exorcists of mischievous spirits.

Fire plays an important part in Shugendō, as the god of fire is one of the major deities of shugenja. Shugenja cast many of their prayers kneeling in front of a roaring fire as they chant their incantations. Unlike Shintō, there are no scrolls used by the shugenja: they memorize all their spells. They are taught spells by rote by their masters, and they develop them themselves after long study, meditation, and prayer. One shugenja’s Oracle prayer may be totally different than another shugenja’s Oracle prayer in what is spoken, how it is intoned, and what gestures are performed (if any), but the effects are the same.

Special Bonuses
Shugenja receive the following bonuses to their prayer-casting skill checks. These bonuses are cumulative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity or Item</th>
<th>Modifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Performing ritual near bonfire or camp fire</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performing on sacred mountain (must be 100+ meters in elevation)</td>
<td>+2 AV, +1 Level of effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On behalf of Shugendō or Buddhist follower w/ PIE 5+</td>
<td>+1 AV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SHINOBI-MIKKYŌ
Is Shinobi-mikkyō really a school of magic? Do shinobi have access to prayers—deep, dark, arcane—that no one else does? Or are their skills all simply works of legerdemain, slight of hand, incredible physical control? Ultimately you will have to decide whether to allow magic-wielding shinobi in your game. Shinobi-mikkyō is covered in detail in the SHINOBI: SHADOWS OF NIHON supplement.

KIRISTUOKYŌ
The new faith of the nanbanjin is a mystery to most people in Japan. They are unaware of the potential for magic and sorcery the foreign religion has, and may therefore be wary of any who seem to be clergy for that reason. Kiristuokyō as a way of mysticism is beyond the scope of this book. A supplement is planned which will address the nanbanjin
priests and their “one god” faith.

**BUYING PRAYERS**

As with other skills, players have to buy the ability to use mystic abilities. Prayers, and their relative levels of power, are purchased with Option Points. The cost for spells are determined by the availability of magic in your campaign.

**AVAILABILITY AND COST**

In *Sengoku* there are three levels of availability for magic: Unseen, Uncommon and Common.

There are therefore three ways you can implement mystic power in your game, depending on the availability of magic you want. **Note that the availability of magic is not necessarily tied to the “Power Level” of the game (Historical, Chanbara or Anime).** You can run a Historic-level game where magic is Common, or run an Anime-level game in which magic is Unseen.

You should decide the availability of magic in your game before you begin your game, as you really couldn’t change in midstream without unbalancing things or upsetting other players, as retroactively granting or denying powers can cause bad feelings.

**Magic is Unseen**

In this level, magic is a behind-the-scenes “reality.” Almost everyone believes it exists, but no one knows how it works or what causes it, per se. Oh, the effects of magic are felt all the time, but mystics casting green fireballs from their fingertips is a ludicrous thought. Magic is low-key, although it permeates every aspect of everyday life. PCs may not buy prayers at all, instead relying on the GM to determine the effects of prayers and appeals to the spirits. This is the default availability for Historic-level *Sengoku* games.

**Magic is Uncommon**

Magic is not just accepted as real, with its effects seen but not the cause. Instead, magical abilities have been witnessed by some. Most people’s exposure to magic is through local Buddhist and Shintō priests, whose prayers protect and otherwise benefit the whole community. Some, however, can tell tales of having encountered strange, hermetic mystics in the mountains and by-ways of Japan.

PCs who have a skill level of at least 5 in any faith and who buy the Mystic talent, can buy any prayer allowed by that school provided the level of the prayer is no higher than the level of the faith skill. Each prayer must be purchased like a skill; prayer levels are increased in the same manner as skills (finding a teacher, spending time in study, etc.)

For example; Jōgen is a yamabushi – a shugenja – with a Shugendo score of 5. He wants to buy a prayer. Jōgen may buy that prayer up to a level 5. Any level higher than that is beyond Jōgen’s ability to comprehend, let alone to perform.

This is the default availability for Chanbara-level games.

**Cost:** As per skills (1 OP each Level at character creation; LoP in OP for each Level afterward). See *Experience* (page 226) for more information on improving skill levels.

**Magic is Common**

PCs who have a Skill Level of at least 1 in any “school” can buy any prayer allowed by that school. The Mystic talent is not required; everyone has what it takes to use mystic prayers, given the proper training and discipline. Prayers cost a flat price of 5 OP each. All prayer levels are assumed to equal to the character’s score in the “school” (i.e., in Shintō, Bukkyō, etc.). As the character’s faith skill improves, so do all of his prayers.

For example; Sōkyō, has a Buddhism (Bukkyō) score of 6. He buys two spells, for a total cost of 10 OP. The Level of each prayer is equal to his Bukkyō score, 6. If he later improves his Bukkyō to 7, each of his spells will become Level 7 spells.

This is the default availability for Anime-level *Sengoku* games.

**Cost:** 5 OP per prayer (LoP is equal to level of religious skill; LoP automatically improves with religious skill).

**PRAYERS**

Prayers are purchased according to one of the three methods outlined above. Before beginning your game, decide which method you will follow for the duration.

All of the prayers are presented in alphabetical order. Not every prayer may be acquired by practitioners of every type of mysticism.

For example, the Fire Armor prayer may be purchased by practitioners of Bukkyō, Omnyōdō and Shugendo, but not by Shintō priests, whereas the Purify Water prayer may be purchased by Omnyō and Shintō priests but not by Bukkyō or Shugendo priests.

A listing of all of the spells also appears on the following page, with annotations as to which “schools” can purchase them.

---

*When something out of the ordinary happens, it is ridiculous to say that it is a mystery or a portent of something to come. The fact that the sun rises in the east and sets in the west would be a mystery, too, if it were not an everyday occurrence. The mystery is created in people’s minds and by waiting for the disaster. It is from their very minds that it occurs.*

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**DESCRIPTIONS**

**Atonement**

**Casting Time:** 6 hours  
**Level:** Varies  
**Available to:** Bukkyô, Onmyôdô, Shintô, Shugendô

This special incantation is performed by (or upon) those priests who have fallen out of favor with the spirits of their pantheon (including those who have rolled a critical failure on their skill check when casting any other prayer). Atonement involves an exacting ceremony designed to honor the deities and to ask forgiveness for transgressions, sin or to remove pollution, and often involves offerings to the spirits of food, drink and sometimes material gifts of the highest quality.

A successful casting of Atonement restores a number of PIE lost to transgressions equal to the level of prayer (LoP). This is the only way for priests to regain PIE lost to transgressions without the aid of others. Atonement may be cast once per month. That is, when a priest casts Atonement, he may not attempt it again for one month. Any attempt to cast Atonement more than once in a one month (three week) period is treated as an automatic critical failure. If cast on another, any failure reflects on the recipient, not on the caster.

Atonements may be required by the GM for any grievous incident in which the priest loses Honor points for acts contrary to the tenets of his faith. Unlike the *samurai*, who may commit *seppuku*, priests answer not to a feudal lord but to a higher spiritual power. Whenever a priest is in a situation in which he loses Honor for acts considered “bad” by his religion, the GM can require the priest to perform an Atonement. Atonements can also be ordered as a form of punishment for subordinate priests by their superiors, for talking out of turn, acting without permission, or otherwise defying the wishes of their senior or sect.

*For example;* Takuan, a Buddhist priest, strikes a parishioner for eating red meat. Physical violence is forbidden in Takuan’s sect, so his superior orders him to perform an Atonement.

---

### Available Prayers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spells</th>
<th>Casting Time</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Bukkyô</th>
<th>Onmyôdô</th>
<th>Shintô</th>
<th>Shugendô</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atonement</td>
<td>6 Hours</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bind Spirit</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bless Land</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bless Weapon</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blessing</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breathe Life</td>
<td>6 Hours</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chant</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curse</td>
<td>1 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detect Enchantment</td>
<td>1 Min</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empathy for the Dead</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exorcism</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feet of the Spider</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Armor</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form of Smoke</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Curse</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heal Wounds</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Know Language</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Know the Flow of Time</td>
<td>1 Min</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light from Heaven</td>
<td>20 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal Armor</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misses from Heaven</td>
<td>20 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music from Heaven</td>
<td>20 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Open Eye</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection from Poisons</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purification</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purify Water</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rain from Heaven</td>
<td>20 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receding Waters</td>
<td>20 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sense Disruption of Wa</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smokes of Nai</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speak for Kami</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speak for the Dead</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop Poison</td>
<td>1 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summon Kami</td>
<td>1 Hour</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winds from Heaven</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>Var.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write Scroll</td>
<td>5 Min</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*First intention, then enlightenment.*  
— Buddhist maxim
**Bind Spirit**

*Casting time:* 5 Minutes  
*Level:* Varies  
*Available to:* Bukkyô, Onmyödô, Shintô, Shugendô  

This prayer enables the caster to bind a kami or other spiritual entity (including yurei or ghosts) with “ropes” of mystic energy. The spirit or kami may break out of these bonds by physical or magical means. The bonds are impervious to physical harm from weapons, fire, etc., but they can be affected by magic, such as spells from other mystics. These mystic bonds have the equivalent of 2 KD and 1d6 Hits for each level of prayer.

For example, Kyojiro casts a *Bind Spirit 5* prayer (*Bind Spirit at a Level of 5*). His bonds will have 10 KD and 5d6 Hits.

**Bless Land**

*Casting time:* 1 hour (1/2 toki)  
*Level:* Varies  
*Available to:* Shintô  

With this norito, a Shintô priest consecrates ground for a good purpose. This may be the planting of crops, the harvesting of same, or even the building of a house, temple, or castle. Indeed, it is *bad* not to have land blessed before beginning such constructions.

The practical effect of the prayer is to increase crop production of the coming harvest by 1d6 x LoP percent, and to decrease any injury to those building or living on that plot by 1d6 per two Levels of the prayer for the first two years. In addition, any skill checks or other die rolls made involving the blessed land or buildings on that land are given a +1 to the AV for every two levels of the prayer for the first two years.

For example, Kantora casts a *Bless Land 4* prayer on an area of land. The prayer has the effect of increasing the coming harvest by 4d6%, reducing any injuries occurring to those building or living on the land by 2d6 Hits and improving any skill checks involving the land or buildings on it by +2, both for two years after the blessing.

The size of the land that may be blessed in based on the LoP. At Level 1, the prayer blesses an area approximately 1 cho (60 x 60 ken) in size. This are doubles for each additional level of the prayer.

**Bless Weapon**

*Casting time:* 5 minutes  
*Level:* Varies  
*Available to:* Bukkyô, Onmyödô, Shintô, Shugendô  

This prayer enables the mystic to enchant any weapon, by chanting the proper sutras and making the proper mudra (hand signs) over the weapon. The mystic adds +1 to the chance to hit with the weapon for each LoP, and +1d6 to the damage caused by any weapon for every two Levels of the prayer (rounding down). The extra damage is not limited by the user’s STR. The prayer lasts one full day per level. It also effectively makes the weapon “magical” for the duration of the prayer, should the target of the prayer be subject only to magical attacks.

For example, Daibo casts a *Bless Weapon 5* on a comrade’s yari. When the Blessing is complete, the yari is +5 AV and does +2d6 Hits each time it strikes, even if the user’s STR is only 2.

**Blessing**

*Casting time:* 1 hour (1/2 toki)  
*Level:* Varies  
*Available to:* Bukkyô  

This prayer removes any physical and spiritual impurities, including (Buddhist) transgressions or sin, from one or more subjects (depending on the Level of Prayer). Successful completion of this prayer causes any and all impurities—poison, alcohol, disease, and so on—to be removed from the target. Any damage already caused by the impurities or toxins must be healed normally, but the prayer does halt any further effects. Blessing removes only transgressions of the Buddhist variety; it does not remove transgressions of other religions.

The prayer also removes spiritual transgressions, pollution or sins (depending on the faith of the caster), restoring any lost PIE the character suffered as a result of contact with pollution (such as blood, death, decay, people in mourning, and the like). A Blessing also removes one point of Bad Karma, if the character has any.

The priest may so bless one person at level 1. This number is doubled for each additional Level of effect, as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LoP</th>
<th>People Purified</th>
<th>LoP</th>
<th>People Purified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Breathe Life**

*Casting time:* 6 hours (3 toki)  
*Level:* Varies  
*Available to:* Onmyödô, Shugendô  

This is a dangerous and arcane prayer that can restore life to one slain. A long ceremony is performed over the body, which is cleaned and prepared with incense and other trappings. The body must be present and whole, or the resurrected body will lack whatever part is missing. Scars from any wounds will remain. (For example, someone decapitated can be resurrected, but there will be a scar running around his neck.)

For each LoP, the mystic rolls 1d6. If the total exceeds the deceased’s PIE x 5, the spirit is recalled from the other world and forced back into the body. The deceased awakens with 1 Stun point and all Hits restored.

Forcing a departed spirit back into a dead body is considered taboo. Each time this prayer is cast the mystic loses 5 times the deceased’s PIE in Honor Points. If the casting is successful, the mystic also loses one permanent point of PIE and gains one point of Bad Karma.

The length of time that has passed since the spirit’s departure also has an affect on the mage’s ability to call it back. The base time after a spirit’s passing that this prayer is effective is 6 hours. For every two levels of the prayer (rounding down) move one step down the Time Table.

---

*The Buddhists who take the Way of Selflessness seem to be lacking both eye and mind, but when they talk as three-year-old children it is yet another thing.*

— Shiba Yoshimasa
For example, Kugetora, who has a PIE of 4, is killed in a forest ambush. Tosô, an onmyôji and a friend of Kugetora’s, comes across the body three days later. Suspecting that Kugetora’s spirit is restless, Tosô casts a Breathe Life 6 prayer over the body, intending to allow Kugetora to seek vengeance on his killers if nothing else. The spell’s LoP divided by two is three. Looking at the Time Chart, we see that three steps down from “6 Hours” is “1 Month.” Tosô can raise a body up to one month after the spirit has left the body. Kugetora has been dead less than a month, so it is possible for Tosô to bring him back. Tosô spends the requisite 6 hours preparing the body and performing the ceremony. Just for attempting to cast the prayer, Tosô loses 20 Honor points (5 times Kugetora’s PIE). Tosô rolls 6d6, for a total of 21. This exceeds five times Kugetora’s PIE, so the prayer works! Kugetora awakens with his full Hits and one Stun point. Because the casting was successful, Tosô loses 20 points of Honor, one point of PIE and gains one point of Bad Karma.

**Chant**

*Casting time:* 1 Hour (Toki)

*Level:* Varies (minimum 1)

*Available to:* Bukkyô, Shintô

With this prayer, the priest stands off to one side of a battle chanting specific prayers, either by memory or from sacred writings. The chant calls the attention of the gods to his cause, and everyone on his side will perform better by +1 AV to all relevant skill checks per LoP, and inflict +1d6 Hits of damage with each blow. This prayer can be performed anywhere, not just at a religious institution or sacred site.

The ceremony takes a base one hour to complete. After the chant is completed, the effects of the prayer last for one Phase, plus one step down on the Time Chart for each Level of the prayer above Level 1.

For example, Eizô is at the battle camp of his lord and begins a Level 4 Chant to aid his lord’s troops in the coming battle. After spending the hour chanting, he successfully makes his casting skill check and the prayer is complete. All of the troops Eizô’s side will receive +4 to their AV for relevant skill checks, as well as +1d6 Hits to all damage rolls they make. The duration of these effects is only five minutes, but this can be enough time to gain the upper hand in the battle.

Any act of cowardice (GM’s discretion) cancels the effects of this prayer upon the coward.

**Curse**

*Casting time:* 1 minute

*Level:* Varies (minimum 1)

*Available to:* Bukkyô, Omnyôdo, Shintô, Shugendô

This prayer calls upon the spirits (or kami, bosatsu, whatever) to inflict some ailment or other malady on another person or thing. There are several possible curses the mystic can call for. Upon casting the curse, he must specify which type of curse he is calling for. Seldom does the cleric cast the curse on his own behalf; usually, he is asked (and paid) to curse a third party.

One person or item may be cursed at level 1. The number of people or items affected is doubled for each additional level of the prayer. The same curse must be applied to all targets of one casting; the caster cannot call for multiple types of curse with one casting of the prayer.

The duration of the curse is a base of one hour, plus one step down on the Time Table for every 2 LoP (rounding down).

The types of curses available are:

**Simple Curse:** Results in “bad luck”—The target receives a -1 to all skill rolls it attempts or which are attempted with it for the duration of the curse. Likewise, all skill checks made against the target receive a +1 AV for the duration of the curse.

**Physical Curse:** Results in lameness, blindness, incredible clumsiness, phenomenal body odor, deafness, or whatever the caster specifies. The mystic rolls 1d6 per level of the prayer. If the total exceeds the target’s Hits, they are struck with the curse.

The effect of the curse on play must be determined by the GM. In general, one Level of prayer effect can reduce one Primary stat by 1 point, one derived characteristic by 5 points or inflict 5 points’ worth of a Physical Complication, for the duration of the Curse. Thus, a level 6 Physical Curse can reduce one primary characteristic by six points, or two primary characteristics by 3 points each, or one derived characteristics by 30 points! The only restriction is that the Curse cannot itself kill the target (i.e., neither the target’s BODY nor Hits can be reduced below 1). The effects of the curse cannot be healed or cured by normal means until the Curse’s effects expire; this fact is usually what reveals the infliction to be a Curse and not a “normal” affliction.

**Ailment:** The object becomes sick (the caster chooses the disease), perpetually inebriated, etc. In general, one Level of prayer effect can reduce one Primary stat by 1 point, or one derived characteristic by 5 points, for the duration of the Curse, as per Physical Curses (above). The ailment cannot be cured or healed by normal means until the curse’s effects expire.

**Specific curse:** Affects one single aspect of the object, whatever the caster specifies. The effect of the curse on play must be determined by the GM. In general, one level of prayer effect can reduce one Primary stat by 1 point, or one derived characteristic by 5 points, for the duration of the Curse, as per Physical Curses (above). The ailment cannot be cured or healed by normal means until the curse’s effects expire.

Some sample specific curses include: cannot keep food down (reduces CON); he fails anytime he tries to gamble (affects Gambling AV); all animals are hostile to the target (affects Animal Handling and Riding AVs); his clan disowns him (lowers Membership Level), he loses all his wealth (affects the Wealth Level), he completely forgets how to do something (lowers appropriate skill level), etc.
Men who did well at the time of their death were men of real bravery. But people who talk in an accomplished fashion every day yet are agitated at the time of their death can be known not to have true bravery.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
Full Curse
Casting time: 1 hour
Level: Varies (min. 2)
Available to: Bukkyô, Onmyôdô, Shinô, Shugendô
This prayer is similar to Curse (see above), except that its effects are slightly lessened but are semi-permanent—the curse lasts until a set situation occurs, as defined by the mystic at the time of casting, no matter how long it may take for this to occur. In general, two levels of prayer effect can reduce one primary characteristic by 1 point, a perk by one level, inflict 5 points’ worth of a complication or cause -2 AV to all checks involving relevant skills.
The effects last for the duration of the curse
For example; Mitsuyoshi knows that his rival, Noriuji, has stolen his priceless tachi. He goes to the local shrine, and pays the priest, Yasumaro, to place a really juicy Level 8 curse on Noriuji until such time as he decides to return the sword. The service is said, and Noriuji, at home eating dinner, is struck blind (a 20 point effect) at the same time a messenger arrives....

Heal Wounds
Casting time: 1 hour (1/2 toki)
Level: Varies (min. 1)
Available to: Bukkyô, Onmyôdô, Shugendô
This prayer allows the mystic to restore Hits lost as damage. The mystic can restore a number of dice of damage equivalent to the LoP. The mystic can restore only as many Hits as the injured person’s original total; the prayer does not provide extra Hits to the target, it only restores lost Hits. The dice may be all rolled for a single target, or they may be split up among several people (but all recipients of the healing must be in the same, close proximity throughout the casting of the prayer in order to see the benefits).
For example; Kazuyasu has been injured, and has lost 15 points of his 25 Hits. Dôkyû, a shugenja with the Heal Wounds prayer at Level 4, attempts to heal him and rolls 4d6 for a lucky total of 19 points. Since Kazuyasu’s maximum Hits is 25, he is fully restored and there is no effect from the excess points. Later, Dôkyû comes across two wounded people by the side of the road, one seriously and one lightly wounded. He casts the Heal Wounds prayer again, this time splitting the dice between the two people. He rolls 1d6 for the lesser wounded man, and rolls 3d6 for the more seriously wounded man.

Know Language
Casting time: 5 minutes
Level: Varies
Available to: Bukkyô, Onmyôdô, Shinô, Shugendô
Casting this prayer brings enlightenment to the target, in the form of understanding one foreign language. The recipient of the prayer is able to understand, speak, read and write in the foreign language for the duration of the prayer. The caster needn’t know the name of the language. The mystic need only be able to state in the prayer the desire to communicate with a certain person or read a certain document in order to receive the benefits.
Each Level of effect above 1 doubles the number of people that may benefit from the prayer. Thus, at Level 3 the mystic can cast the prayer on four people, he can cast it on eight people at level 4, 16 people at level 5, and so on.
The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one phase. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the Time Table.
After the spell’s effects expire, the recipient of the prayer loses all knowledge and understanding of the language gained by the prayer.

**Know the Flow of Time**

**Casting time:** 1 minute

**Level:** 1

**Available to:** Bukkyō, Shintō, Shugendō

By casting this prayer, the mystic receives insight from the deities of his pantheon as to the positioning of the stars and sun in the sky, and therefore the precise time of day, down to the byō (half-second). The mystic is able to gain this insight at will for the duration of the prayer.

The prayer lasts for a base of one phase, plus one step down the *Time Table* for each additional level of effect.

*For example, at Level 5 the mystic may know the precise time of day, at will, for up to one hour after the successful casting of the prayer.*

**Light from Heaven**

**Casting time:** 20 minutes

**Level:** Varies (min. 1)

**Available to:** Omnyōdō, Shintō

With this prayer, the mystic calls for bright light to shine down from the heavens. The light is as bright as normal sunlight. At Level 1, the caster causes light to fill a 16-meter (8-ri) radius around the center of the spell’s effect. For each additional level of prayer the radius is doubled; 64-meter (32-ri) radius at level 3, 128-meter (64-ri) radius at level 4, and so on, up to a 8-km (2-ri) radius at level 10.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one minute. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the *Time Table*. At the end of the spell’s duration, the light disappears, returning the area to its former state of illumination (or lack thereof).

**Metal Armor**

**Casting time:** 5 minutes

**Level:** Varies (min. 2)

**Available to:** Bukkyō, Omnyōdō

This prayer is similar to the *Fire Armor* prayer. This prayer calls upon the spirits to protect the target (the mystic or another) from metal-based attacks, whether from natural metal or magical. A mystic field of bluish-white-hued energy surrounds the target, which reduces the damage caused by metal items and weapons by 25% for every two levels of the prayer, up to a maximum of 75%. The damaged is reduced by the indicated amount after any armor KD is subtracted from the attack.

The duration of the prayer at level 2 is one phase. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the *Time Table*. At the end of the spell’s duration, the metal armor disappears.

**Mists from Heaven**

**Casting Time:** 20 minutes

**Level:** Varies (min. 1)

**Available to:** Omnyōdō, Shintō

With this prayer, the mystic calls for foggy mists from the heavens to come down and fill an area. At level 1, the caster causes mists and fog to fill a 16-meter (8-ken) radius around the center of the spell’s effect. For each additional level of prayer the radius is doubled; 64-meter (32-ken) radius at level 3, 128-meter (64-ken) radius at level 4, and so on, up to a 8-km (2-ri) radius at level 10.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one minute. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the *Time Table*.

**Music from Heaven**

**Casting time:** 20 minutes

**Level:** Varies (min. 1)

**Available to:** Bukkyō, Omnyōdō, Shintō

With this prayer, the mystic causes an area to fill with music, as if an invisible orchestra were playing over the heads of everyone within the area of effect. The music can be of any sort the caster desires: court music (gagaku), Nō theater music, Buddhist meditation gongs, and so on. At level 1, the caster causes music to fill a 16-meter (8-ken) radius around the center of the spell’s effect. For each additional level of prayer the radius is doubled; 64-meter (32-ken) radius at level 3, 128-meter (64-ken) radius at level 4, and so on, up to a 8-km (2-ri) radius at level 10.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one minute. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the *Time Table*. At the end of the spell’s duration, the music ceases.

The quality of the music is as if played by performers with an appropriate skill level equal to 2x the level of prayer.

**The Open Eye**

**Casting time:** 5 minutes

**Level:** Varies (min. 1)

**Available to:** Bukkyō, Shugendō

This prayer allows the target (the mystic or someone else) to remember anything he senses as if he had the *Eidetic Memory* talent (see page 113). The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one phase. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the *Time Table*.

**Oracle**

**Casting Time:** 1 hour (1/2 toki)

**Level:** 4

**Available to:** Bukkyō, Omnyōdō, Shugendō

This prayer opens the windows into the future. The caster (and the caster alone) witnesses dream-like imystics of a possible future event involving a specific person, place or thing. The subject of the vision must be defined by the mystic prior to performing the ceremony. The vision itself last for only about a minute, and is not always clear in regards to the events.

*For example, if someone is “fated” to die in battle, the mystic may see imystics of yari and flying arrows followed by a vision of the subject in armor, laying on the ground.*

The image may be of near future events or of an event decades in the future. The mystic will only receive clues from the imystics themselves. No specific information should be provided to the player; descriptions should be detailed enough that the player should be able to surmise the situation themselves.

*For example, the following is a bad description: “You see the man 12 years in the future, in pain from poison he just drank.”*
The following is much more appropriate: “You see the man, with a beard and graying hair, though he does not have many wrinkles on his face. He has a pained expression on his face, and you see a sake cup fall from his hand…”

Note that the visions that a mystic sees are not of events that must happen. Rather, the events viewed are one possible future. The future is unpredictable, and it is assumed that the characters’ actions may very well alter the string of events that led up to the vision, thus changing the “foreseen” future to a very different one. More than anything, Oracle is a plot device for the GM to provide clues to the players during a game.

**Protection from Poisons**

**Casting time:** 5 minutes  
**Level:** Varies (min. 1)  
**Available to:** Bukkô, Shugendô

With this prayer, the mystic appeals to the spirits for protection from the “evil” spirits inhabiting venomous creatures. Upon successfully casting this prayer, the target becomes immune to the venoms and toxins of all poisonous plants and creatures, be they mammals, reptiles, fish or even mythical creatures, such as the mukade. This prayer does not affect any toxins already the target’s body. It only prevents any new poisons introduced to the victim from taking effect for the duration of the prayer.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one minute. For each additional Level the duration moves one step down the Time Table.

**Purification**

**Casting Time:** 1 hour (1/2 toki)  
**Level:** Varies  
**Available to:** Shintô

This prayer removes any physical or (Shintô) spiritual pollution of a single target, or multiple targets if additional levels are purchased. Successful completion of this prayer causes any and all impurities—poison, alcohol, disease, and so on—to be removed from the target. Any damage already caused by the impurities or toxins must be healed normally, but the prayer does halt any further effects. Purification removes only spiritual pollution of the Shintô variety; it does not remove transgressions or sins of other religions.

The prayer also removes Shintô spiritual pollution, restoring any lost PIE the character suffered as a result of contact with pollution (such as blood, death, decay, people in mourning, and the like), and removes one point of Bad Karma, if the character has any.

The mystic may so purify one person at level 1. This number is doubled for each additional level of effect, as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level (LoP)</th>
<th>People Purified</th>
<th>Level (LoP)</th>
<th>People Purified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purify Water**

**Casting time:** 1 hour (1/2 Toki)  
**Level:** Varies (min. 1)  
**Available to:** Shintô

With this prayer, a Shintô priest can transform the most polluted water into pure, clean, fresh-tasting drinking water. It also can be used to make dirty water clean for washing. One common use of this prayer by Shintô priests is to purify the water at the entrance of a shrine, which parishioners use to symbolically purify themselves before entering.

The amount of water that can be so purified is given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prayer</th>
<th>Amount</th>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 1</td>
<td>1 Shô</td>
<td>1.8 liter</td>
<td>small keg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>1 Tô</td>
<td>18 liters</td>
<td>large keg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>1 Koku</td>
<td>180 liters</td>
<td>barrel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 4</td>
<td>10 Koku</td>
<td>1,800 L.</td>
<td>bathtub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 5</td>
<td>100 Koku</td>
<td>18,000 L.</td>
<td>pond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 6</td>
<td>1,000 Koku</td>
<td>180,000 L.</td>
<td>creek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 7</td>
<td>10k Koku</td>
<td>1,800,000 L.</td>
<td>stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 8</td>
<td>100k Koku</td>
<td>18 mil. L.</td>
<td>river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 9</td>
<td>1 mil. Koku</td>
<td>180 mil. L.</td>
<td>lake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rain from Heaven**

**Casting time:** 20 minutes  
**Level:** Varies (min. 1)  
**Available to:** Omnyôdô, Shintô

With this prayer, the mystic calls for rain from the heavens. At level 1, the caster causes rain to fall in a 16-meter (8-ken) radius around the center of the spell’s effect. For each additional level of prayer the radius is doubled; 64-meter (32-ken) radius at level 3, 128-meter (64-ken) radius at level 4, and so on, up to a 8-km (2 ri) radius at level 10.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one minute. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the Time Table. At the end of the spell’s duration, the rain ceases. Any rain that has already fallen remains, however.
Receding Waters

**Casting time:** 20 minutes  
**Level:** Varies  
**Available to:** Ommyōdō, Shintō

With this prayer, the mystic causes all free-standing water within the area of effect to “fall” upwards into the sky, to be reclaimed by the heavens. Any uncovered water rises up into the air in droplets until the once wet area is completely dry. At level 1, the caster causes water to disappear in an 16-meter (8-ken) radius around the center of the spell’s effect. For each additional level of prayer the radius is doubled; 64-meter (32 ken) radius at level 3, 128-meter (64-ken) radius at level 4, and so on, up to 8-kilometer (5-mile) radius at level 10.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one minute. For each additional Level the duration moves one step down the **Time Table**. At the end of the spell’s duration, the water falls again to reclaim its original place, making the area wet again.

Sense Disruptions of Wa

**Casting time:** 5 minutes  
**Level:** Varies  
**Available to:** Bukkyō, Shugendō

Casting this prayer allows the target (either the mystic himself or another) to sense disruptions in the wa (harmony) of one’s surroundings; The target gains the ability to sense danger. At level 1, the target is able to sense dangers to himself with a successful PIE + Perception roll (DN 18). If the roll is made by more than 5, the character is aware of the source of the danger, as well. The character is alerted to the danger just far enough in advance to take one available action, even if they don’t know the source of the danger. The danger can be anything, from an ambush by a teppō-firing ashihara to a magic attack from another plane. The recipient of the prayer needn’t be able to detect the danger with his mortal senses; the “danger sense” is mystic.

At level 2, the target of the prayer can sense dangers in the immediate vicinity—a room, hallway, a path, etc.

At level 4, the target of the prayer is able to sense dangers within the general area—one on a street, the side of a mountain, within a building, etc.

At level 6, the target can sense dangers in any area.

The duration of the prayer at level 1 is one phase. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the **Time Table**. Thus, the prayer cast at level 4 allows the recipient to sense danger in the immediate vicinity with a successful PIE + Perception roll (DN 18), for up to 5 minutes after the prayer is cast.

Smokes of Nai

**Casting time:** 5 minutes  
**Level:** Varies (min. 3)  
**Available to:** Ommyōdō, Shugendō

This prayer causes smoke to issue forth from an incendiary source (candle, lamp, tobacco pipe). The smoke fills an area in a 4-meter (8-ken) radius from the center of the spell’s effect. The smoke is so thick that it completely obscures normal sight, rendering anyone within the area of effect effectively blind, except of the caster, who is immune from the effects of the prayer.

The duration of the prayer at level 3 is one phase. For each additional level the duration moves one step down the **Time Table**. At the end of the spell’s duration, the smoke quickly dissipates, leaving behind no trace of its previous existence.

Speak for Kami

**Casting time:** 5 minutes  
**Level:** Varies  
**Available to:** Shintō

This prayer brings the local kami of a shrine or other Shintō sacred site into possession of the body of the priest casting the prayer, or a specified alternate vessel. Usually, if not the priest herself, it is a miko (Shintō shrine maiden). For some reason, kami will only speak through women, so if a male priest casts the prayer a miko must be present to be possessed.

The person whose body the kami possesses needn’t be a “willing” participant; if the prayer check is successful, the possession is immediate. The kami can be spoken to and even conversed with for the duration of the prayer.

The duration of the possession is a base of one Round, plus one step down on the **Time Table** for every 2 levels of the prayer (rounding down).

Thus, a Speak for Kami prayer at Level 4 would invoke a possession lasting 1 Minute plus 2 steps down the Time Chart, or 20 minutes.

The only way for the kami to be displaced from the host body (or object) before the spell’s effects expire is for the kami to be exorcised (by the summoning priest or another priest), or for the possessed body to be slain (or the object destroyed.

Speak for the Dead

**Casting time:** 5 minutes  
**Level:** Varies (min. 1)  
**Available to:** Shintō, Shugendō

With this prayer, the mystic effectively becomes the mouth-piece for a deceased person. The mystic is possessed by the spirit of the deceased and is incapable of performing any action; he is merely a stationary voicebox. Questions can be asked of the deceased and the mystic will respond in the first person, for he actually is the deceased.

If the deceased has a reason to be angry or violent—say, in the presence of his slayer—the mystic must make a successful opposed WLL roll (against the spirit’s WLL at the time of its death) or the deceased will totally take over the mage’s body and may strike out at the object of his rage.

The prayer lasts one toki (two hours) per level, but it can be disrupted by any violence against the mystic (striking him, shaking him, etc.). When the spirit departs, the mage’s END and STUN are reduced to zero and he will collapse to the floor, exhausted and drained.

The length of time that the spirit has been “dead” is important. At Level 1, the prayer affects spirits who have died within six hours (3 toki). For every two levels of the prayer (rounding down) move one step down the Time Chart.

For example; at Level 7, the length of time a spirit can have been separated from its body and still be affected is 6 Hours, plus (7 divided by 2 = 3, rounded down) 3 steps down on the Time Chart, or 1 Month.

This prayer is ineffective on spirit beings of ‘higher rank,” such as bosatsu, kami, and the like.
Stop Poison
Casting Time: 1 Minute
Level: Varies (min. 1)
Available to: Bukkyô, Shugendô
This prayer is a form of exorcism. All maladies, including poisons and disease, are the work of mischievous (not “evil,” per se) spirits.

At Level 1, a successful incantation forces the mischievous spirits to vacate the victim’s body, thus neutralizing the effects of any poison (see Poison and Drugs, page 220). No further damage or effect from the poison is incurred, although any existing effects must be healed normally. For each level above 1, the prayer heals 1d6 of “effect” caused by the poison.

For example, Bozu casts a Level 3 Stop Poison prayer on the victim of a sea snake bite. Upon successfully casting the prayer, the poison is immediately neutralized. Bozu also rolls 2d6, for an 8. Bozu’s prayer has “cured” 8 points of effect from the poison.

Summon Kami
Casting time: 1 hour (1/2 toki)
Level: Varies
Available to: Shintô
This special prayer enables the Shintô priest to bring a kami to the physical plane. The priest needs to be at a shrine or the site of the kami of place that he is trying to bring in. Once there, the priest lights incense and begins the chanting prayer.

If the patron kami of the shrine is extremely powerful, like Kanda Myôjin or Susano-ô, it may send a lesser kami to appear in its place unless the caster is specifically calling on the patron. Each kami has a spirit rank. The highest spirit rank of kami that a mystic can summon is equal to the LoP.

Summoned kami come of their own free will, in response to the prayers of the faithful. A failed skill check indicates the kami was unconvinced of the priest’s sincerity and was unmoved to come to his aid. More importantly, they can leave of their own free will, as well. A particular kami cannot be summoned more than once a week unless the caster is specifically inviting the priest to call on him again within that time or it is a matter of extreme emergency (GM’s discretion).

When a kami is summoned, it may manifest in any number of ways—as a gust of wind, an animal (fox, bird, water buffalo) or plant, a beautiful young lady, and so on. The kami may not at first make itself visible to anyone, even the caster, preferring to remain invisible until the priest’s intent or desire can be ascertained.

Many Japanese folk stories involve kami who appeared in disguise, and did not reveal themselves to their “caller” for quite some time; sometimes not for days, months or even years.

If the kami does, indeed, make its presence known, the priest may converse with the kami, ask a favor, request a blessing, and so on. There is no guarantee that the kami will respond favorably. The priest’s past actions, his level of purity (current PIE stat), and his specific needs will be factors in the kami’s response.

The way in which the kami responds to the summoner’s requests is strictly up to the GM. Summon kami can be a wonderful roleplaying and story-enhancing tool, but the GM should also take care not to allow its use to unbalance the game.

It is the nature of this world we live in that, of our desires, not one out of ten comes out the way we would like. But for one to persist willfully in affairs that have not gone according to his heart’s desire, will, in the end, be inviting the admonishment of Heaven.

— Shiba Yoshimasa
THE CAMPAIGN
There are many aspects in running a Sengoku game beyond creating player characters and letting them loose on each other. The game master must map out and detail his Japan—even if he is using the real historical nation as his model. That is what this chapter is for. It will help you—the GM—determine locations and objects that are important to your game.

MAPS AND MAPPING

The Japan you play in need not be the real Japan. By this, we don't mean historical or not. We are talking on a much more basic level. In other words, if your game has elements of fantasy, why not play in a fantasy Japan? There is no better way to emphasize this than to use a map of Japan done during the Sengoku Period, rather than a real map of the country. The maps in this book are of the real Japan, but in this chapter we will provide you with a master map of the country as the Japanese of the sixteenth century saw it. Use it as your base, and follow the details in the other maps for placement of towns, cities, mountains, and so forth.

For general building layout and mapping purposes, use normal grid paper. On larger scale maps, treat each square as one tsubo (one ken by one ken). For smaller scale, treat each square as three shaku by three, with two squares forming the space of one tatami, and a unit of two squares by two as one tsubo. If you are using 25mm figures, one inch equals six shaku; a one-inch grid represents one tsubo (nearly the same scale as is used in D20™ games).

RETAINERS, ATTENDANTS AND OTHER FLUNKIES

No matter what class or position a character holds, there will come a point when he wants to have people in attendance on him. Call them retainers, attendants, henchmen—whatever. The idea is the same.

While anyone can hire and pay someone to follow him to help him out (and here we’re thinking of servants and bearers and the like), there is a deeper level of association. What matters is how and why these people—NPCs, which should be run more or less jointly by both the player and the GM—have linked their fates with the PC. If the PC is a gambler or a criminal, of course they will be henchmen who are in it for the money, although personal loyalty may figure into the equation.

The problem is for more “upstanding” characters.

Samurai, craftsmen, kuge—all in these type of groups who have attendants—must have special bonds with their attendants. There must be a reason and a real connection. In the case of a craftsman, he will have to have apprentices, students, and assistants. Merchants will need employees and trainees. Masters of magic or learning will need disciples. Samurai and kuge will need vassals and underlings (a samurai is required to maintain 3 retainers for every 100 koku of income, if he is paid a stipend, or for each 100 koku’s worth of land in his fief), and even farmers to grown crops on the land they manage (though farmers needn’t be considered hirelings for game purposes). Anyone who owns an estate will need servants to staff and run it. Acquiring and supporting such staff require one thing—money.

It is up to each GM, in the running of his game, to determine the amount of funds required to support such people, but remember that each person may also have a family. For a samurai to have two armed retainers, he may require the functional outlay of as many as 20 ryô (80 bu-shoban) each just to keep them outfitted and going. A kuge keeping up his house must have dozens of servants. The funds must come from somewhere. A samurai may be receiving a stipend from his own clan (and likely should be). A kuge would be receiving money from... well, somewhere. He most likely holds land titles and receives an income from them.

This is where work falls on the shoulders of the GM (as if you didn’t have enough to worry about already). In conjunction with the player, the GM will have to decide factors related to income and sources. These sources can’t be ignored. If the player, who “owns” some rice farms in the hinterlands, fails to keep track of them and support them, they just might get overrun by someone else, and his income source will quickly dry up.

GMs can use the pay rates listed on the Services table (page 193) and Samurai Membership Level & Income Table (page 85) as a guideline for hiring attendants, retainers and the like.
CITIES, TOWN AND VILLAGES

When a party of PCs comes upon a new town, the GM may use the following tables to help him create it easily. First, roll 2d6 on the Random Population Center Table (below) to determine settlement size.

Once the size of the community is known, then the GM can continue to roll the other details, as necessary, or simply make them up, using these tables as guidelines.

CASTLES

Castles (and castle towns) by default will have people capable of serving as teachers in most conventional bugei. It is up to the GM to determine specific availability and skill levels of potential teachers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll 1d6</th>
<th>Type of Castle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mountain castle (yamajirō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>Plains castle (hirosanjo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>Mountain/plains castle (yamasanjo)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll 2d6</th>
<th>Type of Donjon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>Solitary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>Connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-10</td>
<td>Complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td>Multiple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Architecture chapter provides more information on the meanings of the following, which determine the type of castle.

There is a 50 percent (3 in 6) chance that the castle holder (daimyō, high-ranking retainer, bandit leader, etc.) is in residence. This chart represents times of relative normalcy; times of utter chaos will need different dispositions of castles and estates. Roll 3d6 to determine the lord of any given castle:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lord of Castle</th>
<th>Holder</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3-6</td>
<td>Provincial daimyō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>Daimyō’s relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-13</td>
<td>Lord’s retainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Bandit leader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Shinobi Jônin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-18</td>
<td>Empty, burned out, or haunted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Size of Castle Garrison

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll 2d6</th>
<th>Number of troops</th>
<th>Random</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>50–100</td>
<td>(1d6 x 10) + 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-5</td>
<td>101–200</td>
<td>(2d6 x 10) + 80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>201–300</td>
<td>(2d6 x 20) + 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>301–500</td>
<td>(6d6 x 10) + 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>501–600</td>
<td>(2d6 x 10) + 480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>600+</td>
<td>(1d6 + 5) x 100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Random Population Centers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roll 2d6</th>
<th>Size of Community</th>
<th>Size of Population</th>
<th>Chance of Castle (on 2d6)</th>
<th>No. of Temples</th>
<th>No. of Shrines</th>
<th>No. of Inns</th>
<th>Head Person (Roll 2d6)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Farming Hamlet</td>
<td>1d6 x 10</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>3/6^2</td>
<td>4/6^2</td>
<td>2-5</td>
<td>2-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Farming Village</td>
<td>1d6 x 50</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1d3</td>
<td>1d3+1</td>
<td>2-9</td>
<td>2-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>Farming Town</td>
<td>2d6 x 100</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>1d6+2</td>
<td>2d6+1</td>
<td>3d6+1</td>
<td>2-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Temple Town</td>
<td>2d6 x 500</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1d6</td>
<td>1d6</td>
<td>1d6</td>
<td>2-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>City</td>
<td>2d6 x 2,000</td>
<td>11+</td>
<td>1d6+2</td>
<td>3d6+1</td>
<td>3d6+1</td>
<td>2-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>Regional Center (Fief)</td>
<td>2d6 x 10,000</td>
<td>8+</td>
<td>2d6+2</td>
<td>3d6+3</td>
<td>5d6+5</td>
<td>2-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Provincial Capital</td>
<td>1d6 x 50,000</td>
<td>4+</td>
<td>2d6+10</td>
<td>5d6+5</td>
<td>10d6+10</td>
<td>2-12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

^1 If a coastal community, mainstay is fishing instead of farming.

^2 Indicates a chance, rolled on 1d6, of one being present. E.g., 3/6 indicates a 3 in 6 chance. Roll 1d6; on a 1, 2 or 3 there is one present.

To have execution grounds in a place where travelers come and go is useless: The executions in Edo and the Kamigata area are meant to be an example for the whole country. But the executions in one province are only for an example in that province. If crimes are many, it is a province’s shame. How would this look to other provinces?

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
TEMPLES

There are many different sects of Buddhism, as have been detailed in Chapter 6, Religion.

To determine what kind of temple and how large it is, roll 3d6 and consult the lists below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3d6</th>
<th>Sect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>Hokke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>Hosso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Ikkō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Jōdo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Kegon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Ritsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Shingon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Shugendō*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Tendai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Yūzū Nenbutsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-17</td>
<td>Zen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Burned out and/or haunted building</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A Shugendō temple will be either (roll 1d6): Shingon (1-4) or Tendai (5-6).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2d6</th>
<th>Number of priests/monks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-4</td>
<td>1–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>6–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>11–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>26–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>51–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>101–200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>201–500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Floors are of three kinds in Japanese structure: packed earth, wood, or tatami. Each is described below.

**Earth**

Packed earth is typical flooring for most peasant homes, the entryways of inns and shops, and the kitchen and hearth areas of even great estates. Only packed earth floors are at ground level. All other floors are raised by as much as one shaku from the surface.

**Wood**

Wooden planking is the floor material for hallways, main rooms in castles, inns, temples, shrines, and homes. Some wooden corridors in daimyō’s estates are made with a complicated underpinning that causes them to squeak when walked upon. Rather than being a structural weakness, this squeaking is a vital element in the detection of intruders. Such constructions are called nightingale floors. There is no way to bypass the squeaking save avoiding the floor altogether, but shinobi can quiet the squeak by spreading a wide roll of cloth down the center and walking carefully along it (requires a Stealth roll, DN 22).

**Tatami**

Tatami are considered the flooring material of Japanese buildings, but during the Sengoku Period they still hold second place to wooden planking. Tatami is used for the interior of living rooms (which double as sleeping rooms) and some audience rooms in more opulent estates. Tatami are also used on raised platforms (in otherwise wood-floored rooms) for audiences. Tatami are the same size throughout Japan: six shaku long, three wide, one and a half sun thick. They are designed to be the space one person needs to sleep. Two tatami side-by-side together form the space of one tsubo (one ken by one ken), which is the standard unit of measurement for rooms and other living space. Rooms are also identified by size by how many mats they could contain (regardless of whether the floor is matted or bare).

A three-mat room, the smallest functional “room,” is six shaku by nine; or one ken wide, one and one half ken long; or one and a half tsubo. A room only one-ken-wide is in reality a corridor, no matter how long or short it is. A four and one-half mat room, considered the smallest room usually, is a square one and one-half ken to the side. Next in size are six-mat rooms, eight-mat rooms, 12-mat, and so on. The rooms are geometric and uniform. One will seldom—if ever—encounter a triangular, circular, or otherwise oddly shaped room.

The ken (a six-shaku length) is often called in English a bay. The ken (or bay) is the standard architectural unit, and is used to indicate the length of hallways and the size of long walls. For example, a five-ken- (five-bay-) long hallway is 30 shaku long. Putting all the math together, an eight-mat room (a square which is 12 shaku to the side) is a four tsubo room, and each wall is two ken (bays) long. In floor plans, small black squares or circles mark the place of support pillars, which conveniently are placed at one-ken intervals. In larger structures, like main gates or large temples and castles, the pillars are of necessity larger, and there is more space between them.

**DOORS AND WALLS**

We know that the ken is the standard architectural measure. Is it a surprise, then, that sliding doors, invariably encountered in pairs, take up one ken of space? Sliding doors are usually three shaku by six, although double-wide doors are not uncommon.

There are two types of such wall: fusuma and shōji. Fusuma are opaque, and usually painted very artistically or brightly. Shōji are made of translucent paper glued to lattice of some form. Shōji...
Ceilings are hung from the rafters, meaning that one cannot walk along the upper surface of the ceiling; rather, one must move along the rafters and hanging braces. Ceilings per se do not exist in the hovels of the lower classes or in most farming houses, where the rooms are open to the rafters and the underside of the roof itself. Given the great pitch of Japanese roofs, the space between the roof ridge and the ceiling may be greater than the space between the ceiling and the floor.

The typical ceiling height is about eight shaku; the doors are all six shaku high, and often a wooden beam runs horizontally throughout the length of all the walls at that height (which serves as the lintel for all doors in the wall). Above this are about two more shaku of wall, then the ceiling. The more opulent rooms have higher ceilings, perhaps coffered, perhaps even multi-coffered, with recesses within recesses. The effect can be stunning.

Rooms

The entrance to most structures is ground-level, and called a genkan. It is here that visitors are first received, footwear removed, swords taken.

Most rooms have multiple purpose. Or, more accurately, few rooms have a set purpose. A room that serves in the day as a space to greet guests may serve in the evening as a place to dine, and in the evening a place to sleep. Futon (bedding) are kept in deep closets and brought out as needed. There is nothing like a designated bedroom per se.

Given the need for external lighting, Japanese houses are seldom more than two rooms in width. It is for this reason that the floor plans of Japanese buildings often look like jumbles of rectangles at 90 degree angles.

Room Names

Rooms are typically identified by their primary decorative element. The tsuru-no-ma (“crane room”) will probably have paintings of cranes on the walls and sliding panels. The matsu-no-ma (“pine room”) has pine trees painted in it. Kiku-no-ma (“chrysanthemum room”) and kiri-no-ma (“pawonia room”) are the same. A room called fuji-no-ma might have paintings of Mt. Fuji, a view of Mt. Fuji through the windows, or paintings of wisteria (fuji, which is homonymous with Fuji, though written with different kanji). A room primarily decorated in gold might be called the kin-no-ma. We could go on listing room names for a long time, but you get the idea.

Tokonoma

The tokonoma is a special alcove which is the focal point for attention in a room. Usually it is wood-surfaced, the size of a tatami (although older ones are only about two shaku deep), and slightly raised from the level of the floor. The wall in the tokonoma holds a seasonally appropriate hanging scroll or flower arrangement, and the floor might hold a flower arrangement or perhaps a sword rack (if the house belongs to a samurai). Some samurai display their finest armor on a stand in the main tokonoma. Almost any room can have a tokonoma, but they are most common in rooms that can be used to receive guests, or for dining.

When one is performing his duties, he should not just simply appear before the master. He should wait for a moment in the next room, check his colleagues’ appearances, and then go in to audience. If it is not done this way, his effort will likely be in vain.

— Hojo Nagauji
In broader rooms, the tokonoma is paired with a wall space holding several multi-level shelves (chigai-dana).

**Jôdan**

Rooms large enough for a good sized tokonoma and chigai-dana space may have a jôdan, or half-shaku-high dais, in front of them. In an eight-mat room (the smallest that can really accommodate a jôdan), the jôdan occupies the innermost two mats, while the other six are at the normal floor level.

It is from the jôdan that a host—if a samurai or a lord—greets his guests. In cases of an audience, the lord sits on a cushion—or even an additional mat—placed on top of the jôdan. Those being visited sit on the floor proper (which is called, in such a case, the gedan). Some larger rooms have two layers of raised platforms; a middle section (chûdan), raised half a shaku, and the jôdan, raised a further half shaku from the chûdan. In audiences in such large rooms, the more important retainers sit on the chûdan, the less important on the gedan.

In some of the more old fashioned estates, the jôdan is the only part of the room that actually has tatami; the rest of the flooring is wooden. Quite often, there is not even a dais proper. Rather, the jôdan consists of a platform formed by tatami piled two or three deep. The opening scene of the film *Kagemusha* takes place in just such a room.

**VERANDAHS**

Most upper-class homes are encompassed, at least partially, by a verandah (engawa). The verandah is located on the inner side of the home, that is, the side facing the garden. Engawa are surfaced in wood, and typically three or six shaku in width. The inside is shôji, allowing light into the room. The outside is slotted floor and ceiling for rain shutters (amado), which are kept in recesses at the end of the engawa during the day, and slid into space and locked down at night. The amado serve as both guards against possible intruders and simple bad weather.

Often, the engawa is the only way from one room to another unless one wishes to go through other, adjoining rooms.

Another form of engawa is the verandah proper, which has railings and is a true verandah rather than an alternating indoor/outdoor corridor.

In the final scenes of the film *Chushingura*, the 47 ronin are seen storming the estate of their target and breaking down the engawa to gain entry to the building.

**CASTLES**

Forget almost everything you’ve ever seen about Japanese castles (shiro, or -jô in names). Himeji-jô, Japan’s most commonly photographed castle (which is often considered the nation’s most perfect example of castle architecture, by the way) is not a product of the Sengoku Period. On the other hand, what’s nine years among friends? A castle like Himeji-jô could only be owned by a daimyô of the highest wealth and influence.

**Historical Note**

Ironically, in the mini-series *Shôgun*, Himeji-jô “starred” as Ôsaka-jô, whereas the latter is actually identical to the original period Ôsaka Castle. There are few castles in Japan extant in the 20th century that date from that period; most of the castles today are total reconstructions. The present Ôsaka Castle is also a reconstruction, but of Hideyoshi’s original rather than Ieyasu’s rebuilt model, so it’s a decent example of late period architecture.

**Types of Castles**

There are three major types of castle, as determined by where the castle is built. They are: plains castles, mountain castles, and mountain-in-a-plain castles. It goes without saying (but we’ll say it anyway) that the first type of castle is built on flatlands (hirajîro; for example, Ôsaka Castle), the second is built on a mountain (sanjô or yamajîro; Gifu Castle is one example). The third is built on a hill on a plain (hirasanjô; such as Maruoka Castle), and the plain usually grows into a large, thriving castle town.
**DONJON**

The donjon is the central building in what is called the honmaru, or main compound. Castles may have several “compounds” in concentric rings, with defenses increasing as one gets closer to the central compound. Outer compounds are named as they spread out: ni-no-maru (second compound), san-no-maru (third compound), etc.

The main donjon of a castle—called a tenshû—is not primarily designed as a living space. It’s primary purpose is a line of defense and a visible symbol of the lord’s power and authority. It is a military headquarters, and can be made livable, but most lords have buildings in the castle complex that serve as their primary living quarters. These living quarters need not be in the honmaru. (Unfortunately, such buildings are not preserved in the twentieth century, as the donjons are far more impressive and what the tourists want to see. On the contrary point, Nijô Castle in Kyôto has preserved the support buildings—and the donjon.) Only a few lords actually use the tenshû as their primary residence.

The design of the donjon, with its multiple hipped-and-gabled roofs, can be deceiving; what appears to be three stories is often in fact five.

There are several types of donjon: the solitary donjon, where it is a stand-alone structure; complex donjons, in which there is a main donjon and subsidiary or secondary donjons; connected donjons, where support buildings—not donjons—are connected to the main donjon by corridors; and multiple donjons, where two or more minor donjons are connected to the main one. Examples are, respectively, Maruoka-jô, Hikone-jô, Kiyosu-jô, and Himeji-jô.

**WALLS AND GATES**

Gates leading into the compounds are never lined up; one must often follow a convoluted path from the outermost gate to the innermost. The idea is to make an assault as difficult as possible.

A secondary form of defense is the measuring gate, which is a specially designed structure that is fully enclosed by walls, and requires a 90-degree turn to pass from the outer set of gates to the inner. Attackers must pass through the first, then negotiate a turn while under fire from above. The narrow space of necessity limits the number of people that can enter at one time.

Castle walls often incorporate arrow slits (rectangular-shaped openings), musket loopholes (triangle-shaped openings), and openings for defenders to rain rocks down on attackers.

---

*When you leave your gate, act as though an enemy was in sight.*

— Japanese proverb
PALACES AND ESTATES

The donjon of Nijō Castle no longer remains, but the residential palace, in the second compound, does. Although built after the Sengoku Period, it is a good example of the type of palace architecture of the latter part of that period.

ARCHITECTURE STYLES

There are two principle types of estate architecture common in the Sengoku Period: shoin-style and sukiya-style.

Shoin

Shoin style architecture developed during the Muromachi Period (1333–1573). The tokonoma, varied shelved, and jôdan are among its hallmarks. Another is the built-in writing desk (from which the name shoin comes), off to one side of the tokonoma, with a window that overlooks a garden. The writing desk area usually protrudes out onto the verandah.

Shoin-style rooms often have large, ornate doors (chôdaigamae). Originally, these doors were the only entrance to a totally enclosed sleeping space, offering considerable security; but later shoin-style buildings incorporated the chôdaigamae as architectural elements rather than specific entrances to secure rooms.

Sukiya

Sukiya means “house of refinement,” and sukiya-style homes are actually a refinement (no pun intended) of the shoin style, as it incorporates shoin features with a more relaxed lifestyle. Elements of shibui, and wabi and sabi, are key to sukiya buildings. Roughly hewn posts and simple ink paintings are common features. Sukiya rooms tend to redesign common structures and don’t always incorporate all elements. For example, one will be hard-pressed to find chôdaigamae in a sukiya-style structure.

LAYOUT

The estate is surrounded by a tall wall with gates opening to various streets. There may even be internal walls dividing parts of the estate (the public area, the family area, the garden, etc.). The main gate may be guarded. The specific size and decoration of these gates is often determined by the rank and wealth of the owner, as the gate is all most people will ever see of the estate.

A majordomo will answer anyone knocking on the gate. Front gates usually have two large, tall doors. A smaller door, the size of a typical house door, is either set into one door or the wall next to it. It is this door that is used for normal visits and at night. The main gate is opened for official visits or deliveries or the owner’s departure and arrival.

Support buildings (usually near the main gate) house any guards or grounds servants. Stables and any necessary workshops are around back, but separate from the garden. If there is a teahouse, it will be in the garden.

When passing by the quarters of women of high rank, one should pass by without looking around repeatedly. In fact, one should not look at all. And one should make strict instructions to those of lower rank accompanying him that they should not look either.

— Hojo Shigetoki
To be made fun of and remain silent is cowardice. There is no reason to overlook this fact because one is within the palace. A man who makes fun of people is himself a fool.

— Lord Naoshige, when advised that a retainer had cut down someone within the castle for insulting him
HOUSES

Minka are “houses of the people.” They can be everything from a wealthy headman’s or a low-ranked samurai’s home to a simple farmhouse.

TYPES OF HOUSES

Farmhouses typically have steeply pitched, thatched roofs. Many are just one room, floored with packed earth, while the more “wealthy” peasants may have a raised floor and even a separate room or two in the back half of the house.

The center of the house is the raised hearth (irori). A long pole hangs from the ceiling over the irori, from which are suspended cauldrons for cooking.

In towns, homes are often of the tenement variety, made up of large blocks of buildings with several homes built together. These usually also have a ground-level main room area for cooking, with half of the floor space a raised wooden platform that serves as the living and sleeping area.

BATHS AND LAVATORIES

Houses of the less-wealthy common folk do not incorporate bathing or toilet facilities. The more wealthy will have their own separate areas in the estate or attached to the building somewhere. In tenements, a sort of public lavatory is located at the end of each block. Lavatories are open pits, over which the user squats to do his business. A large tray on rollers below catches the refuse, which is removed nightly by workers who sell the “night soil” to farmers for use as fertilizer.

Every neighborhood has a public bathhouse, where men and women go to wash up. They lather up and rinse outside the swimming pool–sized tubs, then drop in for a long, relaxing soak. Men and women do not as a rule bathe together in bathhouses, only at public hot springs or private residences and inns.

One should not show his sleeping quarters to other people. The times of deep sleep and dawning are very important. One should be mindful of this.

— Nagahama Inosuke
INNS AND TAVERNS

DINING

The dining facilities in taverns, tea houses and inns are typically right next to the front door. During the daytime, the door is covered with a noren (curtain) that hangs from the door lintel halfway to the ground. The noren is a sort of “open for business” sign. Tables are provided with benches and chairs, and the customers in taverns sit at tea and lunch just like modern Westerners. Those dining in banquet or private rooms eat on low tables on the floor as traditionally done at home. The reason for the benches is that the floor is packed earth, and this way the diners need not get dirty.

SLEEPING QUARTERS

Rooms are “in the back” and upstairs, and vary in cost with size, view, and decor. The better rooms will be in the back, with a view of the garden. The cheaper rooms are upstairs, facing the street. There is often no corridor connecting rooms downstairs: the only avenue from one to another, or even from the front of the tavern to the rooms, is the verandah. There may be an internal corridor, but it is normally used by the staff bringing food, setting up bedding, etc.

BATH

In the back is a bathhouse with a large tub large enough for four or five people. The use of the bathhouse is often reserved by customers (the gentleman in the Nightingale Room gets the bathhouse from 10:00 to 10:30, then the ladies in the Cherry Blossom Room have it), and its use may be unisex.

...even in private, there must be no relaxation and no light and shade in the loyalty and filial duty of a warrior. Wherever he may be laying down or sleeping, his feet must never for an instant be pointing in the direction of his lord's presence.

— Daidōji Yūzan
TEMPLES

Temples are buildings and complexes devoted to Buddhism. Temples are all attached to a particular sect of Buddhism. While a Jōdō adherent may visit and worship at a Zen temple, only Zen clergy will be resident and involved in its actual operation. Pilgrims of any “denomination” may apply for (and even might be allowed) to visit and stay but, again, only those of the same sect will typically be warmly welcomed and accepted. Nichiren Buddhist temples, especially, are likely to be less receptive to outsiders.

Temples are invariably enclosed by tall walls, with main and subsidiary gates. Otherwise, no two temples are alike. There are also variations between the different sects in what buildings will exist and how the temples are laid out. For example, Shingon and Tendai temples are almost always in mountainous areas, and due to this odd topography, have abandoned the traditional symmetrical architectural norms. Covering the various differences and the development of temple architecture and concept are out of the scope of this game book; general rules will have to suffice.

ARCHITECTURE AND LAYOUT

The style of architecture of temples of the older, classical period (before 1100, say) is principally Chinese in inspiration, although there are definite Japanese elements. With Zen, however, the buildings began taking on a more Japanese flavor and scale. There are several buildings in the typical temple, and there may be one or two tall pagodas (tō) which are the most visually outstanding feature of the complex. Typical buildings are a large “Golden Hall” (kondō), a large lecture hall (kōdō), abbot’s quarters (hōjō), and monks’ quarters (sōbō). Zen temples will have a stone or sand garden somewhere. Pagodas enshrine relics—real or symbolic—of the historic Buddha, Shakyamuni (Shakka), under a single massive column that runs from roof to foundation stone. The Golden Hall enshrines his image. The famed Great Buddha at Nara, for example, is housed in Tōdai-ji’s Golden Hall (although at Tōdai-ji, it is called a Daibutsuden, or Great Buddha Hall, due to the image’s size).

Off to one side (often the west) in the temple complex is the small latrine building; it is out of sight, but available. The bathing facilities are to the east. Lectures on doctrine and other sermons are delivered in the kōdō or other lecture hall (such as the Hattō, or Dharma Hall). These structures are floored in wood, and are typically one, large, open room with a high ceiling or roof supported by massive pillars and a complex arrangement of brackets and braces. Worship halls contain many rooms, and may have a sanctum sanctorum visited only by the abbot or his representative.

The main gates are often guarded by large statues of the myō-ō (Fudō, for example), or lion-dogs (shishi), to defend the temple from evil.

Typical Zen temple compound (right)

1. Great South Gate
2. Inner Gate
3. Corridor
4. Golden Hall
5. Pagoda
6. Lecture Hall
7. Refectory
8. Monk’s Quarters

When passing by shrines and temples or through village streets, from time to time one should rein in his horse and praise places of beauty or lament for those that have gone to ruin. If he will do so, the joy of the common people at having been spoken to by the master will know no bounds, and they are likely to quickly repair places in need and to be all the more scrupulous in places of perfection.

— Asakura Toshikage
Shrines are Shintō sites, while temples are Buddhist. Many temples, thanks to the influence of Ryōbu-Shintō, include small Shintō shrines in the precincts. Among the signs that mark shrines are large (usually red) torii gates, ornate ropes braided around trees or rocks, and paper streamers dangling from objects. Many shrines even have several torii, and some have virtual avenues lined with them, which visitors must pass under.

Shrine halls are often torn down and rebuilt with much ceremony every so many years. It is a major even when a large, important shrine like Ise is being rebuilt. The Inner Shrine at Ise actually has two plots of land, marked out identically, for the shrine complex; in alternate periods of construction, every 20 years, the alternate plot is used.

There are several major types of shrine architecture: Shinmei style (Ise Dai-jingū), Sumiyoshi style (Sumiyoshi Jinja), Taisha style (Izumo Taisha), Nagare style (Shimogamo Jinja), Kasuga style (Kasuga Jinja), Hachiman style (Usa Jinja), and Hie style (Hie Jinja). Shinmei and Taisha styles are left in their natural colors, while Sumiyoshi wood is often a bright red showing against white walls.

The buildings showing elements of these styles are actually called honden, or “main hall,” although there are also small worship halls (haiden). There is no lecture hall per se, as in a Buddhist temple complex.

Groves of trees frequently mark shrine precincts. A pair of stone dogs typically flank the entrance. The dogs are there to fend off evil if necessary. A roofed-over basin off to one side is for ablutions, so that one may ritually wash hands and rinse out one’s mouth before approaching the kami. Off to the other side may be a stage for sacred dance and other performances. A storage building housing the o-mikoshi (sacred palanquin) of the tutelary kami, which is brought out for festivals, is on the precincts, as may be treasure halls (hōden).

The Buddha appeared and the kami manifested themselves in this world entirely for its sake and for the sake of those living in it.

— Shiba Yoshimasa
SHOPS

Shops are called ya in Japanese, and most—if not all—shops’ or businesses’ names have the suffix -ya. For example, a kago-ya is a kago business. A sake-ya is a sake “bar,” or perhaps a brewery.

LAYOUT

Shops are divided into business and living zones. If one story, the front half of the shop is the actual business area, which is typically half dirt-floored and half raised wood, and the back half is the home. In two-storied buildings, the living area is usually upstairs.

Special customers may be invited up to the wooden floor to sit for a spell and have a cup of tea. This is most typical in upscale stores like brocade and clothing merchants, armor shops, furniture stores, etc. Stores selling stock wares (dishes, tools, etc.) will seldom allow a customer up and in.

STOREHOUSES

If the merchant sells a lot of merchandise, or the merchandise is particularly expensive, they may have a kura (storehouse) attached to or behind the shop. Kura are one- or two-story buildings with thick, heavily plastered walls and complex multi-layered doors and shutters resembling the doors of modern bank vaults. Kura are designed to be airtight and fireproof, and in case of fire the doors and shutters are closed and sealed, and the merchandise is safe from damage. Kura are also very difficult to break into.

If the merchant doesn’t have a kura (and most don’t), his stock—whatever it is—will be piled in boxes and stacks in the living quarters, making moving around sometimes difficult.

When an official place is extremely busy and someone comes in thoughtlessly with some business or other, often there are people who will treat him coldly and become angry. This is not good at all. At such times, the etiquette of a samurai is to calm himself and deal with the person in a good manner. To treat a person harshly is the way of middle class lackeys.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
BESTIARY
The bestiary—a list of various monsters, animals, and beasts that you may encounter in your game—is divided into several sections. The sections represent the different natures of the creatures being encountered.

The characteristics listed correspond to those for PCs and NPCs. Where a normally listed stat is not present, it means that this particular stat doesn’t apply to the creature in question (e.g., PIE, AES, etc., of which animals have no need.)

The stats for animals and supernatural beasts also list the typical number of beasts or creatures encountered when in the open and any attack methods (with the damage done).

Sentient creatures also have listed any specific skills (and the average level of expertise) typical to their kind, although GMs are encouraged to make these events memorable by providing personalities and interesting skills to those encountered. Skills are listed with the skill level, followed by the AV (the total of the stat + skill) in parenthesis, and the DV for melee combat skills.

**ANIMALS**

This category is for natural animals and beasts which may be encountered during an adventure. Treat all young animals as half as efficient and strong as the full-grown beast.

Although the animals in this section do not have every possible Complication listed in their respective write-ups, the GM should keep certain logical limitations of certain animals in mind. Such limitations include the lack of fine manipulation for most animals. That is, they cannot manipulate items in the same way that a human (or simian) can. These complications are not listed for each animal.

Exceptional complications are listed for some animals.

**BEAR (KUMA)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>REF</th>
<th>MOVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WILL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON</th>
<th>DEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BODY</th>
<th>Sprint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REC</th>
<th>END</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stun**

35

**Hits**

35

**Abilities**

Claws: 2d6 (4d6 w/STR) HTH killing attack, Attached focus
Hug: 9d6 (Requires successful grab or 2 successful claw attacks)
Bite: 1d6 (2d6 w/STR)
Hide: Armor 2 KD
Tracking: Tracking Scent (AV 8)

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lvl</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bite</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claw</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climbing</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Includes modifiers for size

The Japanese brown bear is big and fierce-looking, but is generally good-natured. The Ezo (or Ainu) consider the bear sacred. On their island to the north (Hokkaido) intelligent bears may live, but no one knows for sure. Bears are not by nature hostile, but given motivation (and a bear will recognize hostile intent) they will attack without hesitation.

If the bear is able to make two successful hits in one round on the same person, they are caught in a hug. The hug does 9d6 of constricting (Stun) damage each phase. The bear will focus only on the hugged victim unless attacked by another, in which case the bear will drop the victim and pursue his attacker.

**BOAR (I)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>REF</th>
<th>MOVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WILL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON</th>
<th>DEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BODY</th>
<th>Sprint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REC</th>
<th>END</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Stun**

28

**Hits**

35

**Complications**

Bad temper (Freq, Major)
Berserker: Attacks whatever sets it off

**Abilities**

Hide: Armor 2 KD
Tusks: 3d6 HTH KA, Attached focus
Bite: 1d6 HTH KA
Enhanced Smell (+3 PER)
Enhanced Hearing (+3 PER)
Night Vision

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lvl</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bite</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Includes modifiers for size

A boar is the size of a large dog, with short, black, bristly hair and fierce tusks. The boar is a courageous and fierce opponent. It is often hunted by samurai for its delicious meat (although this violates the Buddhist principles on killing and eating animals, but hey... these are samurai).

A cornered or injured boar will never run away, unlike other animals; it will fight to the death, and is known to fight even beyond the point it is “dead” (Thus the additional 15 Hits beyond the normal amount for its Body score).

— Asakura Soteki

Though a warrior may be called a dog or beast, what is basic for him is to win.
Cats are tolerated in some estates for their ability to control pests. Some people actually keep them as pets. Most cats, however, are feral, and call the world home.

**DOG (INU)**

There are several types of dogs in Japan. This represents the standard everyday Potchi (Japanese for “Rover” or “Spot”).

Dogs are more likely to be watch or guard animals than pets, and as such usually don’t have the run of the house. Dogs must be trained in order to respond to commands.

There are also fighting mastiffs (use the statistics of the Boar, above), which are trained especially to fight in the ring against other mastiffs. These animals are highly prized, being the sumōtori of the canine world. When such a dog bites, it does so for a total of 4d6 damage, latching on and savaging for an additional 2d6 each additional round until killed, or beaten or called off.

**CAT (NEKO)**

The common cat is the Japanese bobtail, which has a bare two inches or so of tail, terminating in a little bump.

People who practice filiality today say they are providing a living, but even dogs and horses are taken care of. Without respect, what is the difference?

— Confucius
Japanese horses are shorter, stockier, and shaggier than their Western cousins. Horses don’t fight unless they have to. They are primarily methods of conveyance. Horses may only be ridden by those on official (i.e., government) business. Commoners possessing horses may use them as pack animals or for farming.

**HORSE (UMA)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR 8*</th>
<th>REF 4</th>
<th>MOVE 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>CON 7</td>
<td>DEX 4/2</td>
<td>Run 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>BODY 9*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sprint 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>REC 15</td>
<td>END 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 31*</td>
<td>Hits 45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Bonus for Growth figured in*

**Complications**

Fear of fire and loud noises

**Abilities**

Size: Growth (+3 STR, +3 BODY, +3 STUN, x8 Mass, -6 meters Knockback, +2 to spot, -2 DEX in combat, x2 reach), 0 END, Persistent, Always On

Bite: 1d6 HTH KA (2d6 w/STR)

Kick: 9d6

Hide: Armor 1 KD

Running: +8 Run/+12 Sprint (16/24 total) Enhanced Sight (+3 PER) Enhanced Hearing (+3 PER)

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lvl</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bite</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kick</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Includes modifier for size
** 9 w/Sight & Hearing

---

**OX (USHI)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR 12*</th>
<th>REF 3</th>
<th>MOVE 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>CON 9</td>
<td>DEX 4/2</td>
<td>Run 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>BODY 10*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sprint 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>REC 18</td>
<td>END 90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 55</td>
<td>Hits 45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Bonus for Growth figured in*

**Complications**

Can’t leap

Enraged when startled (frequent, strong)

Timid creatures (frequent, strong)

**Abilities**

Size: Growth (+3 STR, +3 BODY, +3 STUN, x8 Mass, -6 m/y Knockback, +2 to spot, -2 DEX in combat, x2 reach), 0 END, persistent, always on

Horns: 4d6 HTH KA (8d6 w/STR), attached focus

Hide: Armor 2 KD

**Skills**

Evade | 2 | 4* | 14*

Gouge (horns) | 4 | 8

Perception | 5 | 6

Stealth | 2 | 4

Oxen are beasts of burden—dull-witted and servile. They are used to pull heavy loads and the carts of aristocrats in Miyako. If attacked, they can charge and gore an opponent, but this is unlikely.

---

**TIGER (TORA)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR 8*</th>
<th>REF 7</th>
<th>MOVE 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>CON 8</td>
<td>DEX 8</td>
<td>Run 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>BODY 8*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sprint 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>REC 16</td>
<td>END 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 41</td>
<td>Hits 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Growth bonus figured in*

**Abilities**

Size: Growth (2x mass, -2 m/y Knockback), 0 END, persistent, always on

Bite: 2d6 Killing (4d6 w/STR)

Fore claws: 1d6 Killing (2d6 w/STR), attached focus (claws)

Hind claws: 2d6 Killing (4d6 w/STR), attached focus (claws), only after target grabbed

---

From time to time one should soak hard soy beans in water and feed them to his horse. There will be no pots or pans for such things on the battlefield.

— Asakura Soteki
Hide: Armor 1 KD  
Swimming: +4m (12m total)  
Tracking Scent  
Night Vision  
Enhanced Sight (+4 Perception)  

Skills  | Lvl | AV | DV  
--- | --- | --- | ---  
Bite | 4 | 11  
Claws | 5 | 12  
Climbing | 5 | 13  
Evade | 4 | 12 | 22  
Perception | 5 | 13*  
Stealth | 5 | 13  
* 17 with Sight

Tigers are big cats, orange with black stripes. They are as much as eight or nine shaku from nose to tail-tip. Tigers are not native to Japan, but they are frequently encountered in Korea, where many samurai earned reputations hunting them during breaks in Hideyoshi’s Korean Campaign. They will stalk their prey.

**SUPERNATURAL BEASTS**

Creatures in this section are animals, largely unintelligent (no more so than a dog), which exist in the legends and lore of old Japan. Don’t worry about it; these aren’t PCs, they’re special cases.

**MUKADE (GIANT CENTIPEDE)**

| INT 1 | STR 9 | REF 5 | MOVE 12  
--- | --- | --- | ---  
WILL 1 | CON 7 | DEX 8 | Run 24  
PRE 5 | BODY 6 |  | Sprint 36  
SD 14 | REC 16 | END 70  
Stun 30 | Hits 30 |

Complications  
Distinctive Features: Glowing eyes

Abilities  
See in the Dark, visible effects (glowing eyes)  
Ultraviolet Vision  
Clinging  
Black cloud: Darkness vs. normal sight (2 m/y radius), 8 Charges/day each lasting toki (60 minutes), 0 END, personal immunity (not affected by own cloud)  
Bite: 1d6 Killing (2d6 w/STR), penetrating (minimum 2 Hits damage gets through any armor), 0 END  
Poison: Mukade poison causes severe weakness and eventually death. Damage is subtracted from Hits; one-fifth of the number rolled (cumulative) is subtracted from STR and CON.  
(Mode: Blood; Speed: 1 Min.; DC2; Duration: 10 Min.)

Shell: Armor 8 KD  

Skills  | Lvl | AV | DV  
--- | --- | --- | ---  
Bite | 4 | 9  
Evade | 4 | 12 | 22  
Perception | 7 | 8  
Stealth | 2 | 10  

The bite of a mukade only inflicts 2d6 points of damage, but the bite carries a potentially lethal poison. Anyone bitten by a mukade will become violently ill, and must make a CON roll (TN 22) each half-toki (60 minutes) or suffer a 1d6 Drain; for every full 5 points accumulated, the victim’s REF, CON and BODY are reduced by 1. If any of the three stats is reduced to 0 the character succumbs to the poison and dies. If the character make three successful CON rolls in a row, however, the poison has run its course and the character will suffer no more ill effects from it. In a day or so, the effects will wear off, and the victim will just feel weak for a while.

As a defense, mukade can cough out a black cloud that obscures vision in its three-ken-diameter area. The mukade can see fine through its own cloud, but usually uses it to make good its escape from an overwhelming opponent. The cloud dissipates in an hour.

Mukade are omnivorous, but will just as willingly eat minerals—say, a nice sword—as a person.

Even though one burns up a mamushi (a kind of poisonous snake) seven times, it will return to its original form.  
— Japanese saying
RAIJŪ (THUNDER BEAST)

Raijū are most frequently encountered during thunderstorms, when they cavort among the thunderheads, riding the lightning down to earth and back up to the clouds. They resemble huge badgers with two tails and six legs. Their fur is dark gray.

In addition to claw attacks, raijū can also breathe lightning three times a day in a straight line 50 ken long, which causes 8d6 damage. They are also nigh impervious to any lightning or electricity-based attacks; in fact, they gain energy from them, taking some of the would-be damage and adding those points to their HITS. (The extra points so gained wear off over the next 24 hours.)

They dwell typically in holes they’ve hollowed out in the tops of large trees. They can be found in packs, and if in their lair there may be a number of young equal to the adults. Treat the young as half as powerful, strong, and capable as a full-grown raijū.

Their favorite foods are corn and other grains. Their stomach is sometimes sought by elemental mages seeking components for electricity spells, and their pelts can be made into cloaks or other garments that render the wearer impervious to such attacks (allows the wearer the benefit of the Damage Reduction and Armor vs lightning/electricity attacks).

**Raijū Stats**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>REF</th>
<th>MOVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>CON</td>
<td>DEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>BODY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>REC</td>
<td>END</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>Hits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abilities**

- Claws: 1d6 Killing (2d6 w/STR), attached focus
- Breathe Lightning: 8d6 energy blast, area effect: 50m line (1m wide), usable 3 times/day
- Ride Lightning: Teleport 5m, x1.024 Non-combat (3 mi. total), only to travel to/from the clouds
- Flight: 10 m/y, 0 END
- Absorb Electricity: Absorption 10d6 (points go to Hits), only vs lightning/electricity, points fade after 24 hours
- Hide/Fur: Damage Reduction: 75% vs Electricity only
- Armor: 20 KD, Only vs lightning/electricity

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lightning Blast</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shishi (“Foo Lion”)

**Shishi Stats**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>REF</th>
<th>MOVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10*</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>CON</td>
<td>DEX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>BODY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>8*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>REC</td>
<td>END</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>Hits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41*</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abilities**

- Size: Growth (x4 Mass, -2 m/y Knockback)
- Hide: Armor 4 KD
- Bite: 2d6 killing damage
- Claws: 2d6 killing (4d6 w/STR), attached focus
- Running +10m Run (18m total), +15m Sprint (27m total)
- Leaping: Superleap +10 m/y (20 m/y total)
- Danger Sense: Base 14, usable out of combat vs any attack in general area
- Flash Defense (Sight) 5 Pts
- Enhanced Hearing & Smell (+3 Perception)
- Sense evil/violent intent in others (no roll required)

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bite</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intelligence is nothing more than discussing things with others. Limitless wisdom comes from this. Ninjō is something done for the sake of others, simply comparing oneself with them and putting them in the fore. Courage is gritting one’s teeth...and pushing ahead, paying no attention to the circumstances. Anything that seems above these three is not necessary to be known.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
**TAKO (GIANT OCTOPUS)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ability</th>
<th>INT 4</th>
<th>STR 6*</th>
<th>REF 4</th>
<th>MOVE 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL 1</td>
<td>CON 4</td>
<td>DEX 8/6*</td>
<td>Run 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE 4</td>
<td>BODY 7*</td>
<td>Sprint 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD 8</td>
<td>REC 8</td>
<td>END 40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 23</td>
<td>Hits 20</td>
<td>* Growth bonus figured in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications**

Susceptibility: Takes 2d6 Hits/min. after 3 hours out of water

**Abilities**

Size: Growth 3 Levels (x6 mass, -3m Knockback, x2 height/width, x2 reach), 0 END, persistent, always on

Strike: 6d6

Tentacles: Multiple limbs (8)

Constriction: +2d6 Stun damage (8d6 total), Must first strike target 3 times in one Phase

Chameleon Ability: Invisibility (vs sight), has fringe effect, 0 END

Swimming +10m (14m total)

LS: Breathe underwater

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lvl</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strike</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Weapon</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Modifiers for size included

The tako is a huge octopus. There are two things that make this beast different from normal octopi: the tako has a reach of one ken with any given limb, and this beast can survive out of water for two or three hours.

The tako is intelligent—as beasts go. Natural camouflage abilities allow the tako to “blend in” with his surroundings, making him nearly undetectable (those within 2 meters can spot the tako on a successful Perception roll against DN 18). The tako has an innate ability allowing it to use weapons if it grasps them (treat any weapon grasped being used at a skill level of 3).

If a tako strikes one foe bare-tentacled for three consecutive hits (all in one round), the beast may grasp him and attempt to constrict the victim for additional damage.

**USHI-ONI (OX–OGRE)**

The ushi-oni’s physical form is vaguely crab-like, but this is really only a physical form adopted by the living gas form that is the true ushi-oni.

Ushi-oni attack with two enormous claws and bite, although they may try to head-butt first. In such a case, the ushi-oni rushes his target, head lowered, and strikes for 2d6 damage. His claws are strong enough to capsize small fishing boats with one swipe (this is where those Knockback rules come in handy).

There is no escaping an ushi-oni who wants you: they have an eerie ability to sense prey up to 100 ken away, even through solid walls! In broad daylight, in the open, they have eyesight that can rival an eagle’s. When trying to hide, they can dig in and cover themselves with sand in one full phase using their tunneling ability.

Ushi-oni are large enough to swallow a person whole, which is what happens when he scores a full-point hit on a bite. If the victim survives the bite damage, he will likely die in the stomach due to suffocation and stomach acids (the acids account for the 2d6 continuous attack). Even if he is cut out of the stomach before he can die, he may well die from the acid and other damage unless the appropriate spells to reverse the acid and damage effects can be cast. (GMs may also rule that the character’s clothing, armor and equipment is marred or ruined from the acid, to say nothing of the character’s own features.)

They can breathe and move equally well in water and on land, and can walk on the seabed or swim with equal ease. On the surface of the water they can float like a ship or swim. Their usual lair is a cave at the bottom of the sea, but they may also

*It’s in the nature of man that the good is difficult to learn, while the bad is easily taken to, and thus one naturally becomes gradually like those with whom he is familiar.*

— Shiba Yoshimasa
have a secondary lair in a cave by the seaside.

Ushi-oni mean frequent havoc with shipping, and often cause shipwrecks. They have little use for treasures, save as bait to lure adventurers to their lair. Ushi-oni are known to wall some prisoners in, saving them to kill and eat later.

**INT** 1 **STR** 12 **REF** 4 **MOVE** 4
**WILL** 1 **CON** 10 **DEX** 4 **Run** 8
**PRE** 1 **BODY** 9 **Sprint** 12
**SD** 20 **REC** 22 **END** 100
**Stun** 45 **Hits** 45

**Complications**
Reputation: attacks ships and boats

**Abilities**
Bite: 2d6 Killing (4d6 w/STR)
Swallow whole: 2d6 Killing, penetrating (min 2 Hits damage each Phase). Only works if bite delivers maximum damage (i.e., 24 Hits), 0 END, persistent, continuous
Enhanced Sight (+9 Perception)
Huge Claws: 3d6 Killing (6d6 w/STR), attached focus
Tunneling: 2 m/y (DEF 1), can fill behind
Sense Prey: 360-degree sensing, increased range (200m)

**Skills**
- **Lvl** AV DV
  - Head-butt 4 8
  - Claw/Strike 5 9
  - Evade 6 10 20
  - Stealth 4 8
  - Bite 4 8
  - Perception 4 5 (14 w/Sight)

---

**SUPERNATURAL BEINGS**

These beings are intelligent, and can reason and carry on conversations. Some of them might not be too bright, but others are frighteningly smart, crafty, or wise. Not all are evil; some are actually good. Others just want to be left alone.

**AMA-NO-JAKU**

**(IMP OF HEAVEN)**

**INT** 7 **STR** 1 **REF** 7 **MOVE** 4
**WILL** 7 **CON** 2 **DEX** 5 **Run** 8
**PRE** 4 **BODY** 3 **TECH** 6 **Sprint** 12
**AES** 1 **PIE** 1
**RES** 21 **SD** 4 **REC** 6 **END** 20
**Stun** 15 **Hits** 15

**Complications**
- Mischievous
- Reputation: eats humans
- Sadistic; enjoys torturing people

**Talents**
- Shape Change: Can grow/shrink to fit any clothes

---

*Ama-no-jaku* appear from a distance to be children or dwarves. Their lack of a neck is often unnoticeable.

Ama-no-jaku delight in torturing and playing evil tricks on people. Stealing, being sarcastic, and lying are only the start. They can repeat things they have heard perfectly in the tone and voice of the person they heard it from, but they will usually say the opposite. They love contraband and all manner of forbidden things, from information to artifacts.

When they kill someone, they may flay the body, donning the skin like clothing. Their true form fills out (or shrinks) to fit the body they are putting on. If cut while wearing such a disguise, their own skin (which often has a grayish cast) will show through the cut.

They will fight with whatever weapon is at hand. They may appear strong, but are no stronger than a child and can easily be defeated, so they prefer tricking their way to a victory.

They are solitary, preferring no company but those they have chosen to be their targets. They live in abandoned temples or shrines in mountains or deep in the forests. Their lairs are often littered with the refuse of their victims—clothing, effects, etc.

Ama-no-jaku are carnivores who will eat any people they kill, but they will also catch and kill small animals if necessary.

---

*If a man who serves indolently and a man who serves well are treated in the same way, the man who serves well may begin to wonder why he does so.*

— Asakura Toshikage
BAKEMONO-SHO (GOBLIN)

INT 2  STR 3  REF 7  MOVE 4
WILL 4  CON 3  DEX 5  Run 8
PRE 2  BODY 3  TECH 6  Sprint 12
AES 2  PIE 1
RES 12  SD 6  REC 6  END 30
Stun 12  Hits 15

Complications
- Cowardice: Won’t fight if odds aren’t in their favor
- Distinctive Features: short ugly goblin
- Reputation: barbaric, inhuman monsters
- Rude, crude and barbaric

Abilities
- Claw: d6 (1d6 w/STR)

Skills
- Bribery: 3 5
- Concealment: 4 9
- Evade: 3 8 18
- Gambling: 4 10
- Grapple/Claw: 3 10
- Interrogation: 3 5
- Local Expert: 3 5
- Perception: 3 5
- Stealth: 2 7
- Weapon skill: 4 11 21

Bakemono-sho are about half the height of a normal man, and from a distance can be mistaken for a child or a dwarf. Up close, their tough skin (often an off-pastel shade of a natural human complexion) gives away their true nature.

Bakemono-sho are typically found in small parties (2d6 bakemono-sho present) or war bands (5d6). Their chief joy is fighting humans, something they will seldom do one-on-one preferring the odds of a large number of bakemono-sho to a small number of humans. Bakemono-sho are crude, rude, and socially unacceptable. They’re not really very bright, either. They steal what they can’t make. Their own gear is notoriously poorly made, so they frequently take items from their victims.

They are distant cousins of the dai-bakemono, whom they resemble but on a smaller scale.

BURUBURU

Buruburu resemble typical old women with long hair, but there the resemblance ends. They have no legs, and float about freely. However, the long kimono may disguise this from anyone not looking directly for feet. Some also call them “goddesses of fear.”

There are thousands of tiny, pinprick-sized holes in the hands of a buruburu. From the left hand she can emit a gas in a six-meter long cone that can cause abject terror to those who breathe it. Anyone within the Roll 6d6 and subtract the victim’s Resistance (RES). If the remaining total exceeds 5 times the victim’s WILL, one of two things will happen: the victim will fall into a fetal position babbling defenselessly, or they will run pell-mell in a random direction for 10 – CON minutes.

From the left hand, a similar cloud will render anyone who is overcome by the gas (roll 10d6, subtract the victim’s RES, and compare the remaining total to the victim’s WILL x 5) it immobile but aware—like a sentient flesh statue—for a like period of time.

They eat only one thing: the hearts of their victims. Buruburu prefer the hearts of those who died while terrified, preferring above all others the hearts of those who died of fright. If she gets an opponent alone, she will immobilize him, and in his last moments of life, explain to him in no uncertain terms in what pain he will die, how she will kill him slowly, and in his terror, she kills and feasts. If the buruburu kills someone in a melee, she will attempt to pick up the body and flee, to eat at her leisure. Her encumbered flight reduces her MOVE by half.

When a buruburu strikes, the victim suffers a fall in body temperature as his life energy is drained (roll 2d6, reducing the victim’s BODY by 1 for every 5 full points rolls; this is cumulative over successive attacks) and is subject to the same effects as if he had inhaled the “fumes of fear.” Body temperature will continue to drop. Even if the victim huddles for warmth by a fire, relief will not come while the buruburu lives, suffering an additional (and cumulative) 1d6 Drain BODY attack each hour, unless a priest can perform a suitable healing ritual (i.e., prayer).

One should retire by midnight and rise by four in the morning.

— Japanese proverb
**Buruburu** can become invisible twice in any given 24-hour period. They are especially susceptible to heat-based attacks, suffering double damage from them. Their dwelling is near graveyards or near abandoned mountain shrines. Buruburu are solitary, and are not known to associate with others of their kind.

**INT 6**  **STR 5**  **REF 4**  **MOVE 6**
**WILL 4**  **CON 4**  **DEX 4**  **Run 12**
**PRE 4**  **BODY 4**  **TECH 4**  **Sprint 18**
**AES 1**
**PIE 0**
**RES 12**  **SD 8**  **REC 9**  **END 40**

**Stun 20**  **Hits 20**

**Complications**
- Reputation: Drains life and heat from victims
- Solitary creatures
- Susceptability: 2x damage from heat-based attacks

**Abilities**
- Fumes of Fear: 10d6 Mind Control, Single effect: Cause abject fear, AE: 6m cone (3m wide at end of cone)
- Fumes of Paralysis: 10d6 Mind control, single effect—Paralysis, area effect: 6m cone (3m wide at end of cone)
- Touch of Fear: 2d6 BODY Drain, and 10d6 Mind Control, Single effect: Cause abject fear, touch only
- Invisibility: Fully invisible to sight, only usable twice/day

**Skills**  **LvL**  **AV**  **DV**
- Evade 4  8  18
- Hand-to-hand 6  10  20
- Perception 4  10
- Stealth 3  7
- Use Fumes 6  10

### DAI-BAKEMONO
**GREATER GOBLIN**

**INT 5**  **STR 8**  **REF 3**  **MOVE 5**
**WILL 4**  **CON 8**  **DEX 5**  **Run 10**
**PRE 2**  **BODY 8**  **TECH 4**  **Sprint 15**
**AES 4**
**PIE 4**
**RES 12**  **SD 16**  **REC 16**  **END 80**

**Stun 40**  **Hits 40**

**Complications**
- Code of Honor: Bushidô
- Believe themselves the equivalent of buke
- Distinctive Features: big barbaric ogre

**Talents**
- 3 in 6 chance of having the Mystic: Onmyôdô talent

**Skills**  **LvL**  **AV**  **DV**
- Archery 4  7
- Evade 3  8  18
- Firearms 3  6
- Focus Ki 1  5
- Gambling 5  9
- Heraldry 2  7
- Local Expert 4  9
- Onmyôdô 4  8

_Dai-bakemono_ are the larger cousins of the _bakemono-sho_. They range in height from six to eight _shaku_ (6 to 9 feet) in height. Dai-bakemono are generally encountered in groups (3d6), though occasional lone scouts, travelers and the like may be encountered.

Dai-bakemono are much brighter than their smaller cousins, and even have a sense of the aesthetic. They dress better, even have their own society and “courts” that are parodies of _buke_ culture. They consider themselves the equal of samurai and will get violent if it is suggested that they aren’t.

Each “clan” of dai-bakemono will have a _kunshu_, or lord, whom they treat as their lord. In the kunshu’s retinue will be dai-bakemono, _bakemono-sho_, and perhaps even other creatures. (Treat dai-bakemono kunshu as dai-bakemono with +2 points in all areas, across the board.)

The preferred weapons of dai-bakemono are _no-dachi_ and _tetsubô_; some have become quite accomplished archers, as well. Those who have stolen _teppô_ from _samurai_ storehouses (or after raiding the slain on a battlefield) can become a dangerous power.

Half of all dai-bakemono can use _onmyôdô_ magic, having the Mystic talent.

Unlike their lesser cousins, dai-bakemono are not by definition evil and mischievous—although they may be inordinately avaricious.

---

_Dai-bakemono_ are the larger cousins of the _bakemono-sho_. They range in height from six to eight _shaku_ (6 to 9 feet) in height. Dai-bakemono are generally encountered in groups (3d6), though occasional lone scouts, travelers and the like may be encountered.

Dai-bakemono are much brighter than their smaller cousins, and even have a sense of the aesthetic. They dress better, even have their own society and “courts” that are parodies of _buke_ culture. They consider themselves the equal of samurai and will get violent if it is suggested that they aren’t.

Each “clan” of dai-bakemono will have a _kunshu_, or lord, whom they treat as their lord. In the kunshu’s retinue will be dai-bakemono, _bakemono-sho_, and perhaps even other creatures. (Treat dai-bakemono kunshu as dai-bakemono with +2 points in all areas, across the board.)

The preferred weapons of dai-bakemono are _no-dachi_ and _tetsubô_; some have become quite accomplished archers, as well. Those who have stolen _teppô_ from _samurai_ storehouses (or after raiding the slain on a battlefield) can become a dangerous power.

Half of all dai-bakemono can use _onmyôdô_ magic, having the Mystic talent.

Unlike their lesser cousins, dai-bakemono are not by definition evil and mischievous—although they may be inordinately avaricious.

---

...if, unfortunately, a samurai and his head must part company, when his opponent asks for his name he must declare it at once, loudly and clearly and yield up his head with a smile on his lips and without the slightest sign of fear.

— Daidôji Yûzan
GANGIKOZŌ

INT 4  STR 4  REF 4  MOVE 4
WILL 4  CON 4  DEX 4  Run 8
PRE 5  BODY 4  TECH 4  Sprint 12
AES 0
PIE 0
RES 21  SD 8  REC 8  END 40
Stun 20  Hits 20

Complications
Distinctive Features: Shell-backed, quill-covered aquatic demon

Abilities
Amphibious: Life Support – Breathe in water
Armor: 16 KD, Only on locations 10-12
Bite: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR)
Lethal Poison: fugu (blowfish) poison, can only be delivered with successful bite
Claws: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR), attached focus
Paralytic Poison: Can only be delivered with successful claw strike
Swimming: full MOVE on land or in water

Skills Lvl AV DV
Bite 4 8
Claw 6 10
Evade 6 10 20
Local Expert 4 8
Perception 4 8
Stealth 6 10

Gangikozō resemble their distant cousins, the kappa, except there is no hollow on the tops of their heads. Their bodies are covered by a fine coat of quills like those of a porcupine. These quills can hurt and be an inconvenience, but cause no real damage. No one would strike a gangikozō bare-handed, that is certain. Inside their chest is an endermal carapace that can be worked like leather but function as bullet-proof steel (KD 16); it is prized by armorers.

Their favorite food is fish, and they especially love blowfish, the poison of which they suck out and store for their own painful bite attacks. If they successfully bite, their stored blowfish poison enters the bloodstream of their victim. (see Poison).

Their only other weapon is their sharp talons, which have a paralytic poison. The claws come handy when catching fish. The claw poison is neither plentiful nor produced in great quantities, so after the first three successful strikes, it will be a full day before sufficient poison is restored to be damaging.

Gangikozō live, like kappa, in rivers and lakes, in small caves. They will hardly ever be found with others of their kind, being typically solitary. They may, however, associate with other kappa. They maneuver and breathe with equal ease in water and on land.

They are harmless creatures, but fishermen may consider them threats to their livelihoods and may try to kill one moving into the area. Such actions have been known to lead to wars between fishing communities and kappa kin. This is the only time when other gangikozō will come to the aid of their kind, and they may even band together in defensive ikki. When there is such a struggle, as many as 10 gangikozō may be in a single lair.

GOTOKU NEKO

INT 4  STR 4  REF 6  MOVE 4
WILL 4  CON 4  DEX 6  Run 8
PRE 4  BODY 4  TECH 4  Sprint 12
AES 0
PIE 0
RES 12  SD 8  REC 8  END 40
Stun 16  Hits 20

Abilities
Claws: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR), attached focus
Head Butt: 3d6 Stun attack
Horns: 3d6 Killing attack (4d6 w/STR)
Flaming Tail: 2d6 Killing attack, fire
Shapeshift: To common house cat or attractive young adult human
Spit Mystic Flame: 4d6 Killing attack, AE: 8m long cone (2m wide at end), usable 2x/day

Skills Lvl AV DV
Bite 4 10
Claw 8 14
Evade 6 12 22
Gore (Horns) 6 12
Head Butt 5 11
Perception 4 8
Spit Flame 8 14
Stealth 12 18
Use Tail 5 11

Gotoku neko in their natural form are short, anthropoid felines with long tails, the tip of which constantly burns with a cold, non-consuming flame. They can also shape-shift to resemble a common house cat, or a handsome (or extremely lovely) and seductive youth of either sex. They can shapeshift at will, but the process takes four Phases (one Round) for the metamorphosis, during which time they are completely vulnerable.

They can spew forth a spirit flame in a eight meter by two meter cone twice in any given 24-hour period. The flame causes 4d6 of burning, killing damage to anyone within the area of affect. It can be treated as a regular fire except that it is cold.

An affected laugh shows lack of self-respect in a man and lewdness in a woman.

— Yamamoto Jinzaemon
As with all felines, there are pads on the gotoku neko’s feet, so he moves with total stealth, as a master shinobi. In their natural form, three horns on their head, harder than any steel, are used in butting attacks that cause 3d6 damage (4d6 w/ STR). If actively engaged with the enemy, they can’t headbutt.

The flame-tipped tail can also strike for 2d6 fire damage, with the added possibility of igniting any flammable material it touches (4 in 6 chance). The tail can only be used to strike in a given phase if the gotoku neko is not already fighting with its hands or headbutting an opponent, as attacking with it requires concentration.

Given a chance, they will eat their victims. They especially love to target people who are cruel to cats.

The usual lair of a gotoku neko is a common home, where they disguise themselves as common cats, although they are also fond of making their own lair near abandoned kilns or charcoal-burners and houses.

---

**HAKUZÔSU**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT 5</th>
<th>STR 4</th>
<th>REF 4</th>
<th>MOVE 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL 5</td>
<td>CON 4</td>
<td>DEX 4</td>
<td>Run 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE 4</td>
<td>BODY 4</td>
<td>TECH 4</td>
<td>Sprint 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES 21</td>
<td>SD 8</td>
<td>REC 8</td>
<td>END 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 16</td>
<td>Hits 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abilities**

- Immunity to all poisons
- Tail quills: 1d6 Killing attack (treat as Long range melee weapon)

**Spells:** 3d6 total levels of Shugendô spells (GM’s choice)

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lvl</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disguise</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hakuzôsu are a form of shapeshifter who dress like and are very often mistaken for a venerable shugenja, otherwise known as a yamabushi. (Anyone examining a hakuzô’s appearance may make a contested skill roll, using the viewer’s INT + Perception versus the hakuzôsu’s TECH + Disguise roll; if the viewer’s roll is higher, he sees through the hakuzôsu’s disguise.) No matter what question is posed to them by way of testing them, hakuzôsu are able to respond with complete calm and rationality. This is, of course, completely regardless of the answer’s relationship to the question...

Not only do hakuzôsu look like shugenja, they can cast spells as one. A hakuzôsu will have an assortment of Shugendô spells (GM’s choice), totaling 5d6 levels. For example, if the roll is 19, the hakuzôsu can have four spells at level 4 and one at level 3, or he can have two skills at level 9 plus one at level 1, or any other combination as long as the total of the spell levels does not exceed 19.

They look rather harmless, but one must be careful when dealing with a hakuzôsu. They carry a priest’s staff (treat as a bō) and occasionally a katana. When pressed, he can also strike from behind with his tail, which has spikes like a porcupine’s. Each strike releases 1d6 quills, each causing 1 Hit of damage.

Hakuzôsu wander about and occasionally take up residence in an abandoned temple. They are not creatures who need the company of their kind, preferring to associate with humans. They are at their most happy when they can take up residence in a temple or shrine and have parishioners come to visit. Hakuzôsu have even been asked to write blessed sutras for people, and they gladly complied; however, due to the hakuzôsu not being human, the sutras soon fade away...

They have an organ in their bodies that renders them immune to poisons and drugs. Some scholars and physicians would pay great amounts for these organs, for with it one can concoct four...
doses’ worth of an elixir that acts as a level ten Buddhist Prevent Poison prayer.

They enjoy fooling people, but it is a love of the practical joke rather than spite or evil intent. They live off the donations of money and food that people leave them at the temple, or what they can get by begging as itinerant priests.

**HYÔSUBE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>INT 4</th>
<th>STR 2</th>
<th>REF 7</th>
<th>MOVE 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>CON 3</td>
<td>DEX 6</td>
<td>Run 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>BODY 2</td>
<td>TECH 1</td>
<td>Sprint 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PIE 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>SD 6</td>
<td>REC 5</td>
<td>END 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Hits 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications**
- Fear of monkeys: flees them when encountered
- Timid, intimidated by people

**Abilities**
- Amphibious: Life Support—breathe under water
- Fungoid Cloud: 8d6 Transformation (normal to retching and ill), Area Effect: 6m radius, Usable 1x/day
- Skin: 5 KD Armor
- Swimming: Has normal MOVE on land or in water

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jujutsu</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Expert</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon Skill</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hyôsube are kappa kin. Their skin is tough and resilient. Hyôsube limbs are triple-jointed; when they walk they appear to be drunk, though they are actually in perfect control of themselves.

The timid hyôsube is intimidated by people, and generally do not go near them. Hyôsube are also terrified of monkeys, and do their best to flee when confronted by them. When threatened, they shake their arms, releasing into the air a fungoid spore cloud with a radius of six meters. Any caught in this cloud will immediately begin retching, and will be ill and unable to eat or drink for 1d6 days, unless purified or blessed by a priest. They can only do this once per day.

By day, the hyôsube lives in a cave at the bottom of a lake or river. They usually only come out on land at night to search for fallen or unharvested grains (oats, rice, etc.) to eat. They do not eat meat of any kind, even fish. They have a small pouch in their stomachs that allows them to store up food so they can go up to a week without eating if necessary.

Hyôsube are not terribly social creatures, but in their lairs there is a 4 in 6 chance that there will be another adult and 1d6 young. Treat the young as attackless creatures with 5 Hits. If two hyôsube are encountered, they are a mated pair.

Because of their resilient hides, hyôsube are sometimes hunted so their skin can be harvested for armor. Leather armor made from it is 1 KD better than regular leather.

**KAPPA**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>INT 4</th>
<th>STR 6</th>
<th>REF 5</th>
<th>MOVE 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>CON 4</td>
<td>DEX 9</td>
<td>Run 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>BODY 5</td>
<td>TECH 4</td>
<td>Sprint 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PIE 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>SD 8</td>
<td>REC 10</td>
<td>END 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Hits 25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications**
- Dependence: Takes 3d6 Killing damage per hour spent out of water if water spilled from head
- Reputation: Honorable but mischievous

**Abilities**
- Amphibious: Life Support—breathe underwater
- Claw: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR)
- Swimming: Normal MOVE both on land and in the water

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atemi-waza</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claw</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jujutsu</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Expert</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physician*</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sumai</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon Skill</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Useful for healing/mending broken bones only*

There are several varieties of kappa. The most common are man-sized bipeds, vaguely resembling turtles. They have definite carapaces. Their heads contain a slight, bowl-like depression containing water.

Kappa dwell in ponds, lakes, and rivers. They can live in, and breathe, air and water equally well. They eat meat of all sort, especially fish, but they enjoy human meat as well. Kappa will lie in wait for lone travelers, horses or small children to grab and drag into their lairs under the water for dinner, sucking out the victim’s blood. They are also inordinately fond of cucumbers, and may be placated by bucketsful of the vegetable.

*If discrimination is long, it will spoil.*
— Lord Takanobu
Kappa can survive outside the water so long as the water in the bowl on their heads remains in place. If the fluid tips out, they suffer 2d6 Hits of damage each hour they spend out of the water. If they are unable to get back to the water they will eventually die. Kappa have developed a high level of dexterity to allow them to keep that bowl full. They can even wrestle—which they are very good at—without tipping it. Unfortunately (for them), they are also very polite, and one may be able to trick a kappa into tipping it by bowing to him — an act he will return automatically (allow the kappa an INT roll, DN 14. If he fails, he falls for the trick.) The kappa will not fall for this trick twice in the same day, but the next day he might fall for it again.

Kappa have a choice of combat with their clawed hands or using a weapon of some sort.

---

**Skills Lvl AV DV**

- Evade 3 6 16
- Perception 5 10
- Stealth 2 5
- Strike 5 11 21

These odd creatures have no arms or legs, only a great number of hair-like tubes, on which they move about like celia, swaying back and forth. (They resemble nothing so much as Cousin Itt from *The Addams Family,*

*Keukegen* enjoy being harmful to mankind. Their greatest pleasure is causing mischief and sickness. They also have the ability to create breezes and low winds. The keukegen has no mouth. It is telepathic, being able to communicate directly to the mind in the same way people talk. There is no “private, one-on-one” communication; everyone in the range of a normal voice “hears” in his mind the keukegen.

Their most incredible ability is that they can bring the dead back to life, even if the dead one has been so for centuries, and is no more than a pile of dust. The trick is getting the keukegen to want to do this…

The keukegen, lacking extremities, can do little physical damage. If one scores a hit, he has latched onto his opponent with his “sucker tube” and may “swallow his *hara* (soul).” On a successful strike, the GM rolls 6d6. If the total exceeds 5 times the victim’s BODY (after subtracting Power Defense, if any), the victim’s soul has been sucked away by the keukegen and destroyed. The body of the victim becomes an empty shell, still breathing and standing, but incapable of sentience or action. If the total of the die roll fails to exceed the victim’s BODY x5, the character is only shocked by the attack and will fall senseless to the ground for 10 - CON hours. The keukegen can strike in the next phase, however, and the comatose victim gets no chance to save. (N.B.: life cannot be restored, even by the keukegen, to one whose soul has been eaten.)

---

**KEUKEGEN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT 5</th>
<th>STR 1</th>
<th>REF 6</th>
<th>MOVE 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL 4</td>
<td>CON 6</td>
<td>DEX 3</td>
<td>Run 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE 4</td>
<td>BODY 3</td>
<td>TECH 4</td>
<td>Sprint 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES 1</td>
<td>PIE 4</td>
<td>RES 12</td>
<td>SD 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 15</td>
<td>Hits 15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications**

- Fear of flames and fire
- No limbs
- Reputation: Soul eater

**Abilities**

- Create Winds: Change Environment (change calm air to breeze or slight wind), area effect: 12m radius
- Telepathy: area effect: 16m radius
- Drain Spirit: 6d6 Transformation (normal to soulless)

---

When matters are done leisurely, seven out of ten will turn out badly. A warrior is a person who does things quickly.

— Lord Naoshige
Keukegen are particularly susceptible and frightened by fire and flame-based attacks (which do double damage on them).

They usually live under the floors of homes or shrines. If the house is full of sick people, there is a chance that a keukegen has taken up residence. The husks of villages that keukegen have visited are known for being ghost towns and are dreaded; no one will approach them for fear the keukegen still dwell there, sucking up the negative psychic energy.

**MUSHIN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ability</th>
<th>Lvl</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Ki</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon Skill</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other skills, as appropriate to their “disguise” or “normal” form.

*Mushin* are normally encountered alone or in small groups (1d3).

Mushin appear like normal people, either male or female. The appearance is actually false, as their true face is a featureless void, one that can inspire irrevocable insanity.

Mushin are evil, pure and simple. Their physical weapons are those typical to other humans (swords, knives, bō, etc.).

Mushin delight in driving people insane. They draw strength from causing insanity in others. While appearing human to all, it can, when it chooses, show its true “face” to a human for an instant (usually during combat). Viewing the mushin’s featureless void of a face has the following, immediate effect. The GM rolls 10d6, subtracting the victim’s RES (and Power Defense, if any). If the remaining total exceeds five times the victim’s WILL, the victim becomes insane, launching into one of the following behaviors (choose one or roll 1d6):

1-2 Victim flees at top speed until exhausted or physically unable to go any farther (e.g., running into a wall or closed room).

3 Victim is paralyzed with fear and unable to move.

4 Victim drops to a dead faint.

5 Victim attempts to run away and strikes out at everyone (friend or foe) in his way.

6 Victim ducks for the nearest cover and cowers.

The victim continues the described behavior for 10 - WILL days, after which he will suddenly cry out in terror before lapsing into catatonic shock and going completely insane. An *Exorcism* performed by a priest during the catatonic phase is the only thing that can save his mind; he will, however, bear the remains of the shock in his heart, and suffer a loss of 3K Honor points (i.e., he loses 3x his KAO in Honor points).

If the victim is initially unaffected by viewing the mushin’s face, he may continue to fight or otherwise confront the mushin for a number of phases equal to his WILL, whereupon he is subject the effects a second time. If he survives that, the victim is fine, and immune to future viewing of the void.

Mushin can be exorcised by priests. Those that are exercised never to reappear.

**NURARIHYON**

*Nurarihyon* appear like short, wizened old men. They are bald with a slight growth of beard. Occasionally a nurarihyon will dress like a wandering priest or monk, but most often they appear to be wealthy merchants. The only thing odd about them is that their heads are slightly large for their bodies. Some people might not even notice it (Perception roll, DN 18, to spot this abnormality). Their head alone, however, weighs as much as a human, containing dense “gray matter.”

Nurarihyon are wandering creatures. They are seldom found at their own dwelling—if, in fact, they have one. A nurarihyon dwelling, it appears as a hermitage or simple retreat, but it is often used as a meeting place for bakemono-sho and other creatures, who are led by the nurarihyon’s wisdom and intelligence.

Nurarihyon are consummate freeloaders, and will consume other people’s tobacco, wine, tea, or food, offering nothing in compensation. They are local nuisances. If a nurarihyon moves into the area, there is a good chance (1-3 on 1d6) that by the end of the first year 1d6+2 other creatures (bakemono-sho, nurarihyon, amano-jaku, etc.) might move in. The following year there is an even greater chance (4 in 6) of a further 2d6+2, and each year after that brings a chance (5 in 6) of still another 2d6+2 creatures moving into the area.

They value magical objects, but prefer things with more intrinsic worth, such as gold, gems, and art objects.

Inside the nurarihyon, where a heart would be, is a gemstone called a *nurarihyon ishi* which, it is said, gives the owner the

*— Yamamoto Tsunetomo*
ability to fly and travel to other worlds. This stone is harder than a diamond and beyond measure in worth. Rather than fight, nurarihyon generally rely on guile and wit. They can fight, however, rather well; their high intelligence allows them an unusually high skill with staffs and swords, especially when facing other staffs or swords.

| INT 12 | STR 3 | REF 4 | MOVE 4 |
| WILL 8 | CON 3 | DEX 4 | Run 8 |
| PRE 4  | BODY 3| TECH 4| Sprint 12 |
| AES 4  | PIE 4 |

**Complications**
Distinctive Feature: large head, weighing as much as a person (concealable)
Freeloader; accepts gifts but makes no attempt to repay them

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skilled</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bureaucratics</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversation</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Ki</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gambling</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leadership</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polearms: Staff</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swords</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea Ceremony</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complications**
Barbaric, uncouth and uncivilized
Distinctive Feature: Smelly, ugly demon/ogre
Greedy
Loves sake (frequent, total)
Lust
Reputation: Eats humans, abuses human women

**Abilities**
Regeneration: Heals 1 Hit per phase, can’t regenerate Hits lost to fire damage
Huge Tetsubô: 9d6 Stun attack (12d6 w/STR)
Travel to Yomi: Extra-dimensional movement, to travel to Yomi only, only works in caverns

**Skills**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skilled</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>AV</th>
<th>DV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expert: Yomi</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Ki</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA: Tetsubô</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealth</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapon</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oni are seven or eight shaku (about nine feet) in height. Their skin color runs the gamut from red to blue to black to green.

---

If one were to say what it is to do good, in a single word it would be to endure suffering. Not enduring is bad without exception.

— Master Ittei
Some oni have one eye, some have two, some three or even four. Typically an oni will have a horn on his head. Well, sometimes two. Maybe three. They wear hides and animal skins, often patched, and invariably smelly.

Female oni have two long horns and a long, white face, and are called hannya.

Oni may be encountered alone or in groups (of 3d6).

Oni are greedy, lusty, and totally uncouth. They are quintessential barbarians. If a human woman is taken prisoner by oni... well, it would be better for her to die rather than be taken.

If a limb is severed, it will rejoin the body; the body must be destroyed by fire or no matter how hacked to pieces, it will return to one piece. Their chief weapon is a tetsubô of incredible proportions and weight which has a 9DC and a STR Minimum of 8. No normal human can wield one.

Oni can’t be destroyed by simply “killing” their physical form. They must also be exorcised or otherwise have their souls destroyed (Oni have a “Spirit Rank” equal to their WILL +2). If an oni’s body is slain but their spirit remains, they will return to Yomi to regenerate a new body, and may return to harass their “killer” again. Oni that are exorcised but whose bodies remain intact simply return to Yomi to reclaim their spirits.

Crafty oni will hide their spirit in some container within their lair (such as a pickling jar, ceramic urn or other device). If someone discovers the oni’s spirit, they can ransom it to the oni. An oni will grant one request (assuming it is within his ability to grant) in return for the spirit, including returning to Yomi or promising not to harm a particular person or place.

Oni are carnivores, and their favorite meat of all is people. They are bloodthirsty as well, and often use human and animal flesh in their cuisine. They are not above using human or animal parts in their rituals or offerings to their gods.

Oni typically live in abandoned castles or villages or huts; they generally avoid religious institutions, even if abandoned. Many have their own small temples or shrines, which they use for their own rituals and offerings. They are often associated with evil spirits and dark powers, and are said to be the servants of the gods of death and destruction.

They typically live in abandoned castles or villages or huts; they generally avoid religious institutions, even if abandoned. More than one city has found oni bands making their home in the run-down slum areas, where the oni sleep by day and come out at night looking for prey.

ROKURO-KUBI
(GOBLIN HEAD)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INT 3</th>
<th>STR 6</th>
<th>REF 6</th>
<th>MOVE 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WILL 5</td>
<td>CON 4</td>
<td>DEX 10*</td>
<td>Run 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE 5</td>
<td>BODY 4</td>
<td>Sprint 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RES 15</td>
<td>SD 8</td>
<td>REC 10</td>
<td>END 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun 20</td>
<td>Hits 20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Shrinking bonus figured in

Complications
- No fine manipulation (No body)
- Susceptibility: Dies if not rejoined with body by sunrise
- Cannot approach a person who is reciting sutras
- Reputation: man-eating goblin head
- Distinctive Feature: Red characters on base of neck

Talents
- Blind Reaction
- Combat Sense (+2 initiative)

When one has made a decision to kill a person, even if it will be very difficult to succeed by advancing straight ahead, it will not do to think about going at it in a long roundabout way. One’s heart may slacken, he may miss his chance, and by and large there will be no success. The Way of the Samurai is one of immediacy, and it is best to dash in headlong.

Yamamoto Tsunetomo
They eat insects, grubs and worms that they can find in the forest, but they much prefer to feast upon people and may offer shelter to a lone traveler with the intent of devouring him at night after he has fallen asleep. Rokuro-kubi attack by biting their opponents, and can inflict terrible damage this way. If a rokuro-kubi clenches its teeth onto something, its STR score is effectively doubled for purposes of trying to pry its mouth open.

Upon returning to their bodies, the heads mystically reattach themselves. If for any reason their bodies are moved without their knowledge, the goblin heads will become extremely agitated, gnashing their teeth and yelling, and begin to search for them. Those failing to find their body before sunrise will die.

TATSU (DRAGON)

INT 12  STR 12  REF 8  MOVE 12
WILL 8  CON 10  DEX 8  Run 24
PRE 8  BODY 10  TECH 10  Sprint 36
AES 8  PIE 8
SD 20  REC 22  END 100
Stun 50  Hits 50

Complications
Distinctive Features: dragon (not concealable)

Talents
Mystic: one school/faith

Abilities
Bite: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR)
Breath Weapon: See descriptions below
Claws: 2d6 Killing attack (4d6 w/STR), attached focus
Flight: Full MOVE on land or in the air
Scales: 12 KD armor

Skills Lvl AV DV
Bite 8 16
Buddhism 8 16
Bureaucratics 5 17
Claw 6 14
Confucianism 6 18
Conversation 8 20
Diplomacy 7 19
Evade 8 16 26
Folklore 5 17
Gambling 4 16
Class. Lit: Chin 6 18
Class. Lit: Jap 6 18
Local Expert 6 18
Perception 6 18
Shintô 8 16
Stealth 8 16
Use Breath 8 16

Japanese dragons are from five to 20 meters in length (roll 3d6+2 to determine length, in meters). Note: The statistics here are for a 12-meter-long tatsu. GMs are encouraged in increase or decrease stats in for larger or smaller tatsu, respectively.

Unlike its Western cousins, the tatsu has no wings, yet it, too, can fly. The long, serpentine body is covered with armored scales, and the tatsu has four long legs terminating in four-fingered claws.

Tatsu are brilliant, inscrutable creatures. Most of the time they appear to be honorable and follow Confucian and bushidô codes, but as their purposes are their own, few can understand their actions and motivations. Most are exalted, noble creatures, although a few are on the dark side of that; as ignoble and base as their cousins are noble and lofty.

Some tatsu have a special abilities that vary. GMs are free to select one or more of the abilities below, or roll 2d6.

2 No Special Abilities
3-5 Breathe Fire: Some can breathe fire several times a day, in a one-meter-wide line equal to three times the tatsu’s length. Anyone within the line of flame suffers 8d6 Killing damage unless they make a successful Evade roll (DN equal to the tatsu’s attack roll).
6-7 Spit Acid: Some can spit a line of acid (same range) which inflicts 2d6 Killing damage each Phase, for one minute, to anyone or anything it touches.
8-9 Breathe Poison Gas: Some breathe a poison cloud with a radius equal to their length, which inflicts 1d6 Killing damage each Phase, for one Round (four Phases) for 1d6 minutes. Characters making a CON+3d6 roll (DN 18) can hold their breath, avoiding the effects of the gas (see Asphyxiation).
10-11 Magic: Many tatsu can use magic. Any school is open to tatsu, but they will specialize in that one school. They will have a combined total of INT+PIE levels’ worth of spells from that school.
12 Two abilities: Re-roll, ignoring rolls of 2, 12, or duplicates

A person who becomes fatigued when unhappy is useless.
— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
TENGU

INT 8    STR 5    REF 6    MOVE 6
WILL 7    CON 5    DEX 8    Run 12
PRE 4    BODY 5    TECH 5    Sprint 18
AES 5    PIE 3
SD 10    REC 10    END 50
Stun 25    Hits 25

Complications
Mischief
Reputation: Chaotic legendary creatures, master fencers

Talents/okuden
Combat Sense
Counterstrike (w/Swords)

Abilities
Fan of Winds: 4 STR Telekinesis, area effect: 20m cone, 0 END cost, grabbable focus—fan
Flight: 10m (30m noncombat), attached focus—wings
Katana (longsword): 4d6 Killing attack (6d6 w/STR)
Wakizashi (shortsword): 2d6 Killing attack (4d6 w/STR)

Skills Lvl AV DV
Acrobatics 9 17
Battojutsu 10 16 28
Calligraphy 6 11
Diplomacy 7 11
Espionage 7 15
Evade 4 12 22
Folklore 8 16
Go 10 18
Herbalist 4 12
Local Expert 8 16
Perception 6 14
Shōgi 8 16
Stealth 5 13
Swords 12 18 30
Teaching 6 14
Two Swords 10 16 28

There are actually several different kinds of tengu. Described here are the most common variety: the so-called dai-tengu, or “great tengu.” Tengu are most commonly found in groups of 3d6+2.

The dai-tengu resembles a tall, slender man, but the face is bright red, and the nose is long, looking more like a red cucumber than an olfactory organ. Many of these tengu dress like shugenja. Although they lack wings, they can fly.

Tengu carry a fan made from bird feathers that in dire times they can cause incredible winds to come up strong enough to blow children off their feet. Tengu are famous for their ability with the sword, and some have even consented to teach mortals. Minamoto no Yoshitsune was said to have been taught by a Kurama tengu. Tengu are likely to know at least one okuden for the sword, and different tengu within one group may all know different okuden.

They live usually deep in the mountains, and they protect their domains. They are chaotic by nature, but are not evil. It is said by some that much of Japan’s history has been manipulated by tengu, who encourage people to struggle against their lords. (Was Akechi Mitsuhide talked into revolt against Nobunaga by a Tengu? Perhaps…)

It is rumored that tengu can neither refuse a challenge nor resist the temptation to collect shiny objects. Whether either of these is true is up to the GM.

TÔRIMONO (WAYFIEND)

INT 4    STR 4    REF 4    MOVE 5
WILL 4    CON 5    DEX 5    Run 10
PRE 4/9    BODY 4    TECH 3    Sprint 15
AES 4
PIE 1
SD 10    REC 9    END 50
Stun 20    Hits 20

Complications
Distinctive Features: Glowing kimono, easily seen at night (not concealable)
Distinctive Features: Appears as ball of fire when flying (concealable)
Enjoys causing downfall of humans

Abilities
Glowing kimono: Lights a 10m radius area at night
Mystic Bô: Normally a bô, but converts to a yari (2d6 Killing, 3d6 w/STR) when used in combat; also allows flight 10m (30m noncombat), 0 END cost, Focus—magic bô
Spirit Flame: 10d6 Transformation (sane to insane), 1x/day

Skills Lvl AV DV
Evade 4 9 19
Focus Ki 1 5
Perception 4 8
Polearms: Staff 8 12 23
Polearms: Lance 8 12 23
Stealth 3 8
Use Spirit Flame 6 10

Tôrimono resemble middle-aged men—often bald—wearing white kimono that usually shines like a lantern at night. They always carry a staff, which they can transform to a yari when they fight. Tôrimono can also mount the staff and fly. The staff

What is called winning is defeating one’s allies. Defeating one’s allies is defeating oneself, and defeating oneself is vigorously overcoming one’s own body. It is though a man were in the midst of ten thousand allies but not one were following him. If one hasn’t previously mastered his mind and body, he will not defeat the enemy.

— Narutomaki Hyōgo

279
GHOSTS

This category is for the undead and non-living creatures of Japan. All of these are the stuff of nightmares, and the living have a certain dread of them.

GHOSTLY ABILITIES

All ghosts have the following common abilities. All of the abilities may be used at will. It takes one available Action to “activate” or “deactivate” any of these abilities. Note that these do not apply to “higher” spirit beings, such as kami and bosatsu.

Desolidification

Ghosts are insubstantial, or “desolid,” in their normal form. They may pass through solid objects, including the ground, at will. In addition, they cannot be harmed by any normal physical or energy, such as weapons, fire and the like. They are susceptible, however, to magic and spells, enchanted weapons (such as those that are Blessed or that have sutras painted on them). This ability costs them no END to use. This ability may be “turned off,” allowing the spirit to manifest itself on the physical world. When they physically manifest, they are subject to the effects of normal attacks.

Flight

Ghosts can float about over the ground or water, or even into the air. This ability is only usable while they are desolid. When flying, the ghost can move at its full listed Move. This ability costs them no END to use.

Invisibility

Ghosts can become invisible to the five senses at will. While invisible, they cannot be sensed by any normal means: they can’t be seen, heard, smelled or otherwise detected, except by magical means. This ability can be used in whole or in part.

For example, while invisible, a ghost may allow itself to be heard; while visible, it may be utterly silent. This ability costs them no END to use.

GHOSTLY COMPLICATIONS

All ghosts have the following common complications. These are in effect at all times, unless otherwise noted. Note that these do not apply to “higher” spirit beings, such as kami and bosatsu.

Sutras

Ghosts are negatively affected by Buddhist sutras. Any item with sutras written on it will be either invisible to ghosts or will make the item unapproachable by ghosts of any kind (writer’s choice). If the latter is chosen affect, the ghost can’t approach within four meters of the item; any ghost forced to stay within the effective area for one full Round is automatically exercised. Further, weapons with sutras written on them will affect ghosts normally, as if they were “enchanted.” Sutras are a very effective ward against spirits.
Singlemindedness

As a general rule, ghosts are driven by a single hunger or desire, which will motivate their actions to an extreme degree, often ignoring those around it as it goes about its ghostly way trying to achieve some unattainable goal. Ghosts may still function and interact normally with people, if you can get their attention. This requires a contested Persuasion skill roll. The “distraction” from their hunger or desire will last for 10 - WILL phases, when the ghost will revert back to its “one track mind.”

Gaki appear to be normal humans, but they are all skin and bones. Their hollow eyes, sunken cheeks, and distended bellies give the impression of starvation.

One of the rebirths one may encounter in Japanese Buddhist cosmology is as a gaki in the hell of Gakido. Gaki are suffering for their having wasted precious food in this world. There is nothing to eat in Gakido, and no one can die from starvation; they eat anything they can find—even their own children—and are never satisfied.

Sometimes there is a crossover, and gaki find their way to our world. While any food will help them, they have become carnivorous, and prefer the flesh of the living.

They do not have weapons; they claw and bite and chew. They can only use their bite attack if they have scored two successful hits with their claws on the same subject. There is no disease related to the attack of gaki, but the wounds are nasty and take a while to heal (normal Recovery until the wound is healed).

Gaki (Hungry Ghoul)

** INT 4 ** STR 6 ** REF 4 ** MOVE 5
** WILL 4 ** CON 5 ** DEX 4 ** Run 10
** PRE 6 ** BODY 4 ** TECH 2 ** Sprint 15
** AES 1 **
** PIE 3 **
** SD 10 ** REC 10 ** END 50
Stun 20 Hits 20

** Complications
Ghastly, emaciated appearance
Reputation: Hungry spirits that eat humans
Singlemindedness
Susceptible to Sutras

** Abilities
Bite: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR)
Claw: 1d6 Killing attack (2d6 w/STR)
Desolidification
Flight
Invisibility

** Skills ** Lvl AV DV
Bite 3 7
Claws 4 8
Evade 3 7 17
Perception 2 6
Stealth 10 14

These are the ghosts of young serving women or apprentices who were beaten to death or coerced into committing suicide for breaking any number of expensive dishes or plates. A splinter of one of those dishes is in the sara-kazoe’s heart, causing her to be what she is.

While they are evil beyond measure, this is a result of their post-death torment; if a medium attempts to Speak with the Dead, they will respond as quiet, though sad, young girls with their pre-death demeanor.

Sara-kazoe have the appearance of young women of average age and build, but like other ghosts, has no legs to support her.

Sara-Kazoe (Plate-Counting Ghost)

** INT 4 ** STR 4 ** REF 4 ** MOVE 4
** WILL 4 ** CON 4 ** DEX 4 ** Run 8
** PRE 4 ** BODY 4 ** TECH 4 ** Sprint 12
** AES 4 **
** PIE 4 **
** SD 8 ** REC 8 ** END 40
Stun 20 Hits 20

** Complications
Distinctive Features: No legs (Concealable)
Distinctive Features: Sound of woman crying heard before it appears (not concealable)
Singlemindedness
Susceptible to Sutras

** Abilities
Breathe Fire: 6d6 Killing attack, area effect: 10m cone
Desolidification
Fists: 4d6 Stun attack
Flight
Invisibility

** Skills ** Lvl AV DV
Evade 7 11 21
Hand-to-Hand 7 11 21
Perception 4 8
Stealth 8 12

One should not open his mouth wide or yawn in front of another. Do this behind your fan or sleeve.

— Yamamoto Jin’emon
This fact may be concealed by her full-length robes (Perception roll, DN 18, to spot). A distant look on their faces is common. Before a sara-kazoe appears, the plaintive sound of a woman crying can be heard. Sometimes they appear in a more ghostly guise, all in white with the body and robes misting to nothingness about the hips.

Sara-kazoe can breathe a cone of fire 10 meters (five ken) long, which inflicts 6d6 of Killing damage to anyone within the cone. Enchanted or otherwise sacred objects are the only ones that can inflict any damage on one, whether they are desolid or physically manifested.

No one knows what provides their life-force. No one knows if they eat their victims, or if they eat the riceballs sometimes left as offerings for them.

If slain, the body will fade away into mist after 1d6 rounds. If this happens, their soul is lost to the netherworld of eternal torment. If, however, the dish splinter is removed before the body mists away, their spirit is released—this is a kindness.

Sara-kazoe are solitary, sad creatures. They will not associate with others of their kind, but might associate with other creatures.

YÛREI (GHOST)

INT 4 STR 6 REF 4 MOVE 4
WILL 4 CON 5 DEX 4 Run 8
PRE 4 BODY 5 TECH 4 Sprint 12

SD 10 REC 11 END 50
Stun 25 Hits 25

Complications
Distinctive Features: Pale, misty, ghost-like appearance
Singlemindedness
Susceptible to Sutras

Abilities
Aging/Draining Attack: 1d6 END Drain, plus victim loses 1 END and ages 5 years for each 10 END drained.
Desolidification
Fists: 6d6 Stun attack
Flight (full MOVE in the air)
Invisibility

Skills

Lv1 AV DV
Evade 3 7 17
Hand-to-Hand 7 11 21
Perception 3 7
Stealth 6 10

The standard ghost (if there is such a thing) is dressed in white funerary kimonos and the triangular funerary headband. The body and kimono mist off at the waist, so yûrei float rather than walk. Other than that, they appear like normal humans, although pale.

Yûrei have different motives. Some hope to expiate some sin in their past life which has resulted in their post life existence. Others find they enjoy their new powers and seek to torment mankind.

Their usual method of operation is to latch on to one particular mortal to provide their energy. During the night, as the target sleeps, the yûrei will drain his life energy so that the yûrei can stay on this plane of existence. The yûrei drains 1d6 from the victim’s END. The drained points are cumulative and cannot be recovered as with normally expended END. For every 10 full points of END that the victim loses, their CON is reduced by 1 and their physical age is increased by 5 years (see the Age complication, page 108, for effects of aging). Each morning, he will awaken feeling “older” and more tired. He might not even know he has been targeted by a yûrei. By the end of the first few days, it will be clear that he is actually aging. Only an Exorcism of the victim will stop the process, as it severs the link with the yûrei, although any aging effects are permanent. If the victim’s CON is reduced to zero, the victim dies.

The yûrei can only be banished from this plane by itself being exorcised. No amount of weapon damage is lasting; it can be “killed” but will simply vanish, reappearing the next night, unless exorcised.

Another method of banishing a yûrei is to discover what has caused the yûrei’s existence and rectifying the problem (e.g., an unfinished case of revenge against a slain lord, etc.).

To calm one’s mind, one swallows his saliva. This is a secret matter. When one becomes angry, it is the same. Putting spittle on one’s forehead is also good.

— Yamamoto Tsunetomo
NAMES, OFFICES AND TITLES
NAMES

The first thing that needs to be remembered about Japanese names is that the surname comes first. The first shōgun of the Ashikaga family, Takaui, was thus Ashikaga Takaui, not Takaui Ashikaga. Another thing to keep in mind is that Japanese is written with pictographs; every syllable has not only a sound but a meaning. Consider such modern English names as Holly, Pearl, Felicity, and Patience. These are names the Japanese can relate to; regardless of whether they are abstracts or concrete, they have a meaning in our lingua franca, English. Even names like Philip, David, and Mark have meanings; it is just that they are lost on most people who don’t know the original languages of the names and their original forms. Such is not the case in Japan.

Even ancient names have meanings that can be understood. However, they are names. Just as a girl named Rose is not a flower, a man named Takeshi need not be brave, nor need a woman named Kaede actually be an oak tree.

Japanese names are not random syllables strung together. There are certain vowel/consonant combinations that are impossible to create in Japanese. In the novel Shōgun, when it was translated into Japanese, the name “Kasigi Yabu” had to be changed to “Kashigiyabu.” If it is part of a name, there is a kanji to go with it, and a meaning which may—or may not—make sense. Additionally, the Japanese were a bit confused, as Yabu is, in fact, also a surname, so the name sounds to a Japanese as the name Smith Jones would to an American.

The charts in this chapter should provide material for generating thousands of names. As many name elements have different meanings, depending on the kanji used, it is impossible to provide a complete list of choices. Another way to find good names is to look through a historical dictionary (such as Papinot’s) or a name encyclopedia (the best in English is probably P.G. O’Neill’s Japanese Names, finally available in paperback from Weatherhill). The only problem here is that unless you speak Japanese, there is often no telling what the names mean; O’Neill’s book suffers greatly for this.

This being said, let us take a look at names.

STRUCTURE

The structure of names changed considerably over the nearly 1,500 some years of recorded Japanese history. During the Heian and Kamakura Periods, the names of the aristocracy would be rendered as Surname no Given name. The no is analogous to the German “von” or the French “de” (yes, and the English “of”). By the 1500s the “no” would be hardly used, but at least into the early Muromachi Period, one simply did not say a name without it.

Those appointed governors of estates would insert their title between sur- and given names. Hideyoshi, after he was made governor of Chikuizen, was styled Hashiba Chikuizen-no-Kami Hideyoshi.

Later, in the Momoyama and Edo Periods, many people would bear the honorary gubernatorial title; it was one way in which the shōguns bestowed honors. At one time, there were half a dozen swordssmiths alone named Bizen-no-Kami, a fact which certainly left the true dainyō of Bizen less than happy.

Surnames

Surnames (myōji) are the prerogative of the aristocracy, whether civil or military. Many clans making up the military aristocracy descend from offshoots of the Imperial line.

Quite a few surnames were taken by the aristocracy for descriptive reasons; the founder of the Fujiwara clan, a man originally named Nakatomi no Kamako, received his new name from the field (hara/wara) of wisteria (fuji) near his estate. The Ashikaga took their name from the village they first ruled. The powerful Ichiyō branch of the Fujiwara clan lived on Ichiyō (First Block) in Kyoto, right next to the Imperial Palace, while their only slightly less influential Fujiwara cousins lived in places giving them the surname Nijō and Sanjō.

Many surnames are geographical or point to a physical property, and usually such descriptive names with kanji A-B means “B of the A”—Yama-moto (base of the mountain), Ta-naka (center of the paddy), Naka-da (central rice paddy), Shima-mura (island village), Hon-da (original paddy), Ki-no-shita (under the tree) etc.

Let’s take a look at ta/da (rice paddy) first. Quite a few are specific as to plant types in a certain area: Takeda (bamboo paddy), Fujita (wisteria paddy), Matsuda (pine paddy), etc. Others are location specific (Shimoda, lower paddy), possessive (Murata, village paddy), or some other descriptive (Furuta, old paddy.)

The vast majority of surnames consist of two kanji; a few are three or more, and there are a handful of one-kanji names as well. Many of the latter—though by no means all, as such names as Katsura, Minamoto and Kusunoki show—point to Chinese or Korean ancestry, where single-kanji surnames are the rule. It has been estimated that there are some 1,300–1,400 different kanji that appear in the initial position in surnames, but only some 100 commonly occur in the final.

“Surnames” of Buddhist clergy have special rules. They must have a temple or province to be from (e.g.; Enryaku-ji no Tosabō, or Tosabō [lit: “a monk from Tosa”] of Enryaku Temple).

You may choose any surname at will in creating PCs and NPCs for your SENGOKU campaign. It must be noted, however, that certain surnames are commonly regarded as belonging to kuge families, and certain surnames are recognized as buke names.

Among the surnames below you will find those of the great, the near great, and the minor. It is up to you—GMs and players alike—to decide, but it might be best to limit the use of the great family names—Tokugawa, Hōjō, Ashikaga, Fujiwara, etc.—to NPCs. This might be especially important in a more historically accurate game. Note, however, that there can be (and in fact were) several families using the same name. There are two Ashikaga families, totally unrelated to each other, for example. There are several families named Honda; the kanji used are even different.

Bynames

As only buke and kuge have surnames, everyone else is primarily denoted by some form of byname. Usually this takes the form of occupational, physical, or locational terms; Yaoya no Ichirō is Ichirō the greengrocer. The guy who lives on top of the mountain is Yamanoue no Genta (“Genta of the mountaintop”). Katame no Heihachi is Heihachi the One-eyed. Komeya no Toku is Toku the rice merchant. In this, the commoners’ bynames are similar to those of the aristocracy and potentially confusing. The one way to tell them apart from true surnames is that they bynames almost invariably include the particle “no” between the descriptive and the given name, as in the examples here.

When a man puts all his stock in youth, what will be his thoughts when old age has come? Though one’s span seems only a dream or apparition, his name may last to the end of time.

— Shiba Yoshimasa
A second form of byname, suitable to commoners as well as those desiring to hide some aspect of their identities, is the geographic byname. If you want to say you are Mototaka of Mutsu, you style yourself “Mutsu no Mototaka.” Remember that the rule is, the “possessor” comes first—in this case, the province of Bungo.

One other form of byname also occurred; the appellation. These are nicknames, like Etheldred the “Unready” or Charles “the Bald.” They are called adana and take the pattern of descriptive followed by (usually) the zokumyō, or (rarely) the nanori. (See the section on given names below for explanations on these name styles.)

For example, if there is a rônin NPC named Kaga Saburô who moves slowly and very deliberately, you can give him the nickname Nossori Saburô, or “Plodding Saburô.” In such cases, he would be called Nossori Saburô or Saburô, but never simply Nossori, as it is not a name. (Note that this would never have been a form used for nobles or people of rank; it is really suitable only for peasants or people considerably lower on the status totem pole.)

**GIVEN NAMES: MEN**

Up until the seventh century, many names for men of the upper classes—and men’s names are pretty much all we have on record—often ended in ~maro or ~ko (e.g.; Muchimaro, Nakamaro, Kamako, etc.). Their names generally reflected their characteristics, or their background.

In post-Nara years, naming patterns would change; partly influenced by the Chinese system, partly influenced by Japan’s own developing society. There were many different types of names, and men may have one or several of them.

**Yōmyō**

The most common type of name for children is the yōmyō (or dōmyō)—specifically a child’s name—which is conferred with due ceremony six days after birth. This name usually ends with the suffix ~maro, ~maro, ~ō, ~o, or ~waka. Occasionally, there are similarities to the names of adults of the Nara Period. A few famous examples of children’s names should suffice: Benkei was Oniwakamaru, Yoshitsune was Ushiwakamaru. The waka means young, so Benkei was the “dear young gober,” and Yoshitsune the “dear young ox.” Sweet, huh?

(Note: *propos* to nothing: ~Maru/maro is a suffix denoting affection, and often appears in swords’ names, as well. It survives today in the naming of ships; virtually all non-military vessels in Japan have ~maru in their names. Although now usually written with the kanji for “round,” it has nothing to do with circles, despite the oft-cited implication for the hope that as the ship goes out so it shall come back. The kanji for round is merely synonymous with the original, more difficult, characters. It is affection, pure and simple.)

Another naming habit is taking positive character traits—adjectives or verbs—and making them names. Examples are names like Takeshi (brave), Manabu (study), and Susumu (go forward).

Those of the lower classes keep these names all their lives. What this does is to point the plebeian origins of names such as Takao, Hideo, and all of the other names making use of the noun or adjective element and the “male” suffix ~o. It also indicates that those with such names in the Sengoku Period would not likely be in upper classes.

**Zokumyō**

The zokumyō, (confusingly enough also called tsūshō, kemyō, or yobina) generally reflects the numerical order of birth the child has in the family. This name is taken by the upper classes (buke and kuge) upon the genbuku (coming of age) ceremony, and is the one by which men are commonly known to their close friends and family members. For members of the bonge or hinin castes, the zokumyō are often the only names they have through life, except for very rare occasions where a bonge may have a nanori (see Nanori below).

The numerical order names are often altered in some way with the addition of an auspicious adjective before it, such as Dai- (big), Chō- (long), Ryō- (good), Shin- (new), or something similar. This produces names like Daigorō (“big five man”), and Chōzaburō (“long three man”); the s here mutating to z, etc. To simplify things, in the late Sengoku Period some people have started leaving off the ~ro, especially with first sons. This leaves names like Ryūzō (dragon three), Genpachi (original eight), and Ryōichi (good one). The late actor Mifune Toshiro has a zokumyō. Admiral Yamamoto Isoroku, of Pearl Harbor fame, was named “56th man,” although he really wasn’t, and the Mifune character in the film Sanjirō takes his name—30th man—from his age.

Zokumyō work like this: Ichirō (one man) or Tarō (big man), first son; Jirō (next man); Saburō (three man), Shirō (four man), Gorō (five man), Rokurō (six man), Shichirō (seven man), Hachirō (eight man) Kurō (nine man) Jirō (ten man).

Members of the upper or privileged classes can have both a zokumyō and a nanori (see below).

Zokumyō and other names ending in ~suke, ~nosuke, ~emon, or ~zaemon, though historical-sounding and aristocratic as they are, really become pupular in the Edo Period, although they appeared earlier in the Sengoku Period. These names came from a habit of naming people after titles (~suke was deputy governor, and ~emon was a guard title).

**Nanori**

The formal adult name, taken along with the zokumyō at the genbuku ceremony, is called nanori (or jitsumei, “true name”). It usually consists of two kanji (very, very rarely more; hardly ever one) producing a four syllable name which has auspicious or otherwise positive tones. After the tenth century, the practice of the father or godfather granting one of the kanji in his name to the young man during the genbuku ceremony began; this is why so many of the Ashikaga shōgun have Yoshi— as the first element in their names, and the Tokugawa family ie-.

Looking through a book of Japanese names or an encyclopedia will show many occurrences of kanji repetition in a single family. In the Minamoto, there was Yori— and Yishi—; Yoritomo, Yorinobu, Yorimasa, etc.; Yoshitsune, Yoshibe, Yoshibika, Yoshinaka, etc. The Oda clan use Nobu— frequently, and the Hōjō regents used Toki—.

The order of kanji placement can go either way, but one given a kanji which is first in his godfather’s name seldom puts it second in his; one could, however, be given the second kanji instead. This is no slight, either; different families follow different traditions, and different kanji have different meanings. Yasonobu and Nobuyasu, written with the same two kanji, merely transposed, are both perfectly acceptable names.
Nanori of a single kanji are either read with the Chinese pronunciation and sounding monosyllabic to Western ears though in actuality two syllables (e.g.; actor Matsudaira Ken); or the Japanese pronunciation utilizing verbal or adjectival forms and are tri-syllabic (e.g.; Takeshi, brave; Tadashi, correct; Shigeru, luxuriant).

Given names when read in the Chinese fashion (albeit with Japanese version of the Chinese pronunciation) are more formal-sounding, and lend an academic, cultured (and, yes, often clerical) feel to the name. Such names are called azana. Often they are usually indicative of artists, performers, or men of letters.

For example: Remember Yoshitsune? His myôji was Minamoto, his yômyô was Ushi-wakamaru, his zokumyô Kurô, his nanori Yoshitsune, and his azana would be Gikei. All this for a man who was formally styled Minamoto no Kurô Yoshitsune.

GIVEN NAMES: WOMEN

A warning on women’s names needs to be given before anything else is done.

Most of the “names” of women known in early Japan are not the actual names of the women in question. Sei Shônagon, for example, The Jackie Collins of Heian Japan and the snarky author of the Pillow Book and other works, is known by the Chinese pronunciation of the first kanji in her family’s name (Kiyowara) and a court-title sobriquet. Likewise, the true name of Murasaki Shikibu, author of the Tale of Genji, is unknown. (The latter seems to have been called Tô no Shikibu in earlier sources; the “Tô” is the first character from the name “Fujiwara,” into a cadet branch of which she had been born; the “Shikibu” comes from the title of an office held by her father and brother; the “Murasaki” likely came from the color of the fuji [wisteria] flower, or the lead female character in Tale of Genji.)

It should be remembered that few women’s names of the Heian Period have come down to us save those of empresses or the like; other women’s names never made it into the early genealogical charts. It sounds unfair, but looking at historical family registers, the males are all named, but the daughters are listed simply as “daughter.”

Women in Japan do not change their names as do the men upon reaching a certain age; they keep theirs for life. The only likely time a woman would change it would be if, say, she became a nun. Their names are usually written in the syllabry (kana) rather than kanji; the latter were generally reserved for men, though there is nothing wrong with using them for a woman’s name. Kana have always been just considered to be more feminine.

Although it is often assumed that all Japanese women’s names end in ~ko, this is definitely not the case. Historically, very few women had the ~ko ending on their names. (It was originally a male naming element, in fact.) Women of the highest ranks had it from the Heian Period onwards, but rarely. (As late as the 1880s, only three percent of Japanese women had names ending in ~ko. By the 1930s, for various reasons, it was around 80 percent.) Almost completely neglected are other ending elements (~e and ~yo) or names with no suffix at all. (Women with ~ko would in fact often use their names without the ~ko in period, recognizing it as an honorable suffix; this usage is no longer the case, however.)

An interesting note is that in the Sengoku Period names of more than two syllables are never finished off with a ~ko suffix; it is deemed simply too much name.

Women are usually given two syllable names, without the suffix, although in the court three syllable names (no suffix) are not uncommon.

Frequently the names of plants, things from the arts, seasonal elements, and other “feminine” things are taken for use as women’s names. For example, in the film Ran, the bitch-figure is Kaede (oak). The 1500s saw the introduction of the honorific prefix O-, thus names like O-Matsu (pine), O-Gin (silver; final n being a syllable in Japanese), O-Haru (spring), etc. Twentieth-century naming practice would render that last as “Haruko.” When being addressed, common women with such names were merely “O-Haru,” while aristocratic ladies would be addressed by dropping the honorific “O” and adding the title hime (“princess”) to the name.

Common second-characters for women’s names are ~e (branch), ~e (bay), ~e (grace, blessing), ~e (a great amount of ~), ~no (plain, field) and ~yo (age, generation).

TAKEN NAMES

Japanese have always seemed inordinately fond of pseudonyms. While it is not uncommon for an entertainer in the West to take a new name upon mounting the stage, it is an extreme rarity for a Japanese not to do so. Just about every field of endeavor has alternate-naming traditions.

Those playing clerical PCs or the Buddhist militant clergy should note that that up until the 1500s, monks generally took as their “given name” the region they were born, and added to it the suffix ~bô, or monk, thereby very Buddhistically severing their ties; they no longer had their names. Musashibô Benkei was such; he came from the Musashi region (as did a certain famous swordsman several centuries later) and his chosen name was Benkei.

Alternatively, they can take a name pronounced in the Sino-Japanese mode called a hômyô (lit: “law name”) related to Buddhist doctrine or teaching. Many members of the lay nobility kept their family names, and merely adopted Chinese-pronounced hômyô (e.g.; Takeda Shingen’s original given name was Harunobu, and Hôjô Sôun’s was Nagauij).”

Buddhist names may be followed by the epithet Nyûdô (“one who has entered into the way”). An example would be Raizen Nyûdô; the usage is really not too dissimilar to “Brother So-and-so” or “Father So-and-so.”

Names taken by artists and members of the literati are collectively called azana. Warriors might take on a gô (what we would call a nom de guerre), painters a gamyô, poets a haimyô, entertainers a geimyô, etc. The implication behind the new name is that the artist or warrior or whatever belongs to a higher life; of course, there are also instances when the artistic career might be potentially damaging to one’s reputation if his true name were known. The artist would keep his regular name, at any rate, but all his work would be signed with his art name. Artist’s names often end with such suffices as ~dô (hall), ~ka (retreat), ~tei (pavilion), ~kaku (tall building), etc.

Many famous artists show their attachment to Amida Buddha by appending ~a or ~ami to a single kanji read in the Chinese style (e.g.; the famed playwright Zeami, and the artist family of Hon’ami).
NAME LISTS

Buke and kuge will need a surname and a given name; bonge and hinin need only a given name. You may, of course, randomly pick anything that suits your fancy.

**Surnames: Kuge**

1. Mibu
2. Kuni
3. Kujô
4. Konoe
5. Komatsu
6. Kiyowara
7. Bojô
8. Daigo
9. Fuji
10. Fujinami
11. Fujiyô
12. Fujitani
13. Fujiwara
14. Funabashi
15. Fushimi
16. Futara
17. Hachijo
18. Hagiwara
19. Higashikaze
20. Higashihara
21. Higuchii
22. Hino
23. Hinonishi
24. Hirohashi
25. Hirohata
26. Honomi
27. Horikawa
28. Horumi
29. Iehijô
30. Ishinô
31. Ishino
32. Ishiyama
33. Itsuji
34. Iwakura
35. Jikôji
36. Kanze
37. Kawabe
38. Kibe
39. Kitashirakawa
40. Kiyowara
41. Komatsu
42. Konoe
43. Kuga
44. Kuji
45. Kuni
46. Kurashishi
47. Kuwahara
48. Matsuki
49. Matsuzo
50. Mibu
51. Nagatanî
52. Nakamikado
53. Nakayama
54. Namba
55. Niijô
56. Nishigori
57. Nishisanjô
58. Nyukûji
59. Ogura
60. Ômiikado
61. Ômiya
62. Rokkaku
63. Rokuji
64. Saga
65. Saionji
66. Sakurai
67. Sanjô
68. Sege
69. Shiôji
70. Shimokôbe
71. Sono
72. Takatsukasa
73. Tokudaiji
74. Umezono
75. Yabo
76. Yabu
77. Yabuki
78. Yabunoto
79. Yabunone
80. Yabuno
81. Yabuura
82. Yabunoki
83. Yabunokô
84. Yabunokami
85. Yabunokabu
86. Yabunokura
87. Yabunokura
88. Yabunokura
89. Yabunokura
90. Yabunokura
91. Yabunokura
92. Yabunokura
93. Yabunokura
94. Yabunokura
95. Yabunokura
96. Yabunokura
97. Yabunokura
98. Yabunokura
99. Yabunokura
100. Yabunokura
101. Yabunokura
102. Yabunokura
103. Yabunokura
104. Yabunokura
105. Yabunokura
106. Yabunokura
107. Yabunokura
108. Yabunokura
109. Yabunokura
110. Yabunokura
111. Yabunokura
112. Yabunokura
113. Yabunokura
114. Yabunokura
115. Yabunokura
116. Yabunokura
117. Yabunokura
118. Yabunokura
119. Yabunokura
120. Yabunokura
121. Yabunokura
122. Yabunokura
123. Yabunokura
124. Yabunokura
125. Yabunokura
126. Yabunokura
127. Yabunokura
128. Yabunokura
129. Yabunokura
130. Yabunokura
131. Yabunokura
132. Yabunokura
133. Yabunokura
134. Yabunokura
135. Yabunokura
136. Yabunokura
137. Yabunokura
138. Yabunokura
139. Yabunokura
140. Yabunokura
141. Yabunokura
142. Yabunokura
143. Yabunokura
144. Yabunokura
145. Yabunokura
146. Yabunokura
147. Yabunokura
148. Yabunokura
149. Yabunokura
150. Yabunokura
151. Yabunokura
152. Yabunokura
153. Yabunokura
154. Yabunokura
155. Yabunokura
156. Yabunokura
157. Yabunokura
158. Yabunokura
159. Yabunokura
160. Yabunokura
161. Yabunokura
162. Yabunokura
163. Yabunokura
164. Yabunokura
165. Yabunokura
166. Yabunokura
167. Yabunokura
168. Yabunokura
169. Yabunokura
170. Yabunokura
171. Yabunokura
172. Yabunokura
173. Yabunokura
174. Yabunokura
175. Yabunokura
176. Yabunokura
177. Yabunokura
178. Yabunokura
179. Yabunokura
180. Yabunokura
181. Yabunokura
182. Yabunokura
183. Yabunokura
184. Yabunokura
185. Yabunokura
186. Yabunokura
187. Yabunokura
188. Yabunokura
189. Yabunokura
190. Yabunokura
191. Yabunokura
192. Yabunokura
193. Yabunokura
194. Yabunokura
195. Yabunokura
196. Yabunokura
197. Yabunokura
198. Yabunokura
199. Yabunokura
200. Yabunokura
201. Yabunokura
202. Yabunokura
203. Yabunokura
204. Yabunokura
205. Yabunokura
206. Yabunokura
207. Yabunokura
208. Yabunokura
209. Yabunokura
210. Yabunokura
211. Yabunokura
212. Yabunokura
213. Yabunokura
214. Yabunokura
215. Yabunokura
216. Yabunokura
217. Yabunokura
218. Yabunokura
219. Yabunokura
220. Yabunokura
221. Yabunokura
222. Yabunokura
223. Yabunokura
224. Yabunokura
225. Yabunokura
226. Yabunokura
227. Yabunokura
228. Yabunokura
229. Yabunokura
230. Yabunokura
231. Yabunokura
232. Yabunokura
233. Yabunokura
234. Yabunokura
235. Yabunokura
236. Yabunokura
237. Yabunokura
238. Yabunokura
239. Yabunokura
240. Yabunokura
241. Yabunokura
242. Yabunokura
243. Yabunokura
244. Yabunokura
245. Yabunokura

---

Lord Naohide to his grandson, Lord Motoshige

No matter whether one is of high or low rank, a family line is something that will decline when its time has come. If one thinks that the time has come, it is best to let it go down with good grace. Doing so, he may even cause it to be maintained.

— Lord Naohide to his grandson, Lord Motoshige
Male Given Names

You will need to decide if the PC or NPC has a zokumyō, nanori, azana, or whatever. It will depend on the person’s position, occupation, and similar factors.

For nanori, you will have to roll twice: first to select the first name element, and then to select the final name element. If the elements are identical (e.g., Nobunobu), reroll.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nanori Prothemes</th>
<th>Azana &amp; Hōmyō</th>
<th>Zokumyō: Order Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5. Chika~</td>
<td>5. Dōséisu</td>
<td>5. Daigōrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. Sadic~</td>
<td>34. Jūemon</td>
<td>34. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38. Sue~</td>
<td>38. Jūemon</td>
<td>38. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. Take~</td>
<td>40. Jūemon</td>
<td>40. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41. Tame~</td>
<td>41. Jūemon</td>
<td>41. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42. Tanec~</td>
<td>42. Jūemon</td>
<td>42. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43. Teruc~</td>
<td>43. Jūemon</td>
<td>43. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44. Toki~</td>
<td>44. Jūemon</td>
<td>44. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45. Tomoc~</td>
<td>45. Jūemon</td>
<td>45. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46. Toshic~</td>
<td>46. Jūemon</td>
<td>46. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. Tsuc~</td>
<td>47. Jūemon</td>
<td>47. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. Ujic~</td>
<td>49. Jūemon</td>
<td>49. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. Yoshic~</td>
<td>52. Jūemon</td>
<td>52. Jūemon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a samurai by chance has no natural heir, if the master will encourage him to take on a fitting adopted child while he and his wife are yet healthy, and advise him in a way that his family line will not run out, even a childless man will feel reassured and grateful and will not hold back his life for his master.

— Asakura Soteki
Female Given Names

This is not a complete list of names, of course. Just about any protheme above can be paired with -e, -ko, -mi, or -yo to make a woman’s name.

32. Fussho 84. Masae 136. O-Hisa 188. Saori
34. Hamaji 86. Matsuyo 138. O-Iro 190. Shizuka
42. Hifumi 94. Miyako 146. O-Kin 198. Tomie
48. Isachi 100. Nami 152. O-Mugi 204. Yomogi
52. Kaede 104. Naomi 156. O-Nuno

OFFICES AND OCCUPATION

This list of offices is by no means complete. Like the accompanying list of titles and forms of address, we provide it to help with the “look and feel” and historical verisimilitude of your game. Just the very names of some of these offices might give GMS an idea for an adventure or even a campaign. Virtually all of these offices could also be used as titles, with the addition of a -sama or -dono after them.

Ama—Buddhist nun. Synonymous with bikuni.
Ando Bugyo—Justice of the Peace.
Baišin—Indirect vassal; e.g., the vassals of the Honda are the baishin of the Tokugawa. Compare with jikisan.
Ban—Guards.
Bettô—the national officer in command of any department or bureau (e.g.; Kebishi-bettô; also the superintendent of the household of retired Emperors and certain powerful (esp. Fujiwara) families. Under the bettô are suke and tairi.
Biku—Buddhist monk. Synonymous with bozu.
Bikuni—Buddhist nun. Synonymous with ama.
Bōryō—Chief of a district or ward in a town; an alderman or mayor.
Bōzu—Buddhist monk. Synonymous with biku.
Bugu-bugyō—The official in charge of everything concerning arms and armor. It combines the gusoku-bugyō and yum-y-a-bugyō.
Bugyō—An officer in charge of a specific detail (e.g., yari-bugyō, officer in charge of lances). Also a generic term for any government official.
Buke-boko—Valet to a samurai household.
Bunmin-shikkushi—Office existing to help the needy and keep track of those needing help and succor.
Chûnagon—Councillors in the dajo-kan at the imperial court who ranked after the dainagon and before the shônagon. There were as many as 10.
Dai-Sôjô—Highest rank in the Buddhist hierarchy, ranking alongside dainagon.
Daijin—Minister of State. (See udaijin, sadaijin, naidaijin, dajôdaijin, etc.)

Though it is said that men are made of neither wood nor stone, are not those who spend their lives for naught different than the rotting trees in the shadow of the valley?

—Shiba Yoshimasa
Sengoku Revised Edition

Daikan—Officials who governed fiefs. The titles of the nobles proper of those estates were different.

Daimyō—A noble, possessor of a great domain.

Dainagon—Greater councillors at court.

Dainiki—Head of the Nakatsuksa no Shô, or Department of Archives.

Dajô-kan—Emperor’s supreme council, comprising the daijin and the dai-, chu-, and shônagon.

Dajôdaijin—Prime minister. For a long time it was reserved for Imperial Princes.

Dôshin—Police officers.

Gokenin—During the Kamakura and Muromachi periods, a direct vassal to the Shôgun (in the Edo Period, it would come to mean a low-ranking samurai). (See hatamoto)

Gusoku-bugyô—Official in charge of armor for the government or a clan.

Haitō—A deposed emperor.

Hanshu—Lord of a fief (han); alternate for daimyō. Owari no Hanshu refers to the Lord of Owari.

Hatamoto—In Sengoku Period usage, samurai who guarded the camp (the word literally means “at the base of the standard”). In the Edo Period, it came to refer to direct vassals of the Shôgun (gokinen).

Hon-bugyô—A council of clan chiefs to determine charges against accused colleagues.

Hyôbu-sho—Minister of War. Suitable for whoever leads a clan’s armies during war, or functions as their chief military advisor and tactician.

Jikisai—Direct vassals (baishin).

Jitô—Governors of the shoen (lands inherited from Imperial gifts). They were less than shugo. This is a Kamakura Period title; the jitô eventually became shômyô by the Sengoku Period.

Jôdai-garô—Councillor of a feudal lord placed in charge of a fief, castle, or estate during the absence of the lord (a senseschal).

Jôshu—Lord of a castle. Jôshu were not necessarily daimyô; usually they were younger brothers, generals, or some other military commanders appointed by the daimyô.

Kanjô-bugyô—Superintendent of the Treasury.

Kanpakun—All-powerful officer in court, essentially a prime minister with extraordinary powers.

Karô—A key vassal of a feudal lord, a clan councillor. Clans had a very limited number of karô.

Kebiishi—Superintendent of the Kebiishi-chô, the Japanese national police. Edicts of the Kebiishi-bettô (the full title of this office) carried imperial authority.

Kebiishi-suke—Deputies to the kebiishi-bettô.

Kebiishi-taii—Assistants to the Kebiishi-suke.

Kenjô—Servant who followed a daimyô carrying his master’s sword.

Kin-bugyô—Officials of the finance ministry under the Kanjô-bugyô.

Kingo—Individual members of the Imperial guard. The guard as a body is called Shitsu-kingo.

Kiroku-sho—An Imperial council that dealt with administrative and judicial questions.

Kokushu—“Governor” of one or several provinces; a type of daimyô. (There were 18 before the Battle of Sekigahara.)

Kosamurai-dokoro—Office presided over by a bettô which dealt with matters concerning the bakufu army. Had an appended academy teaching military and civil arts.

Koshi no mono bugyô—Official in charge of keeping and evaluating swords belonging to the Shôgun.

Kôtai—Title of the heir apparent if he is the younger brother of the one he is to succeed.

Kumon-jo-bettô—Head of the Department of the Archives, the Kumon-jo.

Kuni-bugyô—Local officers appointed to look after military matters and see to the punishment of crime.

Kura no Tsukasa—Office entrusted with the Imperial seal, robes, etc. Suitable for Keeper of the Privy Seal, or the Regalia.

Kura-bugyô—Official charged with collecting taxes.

Machi-bugyô—Officials with general legislative and administrative duties; a cross between mayors and chief magistrates (e.g. Kageyama machi-bugyô). This office became more important in the Edo Period.

Mandokoro—Central administration office under the Shôgun; a great council.

Metsuke—Official whose duty it is to watch over observance of rules. Most clans had them to maintain order among the retainers.

Mokudai—Official overseeing the provinces while the actual lord/governor resided in the capital.

Momban—Gate guards.

Monchûjo—Court of high justice, the supreme arbiter of civil cases.

Naidaijin—Minister of the Interior; under Udaijin and Sadaijin (q.q.v.).

Naiki—Officials entrusted with making decrees promulgated in the name of the emperor. The head is the dai-naiki.

Naiyakushi-bettô—Chief officer of the Naiyakushi, the office having charge over medicines and physicians at the palace. (Naiyakushi-suke and naiyakushi-taii being the lower offices; see suke and taii.)

Nakamochi bugyô—Official in charge of the Shôgun’s luggage when he travelled.

Nando gashira—Head of the nandoyaku, the office charged with keeping the Shôgun’s regalia, furnishings, gifts to the shôgun, etc., as well as things to be given as rewards by the shôgun.

No-jô—Assistant to a -no-suke.

No-kami—Technically “governor of ——”. His deputy would be -no-suke.

No-suke—Technically the “vice governor of ——”, where he would follow a -no-kami. Also the deputy of the Bettô of major government bureaus.

Nyokan—Ladies-in-waiting to the Empress.

Ôban—Guard detachments.

Ôkura-kyô—Minister of finance, head of the Ôkura-shô.

Oinori-bugyô—Official charged with making supplications to the gods during times of crisis or calamity (it literally means “honorable praying officer”).

Reki-jutsu-kata—Officials who drew up calendars for the Shôgun.

One should not be close by when someone is talking to the master. It is best to withdraw to the side. Still more, if one gossips or laughs foolishly in such a place, it goes without saying that he will be avoided by men of high status, and even men of sensitivity within his own rank are likely to turn their backs on him.

— Hojo Nagauji
Ryôshu—“Governor” of a small territory; a type of daimyô. (There were 32 before the Battle of Sekigahara.)
Sadaijin—Minister of the Left.
Samurai-dokoro—A bureau that oversaw all aspects of the military as well as palace guards.
Samurai-dokoro-bettô—Commander of the military, head of the samurai-dokoro. Very powerful position.
Samurai-dokoro-shoshi—Assistants to the Samurai-dokoro-bettô.
Sei-i-tai-shôgun—General sent out to subdue the barbarians. Originally a normal appointment to a temporary position, it became hereditary and all-powerful. Usually the office was just called Shôgun.
Sesshô—Regent to an infant Emperor. When there was a sesshô, there was no kanpaku.
Shikibu-shô—Ministry of Ceremonies.
Shikken—Regent for an infant or infirm Shôgun.
Shinmotsu-bugyô—Official responsible for receiving gifts for the shôgun and distributing gifts from the Shôgun.
Shitsu-kingo—The imperial guard. See Kingo.
Shô-geki—Assistant of the dai-geki.
Shôji—Possessor of a shôen, land gifted from the Emperor.
Shômyô—Lord of a small domain, as opposed to a daimyô.
Shônagon—Court councillors who served as clerks, ranking after dainagon and chûnagon.
Shônaiki—Assistant to a dainiki.
Soshi—Alternate title during the Muromachi Bakufu for the samurai-dokoro-bettô.
Taii—Assistants to -suke.
Taikô—A retired kanpaku.
Tairô—First minister to the Shôgun; his chief advisor.
Tandai—Military governor of a province or town (e.g., Ise-no-tandai).
Tatewaki-senjô—Commander of the tatewaki, an Imperial prince’s guard.
Tenmon-kata—Officials who drew up horoscopes for the Shôgun.
Teppô-gata—Officials responsible for overseeing the creation of firearms and cannon for the bakufu. (Likely to have been a clan office during the Sengoku Period.)
Teppô-tansu-bugyô—Officials responsible for maintaining the bakufu’s firearms. (Likely to have been a clan office during the Sengoku Period.)
Toji—Female servants in the Imperial palace, especially involved in food preparation.
Tsukai-ban—Essentially heralds; they were officials who transmitted messages.
Udaihen—First secretary in the various ministries.
Yari-bugyô—Officer responsible for the supply of lances for the shôgun’s army. (This is an Edo Period title that probably was mirrored by clans during the Sengoku Period.)
Yumi-ya-bugyô—Official in charge of weapons, especially bows (yumi) and arrows (ya).

When a man thinks through to the conclusion of things and is still unable to make his own discernment, if he is of high rank he may consult one of the capable elders, if of lower rank he may discuss the matter with the capable acquaintances he has among relatives and comrades. Coming to a conclusion in this way, mistakes will be few.

— Takeda Shingen
TITLES

The use of Japanese titles and forms of address will add flavor to your campaign. If you choose to use them, the list below may help you. This is by no means a complete list of possible titles; rather, it is only a sampling to help get you started.

Titles are appended to the names (either given or surnames unless otherwise specified) and address forms are used by themselves. To clarify the difference between titles and address, note that you can’t say Akiyoshi-danna (okay, you can, but only in odd circumstances. Sheesh…); you should say Akiyoshi-dono, or simply call him danna. Prince Morinaga can be addressed simply as denka, or as Morinaga Shinnō.

If there is no specification of title or address, the term can be used for both.

It must be noted that Japan has never been a very politically correct nation; many titles simply do not have feminine equivalents. Unless there is a specific feminine form of the title, there is no reason that the ostensibly “male” title can’t be used for women.

Danna—Address for men equivalent to “Milord” or “Sir.”
Denka—Address for the kôtaishi (crown prince).
Dono—Title appended to the first or last names of men or women worthy of respect regardless of titles or offices held, and to office titles (e.g.; Abe-dono, Tarô-dono, dainaigondono). Generally higher respect is accorded for -dono than for -sama.
Fujin—A word appended to some titles to indicate a female.
Gimi—Title suitable for noble males from great houses; appended to given names.
Gozen—Title appended to the given name of women of rank (e.g.; Tomoe-gozen).
Heika—Address which is essentially “your majesty”; used for the emperor.
Hidenka—Address for a princess.
Hime—Title suitable for well-born females; appended to the given name. By itself, it is also the term of address for the same, the equivalent of “My Lady.”
Hime-gimi—Title suitable for female nobles; appended to given names.
In—A retired emperor.
Kakka—Address which means essentially “your excellency”; use for government officers or officials. Officers or officials of provincial level should be called obugyō-sama.
Kimi—Address form of the title -gimi.
Kubō—Anciently used for the Emperor and later the Shôgun.
Kô—Title appended to names and used similarly to -sama for people of very high rank (e.g., leyasu-kô, Shingen-kô); would be suitable address for the like of daimyō and anyone from the kuge.
Kôgô—Empress.
Kôtei—Title of the Emperor of a country other than Japan.
Meijin—Address for a master of some art.
Miya—Title born by Imperial princes and princesses originally using the name of their residences (e.g. Akishino no Miya); also with their Shintô names (e.g.; Hiro no Miya, the current crown prince, who is also called Fumihito Shinnō).
Nai-shinnō—Title appended to a given name for princesses (e.g. Fumiko Nai-shinnō)
No-Kami—Title used for provincial governors; the province name would precede the particle “no” (e.g., Bizen-no-Kami).
Nyotei—The title of a empress reigning in her own right.
Nyôgo—The second (in standing) wife of an Emperor.
Nyûdô—Title following the given name of one who has taken Buddhist orders (e.g. Baisetsu Nyûdô). Doesn’t have to be used all the time; usually, it’s more only on formal occasions.
Ô—Title born by grandsons and great-grandsons of the Emperor.
Obugyō-sama—Generic form of address for any governmental officer or official. (The word “bugyō” means official.)
Ojô-sama—Address which is the functional equivalent of “miss/mademoiselle” and is useful for women one doesn’t know; similar to “Milady.” The one restriction is that it can not be used for anyone older than 25 or so, or anyone married.
Oku-sama—Address for women over 25 (i.e., who are likely married) who have no other title. The Equivalent of “Ma’am/ Missus/Milady.” (Pronounced “oak-sama.”)
Okugata-sama—Address for the lady of a household; the wife of (or the female equivalent of) an oyakata-sama.
Onzôshi—Address for a young prince or lord when addressed by someone older than him who is in his service. It refers to the younger lord’s relationship as a scion of a noble house.
Oyakata-sama—Address used by clan members for the head of their clan. Note that this is a term of considerable respect.
Sama—Title appended to both the surnames or given names of men or women worthy of respect, regardless of any title or office; it is also used attached to office titles (e.g.; Honda-sama, Tarô-sama, dajin-sama). The standard attachment to names in simple polite conversation at least.
Shinnō—Title appended to the given name of princes. (e.g. Dösetsu Shinnō). For princesses it is Nai-shinnō.
Taiseki—Address for a leader of a group or squad; good for captains commanding a band of bushi in a battle.
Tennō—Term referring to the reigning emperor of Japan. (Other nations’ emperors are called kôtei.) Used as an address—or a reference in polite conversation—it is Tennô Heika.
Tono—Address for one’s lord.
Ue-sama—Address for the Shôgun. It essentially means “sire.”
Waga-kimi—A double form of address meaning (1) “my lord,” as a lady refers to her lover or husband; and (2) “my lord,” as referring to one to whom one may be considered to be “in fealty.” (It literally means, of course, “my lord.”) Note that the former meaning is most common in historical literature.
Waka—Address form for a young prince or lord when addressed by someone older and usually in his service. (Literally it means “young” and is an abbreviation of wakadono, which means “young lord.”) More polite and archaic is onzôshi.
REFERENCES AND INSPIRATION
Below is a list of movies, television programs and anime videos which are suggested viewing for fans of the chanbara genre. These films served as inspiration for the creation of Sengoku. Some are better than others, but all have something to contribute to the feel of the genre for GMs and players alike.

47 Rônin, Part 1 — Classic tale about 47 samurai who avenge their lord who is tricked into committing seppuku (ritual suicide). Sometimes shown in two parts. Chojuro Kawarazaki, Kenemon Nakamura, Utameon Ichikawa. Dir: Kenji Mizoguchi. (1941; 111 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

47 Rônin, Part 2 — Second of two part film set. Chojuro Kawarazaki, Kenemon Nakamura, Utameon Ichikawa. Dir: Kenji Mizoguchi. (1941; 108 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Ahare Goemon — See Rise Against the Sword.

Ahare Kaigo — Chiyonosuke Azuma, Eiko Maruyama. Dir: Shoji Abare Kaigo. (1960; 83 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Aduleress, The — Also released as Night Drum. Rentaro Mikuni (Hikakuro), Ineko Arima (Otane), Masayuki Mori, Ichiro Sugai. Dir: Tadashi Imai. (Shochiku; 1958; 95 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Adventures of Chuzi, The (Kunisada Chuzi) — Kokichi Takada, Michiko Saga, Yunosuke Itô. Dir: Seiichi Fukuda. (Shochiku; 1957; 101 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Adventures of Princess Ammitus (Ammitus-hime no Mushashugyo) — Haruko Waniuchi, Kambi Fujyayama. Dir: Tatsuo Ohsono. (Shochiku; 1960; 86 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Akage — See Red Lion.

Akitaro of the Paper Stalk (Orizuru Sandogasa) — Kokichi Takada, Michiko Saga, Michiya Mihashi. Dir: Seiichi Fukuda. (Shochiku; 1957; 100 min; B&W; NR)

Ambush, The (Machibuse) — See Incident at Blood Pass.

Ambush at Iga Pass (Igo no Suigetsu) — Kazuo Hasegawa, Raizo Ichikawa. Dir: Kurino Watanabe. (Daiei; 1958; 99 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Anatsu — See The Assassin.

Arigataa Sandogasa — Mie Hama, Hiroshi Moriya. Dir: Jun Fukuda. (Shochiku; 1976; 72 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Aru Kengo no Shojo — See Samurai Saga.

Asayake Gumo no Kyotto — Kokichi Takada, Michiko Saga. Dir: Ryo Hagiwara. (Shochiku; 1959; 91 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Asayake Gumo no Kettou — Tetsuro Tamba (Hachiro Kiyokawa), Shima Iwashita, Isao Kimura, Eitaro Ozawa, Eiji Okada, Keiji Sada. Dir: Masahiro Shinoda. (Shochiku; 1964; 104 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Ballad of Narayana, The — In an impoverished village, a proud matriarch and her widowed son prepare for a final journey to Mount Narayana. Ken Ogata, Sumiko Sakamoto, Tompei Hidari, Seiji Kurasaki. Dir: Shohei Imamura. (1983; 129 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Band of Assassins — See Shinsegumi.

Bandit Vs. Samurai Squad (Kumokiri Nizaemon) — Tsutsuya Nakadai (Kumokiri Nizaemon), Shima Iwashita (Chito), Somegoro Ichikawa (Shikubu Abe), Takashi Yamaguchi (Tsugatomo Oowari), Koshiro Matsumoto (Kuranoke Tsugi), Tetsuro Tamba (Kichibe), Keiko Matsuzka (Shino). Dir: Hideo Gosha. (Shochiku; 1978; 163 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Bandit Vs. Samurai Squad — See Bandit Vs. Samurai Squad.

Bandits on the Wind (Yato Kaze no Naka o Hashiri) — Bandits on the run enter a village where they are mistaken for members of a wealthy family that once lived there. Despite the actions of the bandits, they are treated like royalty and are eventually redeemed. Yosuke Natsumi (Gen), Makoto Sato (Taro), Izumi Yukimura, Chishyu Ryu, Eiko/Akiko Wakabayashi. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1961; 111 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Battle Drum at Dawn (Akatsuki no Jindai) — Miki Mori, Michiko Saga. Dir: Ryosuke Kurahashi. (Shochiku; 1958; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Beni Azami — Shintaro Katsu, Mieko Kondo. Dir: Kimiyoshi Yasuda. (Daiei; 1959; 79 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Black Cat — See Kuroneko.

Blade of Kamui — See Dagger of Kamui.

Black-Hooded Man, The (Kaiketsu kurosukin) — Ryutaro Otomo, Hiromi Hanazono. Dir: Shoji Matsumura. (Toei; 1959; 87 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Black-Masked Reformer, The (Kuruma tengu) — Chiyonosuke Azuma, Hibi Misora. Dir: Masahiro Makino. (Toei; 1956; 86 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Bloody River (Tempo Suikoden) — Dir: Kunio Watanabe. (Shochiku; 1958; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Bloody Spear on Mount Fuji (Chiyari Fuji) — Dir: Tomu Uchida. (Toei; 1957; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Budo — A 1980s documentary film about various Japanese martial arts forms. Has good demonstrations of the katana, naginata, sai and a deerskin scroll—no joke! (Color; Engl; NR)

A Bull’s Eye For Love (Oshidoru kago) — Dir: Masahiro Makino. (Toei; 1959; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Buraikan — See The Scandalous Adventures of Buraikan.

Bushido Blade, The — Rankin Bass production set at the time of Commodore Perry’s landing at Yokohama. A priceless sword—a gift to the American president from the Shogun—is stolen. Perry’s men and a local “prince” set off to recover it. Also released as The Bloody Bushido Blade. Richard Boone, Frank Converse, James Earl Jones (cameo), Toshiro Mifune, Sonny Chiba, Mako. Dir: Tom Kotani. (1979; 104 min; Color; Engl/Subt; R)

Castle of the Spider’s Web, The — See Throne of Blood.

Chushingura — See A Matter of Valor.

Chushingura: Forty-Seven Rônin (Chushingura) — Remake of the classic Japanese tale of the 47 Rônin. Koshiro Matsumoto (Chief Retainer Oishi), Yuzo Kayama (Lord Asano), Toshiro Mifune, Tatsuya Mihashi, Michiyô Aratama. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1962; 204 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Crimson Bat: The Blind Swordswoman (Makkana Nagaradori) — A film series based on an animated story and character by Teruo Tanishita. Yoko Matsuyama (Oichi), Isamu Nagato (Jubei), Akitake Kono (Yasuke), Jun Tataru (Nihei), Satoshi Amatsu (Denzo), Chizuko Arai (Omon). Dir: Teiji Matsumo. (Shochiku; 1969; 88 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Crimson Bat: Oichi: Wanted Dead or Alive (Mekurano Oichi Inochi Moraimasu) — Yoko Matsuyama (Oichi), Yuki Meguro (Sankuo), Shinni Hotta (Jinbei), Hitoshi Ohmoe (Jokai), Jun Tazaki (Nadaan), Meicho Saganoya (Kamecho), Reiko Oshida (Ohan), Tetsuro Tamba (Hyoe). Dir: Hirokazu Ichimura. (Shochiku; 1970; 86 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Crimson Bat: Trapped, The Crimson Bat (Mekurano Oichi Jigokuhada) — Yoko Matsuyama (Oichi), Kikko Matsukawa (Den), Yasumori Iriwaka (Massa), Toru Ahe (Bancon), Jushiro Koneo (Henbei). Dir: Teiji Matsuo. (Shochiku; 1969; 87 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Crimson Bat: Watch Out, Crimson Bat! (Mekurano Oichi Midaregasa) — Yoko Matsuyama (Oichi), Goro Ishiki (Gennosuke), Jun Hamamura (Tessai), Kiyoaki Inoue (Kotoe), Asahi Kurizuka (Sakon). Dir: Hirokazu Ichimura. (Shochiku; 1969; 87 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Dagger of Kamui—Japanese anime about a young boy of Ainu descent who discovers the truth about his father and a deadly ninja clan. Also released as Blade of Kamui. Dubbed and Subtitled versions available. (Color; Engl/Subt; NR)

Dai-majin—See Whirlwind.

Daibosatsu Pass: Part I (Daibosatsu Toge)—Note: There is also another film of the same name, but from a different studio (see Daibosatsu Toge, below). Raizo Ichikawa, Tamao Nakamura. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1960; 106 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Daibosatsu Pass: Part II—See Ryūji no Maki

Daibosatsu Toge—See Sword of Doom, The

Dai-majin—Also released as Majin. A samurai monster movie set in feudal Japan. During a civil war, a young “prince and princess” escape an evil chamberlain after the murder of their parents. When the new lord enslaves the nearby villagers and captures the prince, his sister prays to and summons the warrior god, Majin. One in a three film series. Yoshihiko Aoyama, Jun Fujimaki, Ryutaro Gomi, Miwa Takada. (1968; 86 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Daredevi in the Castle (Osakajo Monogatari)—In this 17th century action epic, a rōnin intervenes between two warring families, saving them from destroying each other. Also released as Osaka Castle Story, Osakajo Monogatari and Daredevi in the Castle. Toshiro Mifune (Mohe), Kiyouko Kagawa (Air), Isuzu Yamada (Yodogami), Yuriko Hoshi (Senhime), Yoshiko Kuga (Kohue), and Akihiko Hirata (Hatayonosho Susakida). Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1961; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Day the Sun Rose, The—in 16th century Kyōto, farmers and townsfolk struggling under a heavy food tax are at odds with each other. The townsfolk hire rōnin, but the farmers continue to fight on. One man works to bring the two factions together, and ultimately succeeds. Kamatari Fujiwara, Yunosuke Ito, Toshiro Mifune. Dir: Tetsuo Yamanouchi. (1968; 81 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Death Shadows—Pardoned from their death sentences by the local magistrate, a band of criminals becomes a secret band of sanctioned killers. Feared by everyone, they are called “shadows.” They are officially dead and their vocal cords cut so as not to reveal the deadly secret of their order. Dubbing is poor and the plot somewhat thin. Mariko Ishihara, Mari Natsuki, Tsuneo Mato. Dir: Hideo Gosha. (1984; 92 min.; Color; Dubbed).

Debut of the Seven Blades, The (Shichimin wakashutanjo)—Kinzio Matsumoto, Kimiko Fukuda. Dir: Ryosuke Matsumoto. (Shochiku; 1958; 91 min; B&W; Subt; NR)


Disorder by the Kuroda Clan (Kuroda Sodo)—Dir: Tomu Uchida. (Toei; 1956, Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Dixieland Daimyo—in the late 1800s, three African-American jazz musicians are shipwrecked in Japan and ultimately become a symbol of freedom to the oppressed. Billed as a light comedy. Ikko Furuya, Hirostaro Honda, Lenny Marsh, Ron Nelson, George “Sparky” Smith. Dir: Kihachiro Okamoto. (1989; 85 min; Color; Unk; NR)

Double Suicide (Shinju Ten no Amijima)—Kichemon Nakamura (Jihet), Shima Iwashita (Koharu/Okan), Hosei Komatsu (Tabei), Yusuke Takita (Magoeomo), Kamatari Fujiwara (owner of Yamatomya), Yushi Kato (Gozaemon), Shizue Kawarazaki (Osan’s mother), Tokie Hidari (Osugi). Dir: Masahiro Shinoda. (Toho; 1969; 142 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

Drum and the Sword, The (Mangetsu kagura-daiiko)—Kotaro Satomi, Hiromi Hanazono. Dir: Kokichi Uchide. (Toei; 1958; 62 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Edo no Asakaze—Chiezo Kataoka, Keiko Okawa. Dir: Hideaki Onishi. (Toei; 1960; 92 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Edo Yumin Den—Jushiro Kono, Michio Saga. Dir: Ryō Higawara. (Shochiku; 1959; 106 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Eight Brave Brothers Parts I, II and III (Satomi hakken-den)—Sentaro Fushimi, Kotaro Satomi. Dir: Kokichi Uchide. (Toei; 1959; 57 min each; B&W; Subt; NR)

An Essay on Conflict (Kodokan ni hi wo noboru)—Kenshi Sugawara, Kozo Hongo. Dir: Katsuhiko Takasa. (Daiei; 1959; 82 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Eye of Heaven, The (Ten no Me)—Kokichi Takada, Mieko Takamine, Takahiro Tamura, Michiko Saga, Koshiro Matsumoto. Dir: Tsutuo Osone. (Shochiku; 1957; 129 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Forbidden Castle, The (Binan-jō)—Kinnosuke Nakamura, Keiko Okawa. Dir: Yasushi Sakaki. (Toei; 1959; 92 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Free Lance Samurai (Momotaro Samurai)—Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1957; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Fugitive Samurai—Japanese television version of the classic Lone Wolf and Cub story (see also Shôgun Assassin, below), about Ogami Itto and his young son, Daigoro, who defy the Shōgun. Kinnosuke Yorozuya, Katsutaka Nishikawa. Dir: Minoru Matsushima and Akinori Matsuo. (1984; 92 min.; Color; Dubbed).

Furin Kazan—See Samurai Banners

Gaijin, The (Oja no ken)—Kazuo Hasegawa, Raizo Ichikawa. Dir: Bin Kado. (Daiei; 1959; 113 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Gallant on the Highway, The (Tsuma-koi dochu)—Kokichi Takada, Michiko Saga. Dir: Kinuyo Matoi. (Shochiku; 1958; 85 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Gamblers on the Road (Ishimatsu To Oiwake Sangoro)—Yataro Kitagami, Hiroshi Nawa, Toshie Nakajima, Michiko Saga. Dir: Ryosuke Kurahashi. (Shochiku; 1957; 98 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Gambling Samurai, The—a great adventure film about a small town yakusa boss who battles the local magistrate to avenge the rape of his sister. A departure from Mifune’s typical rōnin roles. Toshiro Mifune. (B&W; Subt; NR)

Gate of Hell—A 12th century Imperial warrior returning from battle relentlessly and tragically pursues a married woman as the spoils of war. Won two Oscars, for Best Costume Design and Best Foreign Film. Kazuo Hasegawa, Michiko Kyo, Isao Yamagata, Yataro Kurokawa, Kotaro Bando, Jun Tanaki, Koreya Senda. Dir: Teinosuke Kinugasa (Daiei; 1953; 86/90 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Gay Masquerade, The (Bentin kozo)—Raizo Ichikawa, Shintaro Katsu, Kyoko Aoyama, Michiko Ai, Mieko Kondo, Ryozo Shimada. Dir: Daisuke Itô. (Daiei; 1958; 85 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Gay Revengers, The (Obu zo tenga)—Chiezo Kataoka, Kinnosuke Nakamura. Dir: Kinyo Watanabe. (Toei; 1958; 101 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Ghost Warrior—a samurai attempt to rescue his kidnapped wife. He is wounded and falls into icy waters where he is frozen. Centuries later he is revived in modern day Los Angeles. Corny, but shows interesting contrast between old and modern ways. A few good fight scenes, and a memorable scene in a downtown sushi bar. Previously released as Swordkill (1984; 80 min). Hiroshi Fujioka, Janet Julian, Frank Schuller. Dir: Larry Carroll. (1986; 86 min; Color; Engl; R)

Gonza the Spearman—Film adaptation of a noted 18th century bunraku (puppet theater) play entitled Yari no Gonza Kasane. Gonza, one...
Great Avengers, The (Chushingura)—One of a number of film adaptations of the famous story of the 47 Rōnin. Chieko Katoaka, Utaemon Ichikawa. Dir: Sadatsugu Matsuda. (Toei; 1959; 183 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Hakkenden, The—Anime series based on the classic by Bakin Takizawa—Nanso Satomi Hakkenden (the legend of the eight dog warriors). Set in the late 15th century. Dir: Takashi Anno (1993; 60 min each vol.; Color; Eng/Subt; NR)

Hana No Yukoden—Kazu Hasegawa, Yoko Uraji. Dir: Kimiyoshi Yasuda. (Daiei; 1958; 98 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Handdrum of Death, The (Samon Shimonokuni)—Tetsuro Tamba (Rokugou Tatewaki), Isao Natsuyagi (Kanai), Toku Tsukasa (Shino), Kunie Tanaka (Hiroosuke). Dir: Hideo Gosha (Toho; 1969; 124 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Nihon Gaikotsu—Young Swordsman

Hiken Yaburi—A man vows to avenge the death of his uncle, who was killed by Matsukata-trained samurai. Kojiro Hongo, Yosho Kato, Tatsu Matsumura, Shigeru Tsuyuguchi. Dir: Kazuo Ikehiro (1969; 90 min; Subt; NR)

Hunter in the Dark (Yami no Kariudo)—Film about a secret organization which thrives in the shadowy underworld of 18th century Japan during the reign of Tokugawa Ieyasu, the 10th Tokugawa Shōgun. Tatsuyu Nakadai (Gomyo Kyōemon), Yoshio Harada (Yataro Tanigawa), Ayumi Ishida (Oriva), Keiko Kishi (Omon), Ai Kanzaki (Osaki), Kayo Matsuo (Oren), Shinichi “Sonny” Chiba (Samon Shimokuni), Tetsuro Tamba (Okitasgi Tanuma), Hajime Hanna (Hanbu), Hiroshi Yukushi (Kawano), Hideo Morita (Hino), Daisuke Mine (Soneyoshi), Tsatsuo Umemiya (Kawazu), Miko Narita (Osuna), Makoto Fujita (Kazuke), Yosho Kato (Zenzoemon), Eijiro Tono (Shogen) and Isao Matsukishugi (Shirai). Dir: Hideo Gosha. (Choshuku; 1979; 138 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Ibin Sarutobi Sasaki—See Samurai Spy

Il Bianco, Il Giallo, Il Nero (White, the Yellow and the Black)—The Emperor of Japan sends the president of the U.S. an Asian horse as a gift. Three rogues (“White,” a grandiose kleptomaniac; “Yellow,” a Japanese samurai; and “Black,” a gullible sheriff) plot to steal the horse and hold it for ransom. Giuliano Gemma, Thomas Milian, Manuel de Blas, Eli Wallach. Dir: Sergio Corbucci. (1975; 110 min; Color; Eng/Dbded; Unk)

Incident at Blood Pass (Machibuse)—Also released as The Ambush and Machibuse. Toshiro Mifune (Yajinbo), Shintaro Katsu (Genetsu), Kinosuke Nakamura (Heiwa Ibuki), Ruriko Asaoka (Oku), Yujiro Ishihara (Yataro), Mika Kitagawa (Osaki), Ichiro Arishima (Tokubei), Yoshio Tsuchiya (Itabachi), Ryunosuke Yamazaki (Tatsu), Jotaro Togami (Gonji), Chusha Ichikawa (Unknown samurai). Dir: Hiroshi Inagata. (Toho; 1970; 118 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Inn of Evil (Inochi Boniforo)—Tatsuya Nakadai (Saddahichi), Wakako Sakai (Okine), Komori Kurihara (Omitsu), Kei Sato (Yohachi), Kei Yamamoto (Tomijiro), Ganshiro Nakamura (Raku the innkeeper), Shigeru Kamiyama (Officer Kanke), Yusuke Takeda (Nadayu Kohete), Ichiro Nakaya (Officer Okajime), Yusuke Kondo (Masaji), Daigo Kusano (Yunosuke), Hatsuco Yamatani (Suke), Shun Makita (Senkichiki), Mori Kishida (Genzo), Masao Mishima (Funayado Tokubei), Shintaro Katsu (Drunken wanderer). Dir: Masaki Kobayashi. (Toho; 1971; 121 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Inochi Boniforo—See Inn of Evil

Intrigue on the Frontier (Makyo no himitsu)—Kotaro Satomi, Kyonosuke Nango. Dir: Masamitsu Igayama. (Toei; 1958; 60 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Jan Arima no Shugeki—Raizo Ichikawa, Junko Kano. Dir: Daisuke Ito. (Daiei; 1959; 114 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Jirocho Fuji—Kazu Hasegawa, Machiko Kyō. Dir: Issei Mori. (Daiei; 1959; 105 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Joi-uchi—See Samurai Rebellion

Journey of Honor—Facing defeat during a civil war, the Shogun Tokugawa Ieyasu send his son, Mayeda, to Spain to purchase 5,000 rifles from King Philip III. Also released as Shogun Mayeda. Toshiro Mifune, Sho Kosugi, Christopher Lee. Dir: Gordon Hessler. (1991; 107 min; Color; Unk; NR)

Kabuto—Japanese anime about a tengu-trained mystical ninja who battles an evil sorceress. Heavy on the fantasy (e.g., a cybernetic villain and flying donjon with a helicopter propeller) but great fight scenes. Also released as Raven Tengu Kabuto. (1992; 45 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kagamiyama Kyo-enroku—Rieko Sumi, Katsuhiko Kobayashi. Dir:
Masaki Nishiyama. (Daei; 1960; 80 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Nakadai (who was bankrolled by George Lucas and Francis Coppola. Tatsuya Nakadai (Shogen). The program ran for four seasons and was shown on Japanese Theater (television) here in the U.S. Shinichi “Sonny” Chiba. (1981, 30 min ea; Color; Subt; NR)

Kagero-Gasa—Kazuo Hasegawa, Michiyo Aratama. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1959; 87 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Kaidan—See Kaidan.

KiLL (Kiri)—Based on an original story by Shugoro Yamamoto. Tatsuya Nakadai (Genta), Etsushi Takahashi (Hanjiro Tabata), Tadao Nakamura (Shuda Mogoebei), Yoshio Tsuchiya (Matsuo Shirōka), Shigeru Kiyamiya (Ayusawa Tamiya), Eijiro Tono (Morichiu Hiyō), Hideyo Amamoto (Shimada Gendai), Yuriko Hoshi (Chino), and Toshiaki Shimada (Kyōko Harusame-gasa). Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1967; 152 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

King of the Mongols—A bold samurai and his imperial leader repel invading rebel forces. Hashizo Okawa, Yoshio Yoshida. Dir: Unk. (1964; 88 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

Kinokuniya, the Dauntless Merchant (Kinokuniya bunzaemon)—Kokichi Takeda, Michiko Sagai, Miki Morii. Dir: Kunio Watanabe. (Shochiku; 1959; 124 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Kirimono—a humble peasant youth becomes elevated to the status of samurai and enjoys the benefits of his new station. His great skill makes him seem invulnerable, but he eventually faces a great enemy. Also released as Sasaki Kojiro. Kikunosuke Inoue (Kojiro Sasaki), Yuriko Hoshi (Tone), Yoko Tsukasa (Princess), Tatsuya Nakadai (Miyamoto Musashi), Keiko Sawai (Dancer), Tatsuya Mihashi (Jubei Minamiya), Mayumi Ozora (Geisha), Isamu Nagato (Shibai). Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1967; 157 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Kumonosu-ju—See Throne of Blood.

Kurobe-dani ni Dai-kenkyaku—Utakemon Ichikawa, Midori Asakaze. Dir: Ko Sasaki. (Toei; 1960; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Kurokumado-dani no Rajin—Taro Momoiwa, Nariotshi Hayashi. Dir: Minoru Watanabe. (Daiei; 1958; 60 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Kurooneko—Film adaptation of a classic folk tale, set in 12th century Japan. Two women murdered by a samurai leader and his retainers return to haunt them. They even possess the body of a live woman to reveal their murders. A twisting plotline ensues. Also released in the U.S as The Black Cat. Dir: Kaneto Shindo. (1968; 89 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

Kwaidan—a compilation of four short films based on ghost stories written by Lafcadio Hearn, an American who moved to Japan in the 19th century (and became one of that country’s most popular purveyors of ghost stories). Also released as Kaidan. The Black Hair (Kurokami): Rentaro Mikuni (Husband), Michiyo Aratama (Abandoned Wife), Misako Watanabe (Second Wife); The Snow Maiden (Yuki-onna): Keiko Kishi (Snow Maiden), Tatsuya Nakadai (Minokichi), Mariko Okada (Mother); Hoichi the Earless (Hoichi Miminashi): Katsuo Nakamura (Hoichi), Takashi Shimura (Priest), Shinya Nakamura (Assassin), Tetsuro Tamba (a warrior), Joichi Hayashi (Attendant); In A Cup of Tea (Chawan no Naka): Ganemon Nakamura (Kanmai), Noburo Nakaya (Heima). Dir: Masaki Kobayashi. (Toho; 1964; 164 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Kyokaku Harusame-gasa—Kazuo Hasegawa, Tamao Nakamura. Dir: Kunio Watanabe. (Daiei; 1960; 85 min; B&W; Subt; NR)


Kyoshiro Nemuri: The Princess’ Mask (Nemuri Kyosho Tojo Ken)—The second in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Akira Inoe. (Daiei; 1963; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: Kyoshiro Nemuri at Bay (Nemuri Kyosho Jyoken)—The third in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Kazuo Ikehito. (Daiei; 1964; 81 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: The Mysterious Sword of Kyoshiro Nemuri (Nemuri Kyosho Masho Ken)—The fourth in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Kimiyoshi Yasuda. (Daiei; 1965; 75 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: The Exploits of Kyoshiro Nemuri, Swordsman (Nemuri Kyosho Engetsu Giri)—The fifth in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Kiyoshi Yasuda. (Daiei; 1966; 85 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: The Trail of Traps (Nemuri Kyosho Masho no Hata)—The sixth in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri), Nobuo Kaneko (Shurinsonuke Asahina), Toshio Kimura (Sonoe), Haruko Wanibuchi (Chiza), Mikiro Narita (Ukon Saegusa), Nakuo Kubo (Oen). Dir: Kazuo Ikehito. (Daiei; 1967; 88 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: A Rōnin Called Nemuri (Nemuri Kyosho Onna Jigoku)—The seventh in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri), Miwa Takada (Princess Saya), Yoshie Mizutani (Osono), Takahiro Shinya (Tatsuma), Eitaro Ozawa (Hori), Toru Abe (Geki), Yunosuke Ito (Jinnai). Dir: Tokuko Tanaka. (Daiei; 1968; 85 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: The Human Tarantula (Nemuri Kyosho Hitotsubagumo)—The eighth in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri), Mako Midori (Murasaki), Masa Sasaki (Suma), Yusuke Kawazuzai (Eita), Fumio Watanabe (Ikkun), Minorichi Terada (Heijo). Dir: Kimiyoshi Yasuda. (Daiei; 1968; 81 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: Castle Menagerie (Nemuri Kyosho Akuyu-gari)—The ninth in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Raizo Ichikawa (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Kazuo Ikehito. (Daiei; 1969; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: The Full Moon Swordsman (Nemuri Kyosho Engetsu Sappo)—The tenth in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Hiroki Matsukata (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Issei Morii. (Daiei; 1969; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Kyoshiro Nemuri: Fylfot Swordplay (Nemuri Kyosho Manji-Giri)—The eleventh in the Kyoshiro Nemuri film series. Hiroki Matsukata (Kyoshiro Nemuri). Dir: Issei Morii. (Daiei; 1970; 81 min; Color; Subt; NR)

An ancestor’s good or evil can be determined by the conduct of his descendants.

—Lord Naoshige
Lady Snowblood — Love Song of Vengeance — Second of two Lady Snowblood films. Sentenced to death, Yuki is given a reprieve by the mysterious Kikui, a secret government agent in return for killing Ransui, an anarchist and activist, and recovering a stolen document. But the document contains evidence of a foul miscarriage of justice carried out by Kikui. Yuki switches sides to help Ransui, and becomes the target of Kikui’s vengeance. Kaji Meiko, Yoshiro Harada. Dir: Fujita Toshiya. (Tokyo Eiga Co. Ltd.; 1973; 97 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Legend of the Taira Clan — See Tales of the Taira Clan.

Life of Oharu, The — See Diary of Oharu.

Lone Wolf and Cub: Baby Cart at the River Styx — Ogami Itto is hired to kill a Shōgunate messenger who is being protected by the three “Gods of Death.” Recently released in widescreen collector’s edition by AnimEigo. Part two of a 6-part series. Previously released in a dubbed version titled Lone Wolf. Wakayama Tomisaburo, Matsuo Kayo, Oki Minouri. Dir: Misumi Kenji. (1972; 81 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Lone Wolf and Cub: Baby Cart in Peril — Ogami Itto is hired to track down and kill the deadly, tattooed mistress Oyuki! Great fight scenes. Part four of a 6-part series. Wakayama Tomisaburo, Hayashi Yoichi. Dir: Saito Buichi. (1972; 81 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Lone Wolf and Cub: Baby Cart in the Land of Demons — Ogami is hired to save the Kuroda clan, even though it means killing the very samurai retainers who hired him! Part five of a 6-part series. Wakayama Tomisaburo, Yasuda Michiyu, Tomikawa Akihiro. Dir: Misumi Kenji. (1973; 89 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Lone Wolf and Cub: Baby Cart to Hades — Ogami Itto rescues a prostitute who kills her pimp in self defense. After enduring her punishment for her, he is hired by the Chief Chamberlain of the Kakegawa clan to kill Governor Sawatari, who himself arranged the death of the rightful lord of the Kakegawa and stole the Kakegawa fief. Part three of a 6-part series. Wakayama Tomisaburo, Kato Go, Hama Yuko, Yamagata Isao. Dir: Misumi Kenji. (1972; 89 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Lone Wolf and Cub: Sword of Vengeance — Ogami Itto, the Shōgun’s executioner, is framed for treason and his wife killed by the Yagyū clan. He flees with his son, Daigoro, and wanders the “road to hell,” hiring his sword skills. Recently released in widescreen collector’s edition by AnimEigo. Part one of a 6-part series. Previously released in a dubbed version titled Lone Wolf. Wakayama Tomisaburo, Watanabe Fumio, Ito Yunosuke. Dir: Misumi Kenji. (1972; 83 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Lord and the Gambler, The (Nuregami Sandogasa) — Raizo Ichikawa, Kojiro Hongo. Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1959; 92 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Lord and the Pirates, The (Torimono dochu) — Kinnosuke Nakamura, Katsuji Nakamura. Dir: Chu Sawashima. (Toei; 1959; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Love and Faith — Unk year; Unk run time; Color; Subt; NR

Loyal 47 Rōnin, The (Chushingura) — One of several film adaptions of the famous story of the 47 Rōnin. Dir: Kunio Watanabe. (Daiei; 1958; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Lupine Wolf — See Shōgun Assassin.

Machibuse — See Incident at Blood Pass.

Majin — See Daimajin.

Man Came on the Wind, The (Oshidori dochu) — Hashizou Okawa, Kyoko Aoyama. Dir: Yatsu Sasaki. (Toei; 1959; 88 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Man on the White Horse, The (Ogon-gumo) — Kotaro Satomi, Hiromi Hanazono. Dir: Masamitsu Igayama. (Toei; 1958; 60 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Men Who Tread on the Tiger’s Tail, The (Tora no o o fumu Otokotachi) — A nobleman attempts to escape death at the hands of his jealous brother. Based on a celebrated kabuki play and a real-life feudal struggle, the tale is as familiar to the Japanese as the legend of Robin Hood is to Western audiences. The film was banned by U.S. occupation forces when first completed, and was not released until 1952. Also released as Walkers on the Tiger’s Tail and They Who Step on the Tiger’s Tail. Denjirô Okochi (Benkei), Susumu Fujita (Togashi), Masayuki Mori (Kamei), Takashi Shimura (Kataoka), Aritake Kono (Ise), Yoshio Kosugi (Surugo), Dekao Yoko (Hanzō), Hanshiro Iwai (Yoshitsuna), Kenichi Enomoto (Porter) and Shoji Kiyokawa (Togashi’s messenger). Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (Toho; 1945; 58 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Mission To Hell (Kogan no misshô) — Hashizou Okawa, Yoshio Yoshida, Jun Tazaki, Sentaro Fushimi. Dir: Tai Kato. (Toei; 1959; 100 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Miyamoto Musashi — See Zen and Sword (1960)

Miyamoto Musashi — See also Musashi Miyamoto.

Musashi Miyamoto (Miyamoto Musashi) — One of several film adaptions of the life of Japan’s famous swordsman. Rentaro Mikuni (Musashi), Jutoku Yoshimura (Ei), Jun Tataru (Narrator). Dir: Yuasa Kahata. (Toei; 1954; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Nakito Gozansu — Mie Hama, Hiroshi Moriya. Dir: Jun Fukuda. (Toho; 1960; 74 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Naruto no Hanayome — Raizo Ichikawa, Yoko Uraji. Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1959; 80 min; B&W; Unk; NR)

Naughty Rogue, The (Ojo-kichisu) — Raizo Ichikawa, Yoko Uraji. Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1959; 80 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

New Tales — See Tales of the Taira Clan.

Night Drum — See The Adulteress

Ninja, Band of Assassins — See Shinobi no mono

Ninja Scroll — Japanese anime about a rogue ninja fighting against seven demons. Great fight scenes. Available in mature (R) and regular (PG) versions. Released in the U.S. by Manga Corps. Dir: Yoshiaki Kawajiri. (Toho/Manga Ent.; 1993/1995; 94 min; Color; Subt)

Ninja Wars — Campy chanbara film set in the early 16th century. The
evil sorcerer Kashin Koji directs samurai Danjo Matsunaga to kidnap a female ninja to use her in a plot to overthrow his master. When the would-be captives kill herself her fiance, Jotaro, begins a crusade defeat Danjo and to protect his beloved’s twin sister. But he must first face Kashin Koji’s Devil Monks, five immortal warriors driven by dark powers! A campy film with chambara action and magic; more of a live-action anime. Dir: Unk. (Toei: 1984; 95 min; Color; Engl/Dub; NR)

**Ninjitsu (Soryu hiken)** —Toshiro Mifune (Tashaburo), Koji Tsurata (Senshiro), Nobuko Otowa (Yuhime), Yoshiko Kuga, Mariko Okada, Senjaku Nakamura. Dir: Unk. (Toho; 1958; 106 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**No Stronger Words (Tenka-muso no ken)** —Utaemon Ichikawa, Hashizo Okawa. Dir: Sadatsugu Matsuda. (Toei; 1959; 83 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Nuregami Kenpo** —Raizo Ichikawa, Kaoro Yachigusa. Dir: Bin Kado. (Daiei; 1958; 60 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Oabara Hapyaku-yacho** —Koichi Takeda, Michiko Saga. Dir: Kunio Watanabe. (Shochiku; 1959; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Ogre on Mt. Oe** —Hashizo Okawa, Satomi Oka. Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1959; 83 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**One-Eyed Wolf, The** —Relatively poor, grade B chambara film about (you guessed it) ninja in feudal Japan. (Color; Engl/Subt; NR)

**One-Eyed Swordsman, The (Tange-Sazen)** —In 1730, the Yagyū clan is ordered to repair a huge shrine, which it cannot afford to do. Their only salvation lies in a hidden treasure whose secret location is inscribed on a sword—a sword they gave away as a gift! Tange-Sazen, first against the Yagyū’s, later sides with them. Tetsuro Tanba, Haruko Waniuchhi, Michiko Saga. Dir: Seicirho Uchikawa. (1963; 95 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**One-eyed Wolf, The (Katame no Okami)** —Ryutaro Otomo, Kotaro Satomi. Dir: Chu Kawashima. (Toei; 1959; 87 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Osaka Castle Story** —See Daredevil in the Castle

**Osaka Monogatari** —See Daredevil in the Castle

**Pirates, The (Kazoku Bahunen)** —Hashizo Okawa, Satomi Oka. Dir: Tadashi Kawashima. (Toei; 1960; 104 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Rabble, The** —After warning samurai pillage his father, an impoverished youth sells himself to a wealthy merchant. There he falls in love with the merchant’s shy daughter, whose sister is being courted by a samurai and a nobleman. The party is shipwrecked on an island and everyone’s true colors are revealed. Yuriko Hoshi, Somegoro Ichikawa, Tadao Nakamura, Mayumi Ozora. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki (1965; 116 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

**Rage, The (Hayate Monzaburo)** —Tomisaburo Wakayama, Keiko Okawa. Dir: Masahiko Izawa. (Toei; 1959; 68 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Ran** —Academy Award-winning epic Kurosawa film, based on Shakespeare’s King Lear, about a daimyo who retires and splits his lands among his sons only to be betrayed by two of them. Great battle sequences. The visuals during the large-scale battle scenes alone make this one worth watching. Recently re-released (1998) in a new widescreen version. Tatsuya Nakadai, Akira Terao, Mieko Harada. Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (1985; 160 min; Color; Subt; R) 

**Rashomon** —Tale about four different views of the same violent crime. Toshiro Mifune (Tajomaru), Masayuki Mori (Takehiro), Michiko Kyo (Masago), Takashi Shimura (Woodcutter), Minoru Chiaki (Priest), Kichiijiro Ueda (Thief), Daiisuke Kato (Law Officer), Fumiko Honma (Medium). Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (Daiei; 1950; 83/88 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Raven Tengu Kabuto** —See Kabuto

**Razor: The Snare, The** —In this second installment of The Razor series, Itami Hanzo investigates the death of a young girl during an illegal abortion and provokes a prostitution ring and a secret operation minting debased coins, both run by Lord Okubo, the Shogunate Treasurer! Katsu Shintaro, Sato Kei, Nishimura Akira, Kurosawa Toshio. Dir: Masamura Yasuzo. (1973; 89 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Razor: Sword of Justice, The** —First of The Razor series. Itami Hanzo is a reasonably honest policeman in Tokugawa-era Edo. Unfortunately his boss, Machibugyo Onishi, is totally corrupt, which means Hanzo has no chance for promotion. Katsu (Zatoichi) Shintaro, Asaoa Yukiji, Atsumi Mari. Dir: Misumi Kenji. (1972; 90 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Rebel General, The (Teki wa Hannojo ni Ari)** —Keiko Kishi, Koshio Matsumoto. Dir: Tatsuho Ohsono. (Shochiku; 1960; 96 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Rebellion (Joi-uchi)** —See Samurai Rebellion

**Red Bat, The (Beni komori)** —Kinsho Matsumoto, Akiko Koyama. Dir: Sanito Murune. (Shochiku; 1958; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Red Beard** —Toshiro Mifune. (B&W; Subt)

**Red Lion (Akage)** —A samurai returns from battle and visits his home town, masquerading as an officer of the new Imperial Army, and winds up leading a rebellion against oppression. Toshiro Mifune (Gonzo), Shima Iwashita (Tomi), No Terada (Sanji), Etsushi Takahashi (Hanzo), Jitsuko Yoshimura (Ooyo), Yuko Mochizuki (Obara), Takaiho Tamura (Sozo Sagara), Yunosuke Ito (Kamio), Shigeru Koyama (Aragaki), Tokue Hanazawa (Komatora), Nobuko Otowa, Kai Okada, Minori Terada. Dir: Kihachi Okamoto. (Toho; 1969; 116 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Red Sun** —A samurai reluctantly joins forces with a gunslinger in the American old west to track down the man who killed the samurai’s friend and stole money from the gunslinger. Now available on DVD. Charles Bronson, Toshiro Mifune, Ursula Andress. Dir: Terence Young. (1971; 105 min; Color, Engl, NR)

**Renege Ninjas** —Relatively poor, grade B chambara film about (you guessed it) ninja in feudal Japan. (Color; Engl/Subt; NR)

**Revenge of the Princess (Himegimi Ittoryu)** —Keiko Okawa, Sentaro Fushimi. Dir: Tomoji Sumida. (Toei; 1959; 60 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Reverger in Red, The (Beni-dasuki kenkajo)** —Chiyonsuke Azuma, Hibari Misora. Dir: Juichi Kano. (Toei; 1959; 74 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Rikyu** —Story about Sen-no Rikyu, a Buddhist priest, who gains unexpected political influence as the confidant and cultural mentor to the powerful warlord, Hideyoshi Toyotomi. Rentaro Mikuni, Tsutomo Yamazaki. Dir: Hiroshi Teshigahara. (1991; 116 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Rise Against the Sword (Abare Goemon)** —Set in the Muromachi era, the leader of a group of kaga refuses to help his samurai master fight a battle. After failing to convince him by sending his daughter to seduce their leader, the enraged samurai kills the kaga leader. But his death makes him a martyr, and all of the kaga stand against the samurai. Toshiro Mifune (Abare Goemon), Makato Sato, Ryo Tamura, Yuriko Hoshi, Mayumi Ozora, Nobuko Otowa and Daisuke Kato. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki (Toho; 1966; 101 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**River of Fury, The (Doto no taketsu)** —Utaemon Ichikawa, Chiezo Kataoka. Dir: Yasushi Sasaki. (Toei; 1959; 117 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**River Feufuki, The (Feufuki-gawa)** —Miyuki Kawano, Masahiko Tsugawa. Dir: Tatsuho Yamada. (Toho; 1958; 101 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Royalists, The (Kyoraku Gonin Otoko)** —Kokichi Takada, Takaiho Tamura. Jushiro Konoe. Dir: Tatsuho Osone. (Shochiku; 1956; 101 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**A Ruffian in Love (Sateuri kanbei)** —Ryutaro Otomo, Kotaro Satomi. Dir: Masahiro Makino. (Toei; 1958; 94 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Ryujo no Maki (Daiibosatsu Toge: II)** —Raizo Ichikawa, Tamao Nakamura. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1960; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

---

*It is said that much sake, self-pride and luxury are to be avoided by samurai. There is no cause for anxiety when you are unhappy, but when you become a little elated, these three things become dangerous.*

— Yamamoto Tsuchetomo
Sacriligious Hero, The—See Tales of the Taira Clan
Saga of the Vagabonds, The (Sengoku Gunto-den)—Koji Tsuruta, Toshiro Mifune, Misao Uehara, Akihiko Hirata. Dir: Toshio Sugie. (Toho; 1959; 115 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Saikaku Ichidai Onna—See Diary of Oharu.

Samurai—See Samurai Assassin

Samurai 1: The Legend of Musashi—See Samurai 1: Miyamoto Musashi

Samurai 1: Master Swordsman—See Samurai 1: Miyamoto Musashi

Samurai 1: Miyamoto Musashi (Miyamoto Musashi)—A defeated samurai’s spirit is broken, until a loving woman and Takanu, a Buddhist priest, rebuild his faith. Part 1 of the award winning 3-part film series about Japan’s legendary swordsman, Musashi Miyamoto. Also released as Samurai 1: Master Swordsman and Samurai 1: The Legend of Musashi. Toshiro Mifune (Miyamoto Musashi), Rentaro Mikuni (Honiden Matabatchi), Kaoru Yachigusa (Otsu), Mariko Okada (Akemi), Kuroemon Onoe (Takuw Osho), Mitsuko Mito (Oku), Daisuke Kato (Toji), Eiko Miyoshi, Kusuo Abe, Yoshio Kosugi, Sojin Kamiyama and Kanta Kisaragi. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1955; 92 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai 2: Duel at Ichijoji Temple (Ichijoji no Ketto)—Toshiro Mifune (Musashi), Koji Tsuruta (Sasaki Kojirô), Sachio Sakai (Honiden Matabatchi), Akihito Hirata (Seijuro), Yu Fujiji (Denshichiro), Daisuke Kato (Toji), Eijiro Tono (Baiken), Ko Mihashi (Koetsu), Kunimori Kodo (Priest Nikkan), Kenjirô Ida (Jotaro), Kaoru Yachigusa (Otsu), Mariko Okada (Akemi), Mitsuko Mito (Oku), Michiyo Kogure (Yoshio Daya). Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1955; 104 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai 3: Duel on Ganryu Island (Ketto Ganryujima)—Toshiro Mifune (Musashi), Rentaro Mikuni (Honiden Matabatchi), Kaoru Yachigusa (Otsu), Mariko Okada (Akemi), Kuroemon Onoe (Takuw Osho), Mitsuko Mito (Oku), Daisuke Kato, Eiko Miyoshi, Kusuo Abe, Yoshio Kosugi, Sojin Kamiyama, Kanta Kisaragi. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1956; 102 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai 3: Musashi and Kojirô—See Samurai 3: Duel on Ganryu Island

Samurai Assassin (Samurai)—After being denied entry into the palace of the chief minister because he did not know his father’s identity, a rônin joins a bandit gang. Even the gang eventually forsakes the rônin, who then forces his way into the palace and kills the minister. It is only then that he learns that the minister was his father! Toshiro Mifune (Tsurachiy niiro), Michiyo Aratama (Okika), Keiji Kobayashi, Yunosuke Ito, Koshio Matsumoto, Nami Tamura. Dir: Kihachi Okamoto. (Toho; 1965; 123 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai Banners—Based on the best-selling Japanese novel Furin Kazan, by Yasushi Inove. A samurai is hired as an advisor to a daimyo, but his advice is not heeded. The advisor is compelled to kill a rival daimyo, and both he and his master fall in love with the slain man’s daughter. Released in the U.S. as Furin Kazan and Samurai Banners. Produced by Toshiro Mifune’s own production company, Mifune Productions. Toshiro Mifune (Kansuke Yamamoto), Kinosuke Nakamura (Shingen Takeda), Yoshiko Sakuma (Princess Yafa), Kanmon Nakamura (Nobukata Inagaki), Masakazu Tamura (Nobushige Takeda), Yujirô Ishihara (Kenshin Uesugi), Ken Ogata. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho/Mifune Productions; 1969; 132/166 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai From Nowhere—Set in 17th century Japan, a warrior rescues a woman from an evil lord, who pursues them. Low budget action film. Chieko Baisho, Shima Iwashita, Seiji Miyaguchi, Tetsuo Tamba. Dir: Seichiro Uchikawa. (1964; 93 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai Gold Seekers—See Sword of the Beast

Samurai of Nippon (Samurai Nippon)—Takahiro Tamura, Isuzu Yamada, Koshiro Matsumoto. Dir: Tsutau Osono. (Shochiku; 1957; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Samurai Rebellion—Also released as Rebellion and Joi-uchi. A retired samurai defends his son’s choice to marry the woman he loves, against the wishes of the clan. Has an incredibly bloody finale. Toshiro Mifune (Isaburo Sasahara), Tatsuya Nakadai (Tatewaki Asano), Yoko Tsukasa (Ichi), Tsuyoshi Kato (Yogoro), Shigeru Koyama (Steward Tadahashi), Tatsuyoshi Ebara (Bunzo), Michiko Otsuka (Suga), Tatsuo Matsumara (Lord Matsudaira), Masao Michima (Yanase), Isao Yamagata (Kotani). Dir: Masaki Kobayashi. (Toho; 1967; 128 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai Reincarnation—A low-budget samurai fantasy film. An executed samurai and his evil lady-friend are reincarnated during the Shinbara Revolt and vow to take revenge against the Tokugawa Shogunate. (88 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai Saga (Aru Kengo no Shogai)—Japanese remake of Cyran DeBergerac; set in Tokugawa Japan. A good film and a good telling of the classic Edmund Rostand tale, with a twist. Also released as Aru Kengo no Shogai. Toshiro Mifune, Yoko Tsukasa, Akira Takarada. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1959; 112 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Samurai Spy (Ibun Sarutobi Sasuke)—Koji Takahashi (Sasuke Sarutobi), Jitsuko Yoshimura, Misako Watanabe (Omiya), Eiji Okada, Tetsuro Tamba (Sakon). Dir: Masahiro Shinoda. (Shochiku; 1965; 102 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Samurai Vendetta (Hakuoku)—Raizo Ichikawa, Shintaro Katsu, Chitose Maki, Tokiko Mita, Yoshito Kitahara. Dir: Issei Moro. (Daiei; 1960; 109 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Samurai Wolf I (Kiba Okimonsuke)—Isao Natsuyagi (Okimonsuke), Ryohue Uchida, Junko Kiyazono. Dir: Hideo Gosha. (Toei; 1966; 75 min; Subt; NR)

Samurai Wolf II (Kiba Okimonsuke Jigokugiri)—Isao Natsuyagi (Okimonsuke), Ko Nishimura (Magobe), Yuko Kusunoki (Oren), Rumitsu Fuji (Okura), Chiyi Aoi (Otsu), Ichiro Nakaya (Ikka). Dir: Hideo Gosha. (Toei; 1967; 72 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Samurai’s Honor at Pawn (Bentenysaha)—Kokichi Takada, Mieko Takamine, Katsu Nakamura. Dir: Tsutsu Sakai. (Shochiku; 1956; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Samurai’s Love (Bacho Sara Yashiki—Okita to Harima)—Dir: Daisuke Ito. (Daiei; 1954; 75 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Sanjuro (Tsubaki Sanjuro)—Toshiro Mifune reprises his role as the brash rônin from Yojimbo. In this film, Sanjuro helps a small band of samurai rescue their clansmen, who have been taken hostage by a corrupt official. A great story with a silly sense of humor. Toshiro Mifune (Sanjuro Tsubaki), Tatsuya Nakadai (Hanbei Muroto), Yuzo Kayama (Hiro Izaka), Akihiko Hirata, Kunie Tanaka, Hiroshi Tachikawa, Tatsuhiko Harai, Tatsuyoshi Ehara, Kenzo Matsui, Yoshio Tsushima, Akira Kubo (Young samurai), Takashi Shimura (Kurofujii), Kamatari Fujiwara (Takebayashii), Masao Shimizu (Kiku), Yunosuke Ito (Mutsuta), Takato Irie (Lady Mutsuta), Reiko Danshi, Keiju Kobayashi (Prisoner). Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (Toho; 1962; 96 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Sansho the Bailiff (Sansho Dayo)—Set in the 11th century, a kindly governor is exiled, his wife forced into prostitution and his son and daughter sold into slavery to the tyrannical bailiff Sansho. The son escapes, and 10 years later rises to power and searches for his mother. Kinuyo Tanaka, Yoshikai Hanayagi, Kyoko Kagawa, Eitarô Shindo. Dir: Kenji Mizoguchi. (Daiei; 1954; 132 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Sasaki Kojirô—See Kojirô

Scandalous Adventures of Buraikan, The (Buraikan)—Tatsuya Nakadai (Noojirô Kataoka), Shima Iwashita (Michio), Tetsuo Tamba (Soshun Kochiyama), Shichioi Ozawa (Ushimatsu), Fumio Watanabe (Moritaya Seizo), Sakatoshi Yonekura (Keneo Ichinojo),
Hiroshi Akutagawa (ミズノ 伊勢信-ほ-か), Suisen Ichikawa
(Okuna), Kiwako Taichi (Nami). Dir: Masahiro Shinoda. (Toho;
1970; 104 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Scarlet Cloak, The** (**Aka Jima-hayari**)—Dir: Satsuo Yamamoto.
(Shochiku; 1959; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Secret of the Bronze Dragon, The** (**Tange Sazen Doto-hen**)—Ryutaro
Otomo, Hashizou Okawa. Dir: Sadatsugu Matsuda. (Toei; 1959; 81
min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Secret of the Scroll, The** (**Inazuma Kottomu**)—Dir: Shoji Matsumura.
(Toei; 1959; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Secret of the Urn, The** (**Tange Sazen Hien Iai-giri**)—Kinnosuke
Nakamura (Sanmonosuke / Tange Sazen), Keiko Awaji (Fujii),
Tetsuo Tamba (Lord Yagyu), Isao Kimura, Wakabu Irie. Dir: Hideo
Gosha. (Toei; 1966; 91 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Senbazaru Hicho**—Raiho Ichikawa, Tamo Nakamura. Dir: Kenji
Misumi. (Daiei; 1959; 86 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Sengoku Jidai**—In this Japanese sci-fi adventure, a group of soldiers
find themselves transported back to 16th century Japan, where they
must face a group (an army?) of angry samurai. They fight for their
lives as they try to figure out what happened and try to find a way
home. Excellent fight scenes and choreography by Sonny Chiba.
Also released as *Time Slip*. Sonny Chiba, Isao Natsuki, Nana Okada,
Miyuki Ono. Dir: Koichi Saito. (1981; 139 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Sengoku Yaro**—See *Warring Clans*

**Senryu Garasu**—Michiko Saga, Haruo Minami. Dir: Ryo Hagiwara.
(Shochiku; 1960; 81 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Seppuku**—See *Hara-Kiri.*

**Seven Blades Return, The** (**Shichinin wakashu oini uridasu**)—
Kinshiro Matsumoto, Shinobu Asaji. Dir: Ryosuke Kurahashi.
(Shochiku; 1958; 91 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Seven Samurai** (**Shichinen no Samurai**)—Akira Kurosawa classic about
seven warriors who defend a poor village from bandits. Served as
the inspiration for the 1960 western *The Magnificent Seven*. Available
in several versions of varying lengths. A digitally re-mastered
version was released on video tape and most recently on DVD.
Takashi Shimura (Katsuo), Toshiro Mifune (Kichiro), Yoshio
Inaba (Gorobei), Seiji Miyaguchi (Kyuzo), Minoru Chiaki
(Hichuchi), Daisuke Kato (Shichiroji), Isao Kimura (Katsuchiro),
Kumonri Katsube (Jinbei), Bokuzen Hidari (Yohei), Yoshio Kosugi
(Mosuke), Kamatari Fujiwara (Manzo), Yoshio Tsuchiya (Rikichi),
Keiko Tsushima (Shino), Yukiko Shimazaki (Rikichi’s wife),
Haruko Tanaka (Mame in Gisaku’s son), Gen Shimazu (Rinnin),
Keiji Sakakida (Gosaku), Jun Tataro (Coolie), Atsushi Watanabe
(Bun seller), Toranosuke Ogawa (grandfather), Noriko Sengoku
(Wife), Eijiro Tono (Robber), Isao Yamagata (Rinnin), Sojin Koyama
(Misunrel), Jun Tazaki (Tall samurai), Shigekio Takagi (Bandit
Chief). Jiro Kuwagai, Tatsuo Katagiri, Yasuhiro Tsutsuji (Peasant),
Kichijiro Ueda, Akira Tani, Naruo Nakajima, Takashi Narita,
Senkichi Omura, Shuno Takahara, Masanobu Okubo (Bandits),
Yu Akitsu (Husband). Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (Toho; 1954; 208, 200 or
161 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Shichinin no Samurai**—See Seven Samurai.

**Shinju Ten no Amijima**—See Double Suicide

**Shinobi**—See Shinobi no Mono

**Shinobi no Mono**—Also released as *Shinobi and Ninja: A Band of Assassins*.
A period film set in the 16th century about a clan of shinobi
(ninja) plotting the assassination of their great enemy, Nobunaga
Oda, the current ruler of Japan. Raizo Ichikawa (*Sleepy Eyes of
Death*). Dir: Unk. (B&W; Subt; NR)

**Shisengumi**—Also released as *Band of Assassins*. Story set in the 17th
century about Kondo Isami, famous leader of the Shinsengumi.
Toshiro Mifune (*Kondo Isami*). Dir: Unk. (Toho; 1970; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Shiranui Kengo**—Shintaro Katsu, Tamao Nakamura. Dir: Issei Mori.
(Daiei; 1960; 90 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

---

**Shōgun**—Emmy Award-winning 9-hour television mini-series based on James
Clavell’s novel. Filmed in Japan, with excellent costumes and visuals; a must
see, despite historical inaccuracies. Also released as 124-minute edited version.
Richard Chamberlain, Toshiro Mifune, Yoko Shimada; Frankie Sakai. Dir: Jerry
London. (1980; 549 min; Color; Engl/Jap; NR)

**Shōgun Assassin**—Abridged 2-hour version of the famous Japanese
film series *Sword of Vengeance*, about the Shōgun’s chief executioner
who defies the Shōgun after his wife is assassinated, and wanders the
country pushing his son, Daigoro, in a wooden cart. He kills countless ninja and samurai. Great action flick! Also re-
leased as *Lapine Wolf*. Tomisaburo Wakayama, Masahiro Tomikawa, Lamont Johnson, Marshall Efron. Dir: Kenji Misumi, Robert Houston. (1980; 89 min; Color; Subt; R)

**Shogun's Ninja**—Two ancient ninja families struggle for superiority, as one commander searches for the dagger that holds a powerful secret. Henry Sanada, Sonny Chiba. Dir: Noribumi Suzuki. (1983; 115 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Shōgun Travels Incognito, The** (**Tenka no Fuku-Shōgun**)—Ryunosuke Tsuchigai, Kinnosuke Nakamura. Dir: Sadatsugu Matsuda. (Toei; 1959; 96 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Shura Zakura**—Kokichi Takeda, Miki Mori. Dir: Tatsuo Oshone.
(Shochiku; 1959; 125 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Singing Swordsman, The** (**Utashigure Senryu Tabi**)—Kotaro Satomi, Hiram Hanazono. Dir: Hideaki Onishi. (Toei; 1959; 60 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Sleepy Eyes of Death Series**—See also *Kyoshiro Nemuri*

**Sleepy Eyes of Death: The Chinese Jade**—Nemuri Kyoshiro is the
son of a Japanese mother and a gaijin father, but he’s an expert
swordsmen. Lord Maeda attempts to manipulate Nemuri to attack
Maeda’s enemy, a priest named Chen Sun, who is protecting a docu-
ment that will cause the Maeda clan’s downfall. Originally released as
*Kyoshiro Nemuri* film series. Ichikawa Raizo, Nakamura Tamao,
Joo Kenzaburo. Dir: Tanaka Tokazo. (Daiei; 1963, 82 min; Color;
Subt; NR)

**Sleepy Eyes of Death: Full Circle Killing**—Nemuri Kyoshiro gets en-
tangled in another adventurous plot. Originally released as *Nemuri Kyoshiro* film series. Raizo Ichikawa (*Kyoshiro Nemuri*). Dir: Unk. (Daiei; 1964; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Sleepy Eyes of Death: Sword of Adventure**—Nemuri Kyoshiro becomes embroiled in a plot to kill the Shogun’s Finance Commis-
ioner. Originally released as *Nemuri Kyoshiro* film series. Raizo Ichikawa (*Kyoshiro Nemuri*). Fujimura Shihou, Takada Miwa. Dir: Kenji Misumi (*Lone Wolf and Cub*). (Daiei; 1964; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Sleepy Eyes of Death: Sword of Seduction**—Nemuri Kyoshiro becomes involved in an opium smuggling conspiracy that involves
the daughter of the former Shōgun! Originally released as *Nemuri Kyoshiro* film series. Raizo Ichikawa (*Kyoshiro Nemuri*). Dir: Ikehiro Kazuo. (Daiei; 1964; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Sleepy Eyes of Death: Sword of Fire**—Nemuri Kyoshiro in the fifth
American release of the film series. Originally released as *Nemuri Kyoshiro* film series. Raizo Ichikawa (*Kyoshiro Nemuri*). Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1965; 83 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Souls in the Moonlight** (**Daibosatsu Toge**)—Chieko Kataoka, Kinnosuke
Nakamura. Dir: Tomo Uchida. (Toei; 1959; 104 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Spell of the Hidden Gold, The** (**Maken jigoku**)—Michiyu Kogure, Koji
Tsurata. Dir: Masazumi Kawanishi. (Toho; 1958; 91 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

---

If a retainer will just think about what he is to do for the day at hand, he will be able to do anything. If it is a single day’s work, one should be able to put up with it. Tomorrow, too, is but a single day.

— Ikuo Orie
Sure Death—Fujita Makoto, Ayakawa Izumi, Hikaru Ipppei, Yamauchi Tosho. Dir: Hirose Joo. (Shochiku Co. Ltd.; 1985; 122 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Sure Death: Brown, You Bouncer!—Second in the Sure Death series. Fujita Makoto, Ayakawa Izumi, Hikaru Ipppei, Yamauchi Tosho. Dir: Hirose Joo. (Shochiku Co. Ltd.; 1985; 122 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Surōnin Hyakuman-goku—Utaemon Ichikawa, Chiyonosuke Azuma. Dir: Shoji Matsumura. (Toei; 1960; 85 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Swishing Sword, The (Hitozaka kajaku)—Fujiko Yamamoto, Raizo Ichikawa, Shoji Umewaka, Mieko Kondo, Seizaburo Kozo, Sonosuke Sawamura. Dir: Issei Mori. (Daiei; 1958; 99 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Sword against Fate (Kurenai gonnpachi)—Hashizo Okawa, Utaemon Ichikawa. Dir: Kokichi Uchide. (Toei; 1958; 98 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Swords Against Intrigue (Naza no Naiban-daiko)—Hiroko Sakuramachi, Utaemon Ichikawa. Dir: Yasushi Sasaki. (Toei; 1959; 87 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Sword and Love (Ken wa shizite ita)—Kinnosuke Nakamura, Hitomi Nakahara. Dir: Kokichi Uchide. (Toei; 1958; 82 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Sword for Hire (Sengoku Burai)—Screenplay by Hiroshi Inagaki and Akira Kurosawa. Toshiro Mifune (Sasa Hayatenosuke), Rentaro Mikuni (Tachibana Jurata), Danshiro Ichikawa (Kagami Yakeiji), Yoshiko Yamaguchi (Oryoru), Shinobu Asaji (Kano), Takashi Shimura, Eijiro Higashino, Ryosuke Kagawa, Kuniori Kodo. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1952; 135 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Sword of Destiny (Tsukkeigai Ittoryu)—Koji Tsurata, Hibiari Misora. Dir: Ko Sasaki. (Toei; 1960; 79 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Sword of Doom, The (Dahosubutsu Toge)—An elder samurai takes in a young, rash student, and teaches him the way of the warrior. Tatsuya Nakadai (Tsukae), Toshiro Mifune (Shimada), Michiyoshi Aratama, Yuzo Kayama, Yoko Naito, Kei Sato. Dir: Kihachi Okamato. (Toho; 1964; 122 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

A Sword of Fury I—This Japanese adventure film (the first of three chronicles) the rise of Miyamoto Musashi, one of Japan’s greatest swordsmen. Hideki Takahashi, Jiro Tamiya. (1973; 90 min; Color; Subt; NR)

A Sword of Fury II—Sequel to Sword of Fury I. (Color; Subt; NR)

A Sword of Fury III—Last in the Sword of Fury series of films. (Color; Subt; NR)

The Beast of the Bed (Kadomonono no Ken)—Also released as Samurai Gold Seekers. Mikijiro Hira (Yuuki Gennosuke), Goh Kato (Jurata Yamane), Shima Ishiwata (Taka), Toshie Kimura (Misa), Kantarou Sugah (Datcaburo), Yoko Mihara (Osen), Kunie Tanaka (Tanjii), Eijiro Tono (Minister). Dir: Hideo Gosha. (Shochiku; 1965; 85 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Swords of the Itinerant Actor, The (Abare Kaido)—Yumiko Hasegaya, Utaemon Ichikawa. Dir: Shigehiro Ozawa. (Toei; 1959; 91 min; Color; B&W; Subt; NR)

Swordkill—See Ghost Warrior

Wordless Samurai, The (Furyu Ajiragasa)—Dir: Sanjuro Marune. (Toho; 1956; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Swords and Brocade (Hakamadare Yasusuke)—Dir: Eisuke Takizawa. (Toho; 1952; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Swordsman’s Trouble With Women, The (Jonan Ittoryu)—Ryutaro Otomo, Satomi Oka. Dir: Shoji Matsumura. (Toei; 1958; 88 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Takamaru and Kikumaru (Takamaru Kikumaru)—Kenhiro Matsumoto, Hiroshi Nawa. Dir: Sanjuro Marune. (Shochiku; 1959; 144 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Tale of Genji, The (Genji Monogatari)—Live-action film version of Murasaki Shikibu’s literary masterpiece about the life of Hikaru Genji. Born the son of an emperor in the Heian era but made a commoner, Genji is the most handsome man in the nation with unparalleled abilities in poetry and music. Dir: Kozaburo Yoshimura. (Daiei; 1951; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Tale of Genji, The—Anime adaption of the classic tale by Murasaki Shikibu. Dir: Gisaburo Sugii. (Asahi/CPM; 1987-1995; 110 min; Color; Subt; NR)

Tales of the Taira Clan (Shin Heike Monogatari)—Raizo Ichikawa, Narutoshi Hayashi, Michiyoshi Kuge, Eitaro Shindo, Ichiro Sugai, Koreya Senda, Eijiro Oya, Mitsaburo Ramon, Yosiko Kuga. Dir: Kenji Mizoguchi. (Daiei; 1955; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Ten Days of Young Shingo, The: Part 1 (Shingo Jaban-shobu)—Hashizo Okawa (Shingo), Ryutarou Otomo. Dir: Sadatsugu Matsuda. (Toei; 1959; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Ten Days of Young Shingo, The: Part 2 (Shingo Jaban-shobu)—Hashizo Okawa (Shingo), Yumiko Hasegawa. Dir: Sadatsugu Matsuda. (Toei; 1959; 87 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Ten To Chi To—See Heaven and Earth

Tenchu (Hitokiri)—Shintaro Katsu (Izo Okada), Tatsuya Nakadai (Hempeita Takechi), Yukio Mishima (Shimbei Tanaka), Yujirou Ishihara (Ryoma Sakamoto), Mitsuko Baisho, Takumi Shinjo (Minakawa). Dir: Hideo Gosha. (Daiei; 1969; 140 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

Tenka Gomen—Isuzu Yamada, Koshiro Matsumoto. Dir: Kunito Watanabe. (Shochiku; 1960; 85 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Tenryu no Karasu—Shintaro Katsu, Shoji Umewaka. Dir: Kimiyoshi Yasuda. (Toei; 1959; 83 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

They Who Step on the Tiger’s Tail—See Men Who Tread on the Tiger’s Tail, The.

Thief is Shogun’s Kinsman—Dir: Tomu Uchida. (Toei; 1959; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

Three Outlaw Samurai (Sambiki no Samurai)—Tetsuro Tamba (Sakon Shiba), Mikijiro Hira (Einosuke Kikyo), Isuzu Yamada (Kiyosada), Koshiro Matsumoto. Dir: Kihachi Okamato. (Shochiku; 1956; 110 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Three Treasures, The (Nippon Tanjo)—Toshiro Mifune (Prince Yanato), Yoko Tsurata, Mutsuko Kusabue, Jushiro Konoe, Chieko Saki. Dir: Seichichi Fukuda. (Shochiku; 1956; 110 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Three Ways to Die (Kitsune Kago)—Kokichi Takada, Junzaburo Ban, Mitsuko Kusabue, Jushiro Konoe, Chieko Saki. Dir: Seiichi Fukuda. (Shochiku; 1956; 110 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Throne of Blood (Kumono-sho)—Japanese remake of MacBeth, in which a samurai receives a prophecy from a spirit and stages a coup against his lord. Also released as The Castle of the Spider’s Web. Toshiro Mifune (Taketoki Washizu), Isuzu Yamada (Asaji), Minoru Chiaki (Yoshitsuki Miki), Akira Kubo (Yoshiteru), Takamaru Sasaki (Kuniharu Tsuzuki), Yotchi Tachikawa (Kuniharu’s son), Takashi Shimura (Noriyasu Odagura), Chieko Naniwa (Sorceress). Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (Toho; 1957; 108/110 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Throne of Flame (Honoho no Shiro)—Hashizo Okawa, Yosho Mita. Dir: Yasushi Kato. (Toei; 1960; 99 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Thunder Kid, The (Asama no ahabenro)—Kinnosuke Nakamura, Satomi Ota. Dir: Juichi Konno. (Toei; 1958; 82 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

Time Slip—See Sengoku Jitai

Tokai no Kyokaku—Kinnosuke Nakamura, Keiko Okawa. Dir: Masahiro

The resourcefulness of times of peace is the military preparation for times of war. With five hundred allies one can defeat an enemy force of ten thousand.

—Notes on Martial Laws
Makino. (Toei; 1960; 86 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Tough in a Purple Hood, The (Murasaki zukin)**—Chiezo Kataoka, Kotaro Satomi. Dir: Hideaki Inishi. (Toei; 1958; 89 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Town Hero, The (Tenka no ichidaiji)**—Kinnosuke Nakamura, Hitomi Nakahara. Dir: Chu Sawamura. (Toei; 1958; 91 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Travelling Ruffian, The**—Hashizo Okawa, Ryutaro Otomo. Dir: Masahiro Makino. (Toei; 1958; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Treasure of Ryujin-maru, The (Bijo komori)**—Kokichi Takada, Mitsuko Kasabue, Junzaburo Ban, Michiko Saga. Dir: Shochiku. (Shochiku; 1957; 107 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Tsubaki Sanjuro**—See Sanjuro

**Ugetsu**—In this 16th century drama, two brothers, potters by trade, take their wives to the city seeking success. One wants to achieve wealth, the other to become a samurai. In the city they encounter the ghost of beautiful, aristocratic woman. Based on the stories of Akinari Ueda. Won the Best Competing Film and Silver Lion Awards at the 1953 Venice Film Festival. Machiko Kyo, Yuzo Kayama, Toshiro Mifune. Dir: Hiroshi Inagata. (Toho; 1953; 96 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Ugetsu Monogatari**—See Ugetsu

**Under the Banner of the Samurai**—See Samurai Banners.

**Vendetta of Samurai (Ketto kagiyoi no tsujii)**—Screenplay written by Akira Kurosawa. Toshiro Mifune, Yuriko Hamada. Dir: Issei Mori. (Toho; 1951; 82 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Vengeance Trail, The (Yudachi Kangoro)**—Dir: Eisuke Takizawa. (Toho; 1953; Unk; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Violent Lord, The (Abarai Daimyô)**—Utaemon Ichikawa, Keiko Okawa. Dir: Kokichi Uchide. (Toei; 1959; 90 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Walaki Hi no Nobunaga**—Raizo Ichikawa, Atsuko Kindaichi. Dir: Issei Mori. (Daiei; 1959; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Walkers on the Tiger’s Tail**—See Men Who Tread on the Tiger’s Tail, The

**Wanderer, The (Rindo garasu)**—Kokichi Takada, Michiko Saga, Mieko Takamine, Yoshio Yoshida. Dir: Kimiyoshi Yasuda. (Daiei; 1964; 85 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

**Warring Clans (Sengoku Yaro)**—Yuzo Kayama, Yuriko Hoshi, Makoto Sato. Dir: Kihachi Okamoto. (Toho; 1953; 97 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Whirlwind (Dai Tatsumaki)**—Also released as Dai Tatsumaki. Somegoro Ichikawa, Makoto Sato, Yosuke Natsuki, Yuriko Hoshi, Yoshio Kuga, Toshiro Mifune. Dir: Hiroshi Inagata. (Toho; 1964; 106 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**White, the Yellow and the Black**—See Il Bianco, Il Giallo, Il Nero

**White, Yellow and Black**—See Il Bianco, Il Giallo, Il Nero

**Woman and the Pirate, The (Onna to Kaikoku)**—Kazu Hasegawa, Michiko Kyô. Dir: Daisuke Ito. (Daiei; 1959; 90 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Yabu no Naka no Kuroneko**—See Kuroneko

**Yagyu Conspiracy**—Japanese television series about the Yagyu clan during Tokugawa Japan. Shown in San Francisco and Los Angeles (possibly other) areas here in the U.S.A. (Color; Subt; NR)

**Yagyu Secret Scroll, The**—See Ninjutsu

**Yojimbo**—Toshiro Mifune plays probably his most famous role of the brash rônin, who finds himself in a village torn apart by a yakuza gang war. Mifune plays both gangs against each other and eventually destroys both, bringing peace to the village. Yojimbo inspired Sergio Leone’s western, *Fistful of Dollars*, as well as the American *Last Man Standing*. Toshiro Mifune (Sanjuro-Kuwabatakete), Eiijiro Tono (Gonji), Kamatarı Fujiwara (Tazemon, the silk merchant), Seizaburo Kawazu (Seiichi), Isuzu Yamada (Orie), Hiroshi Tachikawa (Yoichi), Takashi Shimura (Takemon, the sake merchant), Kyu Suzuki (Ushitora), Daisuke Kato (Inokichi), Tatsuya Nakadai (Unosuke), Susumu Fujita (Honma), Atsushi Watanabe (Coffin-maker), Ikiro Sawamura (Hansuke), Akira Nishimura (Kama), Yoshio Tsushicha (Kohei), Yoko Tsukasa (Nai), Yosuke Natsuki (Kohei’s son). Dir: Akira Kurosawa. (Toho; 1961; 110 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Yotoden**—A 3-volume anime series set in the late 16th century. Oda Nobunaga seeks to wipe out the Iga and Kôga ninja clans, and uses demons and sorcery to do it! Dir: Unk. (Color; Dub/Subt; NR)

**Yotsuya Ghost Story (Yotsuya Kaidan)**—Kazuo Hasegawa, Yasuko Nakada. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1959; 84 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Young Cavaliers, The (Futari Wakagishı)**—Chiyonosuke Azuma, Sentaro Fushimi. Dir: Kinnosuke Fukuda. (Toei; 1959; 88 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Young Swordsman (Hiken)**—Somegoro Ichikawa, Hiroyuki Nagato, Junko Ikeuchi. Dir: Hiroshi Inagaki. (Toho; 1963; 108 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Yutaro Kodan**—Raizo Ichikawa, Yoko Uraji. Dir: Katsuhiko Fushimi. (Daiei; 1959; 95 min; B&W; Subt; NR)

**Zato Ichi (Zato Ichı Kenka-tabi)**—Also released as Zato Ichı and the Scoundrels and Zato Ichı on the Road. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı), Shihio Fujimura, Ryuzo Shimada, Reiko Fuwajima, Matsaburo Niwa, Yoshio Yoshida. Dir: Kiyoshiya Yudasu. (Daiei; 1964; 85 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zato Ichı’s Flashing Sword**—See Zatoichi: The Sword of Zato Ichı

**Zato Ichı and the Scoundrels**—See Zato Ichı

**Zato Ichı on the Road**—See Zato Ichı

**Zato Ichı and the Drum**—See Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman Saramitar

**Zatoichi: Adventures of a Blind Man (Zato Ichı Sekisho Yaburi)**—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı). Dir: Kiyoshiya Yudasu. (Daiei; 1964; 86; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zato Ichı: Fight, Zato Ichı, Fight (Zato Ichı Kessho Tabi)**—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı). Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1964; Unk min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zato Ichı: Life and Opinion of Masseur Ichı (Zato Ichı Monogatari)**—One of a series of films (begun in 1962) about a blind masseur who is an expert swordsman and a wanted criminal. Zatoichi travels the country seeking a quiet life from those who pursue him. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı), Massayo Banri, Ryuzo Shimada, Gen Mitamura, Shigeru Amachi, Chitose Maki. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1962; 96 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichı: Masseur Ichı A Chest of Gold (Zato Ichı Senryoku Kibi)**—Also released as Zato Ichı and A Chest of Gold. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı), Mikio Narita, Chizuyu Hayashi. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Daiei; 1964; 83 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichı: Masseur Ichı Enters Again (Shin Zato Ichı Monogatari)**—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı). Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1963; 91 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichı: Masseur Ichı on the Road (Zato Ichı Kenka-Tabi)**—Zato Ichı gets embroiled in an adventure in which he escorts a young woman. The daughter of a wealthy merchant, who once worked as a servant for a daimyō but fled after she injured him when the lord tried to rape her. They yakuza gangs also get involved and the sword fighting soon follows! Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı), Mikio Narita, Chizuyu Hayashi. Dir: Kiyoshiya Yudasu. (Daiei; 1964; 85 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichı: Masseur Ichı The Fugitive (Zato Ichı Kyojotabi)**—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichı), Miwa Takada, Misayo Banri, Jun-ichiro Narita, Katsuhiko Kobayashi. Dir: Tokuzo Tanaka. (Daiei; 1963; 86 min; Unk; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichı Meets Yojimbo (Zato Ichı to Yojinbo)**—Two of chambara’s

---

Walk with a real man one hundred yards and he’ll tell you at least seven lies.

— Yamamoto Jîn’emon
most famous characters—the blind swordsman and the brash rônin—meet in this classic film. Two versions of different lengths were released. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Toshiro Mifune (Yojimbo), Ayako Wakao (Umenô), Yonekura Masakene (Masagoro), Takizuw Shu (Eboshi Yasuke), Morl Kishida (Kazuyru), Kanjuro Arashi (Hyoroku), Shigeru Kamiyama, Toshiyuki Hosokawa. Dir: Kihachi Okamoto. (Dai; 1970; 90/116 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: Showdown for Zatoichi**—The blind masseur accidentally injures a young girl in a sword fight and tries to earn money to pay for her care, only to discover that his recent traveling companion is the killer of the girl’s father-in-law. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Chiizu Hayashi, Kaneko Iwasmaki, Mikio Narita. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Dai; 1968; 87 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman**—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Mikio Narita, Chiizu Hayashi. Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Dai; 1965; 87 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman and the Chess Expert**—Also released as Zato Ichi’s Trip Into Hell and Showdown for Zato Ichi. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Mikio Narita (Junonji), Chiizu Hayashi (Enoshimeya), Kaneko Iwasmaki (Onane), Gaku Yamamoto (Tomonoshin). Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Dai; 1968; 87 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman and the Fugitives** (Zato Ichi Hatashijio)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Umiko Nogawa (Oaki), Kayo Mikimoto (Oshizu), Kyosuke Machida (Ogano), Takashi Shimura (Junan). Dir: Kiyomich Misumi. (Dai; 1968; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman Meets His Equal** (Zato Ichi “Yabure! Tojin-ken”)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Wang Eu (Wang Kong), Hamaki Yuko (Osen), Terada Michie (Oyone), Nambara Koji (Kakuzen). Dir: Kiyomich Misumi. (Dai; 1971; 94 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman Samaritan** (Zato Ichi Kenka-daiko)—Also released as Zato Ichi and the Drum. Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Yoshiko Mita (Osame), Makoto Sato (Yasuburo), Ko Nishimura (Sosuke), Takuya Fijisoka (Shinkichi). Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Dai; 1968; 84 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman’s Cane Sword** (Zato Ichi Tekka Tahi)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Shiho Fujimura (Oshizu), Eijiro Tono (Senzo), Tatsuco Endo (Iwagoro). Dir: Kiyomich Misumi. (Dai; 1967; 93 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman’s Fire Festival** (Zato Ichi Abare Himatsuri)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Tsutaya Nakadai (Rônin), Reiko Ohara (Okiyo), Masayuki Mori (Yamikuburo), Peter (Umeji). Dir: Kenji Misumi. (Dai; 1970; 96 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman’s Rescue** (Zato Ichi Ro Yaburi)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Rentaro Mikuni (Asagoro), Akira Nishimura (Uneshiro Suga), Yuko Hamada (Shino), Toshikyo Hosokawa (Nisaburo), Takuya Fujisoka (Sanzan), Kenjirô Ishiyama (Tetsugoro). Dir: Satsuo Yamamoto. (Dai; 1967; 96 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman’s Revenge** (Zato Ichi Nidan Giri)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi). Dir: Akira Inoue. (Dai; 1965; 85 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Blind Swordsman’s Vengeance** (Zato Ichi no Uta Ga Kikouen)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Shigeru Amachi, Mayumi Ogawa, Kei Soto, Jun Hamamura. Dir: Tokuzô Tanaka. (Dai; 1966; 83 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: The Return of Masseur Ichi** (Zaku Zato Ichi Monogatari)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi). Dir: Kazuo Mori. (Dai; 1962; 71 min; Und; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi and the Doomed Man** (Zato Ichi Sakata Giri)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Kanbi Fujiyama, Eiko Taki, Masako Myoko, Koichi Mizuhara. Dir: Issei Morl. (Dai; 1965; 88 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: Zatoichi at Large** (Zato Ichi Goyotabi)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi), Rentaro Mikuni (Tetsugoro), Hisaya Morishige (Tohei), Etsushi Takahashi (Saturo), Naoko Ohtani (Oye), Osamu Sakai (Seiji). Dir: Kazuo Mori. (Toh; 1972; 87 min; Color; Subt; NR)

**Zatoichi: Zatoichi’s Pilgrimage** (Zato Ichi Umio Wataro)—Shintaro Katsu (Zato Ichi). Dir: Kazuo Ikehiru. (Dai; 1966; 82 min; Color; Subt; NR)

---

**BIBLIOGRAPHY**

**REFERENCE BOOKS**


clan officials and particularly the councilors and senior officers are the spokesmen of the views of their lord; any criticism of them is a reflection on their lord. — Daidôji Yûzan
When a man is about to die his words should be such as appear right. This is what the end of a samurai should be.

— Anonymous
GLOSSARY
The following words are listed in English alphabetical order, using the Romanji spellings; macrons follow the plain letter (e.g., ō follows o). Surnames and bynames are not included, except for certain notable personalities, nor are most office titles and ranks, as they are listed elsewhere.

Some Romanji spellings represent different kanji that have the same pronunciation. In these cases, the definitions of each will be listed after one Romanji spelling, though it may represent more than one Japanese word.

Abukuma-gawa—Japan’s seventh longest river, at 239 km (149 mi).
Abumi—Stirrups.
Adams—William Adams; an English pilot who shipwrecked off the coast of Japan and was the first Westerner to become samurai.
Agawagawa—A river on Honshū.
Aganogawa—Japan’s ninth longest river, at 210 km (130 mi).
Akechi Mitsuhide—One of Nobunaga’s generals, turns coat and attacks Nobunaga at night, in 1582, killing him. Hideyoshi punishes the traitor and becomes Nobunaga’s heir.
Aiguchi—Knife without a handguard.
Aikawa—A town on Sado island, near an active gold mine (worked almost exclusively by exiles).
Ainu—Japanese aboriginal people, also known as the Ezo or Ebusu.
Aisuk-Uke Ryū—A ken-jutsu ryū.
Aki—One of the provinces in the Sanyōdō region of Honshū.
Akinai—Trading skill.
Akindo—Merchant.
aman—Buddhist nun; also called bikuni.
amado—Rain shutters.
amano-Jakū—Imp of heaven.
Amaterasu Omikami—The Shintō goddess (Imp of heaven) of the sun and ancestor of the imperial line. Child of Izanagi and Izanami. The Grand Shrine at Ise, Japan’s most important Shintō site, is dedicated to her.
amazaki—A sweetened, low-alcohol form of sake, used primarily during religious festivals.
Amegashüsa—Susano-o’s domain; the Bizen/Bitchū area of Honshū.
Ame no Minakunashi—The first kami (Shintō) Creator of the universe.
Amida—Buddha as master of paradise in the Pure Land of the West, revered especially in the Jōdo sect.
Anamizu—Town in Noto province.
Anegawa—Site of battle in 1570 at which Nobunaga defeats the Asai and Asakura clans.
Anō-sakuseiho—Cryptography.
anoko—Sweet bean paste.
Asama-Yama—A Japanese mountain 8,340 ft tall, the eighth tallest in Japan.
Asano Naganori—The daimyō of Akô province; he was forced to commit seppuku in 1701 after drawing his sword in the shōgun’s palace to attack an official who’d embarrassed him, resulting in 47 of his retainers plotting for a year to avenge his death.
Asayama Ichiden Ryū—One of the six provinces making up the Nankaidō region. 2. A province in the Tôkaidō region of Honshū. (Same pronunciation, different kanji).
avabi—Abalone.
Awaji—An island that nearly links Shikoku to the province of Harima in Honshū, and one of the six provinces making up the Nankaidō region. Awaji was the first solid land created by Izanami and Izanagi, according to Japanese historical myth.
Awase—("Joinings") Amusements and games of the Earth of the West, revered especially in the Jōdō of the universe.
Awatage—Palace; See Shoren-in.
Bakan—Given names read in more formal-sounding qualities.
Bashō—Literary name of the Tenshō era (1573–1593) by Asayama Ichidensai Shigetsatsu; associated with the goshi or jizumariu.
Ashigaru—("Fast legs") Rank-and-file spearman, usually bonge (though they may be low-ranking buke, as well).
Ashikaga Yoshiteru—Former Shōgun, who was assassinated by Miyoshi Yoshitsugu and Matsunaga Hisahide in 1565.
Ashikaga Yoshishiki—Shōgun (1568–1573).
Aso-san—A Japanese mountain on Kyushū, 5,223 ft tall.
Asuka—1. Historical era (592–710) in which the imperial court moves to Asuka, in Yamato. 2. A city in Yamato province, near the city of Nara, former seat of Imperial court.
Atemi-waza—Unarmed combat style, originated in Ryū-kyū islands (Okinawa).
Atsuta-jingū—One of the most important shrines in all Japan. Kusunagi no Tsurugi (Grass-Mowing Sword), one of the three sacred treasures, resides here.
Awa—1. One of the six provinces making up the Nankaidō region. 2. A province in the Tōkaidō region of Honshū (Same pronunciation, different kanji).
Awabi—Abalone.
Bitchū—One of the provinces in the Sanyōdō region of Honshū.
Biwa—A heavy, lute-like instrument.
Bitchū—See Biwa-ko.
Biwa-ko—Japan’s largest lake, at 674 km² (260 mi²), located in central Honshū.
Bizen—One of the provinces in the Sanyōdō region of Honshū, one of the best known production centers (known as the “Six Old Kilns”) of fine ceramic ware (yaki). Bizen-yaki later becomes very popular with tea masters, and much used in the tea ceremony (cha-no-yu).
Bō—Six-shaku (foot)-long hickory wood staff.
Bō—Long staff fighting skill.
Bokken—Wooden practice sword.
Bô-naginata—Wooden practice naginata.
Bônge—A commoner. Also called heimin.
Bon odori—Dances common during the evening hours of the O-Bon festival.
Bonsen—Miniature landscaping.
Bonze—Buddhist priest.
Bo-sama—Beings who were once human but now are one step away from achieving Buddha-hood, but refuse to enter paradise in favor of remaining here to help man. (See also daibosatsu).
Bōshū—("Work of sowing") The first 15 days of the O-Bon festival.
Bo-shi—Barbary customs.
Bukuro—Barrack dog.
Bushi—Warrior.
Bushido—("Way of the Warrior"). The Buke’s code...in times of peace, the steadfast samurai, particularly if he is old but even if he is young and stricken with some serious disease, ought to show firmness and resolution and attack no importance to leaving this life.
of ethics and philosophy
bushō—Lazy
bu-shoban—A small square gold coin, worth one koku
Butsu—Buddhism (see also Bukkyō)
buto—Court Dance
Buzen—A province in the Saikaidō region (Kyūshū).
bûyō—Measurement of time, half a second.
Bûyôdo—Tendai sect temple at Uji (f. 1211), also known as the Phoenix Temple.

choji—
chûnin—Administrators, clan elders, teachers, and the chûgokushi—
Chinese (language) Chûgokugo—
Samurai attendant
Samurai clan in Shikoku. Defeated in Chôsokabe—
Chôsengo—
Chôsei-ji—A branch of the Jôdô sect of Buddhism.
Chôraku-ji—Townsperson
Chomiryo—Spices
dai—Great, big.
dai—dai-bakemono—Greater goblin
Daibosatsu—Major or important bosatsu.
Daibutsu—The 37-shaku-tall (about 12 meters), bronze-cast statue of Buddha. It is second in height to the one in Tô- daiji.
daio—Two wood rods joined by long rope
daikagura—Juggling

Daikan—("Great cold") The second 15 days of the twelfth month (Shiwasu)
Daikoku—One of the Seven Lucky Gods of Ryobu- Shintō. Daikoku is the god of riches and wealth (and farmers).
daikon—Large white radish
dai-kyō—See yumi
daimyō—1. A feudal lord or provincial military governor. There were some 265 daimyō families during the Edo Period.
Dainichi Nyōrai—One of the Buddhist trinity and the Five Buddhas of Contemplation, Dainichi is the cosmic Buddha and represents wisdom and purity.
Dai-zen—Sacred shugen-dō mountain, in Hōki; it is 5,614 ft tall
Daiseishu—("Great snow") The first 15 days of the eleventh month (Shimotsuki)
Daiseitoku—A Japanese mountain 7,513 ft tall, the tallest in Japan
Daisho—("Great heat") The second 15 days of the sixth month (Minazuki)
daishō—("Long-short" or "great-small") Paid of swords; symbol of the samurai
Daitō Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryû founded by Sekiguchi Hachiroemon Ujiyuki
Daitoku-ji—A subset of the Rinzai branch of Zen Buddhism
dangai dō—Cuirass having a differently constructed bottom half from its top
dangi—Swastika; symbol of the samurai
Dan-no-Ura—Location of a sea battle in 1185, in which Minamoto no Yoshitsune annihilates the Taira army. The subject of poetry and songs for centuries after.
Dantokuzan—A mountain in Sado province
danwa—Conversation
Dara’u—City on Kyūshū and site of the landing of the Mongol invasion force in the 12th century.
Dajin—Island ghetto in Nagasaki and home of many Dutch traders, merchants and sailors.
dengaku—Verandah, covered porch, surrounding most upper-class homes.
Dôkyō—The judge of the dead and overseer of the Buddhist hells.
Enmei Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryû founded by Shibuki Shinsurō in the Edo period.
En no Gyôja—"En the Miracleman" Founder of the Shugendō sect of Buddhism.
Enryaku-ji—The major temple on Hiezan (or Mt. Hie, a mountain about 345 ft from Miyako) and seat of the Tendai sect. Was burned to the ground in 1571 by Oda Nobunaga
eriwa—Taller standing gorget that protects the neck and throat.
etta—("Mach filth") 1. A pejorative reference to the pariah caste. 2. Member of the eta caste.
Etsū—Province in Honsû; one of the seven provinces making up the region of Hokurikudō.
Ezo—1. Northern island of Japan (Hokkaido); 2. Japanese rule. Her son, the emperor Ojin, will be deified as Hachiman, the god of war.

Enkaku-ji—1. Rinzai-zen sect temple in Kamakura, built in 1282 to honor those who fell repelling the Mongols in the 13th century. 2. A subset of the Rinzai branch of Zen Buddhism
Engawa—Verandah, covered porch, surrounding most upper-class homes.
Emma—The deity empowered to combat devils
Enmei—A deity empowered to combat devils
Enmei Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryû founded by Shibuki Shinsurō in the Edo period.
En no Gyôja—"En the Miracleman" Founder of the Shugendō sect of Buddhism.
Enryaku-ji—The major temple on Hiezan (or Mt. Hie, a mountain about 345 ft from Miyako) and seat of the Tendai sect. Was burned to the ground in 1571 by Oda Nobunaga
eriwa—Taller standing gorget that protects the neck and throat.
etta—("Mach filth") 1. A pejorative reference to the pariah caste. 2. Member of the eta caste.
Etsū—Province in Honsû; one of the seven provinces making up the region of Hokurikudō.
Ezo—1. Northern island of Japan (Hokkaido); 2. Japanese rule. Her son, the emperor Ojin, will be deified as Hachiman, the god of war.

Enkaku-ji—1. Rinzai-zen sect temple in Kamakura, built in 1282 to honor those who fell repelling the Mongols in the 13th century. 2. A subset of the Rinzai branch of Zen Buddhism
Engawa—Verandah, covered porch, surrounding most upper-class homes.
Emma—The deity empowered to combat devils
Enmei—A deity empowered to combat devils
Enmei Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryû founded by Shibuki Shinsurō in the Edo period.
En no Gyôja—"En the Miracleman" Founder of the Shugendō sect of Buddhism.
Enryaku-ji—The major temple on Hiezan (or Mt. Hie, a mountain about 345 ft from Miyako) and seat of the Tendai sect. Was burned to the ground in 1571 by Oda Nobunaga
eriwa—Taller standing gorget that protects the neck and throat.
etta—("Mach filth") 1. A pejorative reference to the pariah caste. 2. Member of the eta caste.
Etsū—Province in Honsû; one of the seven provinces making up the region of Hokurikudō.
Ezo—1. Northern island of Japan (Hokkaido); 2. Japanese rule. Her son, the emperor Ojin, will be deified as Hachiman, the god of war.

Fernão Mendez Pinto—Portuguese man who lands at the port of Nishimura on Tanegashima in 1543.
feruzue—Six shaku (foot) staff with chain; see bô and manriki-gusari for details.
Frois—See Luis Frois
fude—Writing brush
fudenshiki—brush case
fudeoki—brush holder
Fuô Myô—A deity empowered to combat devils (Buddhist)
Bedroll—Fancy, decorative fan
Fukushima—A town in Shinano province.
Ventriloquism skill—fukuwa-jutsu—fumesei—Bad reputation
(“Letter-writing month”) The seventh month (Satsuki)
Fushima Castle—furu—Old furibô—Large, heavy club
Ritual suicide when the performer blames funagoto—funin—funata-yari—Forked lance
Fukuoka—fuki—Butterbur bulbs
Fuke—One of the Seven Lucky Gods of Fukurokuju—fukakusa —Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Buddhism.
Fukakusa —Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Buddhism.
Fukakusa —Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Buddhism.
Fukashima—A town in Shinano province.
Fukiwaza—Ventriloquism skill
fumesel—Bad reputation
fumin—Insonnia
Fumizuki—(“Summer solstice”) The second 15 days of the fifth month (Satsuki)
Fumino—wooden clogs
Gifu—A town in Mino province.
Gion Matsuri—A month-long festival in Miyako. The highlight is Yamahoko-junkô, on the 17th, when huge floats are pulled through the streets by teams of sweating celebrants.
gishoin-jutsu—Forgery
Gissa—Wagon
go—1. A strategic board game imported from China, very popular among the populace. Also called i-go. 2. Five.
gb—1. A unit of volume equal to .18 liter (half pint). 2. Nom de guerre; warrior’s adopted name.
gō—1. A go board; it resembles a shôgi board in shape, noughts and crosses, a game similar to tic-tac-toe, played on a standard 19 x 19 lines. 2. Nom de guerre; warrior’s adopted name.
Gokuraku—Gokoku—Gohô shuriken—Five-pointed (or Hoshijô, “star-shaped”) shuriken.
Gokuraku—“Blissful” Aida Buddha’s Western Paradise.
goma abura—Sesame oil
gomoku narabe—(Five-eye line-up) A variant of go similar to tic-tac-toe, played on a standard go board; the object is to be the first one to get five stones of one color lined up horizontally, diagonally, or vertically.
gomon-jutsu—Interrogation
gongen—Manifestations
gon-ji—Assistant head priest of a shrine (Shintô).
gon-ji—Assistant head priest of a shrine (Shintô)
go-sanke—(Three honorable families) Three families making up the Tokugawa clan: the Kii Tokugawa, the Mito Tokugawa, and the Owari Tokugawa.
Gôshô-ji—Division of the Ikkô (Jôdo Shin, or True Pure Land) Sect of Buddhism.
gosoku-tsukuri—Armoring; armor maintenance and repair
gotoku neko—Armoring; armor maintenance and repair
gosoku-tsukuri—Armoring; armor maintenance and repair
Gozaihonyoraima—A mountain in Japan.
—gozen—(Honorable [person]-in-front-[of me]) Title appended to the given name of a well-born woman.
gûi—Head Shin tô priest of a shrine (see also kannushi)
gunbai—Flat war fan; Signalng fan
gusan jô—A three and one half shaku (foot) wooden stick of Ryukyu origin.
gusoku-bitsu—Armor box
gyûji—A basho (sumô match) referee
gyokai rui—Seafood
gyokusô—The “jewel” piece in the game Shôgi.

Hachi—Eight
Hachigane—Small metal plate or plates sewn to a head cloth.
Hachihon—Headband
Hachimaki—1. Style of shrine architecture style. 2. See Hachiman Daibosatsu.
Hachimana Daibosatsu—Originally the emperor Ojin, son of Empress Jintô, Hachiman was deified as a great bodhisattva (daibosatsu) as the god of war, and is the tutelary deity of the Minamoto.
Hachimitsu—Wild honey
Hachiro-gata—Japan’s eleventh largest lake, at 48 km² (19 mi.)
Hachiwara—(“Helmet-splitter”) Heavy jitte-like weapon
Hadajban—Under-kinono
Hagōta—Colorful paddle used in the game Hanetsuki
Haidate—Armored skirt; hip and thigh protection.
Haiden—Small worship hall in a shrine.
Haimyô—A poet’s adopted name
Ha-justu—Demolitions skill
Hakama—Buke-style trousers
Hakamaki—A ceremony in a boy 3 to 7 years old is made to stand on a go board, with his feet clad in tabi, and to pick up a go stone using his toes. This ceremony, also called chakago, marks his entry into society.
Hakuro—(“White dew”) The first 15 days of the fifth month (Satsuki)
Hamana-ko—Japan’s tenth largest lake, at 69 km² (27 mi.)
Hamon—Formal expulsion from a ryû
Han—Fief
Hana-fuda—(“Flower cards”) A memory game developed in the Edo period utilizing pictures painted on cards.
Hannô—Metal mask; face mask which leaves the nose exposed.
Hanburi—Half-bowl helmet worn on the forehead
Han-chô—(“Odd-even”) A dice game
Handai—Dining table
Han—Fief
Han-myô—Poison extracted from the toxic Tiger Beetle
Han-sô—Sailing
Harai—A loose, buttok-length coat
Hara—Field; plain (—war when used as a compound)
Haragei—Concentration
Harmaki—Belly wrap cloth, designed to keep the belly warmer.
Hanten—Jacket; firefighter’s jacket
happō shrureken—Eight-pointed shrureken; also used by the Iga and Koga shinobi clans.
happuri—Metal headband
haara ate—Breast plate only (no back plate).
haramaki dō—Wraparound of scale construction or five-plate opening up the back.
Harima—One of the provinces in the Sanyōdo region of Honshū.
haru—Spring
Hasedera—Temple in Kamakura (f. 733) that houses a 10 meters statue of an eleven-faced Kannon, the tallest wooden statue in Japan.
Hasegawa Ryū—A ken-jutsu ryū.
hashaku bō—Eight shaku (foot) wooden staff
hashi—Chopsticks (see also ohashi)
Hashiba Hidesyoshi—See Toyotomi Hidesyoshi
hatamono—("Foot of the banner") Direct personal retainer of the daimyō.
hatomune dō—Cuirass with a central vertical ridge up the breast.
Hatsu no mae—("First visit") The year’s first visit to the shrine.
hayagake-jutsu—Forced march skill
Heian—A historical era (794–1192) in which the capital is moved to Heian-kyō.
Heika—("Sire") Form of address for the Emperor. (See also Ue-sama)
heikoroku—Decorative arrow quiver
heinin—See bonge
Heian-kyō—Capital of Peace and Calm;"Original name of Kyōto, a city in Yamashiro province. (See also Miyako)
hensu-jutsu—Disguise
heya—Sumōtori training stable
Hie—Style of shrine architecture style
Hie-Jinna—A Shintō shrine in Hie.
Hiezan—A province of the Tōsândō region of Honshū.
Hidagawa—A river on Honshū
hiden—("Secret art") See also okuden
Hideyoshi—I, Famous samurai clan. 2. See Toyotomi Hideyoshi
Hideyoshi’s Sword Hunt—Edict in 1587 to collect swords ostensibly for the iron to construct a large statue of the Buddha. His real reason is to take thousands of swords out of circulation, limiting tools of possible rebellion.
Higashiyama—A subset of the Seiun branch of Jōdōshū (see Jōdō).
Higo—A province in the Saikaidō region.
Higawa—A river on Honshū.
Hijiri—A province in the Saikaidō region.
Hibari—("Princess") Appended honorific used for courier; message runner
Hikime—A secret
Himeji (White Crane”) Castle
Hina Matsuri—City in southern Honshū containing a Dutch colony and trading house, established in 1609.
hiragana—Basic form of Japanese writing
hirajiro—plain castles
hirasanjō—mountain-in-a-plain castles
hiran—Love trouble; a tragic romance.
hiro sode—Sode which are broader at the base than the top.
Hitachi—A province in the Tōkaidō region of Honshū.
hitogata—Personality
Hizen—A province in the Saikaidō region.
hizoku—Brigand
hōate—See hanbō
hōden—Treasure hall of a shrine.
Hōjō—Famous buke house, descended from an Imperial family
hōjō—abbot’s quarters.
hōjo-jutsu—Binding; cord-tying skill
hōjo-nawa—Binding cord
hōjū—Firearms skill
Hoki Ryū—A ken-jutsu ryū.
Hoki—A province in the Sannōdō region of Honshū.
Hokke—Hokke, or Lotus Sect of Buddhism, founded in 1253 by Nichiren. There are nine divisions of the Hokke sect. Also known as the Nichiren sect.
hoko—Six shaku (foot) lance
Hokujiden—Division of the Hossō sect of Buddhism.
Hokurikudō—Region of Japan, comprised of the provinces of Echigo, Echizen, Etchū, Kaga, Kaga, Sado, Sado (island) and Wakasa.
Hommashū—The kami of fire.
hōnyō—("Law name") A name pronounced in the Sino–Japanese mode related to Buddhist doctrine or teaching.
hon—Original
honden—("Main hall") The main hall in a shrine.
Hondo—See Honshū
Hōnen—Buddhist priest and advocate of the Jōdō sect, which increases in popularity after he begins to preach in it 1175.
Hongan-ji—1. Ikko sect temple in Miyako; the original seat of the Ikko sect (f. 1272). 2. Division of the Ikko (Jōdō Shinshū, or True Pure Land) sect of Buddhism.
Honnō—Main compound of a castle
Honzasō—Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Buddhism
Honzan—Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Buddhism.
Honshū—The largest of the three main islands of Japan. Also called Hondo
Honzan—A subset of the Jō sect of Buddhism.
Honzan-ka—The Tendar branch of the Shugendō sect of Buddhism, based in the Shigō-in, in Miyako.
Horen—Dried radish leaves
Hosi—Hosō Sect of Buddhism; founded in 657 by Chitchō. The original seat was Genkō-ji in Settsu. There are two division of the Hosō sect.
Hotaka-dake—A Japanese mountain 10,466 ft tall, the third tallest in Japan
Hotate—Clamshell cuirass of smooth (or solid plate) construction.
Hozo-in Ryū—A sō-jutsu ryū.
hyakunin isshū—A card game created in the Heian Period, on which half of an ancient poem is written on each card; players must match the poem cards.
hyakushō—Farmer
Hyōhō—Wooden clappers; used to signal an alarm or get attention
Hyōsō—Short goblins with multi-jointed limbs.
Hyūga—A province in the Saikaidō region.
I—Boar
Iai-jutsu—Fast draw technique (with katana)
ichi—1. One. 2. First. 3. Masseur
ichi—("One Buddha") Often added after the names of female members of the Jō sect of Buddhism.
ichijō—A subset of the Chizai branch of Jōdōshū (see Jōdō).
ichijō—A river on Honshū
Ichinen—A branch of the Jōdō sect of Buddhism.
I-Ching—Book of Changes; divining text
ichino-Tani kabuto—Helmet augmented by a sloping, curved vertical panel.
ichiyā—A subset of the Jō sect of Buddhism.
Iga—A province in the Tōkaidō region of Honshū.
Igaku—Physician skill
igo—See go
Iida—Town in Noto province.
Iitoyo—A mountain in Sado province.
ika—Squid
ikebana—Flower arranging
Ikenū—The original seat of the Hokke Sect.
Iki—An island near Kyōshū and a province in the Saikaidō region.
Ikkō—A subset of the Jō sect of Buddhism (later called Jōdō Shinshū, or True Pure Land), founded in 1224 by Shinhā. There are nine divisions.
Ikkō Ikki—(Single-Directed League) Fanatical community created by adherents to the Jōdō Shinshū (True Pure Land Sect)
Ikkoku—One of the original kami in the Shinshō pantheon.
Iku—Bread
Imo—Potato
Inaba—A province in the Sannōdō region of Honshū.
Inari—Goddess (kami) of rice and wealth.
Inawashiro-ko—Japan’s fourth largest lake, at 104 km² (40 mi.²), on Honshū.
Ingo—Secret language
Iinkado—("Rank of the seal") A special certification allowing the shihanke to pass on the traditions and teachings of a ryū to others.
Inro—First aid pouch
Inro tenugui—Bandsages
Inu—Dog
Inu Ōmono—Dog hunt, popular among some samurai clans
Irori—Raised hearth
Iru—Clothing
Ishimi—Impulsiveness
Ise—A province in the Tōkaidō region of Honshū.
Ise Dai-jingū—Shintō shrine in Ise.
Ise-ei—Lobster
Ise Jingū—Ise is the most important shrine in all of Japan that the emperor visits on New Year’s Day.

One will only go against the teachings of his parents if he thinks first of his own situation and regards their advice as troublesome.
—Shiba Yoshimas
Japan. The outer shrine honors the goddess of the harvest, the inner honors Amaterasu. Two of the imperial treasures, the jeweled mirror and the mirror, are housed in Ise.

ishi—Doctor

Ishikari-gawa—Japan’s third longest river, at 262 km (163 mi.)

Ishikawa Goemon—Japanese “Robin Hood,” who began operating in 1574. His 21-year career comes to an end when he is arrested in 1595 and executed by being boiled alive.

ishizumii—Masonry

Isshin Ryû—A kusari-jutsu ryû.

iitako—Medium (mystic)

Itchi—Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Bud- dhism.

Itto Ryû—A kenjutsu and iaijutsu (one-handed style) ryû founded by Itto Kageshisa (1562–1653).

Iwaki—A province in the Tôkaidô region of Honshû.

Iwami—A province in the Sanindô region of Honshû.

iwami-ginzan—(Iwami silver) Mercury used as a poison

Iwashiro—A province in the Tôsândô region of Honshû.

Iyo—A province in the Tôkaidô region of Honshû.

Izamai—One of the six provinces making up the Nankaidô region.

Izumo—A province in the Sanindô region of Honshû. During the tenth month in Izumo Taisha Jinzai-sai—The first emperor and son of Jinn Shû. Also called tobari—Shintô shrine (see also jingû)

Shintô shrine (see also jinja)

jingû—See Empress Jingô

Jingô—A province in Honshû; One of the five prov- inces making up the Kinai region.

Izu—A province in the Tôkaidô region of Honshû.

Izanagi—One of the original kami in the Shintô pantheon. He was married to Izanami, with whom he created and populated the islands of Japan.

Izanami—One of the original kami in the Shintô pantheon. She was married to Izanagi, with whom she created and populated the islands of Japan.

Izu—A province in the Tôkaidô region of Honshû.

Izumi—A province in Honshû; One of the five prov- inces making up the Kinai region.

Izumo—A province in the Sanindô region of Honshû.

Izumo Taisha—Shintô shrine; Okuninushi is enshrined here. During the tenth month (Kaminazuki), all the kami repair to Izumo Taisha to visit him, making Izumo the only place where kami can be found that month.

Izumo Taisha Jinzai-sai—During the tenth month in Izumo, called Kamiari-zuki (the month with gods), when all the Shintô kami go to the Izumo Grand Shrine and visit with each other, several solemn events are held to honor the assembled kami.

J

Ji—Ji is a mendicant Pure Land order (see Jûdô), founded in 1275 by Bizen. It is divided into 12 sub- sets. The original seat was Shojôkô-ji in Sagami.

ji—Written characters (e.g., Komachi-ji)

ji—temple (Buddhist)


Jikishikage Ryû—See Kashima Shinden Ryû

Jikoku—See Jikoku shôa-the “trademark” of the Iga and Koga shinobi clans.

Jimoku—A privately rented basket or hammock arrange- ment slung from a long pole

Jimun Tennen—The first emperor and son of Amaterasu Omikami, goddess of the sun, who ruled from 660–585 BC (According to the Kojiki).

Jinsin Revolt—A short but bloody revolt in 672, caused by a dispute over imperial succession; Prince Ōtomo defeats prince Ōtomo, and becomes the next emperor.

jitsugyô—Business

jitsu—See nanori

jitsu—True name

jitsu—Practical Arts

Jitsuyô Ryû—A kenjutsu and shuriken-jiu ryû founded by Yoshiyuki

jitte—Single prong metal truncheon; it is a symbol of police authority

jitte—Jitte skill

jizamurai—A buke who also owns land

Jizo—The patron deity of travelers, children and preg- nant women (Buddhism). Small stone statues of him, also called jizo, can be seen at the sides of roads everywhere.

jô—1. Unit of measurement of length; 10 feet. 2. Four shaku (foot) wooden staff. 3. City block; town ward

jûdan—Dais; about 6 inches high

Jôdo—(“Pure Land”) A sect of Buddhism, founded in 1175 by Ennen. Jôdo is an Amidaist faith, with five main branches, some of which have their own subchents: Chinzei, Seizan, Chôraku-ji, Kuhon-ji, and Ichinengi.

Jôdo-shin-shu—The Ikkô movement, started in 1224, led by Shinran.

jû-jutsu—Short staff fighting skill

Jôkamachi-ryû—(“under-castle towns”) Castle town

jô-ko—Head of a ninjutsu-ryû

jô-ko—See kanri

jô-ko—See jônin

jô-jutsu—Unarmed combat, grappling skill

Jôshô-ji—Division of the Ikkô (Jôdô Shin, or True Name) Sect of Buddhism.

joss—Incense sticks

Jôzusan—A mountain in Japan.

jû—Ten

jûban—A light kimono; it functions like a 20th-cen- tury T-shirt.

jûban-gote—Mail tunic

Jugaku—Confucianism

jûgô—Teaching skill

ju-jutsu—Unarmed combat, grappling skill

Jukishin Ryû—A sub- set of the Ji sect of Buddhism.

k–ji—See nanori

kai-awase—Long paddle-like oar

kai—Stealth skill

Kaii—A subset of the Ji sect of Buddhism.

Kai—Kama-jutsu—Kama weapon skill

Kamakura—A town that was the seat of Minamoto (and later Hôjô) power.; 2. A historical era (1192–1333), in which the seat of the Minamoto government was located in Kamakura.

kamashinohazashi—??

Kamatari—Imperial family head who takes the name Fujiwara no Kamatari. His family will “run” Japan for the next several centuries.

kama-yari—A buke who also owns land

Kama—1. Sickle-like blade attached horizontally to a short wooden stick. 2. Rice-cooking pot

Kamui-shou—A suie-jutsu, ken-jutsu and tanto-jutsu ryû.

Kanazawa—City in Kaga province, known as one of the major centers of the dyeing industry.

kabetsu—Oppressed

kabetsu—Dried fish

Kangaku—Chinese classical literature

kanji—Advanced Japanese writing, from Chinese characters

kanku—Snow shoes

kanjiru—A short but bloody revolt in 672, in which the seat of the Minamoto govern- ment was located in Kamakura.

Kannon Dôkai—Mountain on Kyûshû

kan—Perception

Kanazawa—City in Kaga province, known as one of the major centers of the dyeing industry.

kabetsu—Oppressed

kabetsu—Dried fish

kangaku—Chinese classical literature

kanji—Advanced Japanese writing, from Chinese characters

kanku—Snow shoes

Kannon Dôkai—Mountain on Kyûshû

kan—Perception

Kanazawa—City in Kaga province, known as one of the major centers of the dyeing industry.

kabetsu—Oppressed

kabetsu—Dried fish

kangaku—Chinese classical literature

kanji—Advanced Japanese writing, from Chinese characters

kanku—Snow shoes

Kannon Dôkai—Mountain on Kyûshû

ka—Perception
karimate—Forked arrow
kari-shōzoku—Falconry attire (buke)
karma—Universal causal law
karō—Councilor, high ranking member of a samurai clan
karumi-jutsu—1. Body lightening; the ability to leap great distances and heights. 2. Acrobatics
karuta—A Japanese playing card
kaza—Straw hat
Kashima Shinden Ryū—A ken-jutsu ryū founded by Matsumoto Bizen-no-Kami Naokatsu in the early 16th century. Later known as Kashima Shinden Jikishinkage Ryū; sometimes known as Jikishinkage Ryū.
Kashima Shinto Ryū—A subset of the Fuke branch of Zen Buddhism
Kawajima—A province in Honshū; One of the five provinces making up the Kinai region.
Kawamura—A river on Honshū
Kawashima—A town in Echigo province.
Kassō—A subset of the Fuke branch of Zen Buddhism
Kasuga—Style of shrine architecture.
Kasuga Jinja—A Shintō shrine in Kasuga.
Kasuga Matsuri—Spring festival
Kasuga Taisha—Shintō shrine in Nara. 3,000 stone lanterns line the pathway to the main building.
Kasumi-ga-ura—Japan’s second largest lake, at 188 km² (65 mi.²), on Honshū
kataginu—Samurai court vest
kata—Intermediate form of Japanese writing
katame—Nearly blind or missing one eye
katana—Common longsword
katanakake—Sword rack
katana-zutsu—Sword case
kataribe—Wandering scholar
katchū keiba—Festival involving a horse race in which the riders wear full armor with banners.
kate-bukuro—Provision bag
Katori Shinto Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryū founded by Katono Izu Hirohito, popular in the northern provinces.
kawa—river
Kawachi—A province in Honshū; One of the five provinces making up the Kinai region.
kawana—Weighted rope
Kawanakajima—Site of a battle between rival daimyō Uesugi Kenshin and Takeda Shingen in 1555, which ends in a draw.
kawaramono—“Riverbed people”) Hinin who live in or near dried out riverbeds on the outskirts of town in little glitches.
kawari kabuto—Arm protection (armor)
kaya—Mosquito netting
kaya abura—Body lightening
Kazusa—A province in the Tōkaidō region of Honshū.
Kegon—One of the six original Nara sects of Buddhism, founded in 735 by Dōgen. Its seat is Tō- dai-ji in Yamato.
kegetsu—Fur boots
Keichitsu—“(Awakening of insects)” The first 15 days of the second month (Kisaragi)
Kemari—Heian-era soccer-like game played by kuge
kemō—See okumō
ken—1. Sword; 2. A unit of measurement equal to 2 yards (or m). 3. Ken-hō, a classical martial art
kenhō—Forgeful
kenshō—Sword Dance
Kenshō-ji—1. The most important temple in Kamakura; a Zen sect temple (f. 1253), and center for training Zen priests. 2. A subset of the Rinzaï branch of Zen Buddhism
ken-jutsu—Swordmanship; Japanese fencing
kenkyū—Research
Kenshu Restoration—Struggle in which Ashikaga Takaoki restores imperial rule in 1334, and supports Emperor Kōyōji at the northern line.
Kennin-ji—A subset of the Rinzaï branch of Zen Buddhism.
kensai—Sword master
kesa—A long cloth wrap worn over one shoulder; usually worn by Buddhist priests.
keshō—Cosmetics
kekegen—Creature with no arms or legs, only a great number of hair-like tubes
kezurimonon—Shaved, dried bonito
Kibidō—Division of the Ikko (Jōdō Shin, or True Pure Land) sect of Buddhism.
Kibi—Corn
Kichiku—A subset of the Fuke branch of Zen Buddhism
ki-hoko—Wooden arrow used in dog hunt
kijishi—Carver; sculptor
ki-jutsu—Sleight of hand
kikko—Japanese brajante; Giant concretion
Kikunonoma—“Chrysanthemum room”
Kikukuzuki—“Chrysanthemum month” The ninth month
kimono—“(Things to wear)”; common robe-like garment worn by all classes
kin—Gold
kindan gijutsu—Forbidden skill
Kinhokuzan—A mountain in Sado province.
Kinkaku-ji—the Golden Pavilion (f. 1397), in Miyako. Originally a retirement villa for Shōgun Yoshimitsu, it is now part of the Rokuan-ji
kina—Sword rack
Kii—One of the six provinces making up the Nankaidō region.
Kina—A region in Honshū (also called Kinki), comprised of five provinces: Izumi, Kawachi, Settsu, Yamashiro, and Yamato. Known as “the home provinces” due to the imperial capital having always been seated therein.
Kinosawadō—A river on Honshū
kino—Mushrooms
Kinsen—A subset of the Fuke branch of Zen Buddhism
kinds—Poor vision
kinton—Mashed sweet potato
Kii—A mountain in Sado province.
Kii-no-ma—“Gold room.”
Kiri—A mountain in Kaga province.
Kiri no ma—“Pawlonia room”
Kita—A mountain in Sado province.
Kita—A mountain in Sado province.
Kitakamigawa—A river on Honshū
kitakaze—Wind from the north
ki—Inner power
Kibō—City of Bizen province.
Kobō Ryō—A suie-jutsu, ken-jutsu, tanto-jutsu and ba-jutsu ryū.
Kobō-daiji—Founder of Shingon Buddhism in 805; also known as Kūkai.
Koborī Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryū founded by Fujisawa no Komatari
kobun—Members of a criminal organization.
kodō—Incense ceremony. 2. A large lecture hall on temple grounds.
kōfu—The principal city in Kai province.
Koga—A town in Shimōsa province, and center (and place of origin) of Koga-ryū ninjutsu.
kogai—Small knife kept in wakizashi saya
Kogi—A subset of the Shingon sect of Buddhism
Kogoku—A subset of the Fuke branch of Zen Buddhism
Koi—Carps
Kōjiki—“A Record of Ancient Things”) Book written in 711 by the historian Ōno Yamaro recording the history of Japan’s earliest days
Kojima—A town in Suruga province.
kokusai—Navigation
Koku—“Rain for the rice”) The second 15 days of the third month (Yayoi)
koku—1. A unit of volume equal to 180 liters (40 gallons), or about 5 bushels. 2. A province. 3. A measurement of time, about one eighth of an hour (7.5 minutes).
Koku—a subset of the Jis sect of Buddhism.
Kokugo—Japanese (language)
Komatsu—Town in Kaga province
Kombu—Dried kelp
Kōmoku—One of the Great Heavenly Kings; he watches over the west.
Kōmon—Division of the Hokke (Lotus) Sect of Buddhism.
Komusō—Traveling monk of the Fuke sect of Buddhism
Kondō—“Golden Hall”) Great hall in a temple containing the enshrined image of the patron Buddhist spirit.
kōsaku—Farming
koshiai—A leather sleeve hung from the waist sash to carry a kata.
koshō—Chinese pepper
koshogi—Individuals attached to a daimyō’s entourage.
Koshō—“Division of the Ikko (Jōdō Shin, or True Pure Land) sect of Buddhism.
Koshū Kaidō—Highway running from Edo to Kōfu (the capital city of the Kai, or Kōshū province).
kote—Arm protection (armor)
koten bungaku—Japanese classical literature
koto—Japanese zither

...one should not determine hereditary chief retainers. A man should be assigned according to his ability and loyalty.

— Asakura Toshikage
When one is giving direct audience to various reports, he should not allow the least bit of distortion in terms of their truth or falsehood. If he hears that an official has put his own profit to the fore, he should be given the proper punishment.

Asakura Toshikage
In military matters, one must never say that something can absolutely not be done. By this, the limitations of one's heart will be exposed.
embrated throughout Japan.

O-cha—Green tea

Ochiotoshi—An okuden technique of cutting through the opponent’s sword with your own.

Oda Nobunaga—A bōne-born warrior who rose to become military ruler of Japan. Because of his bōne roots, however, he was unable to be named Shōgun.

ō-dai—Huge, two-headed drum made from a single tree trunk.

ō-gata—With small metal plates “floating” in mail.

Oda Aoda—A city in Sagami province.

ōdéppō—Matchlock cannon

odori—Dance

odoshi—Armor lacings

oga—Two-man saw

ōgama—Large heavy battle kama

ōgi—A town on Sado island.

ōgi—A province in the Tōsandō region of Honshū.

ōhitsu—Cedar rice-serving tub

ō-kendo—A subset of the Ji sect of Buddhism.

Coward

A ken-jutsu, sō-jutsu, naginata-jutsu and Omori Ryū—Budo school.

Ômiya—A city in Suruga province.

Ô-Misoka—A province in the Tôkaidō region of Honshū.

Ôminesan—Small “fortunes,” pieces of paper that precede an enshrinement, to make the good fortune dictate your future. These papers are tied around a tree trunk, after reading, to make the good fortune come true or to avoid the predicted bad fortune.

Ônokorojima—The first island created by Izanagi.

Onnokata—Male or female characters

ōno—A battle axe

ōno—Receipt

ōno—Battle axe (see also ōkama)

ōnokoro—Grater

ōnōma—A town in Echizen province.

ōnori—Grater

ōntō—Large, old-style sode.

ōshô—A province in the Saikaidō region.

ōshô—The king piece in the game Shōgi.

ōshō—A form of a lord's house or wife of a lord.

Onimusha—Kami of healers and all medicinal arts.

Oni—A certain melancholy, timelessness, a shopworn high society; etiquette

ōnin—Demon, supernatural ogre

ōnori—Grater

ōnōma—One of the original kami in the Shintō pantheon.

ōmune—Barley, millet

ōn—A debt of honor or obligation

ōkagiri—Rice ball

ōnakata—Music skill

ōni—Demon, supernatural ogre

ōnō—Dance

ōnō—Receipt

ōnōma—Grounds attendant

ōnōyō—Japanese sorcery

ōnōgata—Male actors who portray female characters

ōno—A battle axe

ōno—Grater

ōno—Battle axe (see also ōkama)

Onokorojima—The first island created by Izanagi.

Onnokata—Male or female characters

ōnō—A town in Echizen province.

ōnori—Grater

ōntō—Large, old-style sode.

ōshô—A province in the Saikaidō region.

ōshô—The king piece in the game Shōgi.

ōshō—A form of a lord's house or wife of a lord.

Onimusha—Kami of healers and all medicinal arts.

Oni—A certain melancholy, timelessness, a shopworn high society; etiquette

ōnin—Demon, supernatural ogre

ōnori—Grater

ōntō—Large, old-style sode.

ōshô—A province in the Saikaidō region.

ōshô—The king piece in the game Shōgi.

ōshō—A form of a lord's house or wife of a lord.

Onimusha—Kami of healers and all medicinal arts.

Oni—A certain melancholy, timelessness, a shopworn high society; etiquette

ōnin—Demon, supernatural ogre

ōnori—Grater

ōntō—Large, old-style sode.

ōshô—A province in the Saikaidō region.

ōshô—The king piece in the game Shōgi.

ōshō—A form of a lord's house or wife of a lord.

Onimusha—Kami of healers and all medicinal arts.

Oni—A certain melancholy, timelessness, a shopworn high society; etiquette

ōnin—Demon, supernatural ogre

ōnori—Grater

ōntō—Large, old-style sode.

ōshô—A province in the Saikaidō region.

ōshô—The king piece in the game Shōgi.

ōshō—A form of a lord's house or wife of a lord.

Onimusha—Kami of healers and all medicinal arts.

Oni—A certain melancholy, timelessness, a shopworn high society; etiquette

ōnin—Demon, supernatural ogre

ōnori—Grater

ōntō—Large, old-style sode.
Sanyōdō—A region in Japan.
Saroma-ko—Japan's third largest lake, at 152 km².
Sanjō—Mountain castle (see also yamajiro).
San Senjin—A system, started in 1635, of alternate residences, requiring daimyō to alternate spending one year in Edo and one year in his home province.
Sanbômoriyama—Three-section staff.
Sanjö — One of the four provinces making up the Kinai region.
shaken—Bladed throwing weapons.
shaku—A unit of measurement equal to about one foot (30 cm).
Shi Daitenno—The Four Heavenly Kings, protectors of the four corners of the world from evil demons: Jikoku, Kōkoku, Tamon (Bishamon), and Zōchō.
shichi—Seven.
Shichifukujin—The Seven Lucky Gods of Ryōbu.
Shingi—A Shintō shrine in the Nagare style.
Shinto—Shinto priest; also called kannushi.
Shintō—Shinto Shobu RYû—A common ken-jutsu ryû, founded by one end and a chain concealed within the other. 2. Any staff (bô) with a concealable weapon or device.
shino-gote—A town in Echigo province.
Shinjoh—A Shintô priest; also called kannushi.
Shinjū—A term used for the Cha-no-yu's (tea ceremony) popularity. He composed seppuku to ritual suicide of the wake caste.
Shinshô-ji—Shingon temple in Narita (founded in 940), dedicated to Shinonono Shintô kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin—River on Kyûshû.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshô-ji—Shingon temple in Narita (founded in 940), dedicated to Shinonono Shintô kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinkan—A subset of the Chinzei branch of Jôdôshû.
Shikoro—Nape guard; part of a kabuto.
Shikiri—Ritual of intimidation performed by sumôtori.
Shikoro—These paper streamers, stretched around or across something being honored (shintô).
Shikoro—A town in Etchû province.
Shimabara—One of the older iai-jutsu ryû known for the Cha-no-yu's (tea ceremony) popularity. He composed seppuku to ritual suicide of the wake caste.
Shimada—A town in Suruga province.
Shimaji—A teacher. 2. An honorific used for doctors or any highly educated person.
Shimaji—A teacher. 2. An honorific used for doctors or any highly educated person.
Shimai—A teacher. 2. An honorific used for doctors or any highly educated person.
Shinshô-ji—Shingon temple in Narita (founded in 940), dedicated to Shinonono Shintô kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shimabara Rebellion—A failed rebellion in Shimabara against the privations of a cruel daimyō in 1855 after he defeated the Chōsokabe clan. The northern portion of Shimokita is one of several production centers of paper (washi).
Shinshô-ji—Shingon temple in Narita (founded in 940), dedicated to Shinonono Shintô kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshô-ji—Shingon temple in Narita (founded in 940), dedicated to Shinonono Shintô kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shirahata—An equestrian pastime and a Shintô ritual. Also shôtô-kan, or "Azuchi–Momoyama."
Shinsen—A province in the Tôkaidô region of Honshû.
Shishin—New.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shinshin-ku—Kami of the winds, along with his sister Shinatsuhime.
Shirakawa—A river on Honshū and Kyūshū
Shirane—A Japanese mountain 10,473 ft tall, the second tallest in Japan
shirasu—(“White sand”) A criminal hearing and sentencing before a magistrate
shishi—Chinese “Fūo” lion; their image is often used as guardian statue of Buddhist temple gates.
Shishin Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryū founded by Masugi Saburōzaemon Mitsuoki, known for its use of the tantō-gata (sword-shaped) shuriken.
Shôsetsu—A shuriken-jutsu ryū, founded by Kobori Kankaiyu Nyudôsho Kiyohira.
Shishigaku—Calligraphy
Shogaku—A potent, unstrained form of sake.
Shiwasu—Perilla
Shôgun—Supreme military ruler of Japan
A shôgi board; a nine-by-nine grid on a board game (like chess); it originated in China in the Nara Period. It is often used as guardian statue of Buddhist temple gates.
Shôgai—A board game (like chess); it originated in India and was introduced to Japan via China in the Nara Period.
shôgi-ban—A shôgi board; a nine-by-nine grid on a large, heavy piece of wood resembling a butcher’s block.
sugim—Supreme military ruler of Japan
shigume—Office of the shigun.
shoiko—Sake pot
Sho—A unit of measurement equal to 4 inches (10 cm).
shô—1. A unit of volume; 1.8 liters (1.5 qts). 2. Gong
shôchû—A potent, unstrained form of sake.
shô-daki—Small drums
shogakusa—Calligraphy
Shôgû—A river on Honshū
Shoja—A mountain in Japan.
Shôjigaku—Rhetoric
Shûjigaku—Rhetoric
Shû —A mountain 10,473 ft tall, the second tallest in Japan
sumôtori—A small town in Awaji
sumô—Japanese grappling sport linked with many Shintô rites
sumô no seichû—Ancient sumô bouts performed as a kuge court entertainment
sumô—1. A river on Honshū
sun—A unit of measurement equal to about 1.2 inches.
Sumeate—Greaves; leg protection (armor)
Sumiyoshi—Style of shrine architecture, in which the wood is often a bright red showing against white walls.
Sumiyoshî Jînja—A Shintô shrine in Sumiyoshi.
sukubajorô—(“Post station trollops”) Cheap prostitutes who cater to male travelers at post stations
sukuriken—One-to eight-bladed throwing blade
shû—1. A mountain 10,473 ft tall, the second tallest in Japan
Shûsai—One of the provinces in the Sanyôdô region of Honshū
Shû—1. A mountain 10,473 ft tall, the second tallest in Japan
Shû—1. A mountain 10,473 ft tall, the second tallest in Japan
Shûchi—Common knowledge (see also jôshiki)
sukiyaki—A style of home architecture, incorporating shoin features with a more relaxed lifestyle.
suizokudo—Multi-plate helmet with the edge of each pie-section-shaped plate a raised ridge.
suke—Suffix meaning deputy governor
suke—Lecherous
suki—1. Tea connoisseur. 2. Spade; digging tool.
sukiyaki—(“House of refinement”) A style of home architecture, incorporating shoin features with a more relaxed lifestyle.
suizokudo—Multi-plate helmet with the edge of each pie-section-shaped plate a raised ridge.
suke—Suffix meaning deputy governor
suke—Lecherous
suki—1. Tea connoisseur. 2. Spade; digging tool.
sukiyaki—(“House of refinement”) A style of home architecture, incorporating shoin features with a more relaxed lifestyle.
Takamagahara—The earthly domain of Amaterasu; the Yamato/Izumi region.

Takaminusubi—One of the original kami, and one of the three creators of the world.

Takananawaya—A mountain in Japan.


Takata—A town in Echigo province.

take—Bamboo

Takebu—A town in Echizen province.

Takehaya Susano-o no Mikoto—Shintō kami of the earthly domain of Amaterasu; Enryaku-ji in Ômi.

Takemura Ryū—A subset of the Ji sect of Buddhism.

Tenshin Ryū—A ken-jutsu and shuriken-jutsu ryû founded by Katono izu Hirohide.

Tenshō iban—Japan’s largest gold coin, first minted in 1588.

tenshū—Main donjon of a castle.

ten'ya—Herbalism

ten'gi—Sword Polishing (skill)

tennō—Empire

tenshû—Form of address for a lord, suffixed as ~dono ("sire"). May be used as polite form of address among equals.

tora—Tiger

tori—A gateway to a shrine or other sacred Shintō precincts.

tō-ori—Falcons

tō—Sword.

tō—A unit of volume; 18 liters (4 gal).

tō—A river on Honshû

tō—A five year conflict (935-940), in the Heian period.

tō—A special letter

tō—a sort of "vest" under the armor.

to-—See jinmaku

to—See jinmaku

tō—A five year conflict (935-940), in the Heian period.

Tojō—A famous samurai clan.

Toyotomi—A famous samurai clan and family; Loy- alists of the Eastern Army

Tokugawa—1. Famous samurai clan. 2. A historical era (1600–1686), also known as the Edo Period.

Tokugawa Hidetada—Son of Ieyasu, and the second Tokugawa shōgun.

Tokugawa Ieyasu—Shōgun from 1603-1616

Tokugawa jūgō—Kote with extended sections forming a sort of "vest" under the armor.

Tomina-gō—One of the six provinces making up the Nankaidō region.

tosan—Rice with bamboo & fish

Tōsō—A region of Honshū comprised of 13 prov- inces: Hida, Iwaki, Iwashiro, Kōzuke, Mino, Mutsu, Ōmi, Rikuchū, Rikuken, Shimotsuke, Shinano, Ugo and Uzen.

tōsēdō—Rectangular sode five lames, sparse laced, also called Ōmagami sode

tosan—Rice with bamboo & fish

Tōsō—A region of Honshū comprised of 13 prov- inces: Hida, Iwaki, Iwashiro, Kōzuke, Mino, Mutsu, Ōmi, Rikuchū, Rikuken, Shimotsuke, Shinano, Ugo and Uzen.

tōsē—Rectangular sode five lames, sparse laced, also called Ōmagami sode

toshi—One Year

Tōshō—Buddhist temple in Nara (f. 759). The original buildings are still standing.

Tōtōmi—A province in the Tōkaidō region of Honshū.

Tōu—A river on Honshū

Towada—One of the seven largest lakes in Japan.

Tōya—Japan’s seventh largest lake.

Tōyokuni—One of the original kami in the Shinō pantheon.

Toyotomi—A famous samurai clan and family; Loy- alists of the Eastern Army

Toyotomi Hideyoshi—Successor to Oda Nobunaga. He becomes kanpu in 1585. Formerly Hashiba Hideyoshi, he becomes Grand Minister and takes the surname Toyotomi in 1586, and invades Korea in 1592 and again in 1597 (both failed). He dies in 1599.

Toyotomi Hideyori—Son of Hideyoshi. He is defeated by Tokugawa leyasu in 1615 and commits seppuku.

Tōzana—The Shingon branch of the Shugendo sect of Buddhism, based in Daigo-ji in Miyako

Tsuba—Hilt; often very artistic

tsubo—Arean area 2 meters by 2 meters (two tatami side-by-side)

Tsubo sode—Deeply curved sode which fit more closely to the upper arm.

tsubari—See jinmaku

tsubekumi—A sword rack.

Tsubo—A sort of "vest" under the armor.

Tsubekumi—A sword rack.

Tsubota—A river on Honshū

Tsubouchi—Tracking skill

Tsubouchi—Tracking skill
Tsuikyô no Kami—Godess (kami) of the moon; ("Moon-viewing month") The eighth month
Tsukimi—National Moon-viewing festival in August
Tsukimono—Pickled vegetables
Tsukimi—National Moon-viewing festival in August
Tsukiyomi no Kami—Goddess (kami) of the moon; ("Moon-viewing month") The eighth month
Uchi—Hand; palm
Uchi-bukuro—A province in the Tôsandô region of Honshû.
Uchiwa—A plain on Kyûshû
Uchiwa—Plain fan
Uchiyama—A city in Settsu province, near Edo.
Uchiyama—A merchant guild or corporation.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchiyama—A city in Settsu province, near Edo.
Uchiyama—A merchant guild or corporation.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
Uchû—Another name for the Heavenly Palace in the Shintô pantheon. In the ancient literature, it is called Ukai and is associated with the mountain Ukai in western Kyûshû.
INDEX
I have heard that exemplary people help the needs and do not add to the wealth of the rich.

— Confucius
One should have insight into this world of dreams that passes in the twinkling of an eye.

— Hojo Shigetoki
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>Monk template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37-38</td>
<td>Monsters crests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21, 60, 82</td>
<td>Miyako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168, 174</td>
<td>Missile Weapons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Meditation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Medium (see also Itako or Miko)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Melee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>modifiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Measurements, conversions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Medicine: see Healing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Meditation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Medium (see also Itako or Miko)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Melee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>modifiers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38-38</td>
<td>Mon (crests)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Monme-ita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19, 20</td>
<td>Mountains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216</td>
<td>Mounted Combat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Mourning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Move By</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Move Through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204-205</td>
<td>Movement: actions, distance and movement, reduced mobility complication, run/sprint, stat group, terrain modifiers, weapon modifiers, movies, see filmography, music, court (gagaku), from heaven, general, instruments, prices of music items, skill, music and entertainment items, mutsu province, mystic (see also magic), magical arts, talent, professions, by caste, nagamaki, nagasaki, nagato province, nage-gama, nage-ari, naginata, nakasendo (highway)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106</td>
<td>Mental: complications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Merchants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 97</td>
<td>Mikawa province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Mighty Blow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>Mikatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137</td>
<td>Miko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>professions, by caste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132</td>
<td>template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Metal Armor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>money-lenders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>professions, by caste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Merchants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 97</td>
<td>Mikawa province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>professions, by caste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Merchants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 97</td>
<td>Mikawa province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>professions, by caste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>shops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123-138</td>
<td>NPC templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119</td>
<td>Occupations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>multiple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>and NPC classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>caste packages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>obsessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>Offices and occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168, 177</td>
<td>Ogama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 97</td>
<td>oki province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Okudan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>conflicting obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Debt Owed Perk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276</td>
<td>Oni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233</td>
<td>Omnyōdo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>list of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89, 90</td>
<td>ryū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23, 97</td>
<td>Omi province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214</td>
<td>Open Eye, The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241</td>
<td>Oppressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Option Points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241</td>
<td>Oracle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Oratory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Oshū Kaidō (highway)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21, 97</td>
<td>Osumi province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Outhouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109</td>
<td>Outsider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>Overweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22, 97</td>
<td>Owari province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179, 264</td>
<td>ox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Painting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21, 22, 23</td>
<td>paper, production centers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Perception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>527</td>
<td>To be a samurai is to be polite at all times. — Hojo Naganji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect Pitch</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perks</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in occupation templates</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Effects</td>
<td>181, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Habits</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personality</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of characters</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persuasion</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phobia</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Group</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physically Gifted</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physician</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Complications</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piercing Thrust</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piety</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>characteristic</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impurity complication</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>110, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin</td>
<td>74, 76, 110, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transgressions</td>
<td>74, 217-218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilgrimages</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilgrim</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin maneuver</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe</td>
<td>152, 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pirate</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template (see also Wako)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poems</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poetry</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poison</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>making</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protection from</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polearms (see also Weapons)</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ryū</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skill</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weapon list</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Police</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Law Enforcement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Shintō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polygamy</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Quality Items</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor Quality Items</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popular entertainment</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portuguese (see also Europeans)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post stations</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potteries</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poverty</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical Skills</td>
<td>118, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prayers (see also Magic or Religion)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presence</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prices</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animals and livestock</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armor</td>
<td>161-162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arms and armor care items</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artistic, medical and religious items</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothing</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooking and kitchen instruments</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foodstuffs</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture and household items</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music and entertainment</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal effects</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price Modifiers Table</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>services</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tools</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transportation</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traveling and survival items</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weapons</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priest templates</td>
<td>124, 127, 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priests</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Buddhism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaving the priesthood</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shintō</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shugendo</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Yamabushi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Stats</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Lavatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professions</td>
<td>119, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostitution</td>
<td>121, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brothels in towns and villages</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post station trollpos</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prices</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection from Poisons</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protestants (see also Franciscans)</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provinces</td>
<td>20-23, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home province (Lifepath)</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“home provinces”</td>
<td>20, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Figure</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puppeteer</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purification</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purify Water</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appraising items</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of items</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raijū</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rain from Heaven</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid Healing</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranged (see also Missile Weapons)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attack modifiers</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combat</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evade</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranged Weapons (see Missile Weapons)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranma</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receding Waters</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>characteristic</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Ki</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Killing damage</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Sun damage</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stun Recovery Table</td>
<td>211, 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced Mobility</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reality Levels</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regions of Japan</td>
<td>20-23, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religion</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism</td>
<td>69, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christianity</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impurity complication</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface effects of magic</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pilgrimages</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Piety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religious festivals</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryōbu-shintō</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shinō</td>
<td>66, 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shugendo</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Piety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transgression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Piety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload Bow</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renown</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reputation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responsibilities</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in villages and towns</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prices</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resurrection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Breathe Life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retainers</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost of hiring</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samurai who</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retreat</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Cut</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhetoric</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ri</td>
<td>10, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riding</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ritsu sect</td>
<td>72, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by region</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan’s longest</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riverbeds</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traveling across</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roads (see also Highway)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrying weapons on the</td>
<td>31, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carts/carriages on the</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courtesy on the</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major highways</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post stations along the</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riding horses on the</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wearing armor on the</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rokuro-kubi</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rokushaku bō</td>
<td>167, 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rokushaku kama</td>
<td>168, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roleplaying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etiquette</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experience rewards</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>games, reference</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is Roleplaying?</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roll With the Blow</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōnin</td>
<td>94, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>template</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room and Board</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooms</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jōdan</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Time, Rounds and Speed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine Quality of Created Items</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rule of X</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Game Rules</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run (see also Movement)</td>
<td>104, 198, 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryo</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryoba katana</td>
<td>167, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryōshi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Fisherman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ryū</td>
<td>86, 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goals for ML improvement</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joining a ryū</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life in the</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membership Level table</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sample ryū</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensei</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soke</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>structure of</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

— Popular saying among players of Go

He who sees from the side has eight eyes.
If you can understand one affair, you will understand eight.

— Yamamoto Jinzaemon
### Campaign Level

*AD&D* characters default to Historic Level.

### Stats

If the *AD&D* stat is between 4 and 18, divide the indicated *AD&D* stat score by 3, rounding down. If a character’s Strength is 18/50-99 treat it as a 7; if the Strength is 18/00 treat it as an 8. For *AD&D* stats above 18 (i.e., 19 and higher), divide the stat by 2, rounding down. Consult the table below for easy reference:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AD&amp;D Stat Score</th>
<th>Sengoku Stat Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-8</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-11</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-14</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15-17</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18/01-49</td>
<td>6 (Strength)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18/50-99</td>
<td>7 (Strength)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18/00</td>
<td>8 (Strength)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GMs wishing to adapt *AD&D* characters to Chanbara level games should increase the resulting *Sengoku* stats by a bonus of +1 for 5th through 8th level characters, and by +2 for characters of 9th level or higher.

To determine which stats to use to determine the appropriate *Sengoku* stat score, consult the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku AD&amp;D Stat (round down)</th>
<th>Stat Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIL</td>
<td>Willpower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>Charisma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>(Wisdom/2) + 1d6 for characters of Neutral alignment, +2d6 for Chaotic, or +3d6 for Lawful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>Honor Pts/10, as per <em>Sengoku</em> rules (See Honor, below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>Wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>Strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>Constitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>Average of (STR + CON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>Dexterity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEX</td>
<td>Dexterity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>Average of (INT + DEX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>Movement Rate / 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honor</td>
<td>If converting an <em>Oriental Adventures</em> character, use their straight Honor score.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derived Stats</td>
<td>Calculate normally, as per <em>Sengoku</em> rules</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Character Class

The following *AD&D* and *Oriental Adventure* character classes equate to the following *Sengoku* professions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AD&amp;D / OA</th>
<th>Sengoku</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barbarian</td>
<td>Nanbanjin or Eta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bard</td>
<td>Entertainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bushi</td>
<td>Bandit, Bushi or Rōnin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleric</td>
<td>Buddhist or Shinrō priest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Druid</td>
<td>Yamabushi (Shugenja)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fighter</td>
<td>Ashigaru, Bushi or Rōnin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illusionist</td>
<td>Omnyōji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenrei</td>
<td>Kenrei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mage</td>
<td>Omnyōji or Yamabushi (Shugenja)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monk</td>
<td>Budoka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninja</td>
<td>Shinobi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paladin</td>
<td>Bushi or Sohei (Piety 5+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranger</td>
<td>Rōnin, Shinobi or Yamabushi (Shugenja)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samurai</td>
<td>Samurai in service or Samurai Courtier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shujenka</td>
<td>Yamabushi (Shugenja)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sohei</td>
<td>Sohei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thief</td>
<td>Thief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wu Jen</td>
<td>Omnyōji or Shinrō priest (Kannon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yakuza</td>
<td>Gambler, Kagoya or Bandit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Skills

**General Skills**

*Arts:* Determine the character’s adjusted ability score for the appropriate Non-Weapon Proficiency and divide by 3, rounding down. Add +1 to the resulting Skill Level for each additional slot in that Proficiency. In addition, add the character’s Level divided by 5, rounding down, with a maximum bonus of +5.

*Weapon Skills:* For Weapon Proficiencies, calculate as per Non-Weapon Proficiencies and record the score for the appropriate *Sengoku* bugei.

*Everyman Skills:* Record Everyman Skills as per the *Sengoku* rules. If the character has a Proficiency in the same or very similar *AD&D* skill, determine the *Sengoku* skill score as outlined above.

*Specific Skills*

**Perception:** Intelligence divided by 3, rounding down.

**Focus Ki:** Wisdom divided by 3, rounding down, plus character’s Level divided by 5 (round down; max bonus +5).

**Religious Skill:** *Oriental Adventures* characters will have Buddhism and Shinrō as Everyman Skills. Nanban (Western) characters will have Kirishitan (or the character’s own religion, if different) as an Everyman Skill. Shukenja and Monk characters add their Level divided by 5 (rounding down; max bonus +5).

### Membership

**ML:** Membership Level in a clan or group is determined by the GM, based on the character’s Birth Rank. Western or non-*Oriental Adventures* characters may have a ML in a Nanbanjin group, or perhaps no Membership at all.

### Special Abilities

Certain *AD&D* characters, such as Thieves, have special abilities or skills. These special abilities become skills in *Sengoku*. To determine the skill score, simply divide the percentage score of the special ability by 10, rounding down. In cases where the special ability results in a skill already possessed by the character (such as the Everyman Skill of Stealth) or where two special abilities result in the same *Sengoku* skill, simply record the higher of the two scores.

The *AD&D* Special Abilities and their *Sengoku* skill counterparts are listed below.

### Currency

The currency used in Advanced Dungeons & Dragons and *Oriental Adventures* roughly converts to the following *Sengoku* currency:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>AD&amp;D</em> / <em>OA</em></th>
<th><em>Sengoku</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 copper pc.</td>
<td>1 Zeni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 silver pc.</td>
<td>1 Ch’ien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 gold pc.</td>
<td>2 Tael</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 gold pc.</td>
<td>1 Ch’ien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 platinum pc.</td>
<td>1 Bu-shohan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CAMPAIGN LEVEL**

Bushido characters default to Chanbara Level characters in SENGOKU.

GMs wishing to convert Bushido characters to Sengoku for Historic-level games should do the conversions first, then evaluate the character’s stat and skill scores to see if they are unbalanced (that is, too high) for the campaign. From that point, the GM can trim scores down to more manageable levels if that is their wish.

### STATS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku</th>
<th>Bushido</th>
<th>Stat*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>WIT/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>WILL/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>(WILL/6) +1 per 2 character Levels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>(WIT + WILL)/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>Honor Pts/10, as per SENGOKU rules (See Honor, below)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>(WIT+WILL)/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>STR/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>HLT/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>HLT/4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>(SPD + DFT)/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEX</td>
<td>(SPD + DFT)/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>(WIT + DFT)/8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>BMA/2 (round up)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Honor Pts**

Character’s Level x 15 (Bushi/Gakusho), x5 (Yakuza/Ninja) or x10 (Budoka/Shugenja)

**Derived Stats**

- Calculate normally, as per SENGOKU rules

### SKILLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General Skills</th>
<th>Raw percentile score / 10 (round down)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specific Skills</td>
<td>(WIT ST x3)/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Ki</td>
<td>Character’s Level x 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious Skill</td>
<td>(WIT + WIL) / 8  (for Shugenja or Gakusho only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Corresponding Stats**

1. To determine the C&S Charisma stat score, check the table below and compare the value of INT, WIS and BV to find the bonuses, and then add the bonuses together. If a stat is below 11, do not count it.

#### Attribute Value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Bonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Add 2d10 for Luck.
3. Divide the total by 5 (round up) to find the natural Charisma.
4. For SENGOKU purposes, add 2 to the Charisma before calculating the Presence score.
5. Compare the resulting C&S score on the table to the top to determine the final SENGOKU PRE score.

**Example:** Toshii has INT 13, WIS 15 and BV 10. He receives a C&S bonus of 12 due to his INT, a bonus of 14 due to his WIS, but no bonus due to BV because it’s less than 11. His total bonus for the three stats is 26. He then rolls 2d10 for a result of 12. The total thus far is 38 (12 + 14 + 12)/5. He has an outstanding C&S Light Charisma score of 8. To find the SENGOKU value, add 2 to yield a value of 10. Looking on the stat conversion table we see that a C&S Light value of 10 equates to a SENGOKU stat of 3.

**Converting C&S Light into SENGOKU**

- Use the following table to convert the values of character statistics.

#### C&S Light (Historic) C&S Light (Chanbara) Sengoku

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2-4</th>
<th>2-3</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-8</td>
<td>4-7</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-12</td>
<td>8-11</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13-16</td>
<td>12-13</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-18</td>
<td>14-15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C&S Light Charisma**

- Calculate normally, as per SENGOKU rules

---

**CONVERSION NOTES FOR CHIVALRY & SORCERY LIGHT™**

Chivalry & Sorcery, C&S Light and Land of the Rising Sun are trademarks of Britannia Games. Used with permission.

**CAMPAIGN LEVEL**

C&S characters can be adapted for either Historic or Chanbara Level games. Ultimately the choice of which level to convert to is up to you and your GM.

### STATS

Use the following table to convert the values of character statistics.

#### Attribute Value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Bonus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Add 2d10 for Luck.
3. Divide the total by 5 (round up) to find the natural Charisma.
4. For SENGOKU purposes, add 2 to the Charisma before calculating the Presence score.
5. Compare the resulting C&S score on the table to the top to determine the final SENGOKU PRE score.

**Example:** Toshii has INT 13, WIS 15 and BV 10. He receives a C&S bonus of 12 due to his INT, a bonus of 14 due to his WIS, but no bonus due to BV because it’s less than 11. His total bonus for the three stats is 26. He then rolls 2d10 for a result of 12. The total thus far is 38 (12 + 14 + 12)/5. He has an outstanding C&S Light Charisma score of 8. To find the SENGOKU value, add 2 to yield a value of 10. Looking on the stat conversion table we see that a C&S Light value of 10 equates to a SENGOKU stat of 3.
CAMPAIGN LEVELS

GURPS Japan characters may be built using any of several levels of “power,” using the GURPS rules, from Average (base 25 Points) to Superhuman (base 300 Points). We recommend the following level of play in Sengoku based on the number of starting points your GURPS (Japan) character has:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GURPS Starting Pts</th>
<th>Sengoku Level of Game</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25 – 100 Pts</td>
<td>Historic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 – 300 Pts</td>
<td>Chanbara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300+ Pts</td>
<td>Anime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADVANTAGES & DISADVANTAGES

Most GURPS Advantages equate to appropriate Perks or Talents in Sengoku. Likewise, most GURPS Disadvantages correspond to appropriate Complications in Sengoku. Simply record the item and ignore the point values for them.

STATS & SKILLS

GURPS stats range from 1-20, with 10 being the score for an average human. In Fuzion stats range from 1-10, with an average human’s score being 3. This variance in the range of scores makes a flat divisor or multiplier inaccurate and problematic. Therefore we have provided a table for converting GURPS scores to Fuzion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GURPS score</th>
<th>Sengoku score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-7</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-13</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21+</td>
<td>Divide by 2 (round up)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table below lists the Sengoku stats on the left and the corresponding GURPS stats on the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku</th>
<th>GURPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Use table above for score, unless other formula given)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>IQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>IQ +1 per level of Strong Will*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>IQ +1 per level of Charisma*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>IQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>Honor/10, rounding down (See Honor, below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOS</td>
<td>IQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>ST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>HT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>(ST + HT)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>DX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEX</td>
<td>DX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>(IQ + DX)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>Move/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honor Pts</td>
<td>GM’s discretion; if a member of a samurai clan, multiply Status x 9.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table below lists the Sengoku stats on the left and the corresponding GURPS stats on the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku</th>
<th>GURPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Use table above for score, unless other formula given)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>IQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WILL</td>
<td>IQ +1 per level of Strong Will*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>IQ +1 per level of Charisma*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>IQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>Honor/10, rounding down (See Honor, below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AOS</td>
<td>IQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>ST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>HT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>(ST + HT)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>DX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEX</td>
<td>DX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>(IQ + DX)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>Move/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honor Pts</td>
<td>GM’s discretion; if a member of a samurai clan, multiply Status x 9.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* For each level of Strong Will or Charisma (as applicable), add a +1 to the given GURPS stat for purposes of converting to Sengoku. For example, if the GURPS character has an IQ of 12 plus one level of Strong Will, they are treated as having a GURPS IQ of 13, which, looking at the stat conversion table, corresponds to a Sengoku WILL score of 4.

Other Derived Stats: Derived stats in Sengoku are calculated normally, as per Sengoku rules.

SKILLS

General: To determine the Sengoku skill level for particular skill, subtract the governing GURPS stat from the GURPS skill score, with a minimum Fuzion skill level of 1. For example, if the character’s DX is 14 and their Katana skill is 18, their Sengoku skill score is (18-14) = 4.

Everyman Skills: Use a skill level of 2 for any Sengoku Everyman skills not already possessed by the GURPS character.

The following skills have special conversion requirements:

Perception: IQ +1 for each level of Acute sense. For example, if the GURPS character has an IQ of 12 plus two levels of an Acute sense, they are treated as having a GURPS score of 14, which, looking at the stat conversion table, equals a Sengoku Perception of 5.

Focus Ki: IQ/5 (Note: It is up to the individual GM whether to allow a GURPS character to begin play with the Focus Ki skill essentially for free. GMs may require the converted characters to buy the skill with experience points.)

Specific Talents

Mystic: Magical Aptitude (at any level) confers this talent.

CONVERSION NOTES FOR HERO SYSTEM™

Hero System is a trademark of Hero Games. Used with permission.

Campaign Level

Hero System characters default to Chanbara-level characters in Sengoku. In most cases, Hero System stats of 24 or under are divided by 3 to determine the Sengoku score. In cases where the Hero System stat is 25 or higher, reflecting superhuman ability, the stat should be divided by 5.

Stats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku</th>
<th>Hero System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>(round down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GST</td>
<td>INT/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WI</td>
<td>EGO/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>PRE/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>GM’s discretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>Honor Pts/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>(INT+EGO)/6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>STR/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>CON/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>Average of (BODY/3) and (STUN/5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>Base OCV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEX</td>
<td>Base DCV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>Average of (INT/3) and (DEX/3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>Take the character’s total Combat Running in inches and divide by 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Honor Pts | GM’s discretion; Optionally, use 2x the character’s PRE + EGO.

Other Derived Stats: Derived stats in Sengoku are calculated normally, as per Sengoku rules.

Skills

Skill Level: Subtract 8 from the Hero System skill roll (e.g., a skill roll of 12 becomes a 4 in Sengoku).

Perception: Use the character’s base Perception Roll -8

Focus Ki: EGO / 5
Campaign Level

*LSR* characters default to *Chanbara*-level characters in *SENGOKU*.

Stats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku Stat</th>
<th><em>LSR</em> (round down)</th>
<th>INT</th>
<th>Willpower x 1.5</th>
<th>PRE</th>
<th>Average of (Awareness + Willpower), x 1.5</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Average of (Awareness + Void), x 1.5</th>
<th>KAO</th>
<th>Honor Pts/10, as per <em>SENGOKU</em> rules (See Honor, below)</th>
<th>AES</th>
<th>Average of (Intelligence + Awareness), x 1.5</th>
<th>STR</th>
<th>Strength x 1.5</th>
<th>CON</th>
<th>Stamina x 1.5</th>
<th>BODY</th>
<th>Average of (Stamina + Void)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Skills

**General**
- **Skill Rank + School/Clan Rank (Option: Skill Rank x 1.5)**

**Specific Skills**
- **Perception**
  - Perception +2
- **Focus Ki**
  - Void x 1.5
- **Religious Skill**
  - Shintao or Theology (Player’s choice) + School Rank

Derived Stats

**WEAPONS & EQUIPMENT**

Use the stats for weapons and equipment in this book when playing *LSR* with the *SENGOKU* rules.

Conversion Notes for the *USAGI YOJIMBO RPG™*, THE LEGACY OF ZORRO® AND INSTANT FUZION™

*Instant Fuzion* characters are very easy to convert for use with *SENGOKU* or other *Total Fuzion* games.

**Stats**: *Instant Fuzion* stats equate to Stat Groups in *SENGOKU*. Whenever a stat is called for in *SENGOKU* (such as for a skill roll), simply use the score of *Instant Fuzion* stat that corresponds to the Stat Group that the required stat is part of.

**Skills**: Skills can be used right across the board. Skill work the same in both versions of the Fuzion rules. There may be more skills in Sengoku than in the *Instant Fuzion* game.

For example, Michelle is using a character from the *Usagi Yojimbo Roleplaying Game*, which uses Instant Fuzion stats, in a *SENGOKU* game. At one point, the GM calls for Michelle’s character to make a Swords (ken-jutsu) roll. In *SENGOKU*, Swords uses the REF stat, but Michelle’s character doesn’t have a REF stat. Instead, Michelle adds her skill score to her COMBAT stat, because in *SENGOKU*, REF is part of the Combat Group.

Making the Change: GMs and players wishing to determine the precise *Sengoku* stats (or *Total Fuzion* stats) for their *Instant Fuzion* character can “unfold” the *Instant Fuzion* stats. Simply multiply the *Instant Fuzion* stat times the number of Primary Stats used in *SENGOKU*, then use this number to divide among the Primary Stats within that stat Group.

For example: Michelle decides she would rather assign scores to the Primary Stats used in *SENGOKU* to her character instead of using the *Instant Fuzion* stats. Her character has a MENTAL stat of 4. Since *SENGOKU* has six Primary Stats in the Mental Stat Group, Michelle multiplies her character’s MENTAL score (4) times 6, resulting in 24. She has 24 points to divide between her new stats: INT, WILL, PRE, AES, PIE and KAO. Michelle repeats the same process for her PHYSICAL and COMBAT stats, until she has scores for all of the Primary Stats used in *SENGOKU*.

**Stats**:

**Option One**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sengoku Stat</th>
<th><em>Instant Fuzion</em> (round down)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>Mental stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIL</td>
<td>Mental stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>Mental stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
<td>Mental stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAO</td>
<td>Mental stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES</td>
<td>Mental stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>Physical stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>Physical stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>Physical stat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>Combat stat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Option Two**

To convert from *SENGOKU* to *Instant Fuzion*, use the character’s Move stat as is.

- **DEX**
  - Combat stat
- **TECH**
  - Combat stat
- **MOVE**
  - Move stat
- **Honor Pts**
  - (KAO x10) + 1d6
- **Derived Stats**
  - Calculate normally, as per *SENGOKU* rules

**Skills**

**Focus Ki**
- Mental Stat

**Religious Skill**
- Mental Stat (priests, yamabushi and onmyôji only);
  - These characters get the Mystical Talent free, also.

MEMBERSHIP

**ML**
- Samurai characters may assume a ML in their clan equal to their Glory Rank +1. Those without samurai clan affiliation have no ML. (GM’s option: Unaffiliated characters may have a ML in a guild or other group equal to their Glory Rank/2.)

**Conversion Notes for LEGEND OF THE FIVE RINGS™ RPG**

## Character Background / History
Where was your character born? Where did he grow up? What are the name of his parents and siblings (if any). What childhood events shaped your character’s personality?

## Character Reputation, Renown & Honor
List any important incidents, encounters or events in the campaign that earned your character a reputation (deserved or not), renown or Honor points.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>When occurred</th>
<th>Outcome/reputation gained</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Prayers
Is your character a practitioner of mystic arts? If so, list the prayers your characters knows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prayer</th>
<th>LoS</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Notable Personalities
List any important NPCs that your character has encountered. These can be romantic interests, villains or rivals, influential people or anyone else who stands out in your character’s mind.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Good / Bad Karma
List any Good or Bad Karma points your character has here, along with what event earned the Good or bad Karma. (Let the GM see this list whenever asked.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pts</th>
<th>Good/Bad</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Goals
Note your character’s goals, as well as which your character has accomplished (see Sengoku p. 94).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Done?</th>
<th>Goal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Converting between *Action! System* and *Fuzion* is very simple. Many of the basic concepts of both game systems are the same. For instance, character attributes, such as strength and reflexes, as well as skill scores are rated 1 to 10 in both systems.

Where there are slight differences, you can convert between the two using this handy guide, thus allowing you to use *Fuzion* powered material in your *Action! System* game, and vice versa.

**Attributes & Characteristics**

The range of scores for characteristics (*Fuzion*) and attributes (*Action! System*) is the same. That is, they are rated 1 to 10 (for humans) in both game systems. The only thing you really need to know is which one in one system equates to which one in the other system.

Use these handy charts for reference.

### Fuzion to Action! System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>Action!</em></th>
<th><em>Fuzion</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>STR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>(REF + DEX)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLT</td>
<td>(CON + BODY)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>PRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIL</td>
<td>EGO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>TECH*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>MOVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* There is no Action attribute corresponding to TECH.

### Action! System to Fuzion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>Fuzion</em></th>
<th><em>Action!</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STR</td>
<td>STR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON</td>
<td>HLT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BODY</td>
<td>(STR+HLT)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEX</td>
<td>REF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TECH</td>
<td>(INT+REF)/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT</td>
<td>INT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE</td>
<td>PRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGO</td>
<td>WIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVE</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Movement is treated as a derived attribute in *Action! System*.

**Derived Attributes & Characteristics**

The simplest method to convert characters from one system to the other is to recalculate the derived attributes based on the attributes that you’ve already converted.

For example, if you have converted a character from *Action! System* to *Fuzion* resulting in a BODY of 4, then you can simply calculate the character’s Hits as per the *Fuzion* rules (Hits = Body x 5).

**Target/Difficulty Numbers**

The target numbers (*Action! System*) and difficulty values (*Fuzion*) are essentially the same between the two systems. Although the benchmarks vary (*Action! System* uses 3-point steps between levels, whereas *Fuzion* uses 4-point steps), they can be used interchangeably.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>Action! System</em></th>
<th><em>Fuzion</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricky</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Challenging</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demanding</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extreme</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legendary</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Weapons and Damage**

Weapons and damage ratings can be used without change between the two systems, with one exception. In *Action! System*, STR damage is 1d6 for every 2 points of STR, with fractions converting to a +2 (e.g., a STR of 5 results in 2d6+2 damage capability).

**Traits and Talents**

Because the cost or value of Traits in *Action! System* range from 2 to 10, and provide bonuses of up to +3, they are not cost balanced against comparable *Fuzion* Talents.

The most accurate way to reflect Traits in *Fuzion* is to simply purchase the appropriate corresponding Talent for the character, or vice versa.
Get Ready for

Download the rules for FREE at RPGNow.com or action-system.com

"...it will have you reconsidering that game you always wanted to write... I give it an A!"
—The Open Gaming Exchange (10/08/02)

4 1/2 Dice (out of 5)!
—Guide du roliste Galactique

"...overall flexibility and great combat system... Playability and Value for the dollar: 5/5"
—d20 Magazine Rack

www.action-system.com

What does a published author look like? Like you!

www.goldenpillarpublishing.com
GOLD RUSH GAMES UPCOMING PRODUCTS
www.goldrushgames.com

UPCOMING PRODUCTS

Sengoku Character Sheets
Sengoku accessory Mar ’03
1008 1-890305-58-8 14.95

Fast Action! Basic Rule Book
RPG May ’03
4002 1-890305-39-1 9.95

Action! Classics: The Three Musketeers
Action! System source book Jun ’03
4201 1-890305-44-8 24.95

Action! Classics: The Three Musketeers
is a roleplaying game sourcebook of swashbuckling adventure set in 17th century France.
Action! Classics: The Three Musketeers uses the Action! System rules and includes portions of The Three Musketeers by Alexandre Dumas. The book also includes stats and conversion notes for other game systems (TBA).
Another great title in the Action! Classics line of products based on classic literature!

Agent X Second Edition
RPG TBA ’03
4301 1-890305-46-4 24.95

Mouse Kingdom
RPG TBA ’03
4401 1-890305-47-2 9.95

Castles Sourcebook
Sengoku source book TBA ’03
1006 1-890305-43-X 19.95

Renaissance Adventure Game
RPG TBA ’03
1101 1-890305-42-1 24.95

Patriots: Roleplaying in the American War of Independence
RPG TBA ’03
1201 1-890305-48-0 24.95

A roleplaying game and sourcebook set in against the backdrop of the American War for Independence.
Includes background, source material and game stats for a variety of historical items, including weapons, maps, equipment, organizations and personalities.

Starship Yakaze: Soul of the Shadow
Action! System/d20 adventure TBA ’03
2001 1-890305-28-6 9.95

Copyright 2003 by Gold Rush Games. All rights reserved.

HERO System is a trademark of DOJ Inc. Used under license.
’d20 System’ and the ‘d20 System’ logo are Trademarks owned by Wizards of the Coast and are used according to the terms of the d20 System License version 1.0. A copy of this License can be found at www.wizards.com/d20.
NEW RELEASES

The Village of Briarton
*d20 System setting source book* NEW!
GRG2301 1-890305-49-9 14.95

The Village of Briarton is a fantasy setting book written for the *D20 System*, and suited for use in any fantasy world.

Shinobi Ryu
*Sengoku source book* NEW!
GRG2301 1-890305-40-5 14.95

Shinobi Ryu contains additional information for both GMs and players, including: new ryu (clans); new NPCs; new shinobi profession templates; A shinobi village, with full-page map and key; ...and more!

BEST SELLERS

Action! System Core Rules Book
*Universal RPG*
GRG4001 1-890305-38-3 14.95

San Angelo: City of Heroes
*Hero System; Origins Award nominee!*
GRG3001 1-890305-03-0 24.95

Sengoku: Revised Edition
*Best Historical Game 1999! Origins Awards & Grog d’Or nominee!*
GRG1001B 1-890305-50-2 29.95

Critically acclaimed samurai RPG!

OTHER BACK TITLES

Shiki: Four Seasons
*Sengoku adventure anthology Origins Award nominee!*
GRG1002 1-890305-19-7 16.00

Shinobi: Shadows of Nihon
*Best oriental RPG product (2002)*
GRG1003 1-890305-11-1 19.95

Sengoku: Revised Ed. (hardcover)
GRG1005 1-890305-41-3 39.95

Usagi Yojimbo: Monsters
*Fuzion/d20 System source book*
GRG3002 1-890305-09-X 12.00

Enemies of San Angelo
*Hero System/Champions*
GRG1H101 1-890305-13-8 16.00

Denizens of San Angelo
*Hero System/Champions*
GRG1H102 1-890305-14-6 14.00

Visit the Gold Rush Games web site at www.goldrushgames.com